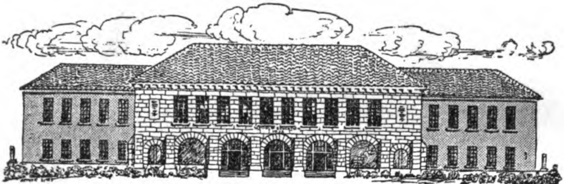


THE PRINCIPLES

OF

LATIN GRAMMAR,

COMPRISING THE SUBSTANCE OF THE MOST APPROVED GRAMMARS EXTANT,

WITH AN

APPENDIX AND COMPLETE INDEX.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

PETER BULLIONS, D.D.,

AUTHOR OF THE "SERIES OF ENGLISH, LATIN, AND GREEK GRAMMARS, AND SCHOOL CLASSICS."

REVISED BY

CHARLES D. MORRIS,

LATE RECTOR OF TRINITY SCHOOL, N. Y., AND FORMERLY FELLOW OF ORIEL COLLEGE, OXFORD, ENGLAND.

NEW YORK:

SHELDON AND COMPANY,

498 & 500 BROADWAY.

1869.

PREFACE.

The system adopted by Dr. Bullions in his series of Grammars is so well known, that it requires no lengthy explanation now. His view was, that while all efforts should be made by the teacher and by the writer of text-books, to make pupils understand the principles of what they were taught, it was still of the greatest advantage that the main facts of the subject should be presented in such a way that they might readily be committed to memory, and that thus young persons should easily be furnished with a succinct and scientific statement of the chief doctrines imparted to them, expressed in a more compendious and logical form than they could be expected to frame for themselves. In this edition of Dr. Bullions' Latin Grammar, this fundamental conception of the proper way of presenting the subject has been in no degree departed from. In the subordinate treatment of the subject, however, some alterations have been made, which the Editor hopes may be thought improvements, and which he must now briefly particularize.

1. Instead of marking the quantity of the penultimate syllables only, the quantity of all the syllables in the Latin words has been indicated without overloading the text with marks, by the plan of marking the long vowels only, leaving it to be understood that all the unmarked vowels, which are by far the most numerous, are short. If this matter is systematically attended to, pupils will have learned a large part of the facts of Prosody before they come to study that portion of the Grammar; and the same plan may be adopted with great effect in all written exercises, if Teachers will insist on their scholars marking all the long vowels in the words they use.

2. In the Declensions and Conjugations, the terminations, or flectional endings, have been printed in dark letters, thus making very obvious to the eye the distinction between the radical and the formative part of each inflected word.

3. In the discussion of the separate Declensions, the matter has been considerably redistributed, in order that facts of a similar kind may be brought in juxtaposition: and throughout the book the most important words in each paragraph have been printed in dark letters, to serve as a kind of heading or key to the contents of the section, and to render it easy for the eye to catch the particular statement it is in search of.

4. In the treatment of all inflected words, attention has been called to the stems or uninflected forms, from which the several cases or persons are made. Though the Editor is himself convinced that it is the best as well as the most scientific way to teach pupils to remember the stem, and not the nominative case or first person singular, as representing the word denuded of all its accidental modifications, he has not ventured to do more in this direction than to give such teachers as may agree with him an opportunity of carrying out this system. For the rest, the Declensions and Conjugations are presented and distinguished in the customary manner.

5. The subject of the Third Declension has been much more fully treated than in former editions of the Grammar. In this, more than elsewhere, the immense advantage of the stem-system is perceptible. But the far greater number of words declined at length must prove advantageous to all, whether they work on that system or in the ordinary method. The facts in regard to irregular nouns of this Declension have been classified in a way somewhat novel, which it is hoped will facilitate their being learned. The rules for Gender, with the numerous exceptions under them, have been, for the same reason, given in memorial verses, which can readily be learned by heart, and thus become a permanent possession of the scholar.

6. A large amount of matter, on the uses of the Pronouns and the Moods and Tenses of the Verb, has been redistributed and inserted in its proper place in the Syntax.

7. In the Conjugations, the Passive Voice has been printed on the pages opposite to those containing the Active Voice; not, of course, that they may be learned simultaneously, but that when the Passive Voice is to be learned, the contrast between it and the Active, in form and meaning, may be readily seen.

8. The conjugation of the Verb has been subjected to an elaborate analysis, which will, it is hoped, render the whole subject one of scientific interest, as well as greatly facilitate its thorough comprehension. Here, again, the utility of the stem-system is shown: and the Editor is convinced that if Teachers who are fortunate enough to have intelligent and earnest pupils will use the tables on pp. 134–137, to impart the conjugations, before giving them the same conjugations to learn in the ordinary way, they will be amazed at the clearness and the rapidity with which the whole subject will be mastered.

9. The list of verbs irregular in the formation of their principal parts has been entirely rewritten, in order to classify the verbs according to the way in which the perfect tense is formed.

10. A chapter on the derivation and composition of words has been added, in which will be found the various remarks occurring in different places in former editions, with much new matter.

11. In treating the Syntax, the Rules have been left nearly as they are in the last edition; but the matter has been considerably altered in arrangement, in order that the various uses of each case may be found in one place. The Examples of construction which were heretofore given without translation, have been rendered into English. The whole subject of the verb has been rewritten, and it is hoped simplified, by a much more minute subdivision of its parts, and by the use of convenient terms to indicate distinct uses, particularly those of the Subjunctive Mood. The topic of the *ōrātio oblīqua* is illustrated by several passages of considerable length from Caesar, in which the changes made in passing from the direct to the indirect mode of reporting are made very clear. The subjects of the Gerundive and the Participles have also received an elaborate and somewhat novel treatment.

12. The Prosody has received a careful revision. But in this part of the subject the Editor's views as to what would be a satisfactory treatment of the matter are so widely at variance with the received methods, that he has not ventured to remodel this portion of the book in accordance with his own theories. He has, therefore, been content to make slight corrections and alterations here and there, leaving the main treatment of the subject unaltered.

Besides the changes to which attention has been directed in this preface, there are doubtless many others which might be severally mentioned. It would be needless to specify the particular Gram-

mars or treatises which have been used in making this revision. The works of Madvig, Kühner, Zumpt, Key, and Donaldson, have, perhaps, been more constantly examined than others; but wherever the Editor has found what appeared to him a good statement, or a good example, he has not hesitated to avail himself of it. The Editor has endeavored to do his work faithfully, and he believes that this edition of the Grammar will be found in many respects an improvement on its predecessor; and he hopes it may be judged to contain as clear a statement of the principles of the language as is consistent with a scientific treatment of them, and to embody the best and most useful results of the very successful study which has been devoted to the subject by the scholars of Europe.

NEW YORK, June 20th, 1866.

A TABLE,

Showing the numbers of the paragraphs in this edition of the Grammar which correspond to the sections and paragraphs of former editions. By the help of this table, the matters referred to in the notes on the classical series may be readily found in this book. Where the subdivisions of a paragraph are the same in this as in former editions, they have been omitted in this table. The letter *n* stands for *note; ob*, for *observation; ex*, for *exception;* and *ff*, for *following.* B. stands for Bullions's Latin Grammar; B. & M., for Bullions & Morris's Latin Grammar.

B.	B. & M.
1 —	1
2 —	2
§ *1.*	
3, 4 —	3
5–8 —	5
10, 11 —	6
12 —	8
13, 14 —	9
§ *2.*	
15–17 —	14
§ *3.*	
18, 19 —	12
20 —	15
21 —	16
22, 1—	17
2—	18
3—	17
4—	19
23 —	20
24 —	21
25 —	22
26, 2—	23
27 —	24
§ *4.*	
28 —	25
§ *5.*	
29 —	26

B.	B. & M.
§ *6.*	
31 —	27
32, 1—	28
2—	29
33 —	30
§ *7.*	
34 —	30
35 —	31
36–38 —	32
39 —	33
40 —	34
42 —	39
45, 1—	35
2—	33
3—	39
4—	37
5—	50
46–48 —	42
49 —	43
50–52 —	43
§ *8.*	
53–55 —	44
56 —	46
57 —	47
58 —	48
§ *9.*	
60 —	51
61, 1—	53
2—	54

B.	B. & M.
61, 4—	57
62 —	52
§ *10.*	
63 —	58
64, 65 —	62
66 —	63
67 —	61
68 —	72
69, 1—	65
2—	67
71 —	64
72 —	66
73 —	67
74 —	68
75 —	70
§ *11.*	
76 —	73
77 —	74
§ *12.*	
78 —	94
3—	88
79 —	99
ex.	115
80 —	83
81 —	116
82 ob.	114
7—	97
83 —	112
8—	99

B.	B. & M.
84 —	122
§ *13.*	
85 —	152
86, 1—	174, 5
2—	153, 4
3—	157
4—	155
3—	158
5—	156
87 —	159
88, 1—	164
2—	167
3—	160
5—	165
6—	162, 3
89 —	168
§ *15.*	
90, 1—	173
3—	169
4—	170, 1
90, 1—	111
2—	110
3—	111
4—	127
ob. 1—	128
5—	110–3
6—	111
7—	111
ob. 3—	113
ob. 4—	112

B.		B. & M.
90	9—	116-9
	ob. 6—	120
	10—	135
	11—	133
	12—	123
	13—	136
§ *16.*		
91	—	137
92	1—	138
	2—	139
	3—	140
93	1—	141
	2—	142
	3—	143
	5—	144
§ *17.*		
94	—	146
	ob. 1—	147
	ex. —	149
§ *18.*		
96	—	184
	1—	187
	2-6—	186
	7—	185
	8—	69
	9—	176
	ob. 1—	183
	10—	182
	11—	182
	ob. 3—	182
	12—	180
	ob. 4—	181
	13—	182
	ob. 5—	182
	14—	121
	15—	177
	16—	177
	17—	177
	18—	177
	19—	178
	20—	178
	21—	178
	22—	178
	23—	188
	24—	179
§ *19.*		
97	—	189

B.		B. & M.
§ *20.*		
98	—	190
	4—	191
	n. 2—	192
§ *21.*		
99	—	193
	4—	197
	III. —	198
100	e. 1—	194
§ *22.*		
101	I. —	199
	II. —	200
§ *24.*		
102	—	201
103	—	202
104	1—	203
	5—	204
	6—	205
105	—	206
106	—	207
	7—	208
	8—	209
107	—	210
	10—	211
	11—	209
§ *25.*		
108	—	214
109	—	214
110	—	215
111	—	215
112	1—	216
	2—	217
	ex.	218
§ *26.*		
113	—	219
	1—	220
	2—	222
	n.	219
	3—	221
	4—	222
	5—	223
	6—	224
	n.	224
	7—	224
	8—	225
	9—	226, 7

B.		B. & M.
113	10—	228
	11—	229
§ *27.*		
114	1—	560 ff.
	2—	540 ff.
	3—	555 ff.
§ *28.*		
115	—	230
116	—	230
117	—	231, 2
118	1—	230
	2—	1014
	n. 1—	1015
	1st	1018
	ex.	1021-6
	2d	1035
	n.	1039
	3d	1028 ff.
	4—	233
	5—	1019
§ *29.*		
119	—	230
120	—	230
§ *30.*		
121	—	236
	ob. 2—	236
	ob. 3—	237
§ *31.*		
122	—	239
	1—	239
	n.	241
	2—	239
	3—	243
	4—	243
123	1—	1029
	2—	1030
	a	1032
	b	1038
	c	1034
	3—	241
	4—	242
§ *32.*		
124	—	243

B.		B. & M.
§ *33.*		
125	—	245
	ob. 1—	245
	ob. 2—	253
§ *34.*		
126	—	246
127	1—	249
	2—	249
	n.	720
	3—	247
	3—	247
	4—	248
§ *35.*		
128	—	249 ff.
§ *36.*		
129	—	248
§ *37.*		
130	—	251 ff.
131	—	251 ff.
	ob. 1—	252-4
	3—	251
	ob. 2—	255
§ *38.*		
132	—	258
	1—	259
§ *39.*		
133	1—	271
	2—	410
	3—	304
	5—	434
	6—	451
	8—	584
	9—	588
	10—	589
§ *40.*		
134	—	260
§ *41.*		
135	—	261
	2—	263
136	1—	1073
	2—	253
	3—	305

B.	B. & M.
§ 42.	
137	— 264
138	— 264
139	— 264 I
140	—1261
141	—1273-6
142	— 264 II
	1st 1265
	2d 1205
	3d 1200
143	—1178
144	—1193
145	—1161
149	—234 III
150	—1198
151	—1111 ff.
152	—264 IV
§ 43.	
153	— 266
154	— 266
155	— 266
§ 44.	
156	— 266
157	—1080
	1—1081
	3—1082
	4—1083
	5—1084
	6—1085
158	—1086
159	—1087
160	—1087
	1—1088
	2—1083
	3—1088
	4—1274
	5—1086
162	—1092
163	—1093
164	—1093
	1—1097
	3—1094
	4—1273
	5— 327
165	—1096
166	1—1272
	2— 327
167	—1090
	1—1091

B.	B. & M.
167	2—1355
	3—1086
168	—1098
	2—1099
	3—1197
	4— 327
§ 45.	
169	—1162
170	1—1172
171	1—1193
	2—1277
	3—1180
172	1—1267
	3—1230 ff.
	4—1244
173	1—1179
	4—1282
174	—1291
	2—1246
§ 46.	
175	—1111
§ 47.	
176	—1126
178	—1138
179	—1135
	1—1127
	2—1128
	3—1129
	4— 278
	6— 281-4
	7— 330
	8— 306
	9—1133
	11— 286
180	—.287
§ 48.	
181	1— 270
	2— 333
	3—1013
	4— 646
	5— 683
	6— 265
§ 49.	
182	1—1343
	5—1343
	6—1305

B.	B. & M.
182	7—1319
	8—1344
	n. 3 1304
	12— 306
	13—1346
	14—1345
§ 50.	
183	1—1319
	2—1360 ff.
§ 51.	
184	1— 271
	2— 271
	3— 271
	ex. 334
	4— 276
185	I. 281
	II. 333
	III. 337
	IV. 339
	V. 337-9
§ 53.	
186	1— 281
	2— 338
	3— 340
	4— 340
§ 54.	
187	ob. 1 279
	ob. 3 280
§ 55.	
188	— 280
§ 56.	
189	— 282
§ 57.	
190	— 284
§ 58.	
191	— 283
§ 59.	
192	— 285

B.	B. & M.
§ 60.	
193	— 288
§ 61.	
194	— 290
§ 62.	
195	— 289
§ 63.	
196	— 291
§ 64.	
197	— 292
198	— 296
§ 65.	
199	— 298
§ 66.	
200	— 293
201	— 297
§ 67.	
202	— 299
§ 68.	
203	— 300
§ 69.	
204	— 302
§ 70.	
205	— 301
§ 71.	
206	— 303
§ 72.	
207	— 304
§ 73.	
208	— 307
§ 74.	
209	— 308
§ 75.	
210	— 309

B.		B. & M.
§ 76.		
211	—	310
§ 77.		
212	—	311
§ 78.		
213	—	312
§ 79.		
214	1—	315
	1st	315
	2d	317
	2—	321
	3—	322
	4—	323
	5—	325
	6—	335
	7—	327
	8—	328
	9—	329
	10—	330
	11—	555
§ 80.		
215	—	363
	1—	
	2—	347
	3—	364
	5—	
	1st	604
	3d	605
	3d	614
	5th	606
	6th	615
	7th	607
	8th	608
	9th	610
	10th	615
	11th	612
	12th	613
§ 81.		
216	—	372–5
217	—	376–85
218	—	386–99
219	—	400–9
§ 82.		
220	2d	383
	3d	399
	4th	409
§ 83.		
221	—	410
	1—	411
	2—	412
	3—	413
	4—	417
	5—	418
	6—	419
	7—	422
	ob. 1	424
	8—	426
	ob. 2	428
	ob. 3	429
	9—	431
§ 84.		
222	—	434
	ob. 1—	435
	ob. 2—	436
	2—	437
	3—	440
	4—	441
	5—	442
	(1)—	443
	(2)—	444
	(3)—	445
	(4)—	446
	(5)—	447
	(6)—	448
	(7)—	449
	6—	326
§ 85.		
223	1—	451
	2—	452
	3—	453
	4—	454
	5—	456
	6—	457
	7—	458
§ 86.		
224	—	459
§ 87.		
225	1—	374, 2
	2—	372, 2
	4—	380, 2
§ 88.		
226	—	582
227	1—	584
	ob. 1—	586
	ob. 2—	585
	2—	588
	ob. 4—	395
	3—	589
	4—	590
	5—	587
§ 89.		
228	—	460
230	—	461
231	—	600
232	1—	591
	2—	595, 6
	3—	597, 8
233	—	462
234	—	463
§ 90.		
235	—	468
	1—	469
	2—	470
	3—	471
236	1—	472
	2—	473
	3—	474
	6—	475
§ 91.		
237	—	476
238	1—	477
	2—	478
	3—	479
	4—	480
	5—	481
	6—	482
	7—	483
	8—	484
	9—	485
239	—	486
	ob.—	487
§ 92.		
240	—	506
§ 93.		
241	—	488
242	—	489
	1—	490
	2—	491
242	3—	500
	4—	492
	5—	493
	6—	494
	7—	496
	8—	497
	ob. 1—	504
	ob. 2—	505
§ 94.		
243	—	616
§ 95.		
244	—	617
§ 96.		
247	—	618
248	—	619
249	—	620
250	—	621
§ 97.		
251	—	622
252	—	623
254	—	626
255	—	627
256	—	628
257	—	629
258	—	630
260	—	631
261	—	632
262	—	935
§ 98.		
263	—	650
264	—	651
265	—	652
266	—	653
267	—	654
268	—	656
	n. 1—	657
269	—	658
270	—	659
271	—	660
272	—	661
273	—	662
274	—	663
275	—	664
276	—	665
277	—	1052
278	—	678

B.		B. & M.
279	—	679
280	—	680
281	—	681
282	—	682
283	—	628

§ *99.*

B.		B. & M.
284	—	683
285	—	684
286	—	685
	1—	686
	2—	687
	3—	688
	4—	689
	n.—	690
287	a—	692
	b—	693
288	—	694
289	—	695
290	—	696
291	—	697
292	—	698
293	—	699
294	—	700
295	—	701
296	—	702
297	—	703
298	—	704
299	—	705
300	—	706
	n. 1—	707
301	—	708

§ *100.*

B.		B. & M.
302	—	633

§ *101.*

B.		B. & M.
303	—	634
304	—	635
305	—	636
306	—	637
307	—	638
308	—	639
309	—	640
310	—	641
311	—	642

§ *102.*

B.		B. & M.
312	—	643
313	—	644
314	—	645
315	—	646
316	—	648
317	—	649

§ *103.*

B.		B. & M.
319	—	666
320	—	667
321	—	668
	a—	669
	b—	670
322	—	671
323	—	672
324	—	673
325	—	675
326	—	674
327	—	676
328	—	677

§ *104.*

B.		B. & M.
329	—	709
330	—	710

§ *105.*

B.		B. & M.
331	—	744

§ *106.*

B.		B. & M.
332	—	751
333	—	752
334	—	753
335	—	754
336	—	755
337	—	756
339	—	757
340	—	758
341	—	759
343	—	860
344	—	761
345	—	762
347	—	763
348	—	764

§ *107.*

B.		B. & M.
349	—	765
350	—	766
351	—	767
352	—	768
353	—	769
354	—	770
355	—	771
356	—	772
358	—	773
359	—	774
360	—	775
361	—	776
362	—	777
363	—	778

§ *108.*

B.		B. & M.
364	—	780
365	—	780
366	—	781
367	—	782
369	—	783
370	—	784
371	—	785
372	—	786
373	—	788
374	—	789
375	—	790
376	—	791

§ *109.*

B.		B. & M.
377	1—	814
	3—	838

§ *110.*

B.		B. & M.
378	—	870
379	—	871
380	—	871

§ *111.*

B.		B. & M.
382	—	860
383	—	861
384	—	862
385	—	863
386	—	865
387	—	866
388	—	867
389	—	868
390	—	869

§ *112.*

B.		B. & M.
391	—	818
392	—	819
393	—	820
394	—	821
395	—	822
396	n.—	823
397	—	824
398	—	825
399	—	826
400	—	828
401	—	829
402	—	830
403	—	831
404	—	832
405	—	833
406	—	835
407	—	836
408	—	837

§ *113.*

B.		B. & M.
409	—	840
410	—	841
412	—	842
413	—	843
415	—	809
416	—	809
417	—	810
418	—	813
419	—	805
420	—	806
421	—	807
422	—	808
423	—	740
424	—	741
425	—	742
426	—	743

§ *114.*

B.		B. & M.
427	—	848
428	—	849
429	—	850
430	—	851
431	—	852
432	—	853

§ *115.*

B.		B. & M.
435	—	711

§ *116.*

B.		B. & M.
436	—	712
437	—	712
438	—	713
439	—	714
440	—	715
441	—	716
442	—	717
443	—	718
444	—	720
445	—	721
	n. 2—	722
446	—	723

B.	B. & M.
447	— 724

§ 117.

B.	B. & M.
448	— 973
449	— 975
450	— 976
451	— 977
453	— 979
454	— 980

§ 118.

B.	B. & M.
455	— 872
456	— 923
457	— 924
458	— 925
459	— 926
460	— 927
461	— 928

§ 119.

B.	B. & M.
462	— 918, 9
463	—917–20
464	— 921
465	— 922

§ 120.

B.	B. & M.
466	— 894
467	— 895
468	— 896
469	— 897
n. 1	— 898
470	— 899
471	— 900
472	— 901
473	— 902
474	— 903
475	— 904
478	— 905
479	— 906

§ 121.

B.	B. & M.
480	— 907
481	— 908
482	— 909
483	— 910
484	— 880
486	— 882
487	— 823

§ 122.

B.	B. & M.
488	— 792
489	— 793
490	— 794
491	— 795
492	— 796
493	— 797
494	— 798
495	— 799
496	— 800
497	— 801
498	— 802
499	— 804
500	— 803

§ 123.

B.	B. & M.
501	— 855
502	— 856
503	— 857
504	— 858
505	— 859
507	— 947

§ 124.

B.	B. & M.
508	— 734
509	— 735
510	— 736
511	— 737
512	— 738
513	— 739

§ 125.

B.	B. & M.
514	— 911
515	— 912
516	— 913
518	— 915

§ 126.

B.	B. & M.
519	—1075
520	—1075
521	—1075
522	—1075
523	—1075
524	—1075
525	—1075
526	— 732
528	— 844
529	— 878
530	—1074
531	— 847
532	— 940

§ 128.

B.	B. & M.
535	— 889
536	— 890
538	— 891
539	— 892
540	— 893

§ 129.

B.	B. & M.
542	— 873
543	— 874
544	— 875
545	— 876
546	— 877

§ 130.

B.	B. & M.
547	— 931
548	— 932
549	— 933
550	— 935
551	— 936
552	— 936
553	— 938
554	— 938
555	— 939
556	— 941
557	— 942
558	— 943
559	— 944
560	— 945
561	— 946
562	— 947
564	— 948

§ 131.

B.	B. & M.
565	— 949
566	— 951
567	— 952
568	— 953
569	— 954
570	— 955
571	— 956
572	— 957

§ 132.

B.	B. & M.
573	— 958
574	— 959
575	— 960
576	— 961
577	— 962
578	— 963
579	— 929
580	— 980

§ 133.

B.	B. & M.
581	— 884
582	— 799
584	— 886

§ 134.

B.	B. & M.
585	— 996
586	— 997
587	— 997
588	— 998
589	— 999
590	—1000
591	1—1001
	2—1002
	3—1003
	4—1004

§ 135.

B.	B. & M.
592	—1005
593	—1006
594	—1007
595	—1008
596	—1009
597	—1010
598	—1011
599	—1012
600	— 870

§ 136.

B.	B. & M.
602	— 981
603	— 982
604	— 982
605	— 984
606	— 985
607	— 987
608	— 988
609	— 989
610	— 991
611	— 992
613	— 993
614	— 993
615	— 994
616	— 995

§ 137.

B.	B. & M.
618	—1163
619	—1164
620	—1172
621	—1167

B.	B. & M.
623	—1173
§ *138.*	
624	1—1079
	2—1261
	3—1275
	4—1274
	5—1279
§ *139.*	
625	1—1178
	2—1193
	3—1180
	4—1265, 7
626	—1174
§ *140.*	
627	—1205
	1-1205, 18
	1st 1220
	2d 1207
	3d 1208
	4th 1222
	2-1265-79
	3—1282
	4-1238-41
	5—1182
	n.—1186
628	—1189
629	—1237
630	—1247
631	—1244
632	—1204
633	—1215
634	—1291
§ *141.*	
636	—1227
637	—1227
638	—1229
639	—1229
641	—1226
642	—1212
643	1—1226
	2—1221
	3—1220
	4—1212
645	—1251
646	—1250
647	—1253
648	—1290

B.	B. & M.
650	—1291
651	—1295
652	—1296
653	—1296 F
654	—1296 I
655	—1255
	n.—1257
656	—1291
§ *142.*	
657	1—1110
	2—1113
	3—1114
§ *143.*	
658	—1118
§ *144.*	
659	1—1119
	3—1121
	4—1122
	5—1119
	7—1123
	8—1125
660	—1147
663	—1148
664	—1149
665	—1138
666	—1142
667	—1150
668	n. 2-1132
	n. 3-1131
669	—1137
§ *145.*	
670	—1135
	n.—1138
671	—1136
672	—1136
673	—1136
675	—1145
676	—1155
	n.—1158
677	—1153
	1—1209
	2—1223
	3—1208
	n.—1202
	4—1222
	5—1204
	6—1258

B.	B. & M.
677	7—1154
678	—1133
679	—1159
680	—1137
§ *146.*	
681	—1343
682	—1343
683	—1358
684	—1357
685	—1355
686	—1315
687	—1314
	n.—1304
688	—1350
689	—1348
690	—1349
691	— 966
692	— 967
693	—1344
	n.— 969
694	—1351
695	— 972
696	— 971
§ *147.*	
698	—1319
699	—1307
700	—1305
702	—1327
703	—1332
704	—1337
705	—1340
706	—1331
707	—1322
708	—1324
709	—1329
710	—1325
711	—1330
§ *148.*	
712	—1360
713	—1361
714	—1363
715	—1214
716	—1365
717	—1367
718	—1368
§ *149.*	
720	—1369

B.	B. & M.
721	—1370
722	—1371
723	—1372
724	—1373
725	—1373
726	—1374
727	—1375
728	—1376
729	—1376
§ *150.*	
730	—1377
731	—1378
732	—1379
733	—1380
734	—1381
735	—1382
736	—1383
§ *151.*	
737	—1384
738	—1385
739	—1386
740	—1387
741	—1388
742	—1389
743	—1390
744	—1391
745	—1392
746	—1393
747	—1394
748	—1395
749	—1396
750	—1357
751	—1398
§ *152.*	
753	—1399
754	—1400
755	—1401
756	—1402
757	—1403
758	—1404
759	—1405
760	—1406
761	—1407
762	—1408
763	—1409
764	—1410
765	—1411
766	—1412

B.	B. & M.
767	—1413
768	—1414
769	—1415
770	—1416
771	—1417
772	—1417
773	—1418
§ *153*.	
774	—1419
775	—1420
§ *154*.	
776	—1421
777	—1422
§ *155*.	
778	—1423
779	—1424
780	—1425
781	—1426
782	—1426
783	—1427
784	—1428
785	—1428
786	—1428
787	—1429
788	—1430
789	—1431
§ *156*.	
790	—1432
791	—1433
792	—1434
793	—1435
794	—1436
795	—1437
796	—1438
797	—1439
798	—1440
799	—1441
§ *157*.	
800	—1442
801	—1443
802	—1444
803	—1445
804	—1446

B.	B. & M.
805	—1447
806	—1448
807	—1449
808	—1450
809	—1451
810	—1452
811	—1453
812	—1454
§ *158*.	
813	—1455
814	—1456
815	—1457
§ *159*.	
816	1—1460
	2—1461
	3—1462
	4—1463
	5—1464
	6—1465, 6
	7—1467
	8—1468
	9—1469
817	3—1470
§ *160*.	
818	—1471
819	—1472
820	—1472
821	—1473
822	1—1474
	2—1475
	3—1476
	5—1477
823	—1478
824	—1479
825	—1480
826	—1481
827	—1481
828	—1482
829	—1483
830	—1484
831	—1485
832	—1486
§ *161*.	
833	—1487

B.	B. & M.
834	—1488
835	—1488
836	—1489
837	—1490
838	—1491
839	—1492
840	—1493
841	—1494
842	—1495
843	—1496
844	—1497
845	—1497
846	—1498
§ *162*.	
847	—1499
848	—1500
849	—1501
850	—1502
851	—1503
852	—1504
853	—1505
854	—1506
§ *163*.	
855	—1507
856	—1508
857	—1509
858	—1510
§ *164*.	
859	—1511
860	—1512
861	—1513
862	—1514
863	—1515
864	—1516
§ *165*.	
865	—1517
§ *166*.	
866	—1518
867	—1519
§ *167*.	
868	—1520

B.	B. & M.
869	—1521
870	—1521
871	—1522
§ *169*.	
872	—1523
873	—1524
874	—1525
875	—1526
876	—1527
877	—1528
878	—1529
879	—1530
880	—1531
881	—1532
882	—1533
883	—1534
884	—1535
885	—1536
886	—1537
887	—1538
888	—1539
889	—1540
890	—1541
891	—1542
892	—1543
893	—1544
894	—1545
895	—1546
896	—1547
897	—1548
898	—1549
899	—1550
900	—1551
901	—1552
902	—1553
903	—1554
904	—1555
905	—1556
906	—1557
907	—1558
908	—1559
909	—1560
910	—1561
911	—1562
912	—1563
913	—1564
914	—1565

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1.—LATIN GRAMMAR teaches the art of speaking, reading, or writing the Latin language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts; namely, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

2.—ORTHOGRAPHY treats of letters, and the mode of combining them into syllables and words.

LETTERS.

3. The Latin Alphabet consists of twenty-five letters, the same as those of the English Alphabet, but without the *w*.

Letters are either *Vowels* or *Consonants*.

The ***Vowels*** are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. Of these *y* is found only in words of Greek origin.

4. In regard to the strength or lightness of their sound, the strictly Latin vowels should be arranged thus: *i*, *e*, *a*, *o*, *u*. In order to perceive this, they should be sounded as they are in Italian, or according to the so-called Continental method, spoken of in 14.

5. The union of two vowels in one sound is called a *Diphthong*. Of these we have in Latin *ae* (æ), *oe* (œ), *au*, and in a few words *eu*, *ei*, *ui*, *yi*.

After *g* and *q*, and sometimes after *s*, *u* before another vowel in the

same syllable, does not form another diphthong with it, but is to be regarded as an appendage of the preceding consonant, having nearly the force of *w*, as in the English words, *linguist*, *quick*, *persuade;* thus, *lingua*, *sanguis*, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, *quum*, *suādeo*, are pronounced as if written *lingwa*, *sangwis*, *kwi*, *kwæ*, *kwod*, *kwum*, *swādeo*. So also after *c* and *h* in *cui* and *huic*, pronounced in one syllable, as if written *cwi* or *kwi*, and *hwic*.

Two vowels standing together in different syllables, pronounced in quick succession, resemble the diphthong in sound, and, among the poets, are often run together into one syllable; thus *de-in*, *de-inde*, *pro-inde*, etc., in two and three syllables, are pronounced in one and two, *dein*, *deinde*, *proinde*, etc.

6. The ***Consonants*** may be arranged as in the following scheme, which places them in order according to the vocal organ which is mainly instrumental in forming them:

	Mutes.			*Liquids.*	*Spirants*	*Double.*
	hard. tenuēs.	soft. mediae.	aspirate. aspirātae.			
Palatals or *Gutturals.*	c, k, q.	g.	ch.		h, j.	x.
Labials	p.	b.	ph, f.	m.	v.	
Linguals or *Dentals.*	t.	d.	th.	l, n, r.	s.	z.

7. The ***Mutes*** are those consonants which are formed by the most active interference with the passage of air on the part of the vocal organs. They are so called because the passage of air is stopped or interrupted.

The ***Liquids*** are so called because of their fluency, or the ease with which they combine with other consonants.

The ***Spirants*** (or breathed letters) form an intermediate class between vowels and consonants. In accordance with this we find that tho Romans used only one character (*i*) to represent both *i* and *j*, and one (*u*) to represent both *u* and *v*.

The ***Double Consonant*** *x* is formed by the union of *c* or *g* with *s*. Z is formed of *t* or *d* and *s*, but is found only in words of Greek origin.

The ***Aspirates*** *ch*, *ph*, *th*, are found for the most part in Greek or other foreign words. But few Latin words contain them—*brăchium*, *inchoo*, *triumphus*, *Cethēgus*.

K is used only in a few words before *a*: as, *kalendae*, *Karthāgo*, *Kaeso*, and is often in these represented by *c*.

MARKS AND CHARACTERS.

8. The marks and characters used in Latin Grammar, or in writing Latin, are the following:

˘ Placed over a vowel, shows it to be short.

¯ Placed over a vowel, shows it to be long.

˘ Placed over a vowel, shows it to be short or long.

¨ Is called *Diæresis*, and shows that the vowel over which it is placed does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel, but belongs to a different syllable; as *āër*, pronounced *ā-ĕr*.

^ The *circumflex* shows that the syllable over which it stands has been contracted, and is consequently long, as *nuntiârunt* for *nuntiāvĕrunt*, *dīmicâssent* for *dīmicāvissent*, (15, 5th); or that the vowel over which it is placed has its long open sound; as, *pennâ*.

\` The grave accent is sometimes placed over particles and adverbs, to distinguish them from other words consisting of the same letters; as, *quòd*, a conjunction, "that," to distinguish it from *quod*, a relative, "which."

´ The acute accent is used to mark the accented syllable of a word; as, *túba*, *dom'inus*.

'· *Apostrophe* is written over the place of a vowel cut off from the end of a word; as, *mĕn'* for *mĕne.* 15, 6th.

PUNCTUATION.

9. The different divisions of a sentence are marked by certain characters called *Points.*

The modern punctuation in Latin is the same as in English. The marks employed are the *Comma* (,); *Semicolon* (;); *Colon* (:); *Period* (.); *Interrogation* (?); *Exclamation* (!).

The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients, was a point (.), which denoted pauses of a different length, according as it stood at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line—that at the top denoting the shortest, and that at the bottom the longest pause.

PRONUNCIATION.

10. In the United States, two systems of the pronunciation of Latin are prevalent, which are generally known as the English and the Continental methods. It is probable that neither of these represents the ancient pronunciation of the language, though it is believed that this has been ascertained with a considerable degree of exactness. As some teachers prefer to adopt the English, and others the Continental system, it is necessary to make a few remarks on each.

The English System.

11.—The fundamental principle of this method of pronunciation is that every Latin word is to be pronounced as the same combination of letters would be sounded if it were

an English word. It must, however, be remembered that there are no silent letters in Latin, and therefore, for example, *monēre* must be pronounced as of three syllables, *mon-ē-re*, and not as of two.

Though it is believed that the above rule is sufficient for all practical purposes, it may be well to add a few observations on the

DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

12.—A SYLLABLE is a distinct sound forming the whole of a word, or so much of it as can be sounded at once.

Every word has as many syllables as it has distinct vowel sounds.

A word of one syllable is called a *Monosyllable.*
A word of two syllables is called a *Dissyllable.*
A word of three syllables is called a *Trisyllable.*
A word of many syllables is called a *Polysyllable.*

In a word of many syllables, the last is called the *final* syllable; the one next the last is called the *penult*, and the syllable preceding that is called the *antepenult.*

13.—In Latin, every word has as many syllables as there are separate vowels or diphthongs. Hence the following

RULES.

1. Two vowels coming together, and not forming a diphthong, must be divided; as, *De'-us*, *su'-us*, *au'-re-us.*

2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid (*l*, *r*) (6, 7) between the last two vowels of a word, or between any two unaccented vowels, are joined to the last; as, *pa'*-TER, *al'-a*-CER, *al'-a*-CRIS, *tol''-e*-RĀ-*bil'-i-us*, *per'''-e*-GRĪ-*nā''-ti-ō'-nis.*

Exc. But *tib-i* and *sib-i* join it to the first.

3. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid *before* an accented vowel, are joined to that vowel, and so also is a single consonant *after* it, except in the penult; as, *i*-TIN'-*e-ra*, HOM'-*i-nēs.*

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after *a*, *e*, *o*, accented, and followed by *e* or *i* before a vowel, are joined to the latter; as, *só*-CI-*us*, *rá*-DI-*us*, *dó*-CE-*o*, *pá*-TRI-*us.*

Exc. 2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid after *u*, accented, must be joined to the following vowel; as, *mú*-LI-*er*, *tū'*-TI-*or*, *lú*-BRI-*cus*.

4. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid coming before or after an accented vowel, and also a mute and a liquid after an accented vowel (the penult and the exceptions to Rule 3 excepted), must be divided; as, *tem-por'-i-bus*, *lec'-tum*, *tem'-po-rum*, *met'-ri-cus*.

Also *gl*, *tl*, and often *cl*, after the penultimate vowel, or before the vowel of an accented syllable; as, *At'-las*, *At lan'-ti-des*, *ec-lec'-ta*.

5. If three consonants come between the vowels of any two syllables, the last two, if a mute and a liquid, are joined to the latter vowel; as, *con'-trā*, *am''-pli-ā'-vit;* otherwise, the last only; as, *comp'-tus*, *re-demp'-tor*.

6. A compound word is resolved into its constituent parts, if the first part ends with a consonant; as, AB-*es'-se*, SUB'-*i-it*, IN-*i'-tur*, CIRCUM'-*a-go*. But if the first part ends with a vowel, it is divided like a simple word; as, DE*f'-e-ro*, DI*l'-i-go*, PRÆ*s'-to*..

The Continental System.

14.—The so-called Continental method of pronunciation of Latin is greatly preferable to the English, both because it harmonizes better with the quantity of the language, as settled by the rules of Prosody, and because, by giving one simple sound to each vowel, distinguishing the short and the long only by the duration of sounds, it is much more simple. The sound of the vowels, as pronounced alone or at the end of a syllable, is exhibited in the following—

Table of Vowel and Diphthongal Sounds.

Short ă sounds	like	a	in Jehovah,	as ămăt.
Long ā	like	a	in father,	as fāma.
Short ĕ	like	e	in met,	as pĕtĕrĕ.
Long ē	like	ey	in they,	as docēre.
Short ĭ	like	i	in uniform,	as ūnĭtas.
Long ī	like	i	in machine,	as amīcus.
Short ŏ	like	o	in polite,	as indŏles.
Long ō	like	o	in go,	as pōno.
Short ŭ	like	u	in popular,	as popŭlus.

Long ū sounds	like	u	in rule, or pure,	as ūsū.
ae or æ oe or œ	like	ey	in they,	as Pæān. Phœbus
au	like	ou	in our,	as aurum.
eu	like	eu	in feud,	as eurus.
ei	like	i	in ice,	as hei.

Observations.

1. The sound of the vowels *a* and *e* remains unchanged in all situations.

2. The sound of *i*, *o*, and *u*, is slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, and is the same whether the syllable is long or short. Thus modified,

i sounds	like	i	in sit,	as mĭttĭt.
o	like	o	in not,.	as pŏterat, forma.
u	like	u	in tub,	as frūctŭs.

Note.—For the sound of *u*, before another vowel, after *g*, *q*, and sometimes *s*, etc., see 5.

3. The consonants are pronounced generally as in the English language. *C* and *g* are hard, as in the words *cat*, and *got*, before *a*, *o*, and *u*; and *c* is soft like *s*, and *g*, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ*.

4. *T* and *c*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* short, followed by a vowel, usually have the sound of *sh*; as in *nuntius* or *nuncius*, *patientia*, *socius*; pronounced *nunshius*, *pashienshia*, *soshius*. But *t* has not the sound of *sh* before ī long, as *tōtīus*; nor in such Greek words as *Miltiadēs*, *Bœōtia*, *Ægyptius*; nor when it is preceded by another *t*, or *s*, or *x*; as *Bruttiī*, *ostium*, *mixtio*, etc.; nor, lastly, when *ti* is followed by the termination of the old infinitive passive in *er*, as in *nītier*, *quatier*.

Note.—The soft sound of *c* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ*, adopted by all European nations, is evidently a deviation from the ancient pronunciation, according to which *c* was sounded hard, like *k*, or the Greek κ, in all situations. *Ti* sounding *shi* is a similar corruption, chiefly English, which it might perhaps be well to change by giving *ti* the same sound in all situations; as, *arti*, *arti-um*, *arti-bus*.

5. *S* has always the sharp sound like *ss*, and never the soft sound like *z*; or like *s* in *as*, *peas*, *dose*, etc.; thus, *nōs*, *dominōs*, *rūpēs*, not *nose*, *dominose*, *rūpese*.

FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

15.—A FIGURE of speech is a deviation from the ordinary mode of writing words, or of their construction.

The Figures which affect the orthography of words, are as follows:

1st. ***Pros'thesis*** prefixes a letter or syllable to a word; as, *tetulit* for *tulit*.

2d. ***Epen'thesis*** inserts a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; *Timōlus* for *Tmolus*.

3d. ***Par'ago'ge*** adds a letter or syllable at the end of a word; as, *amārier* for *amārī*, etc.

4th. ***Aphær'esis*** cuts off a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *brevis't* or *brevist* for *brevis est*; *cōnia* for *cicōnia*.

5th. ***Syn'cope*** takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word; as, *ōrāclum* for *ōrāculum*; *amārim* for *amāverim*; *deûm* for *deōrum*.

6th. ***Apoc'ope*** takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word; as *mēn'* for *mēne*; *dīc* for *dīce*; *volup* for *volupe*.

7th. ***Antith'esis*** substitutes one letter for another; as, *illī* for *ollī*, *vull*, *vultis*, for *volt*, *voltis*, contractions for *volit*, *volitis*.

8th. ***Metath'esis*** changes the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris* for *pristis*.

9th. ***Tme'sis*** separates the parts of a compound word by inserting another word between them; as, *quæ mē cumque vocant terræ*, for *quæcumque mē*, etc.

QUANTITY AND ACCENT.

16.—QUANTITY is the measure of a syllable in respect of the time required in pronouncing it.

In respect of quantity, a syllable is either ***long*** or ***short***; and a long syllable is considered equal to two short ones.

GENERAL RULES.

Note.—In this book ***only the long vowels will be marked***; if a vowel have no mark over it, it is to be pronounced short.

17.—A syllable is counted ***long,***

(1) if its vowel sound is a diphthong, as *ǖrum, pōena.*

(2) if its vowel sound is followed by a double consonant (*x, z*), by *j*, or by any two consonants except a mute followed by *l* or *r*, as *cōnsul, pēnna, trāxit, mājor.*

18.—A syllable is counted ***short*** if its vowel sound is followed by another vowel; as, *vi-a, de-us, vi-ae.*

19.—A syllable is counted ***common,*** *i. e.* either long or short, if its vowel sound, being naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r;* as, *cerēbrum* or *cerebrum.*

[For special rules on this subject, see Prosody.]

20.—Accent is a special stress or force of voice on a particular syllable of a word, by which that syllable is distinguished from the rest.

Every word of more than one syllable has an accent; as, *Déus, hómo, dom'inus, tolcrā'bilis.*

The last syllable of a word never has the accent. In a word of two syllables, the accent is always on the first. In a word of three or more syllables, if the penult is long, the accent is on the penult; as, *sermō'nis, amā-rē'mus;* but if the penult is short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *fácilis, dū'cere, péctoris, pectóribus.* But contracted genitives and vocatives in ī (for *iī, ie*) have, according to Gellius, the accent always on the penult: *Virgílī, ingénī.*

21.—An enclitic syllable (*que, ve, ne,* etc.), being considered, in pronunciation, part of the word to which it is annexed, generally changes the place of the accent by increasing the number of syllables; as, *vírum, virúmque;* or adds another accent on the last syllable; as, *dóminus, dóminúsve.*

22.—A word of one syllable is properly without an accent; but if an enclitic is annexed, it becomes a dissyllable, and takes the accent on the first syllable; as, *tū, tū'ne.*

23.—In English, an accented syllable is always long, or rather the accent makes it long; but in Latin, the accent makes no change in the quantity of its syllable, and, except in the penult, is as often on a short as on a long syllable; as, *fácilēs, pétere, vírum.*

In reading Latin, it is important, as much as possible, to distinguish accent from quantity—a matter not without difficulty to those accustomed

to a language in which accent and quantity always coincide. It should be remembered that in Latin, the accent does not make a syllable long as in English, neither does the want of it make the syllable short. *Hominēs*, for example, should not be pronounced *hŏ'minēs*; and care should be taken to distinguish in reading the verbs *lĕgo* and *lē'go*;—the noun *pŏ́pulus* (the people) from *pō'pulus* (a poplar);—or the verbs *fŭ́ris*, *lĕ́gis*, *rĕ́gis*, from the genitives *fū'ris*, *lē'gis*, *rē'gis*. The accented short syllable should be pronounced with greater force of voice, but be preserved short still; and the long syllable, whether accented or not, should be made long.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

24.—Etymology treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivations.

WORDS.

25.—1. In respect of *Formation*, words are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*; *Simple* or *Compound*.

A ***Primitive*** word is one that comes from no other in the same language; as, *puer*, boy; *bonus*, good; *pater*, father.

A ***Derivative*** word is one that is derived from another word; as, *pueritia*, boyhood; *bonitās*, goodness; *paternus*, fatherly.

A ***Simple*** word is one that is not combined with any other word; as, *pius*, pious; *doceo*, I teach; *verto*, I turn.

A ***Compound*** word is one made up of two or more simple words; as, *impius*, impious; *dēdoceo*, I unteach; *animadverto*, I observe.

2. In respect of *Form*, words are either *Declinable* or *Indeclinable*.

A *Declinable* word is one which undergoes certain changes of *form*, to express the different relations of gender, number, case, etc., usually termed, in Grammar, *Accidents*.

An *Indeclinable* word is one that undergoes no change of form.

3. In respect of *Signification* and *Use*, words are divided into different classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH

26. The Parts of Speech in the Latin language are eight, viz.:

1. *Noun* or *Substantive*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, declined.

2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, *Interjection*, undeclined.

Note.—The word Substantive is used in a comprehensive sense to mean a noun, or a pronoun, phrase or clause of sentence used as a noun. (189, 616, 710.

THE NOUN.

27.—A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *Cicero*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *homo*, man; *liber*, book.

Nouns are of two kinds, *Proper* and *Common*.

28.—A ***Proper Noun*** is the name applied to an individual only; as, *Cicero*, Cicero; *Aprīlis*, April; *Rōma*, Rome.

Obs. A proper noun applied to more than one, becomes a common noun; as, *duodecim Cæsarēs*, the twelve Cæsars.

29.— A ***Common Noun*** is the name applied to all things of the same sort, or of the same class; as, *vir*, a man; *domus*, a house; *liber*, a book.

Note.—A Proper Noun is the name of an *individual* only, and is used to distinguish that individual from all others of the same class. A Common Noun is the name of a *class* of objects, and is equally applicable to all the individuals contained in it.

30.—Under this class may be ranged,

1. ***Collective Nouns,*** or nouns of multitude, which signify one

thing which contains many individuals; as, *populus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. ***Abstract Nouns,*** which designate qualities; as, *bonitās*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness.

3. ***Material Nouns,*** which designate materials; as, *aurum*, gold; *aes*, copper.

ACCIDENTS OF NOUNS.

To Latin nouns belong *Person*, *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case*.

1. Person.

31.—Person, in Grammar, is the distinction of nouns as used in discourse, to denote the speaker, the person or thing addressed, or the person or thing spoken of. Hence,

There are three Persons, called *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

2. Gender.

32.—Gender means the distinction of nouns with regard to Sex.

There are three Genders, the ***Masculine,*** the ***Feminine,*** and the ***Neuter.***

Of some nouns, the gender is determined by their *signification*;—of others, by their *termination*.

GENERAL RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS, ACCORDING TO SIGNIFICATION.

33.—I. ***Masculine.***

(1) Names of *male animals: vir*, man; *poēta*, poet; *ariēs*, ram.

(2) Names of *rivers*, *winds*, *months: Tiberis*, the Tiber; *notus*, the south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

34.—II. ***Feminine.***

(1) Names of *female animals: soror*, sister; *leæna*, lioness.

(2) Names of *trees*, and many names of *countries*, *islands*, and *towns: mālus*, apple tree; *Ēpīrus*, Epirus; *Dēlos*, Delos; *Rōma*, Rome.

35.—III. ***Neuter.***

(1) All *indeclinable nouns: fās*, right; *gummi*, gum.

(2) The *infinitive mood: scīre tuum*, your knowledge.

(3) All words used merely to designate their own sound (*māteriāliter*): *hoc ipsum diū*, this very word "diū," *arx est monosyllabum*, "arx" is a monosyllable.

GENDER OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO TERMINATION.

But in most cases the gender of nouns is determined by the endings of their declensions (or of their stems); and these sometimes cause a deviation from the above rules. (53, 71, 137, 146, 151.) For example:

36.—(1). These names of rivers are ***feminine*** by their ending: *Allia, Albula, Dūria, Lēthē, Mātrona, Styx*; and some of barbarous origin ending in *r* are ***neuter,*** as *Elaver*.

37.—(2). Some nouns improperly referring to men, are ***feminine*** or ***neuter:*** *mancipium*, neut. a slave (properly *a piece of property*), *vigiliae*, fem. sentinels, *auxilia*, neut. auxiliary troops.

38.—(3). Many names of countries, and some of towns, islands, and trees, take the ***gender of their endings:*** *Pontus, Delphī, Sulmo*, masc. *Latium, Īlium*, neut.; *oleaster*, the wild olive, masc.

39.—Some nouns are ***masculine*** or ***feminine,*** according to their reference, and are therefore called ***common.*** Such are: *adolescens*, a young man or woman; *affīnis*, a male or female relation by marriage; *cīvis*, a male or female citizen; *sacerdōs*, priest or priestess.

40.—***Mobile*** nouns (*mōbilia*) are those which have different forms to indicate distinction of sex: *fīlius*, son, *fīlia*, daughter; *rēx*, king, *rēgīna*, queen; *magister*, master, *magistra*, mistress; *gallus*, cock, *gallīna*, hen.

41.—***Epicene*** nouns have but one grammatical gender, but are applied to individuals of both sexes. Thus, *corvus*, raven, *passer*, sparrow, are always masculine; *vulpēs*, fox, *aquila*, eagle, are always feminine. If the sex is to be discriminated, the adjective *mās* or *masculus*, male; or *fēmina*, female, must be joined with them. Thus: *anas mascula*, the drake; *anguis fēmina*, a female snake.

3. Number.

42.—Number is that property of a noun by which it expresses one, or more than one.

Latin nouns have two numbers, the ***Singular*** and the ***Plural.*** The Singular denotes *one;* the Plural, *more than one.*

Some nouns in the plural form denote only *one;* as, *Athēnæ*, Athens, others signify one or more; as, *nuptiæ*, a marriage, or marriages.

4. Case.

CASE expresses the state or condition of a noun with respect to the other words in a sentence.

Latin nouns have six cases, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

Of these six cases, the Nominative and Vocative, which are for the most part the same in form, were called by the old grammarians *cāsūs rectī*, "upright cases," and the other four, *cāsūs oblīquī*, "oblique cases."

43.—The ***meaning and use of the cases*** must be fully learned from the Syntax. At present it is enough to say that

The ***Nominative*** is the case of the ***subject*** of an affirmation: *Caesar* fights.

The ***Vocative*** is the case of ***address:*** speak, *O Caesar.*

The ***Accusative*** is the case of the ***object*** of an action: Brutus kills *Caesar.*

The ***Genitive*** is the case of ***limitation.*** Go to the house *of Caesar.*

The ***Dative*** is the case of ***interest.*** I give a crown *to Caesar.*

The ***Ablative*** is the case of ***separation.*** He comes *from Caesar.*

The signs of the oblique cases, or the prepositions by which they are usually rendered into English, are the following, viz.: Genitive, *of;* Dative, *to* or *for;* Vocative, *O;* Ablative, *with*, *from*, *in*, *by*, etc., as in the following scheme:

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	a king.	Nom.	kings.
Gen.	*of* a king.	Gen.	*of* kings.
Dat.	*to* or *for* a king.	Dat.	*to* or *for* kings.
Acc.	a king.	Acc.	kings.
Voc.	*O* king.	Voc.	*O* kings.
Abl.	*with*, *from*, *in*, or *by* a king.	Abl.	*with*, *from*, *in*, or *by* kings.

DECLENSION.

44.—Declension is the mode of forming the several cases, etc.

In Latin, there are five declensions, called the *First*, *Second*, *Third*, *Fourth*, and *Fifth*.

The declensions are usually distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular; thus,

The first declension	has the	genitive singular	in *–ae*,
The second	"	"	in *–ī*,
The third	"	"	in *–is*,
The fourth	"	"	in *–ūs*,
The fifth	"	"	in *–ēī*.

There are three words of the fifth declension (148) which have the genitive ending in *eī* with the *e* short. But it is necessary in the above statement to mark the *ē* long, in order to prevent the learner from supposing that many nouns of the second declension (from nominatives in *eus*), such as *calceī*, belong to the fifth declension.

45.—This mode of distinguishing the declensions is given in accordance with the practice of most grammars. The real ground of the distinction, however, is that the words which fall under the several declensions have **stems** (called by the German grammarians *crude* or *uninflected forms*) ending in different letters. Upon this principle, which is far simpler and more scientific, the five declensions will be distinguished thus:

The ***first***	comprises	words with	**stems**	ending in **a**–: *mensa–*.
The ***second***	"	"	"	" **o**–: *servo–*.
The ***third***	"	"	"	" **i**– or a ***consonant***: *avi–*.
The ***fourth***	"	"	"	" **u**–: *gradu–*.
The ***fifth***	"	"	"	" **ē**–: *aciē–*.

In the subsequent discussion of the five declensions, while the ordinary arrangement will not be departed from, the stems of the examples declined will be given in parentheses, and marked by a hyphen, thus, (*gradu–*), to indicate that the word has so far nothing expressive of its relations to other words.

46.—All that part of a noun, or of an adjective, which precedes the termination of the genitive singular, is called

the ***Theme.*** All that follows the theme, in any case or number, is called the ***Case-ending,*** or *Termination.*

It must be observed that the *theme*, as here defined, is not the same as the stem, since in all the vowel declensions, the so-called *Case-ending* includes the vowel of the stem. Thus; in the word *mensae*, *mens-* is the *theme* and *ae* the *case-ending*, but the stem is *mensa-*, and the *a* of the stem is that which appears in the case-ending *ae*.

GENERAL RULES FOR THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

47.—1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative, alike in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, end always in *a*.

2. The vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is like the nominative.

3. The dative and the ablative plural are alike.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural.

48.—The difference between these declensions will be seen at one view in the following

Table of Case-endings.

Singular.

	First.	*Second.* M.	N.	*Third.* M.	N.	*Fourth.* M.	N.	*Fifth.*
N.	a,	us,er,	um,	—	—	us,	ū,	ēs,
G.	æ,	ī,		is,	—	ūs,	ūs,	ēī,
D.	æ,	ō,		ī,		uī,	ū,	ēī,
Ac.	am,	um,	um,	em,		um,	ū,	em,
V.	a,	e,er,	um,	—	—	us,	ū,	ēs,
Ab.	ā.	ō.		e *or* ī.		ū,	ū.	ē.

Plural.

	First.	*Second.* M.	N.	*Third.* M.	N.	*Fourth.* M.	N.	*Fifth.*
N.	æ,	ī,	a,	ēs,	a,ia,	ūs,	ua,	ēs,
G.	ārum,	ōrum,		um,ium,		uum,		ērum,
D.	īs,	īs,		ibus,		ibus *or* ubus		ēbus,
Ac.	ās,	ōs,	a,	ēs,	a,ia,	ūs,	ua,	ēs,
V.	æ,	ī,	a,	ēs,	a,ia,	ūs,	ua,	ēs,
Ab.	īs,	īs.		ibus.		ibus *or* ubus		ēbus.

49.—In this table the case-endings are arranged in the order usually adopted in Grammars. But the points of similarity and difference are more

clearly brought out if placed in the order used by Prof. Madvig, of Copenhagen. In the second, third, and fourth declensions, in which neuter nouns occur, the case-endings placed below the brace are common to all genders. The case-endings which are alike are only stated once, their repetition being marked by ". It is believed that teachers who will make use of this table, in teaching the declensions, will find the superior advantage of the arrangement.

Where the table gives two forms for a case, the particular facts are to be looked for in the remarks on the separate declensions. Special attention is directed to paragraphs 60, 83, 90, 99, 114, 109 to 121, 139, 140, 149.

It is to be particularly noted that in the cases of all the stems ending in vowels, the endings given include the stem-vowel.

50.	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Declension III.				Dec. IV.		Dec. V.
The *stem* ends in	**a–**	**o–**		**a** *consonant* or **i–**				**u–**		**ē–.**
		m. f.	n.	m. f.	n.	m. f.	n.	m. f.	n.	
Examples.	mensa–, *f. table.*	servo–, *m. slave.*	bello–, *n. war.*	trab–, *f. beam.*	fulgur–, *n. flash.*	nāvi–, *f. ship.*	mari–, *n. sea.*	gradu–, *m. step.*	cornu–, *n. horn.*	diē–, *m. day.*
SINGULAR.										
Nom.	a	us (er, ir)	um	s (?)	—	is (ēs)	e	us	ū	ēs
Voc. (*O*)	"	e	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
Acc.	am	um	"	em	"	em	"	um	"	em
Gen. (*of*)	ae	ī		is		is		ūs		ēī (ē)
Dat. (*to, for*)	"	ō		ī		ī		uī (ū)		"
Abl. (*by, from*)	ā	"		e		e (ī)		ū		ē
PLURAL.										
Nom.	ae	ī	a	ēs	a	ēs	ia	ūs	ua	ēs
Voc. (*O*)	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
Acc.	ās	ōs	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
Gen. (*of*)	ārum.	ōrum		um		ium		uum		ērum
Dat. (*to, for*)	īs	īs		ibus		ibus		ibus (ubus)		ēbus
Abl. (*by, from*)	"	"		"		"		"		"

FIRST DECLENSION.

51.—Latin Nouns of this declension have the nominative-ending **a.** But nouns adopted from the ***Greek*** have nominatives ending in **ē, ās, ēs.**

PENNA, *a feather*,—later, *a pen*. Fem. (penna–).

Singular.		Plural.	
N. penn**a**,	*a pen.*	*N.* penn**ae**,	*pens.*
G. penn**ae**,	*of a pen.*	*G.* penn**ārum**,	*of pens.*
D. penn**ae**,	*to* or *for a pen.*	*D.* penn**īs**,	*to* or *for pens.*
Ac. penn**am**,	*a pen.*	*Ac.* penn**ās**,	*pens.*
V. penn**a**,	*O pen.*	*V.* penn**ae**,	*O pens.*
Ab. penn**ā**,	*from, with a pen.*	*Ab.* penn**īs**,	*from, with pens.*

VIA, *a way*. Fem. (via–).

Singular.		Plural.	
N. vi**a**,	*a way.*	*N.* vi**ae**,	*ways.*
G. vi**ae**,	*of a way.*	*G.* vi**ārum**,	*of ways.*
D. vi**ae**,	*to a way.*	*D.* vi**īs**,	*to ways.*
Ac. vi**am**,	*a way.*	*Ac.* vi**ās**,	*ways.*
V. vi**a**,	*O way.*	*V.* vi**ae**,	*O ways.*
Ab. vi**ā**,	*with*, etc., *a way.*	*Ab.* vi**īs**,	*with*, etc., *ways.*

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Āla,	*a wing.*	Faba,	*a bean.*	Rīpa,	*a bank.*
Āra,	*an altar.*	Hōra,	*an hour.*	Sella,	*a seat.*
Arca,	*a chest.*	Lītera,	*a letter.*	Tuba,	*a trumpet.*
Casa,	*a cottage.*	Mensa,	*a table.*	Turba,	*a crowd.*
Causa,	*a cause.*	Norma,	*a rule.*	Unda,	*a wave.*
		Virga,	*a rod.*		

GREEK NOUNS.

52.—Greek Nouns in *ās*, *ēs*, and *ē*, are declined as follows, in the singular number:

Æneās, *Æneas.*	Anchīsēs, *Anchises.*	Pēnelopē, *Penelope.*
N. Ænē**ās**,	*N.* Anchīs**ēs**,	*N.* Pēnelop**ē**,
G. Ænē**ae**,	*G.* Anchīs**ae**,	*G.* Pēnelop**ēs**,
D. Ænē**ae**,	*D.* Anchīs**ae**,	*D.* Pēnelop**ae**,
Ac. Ænē**am**, *or* **ān**,	*Ac.* Anchīs**ēn**,	*Ac.* Pēnelop**ēn**,
V. Ænē**ā**,	*V.* Anchīs**ē** (**ā**),	*V.* Pēnelop**ē**,
Ab. Ænē**ā**.	*Ab.* Anchīs**ē** (**ā**).	*Ab.* Pēnelop**ē**.

Like *Æneās*, decline *Boreās*, the north wind; *Midās*, a king of Phrygia, —also, *Gorgiās*, *Messiās*.

Like *Anchīsēs*, decline *Alcīdēs*, a name of Hercules; *comētēs*, a comet; —also, *Priamidēs*, *Tȳdīdēs*, *dynastēs*, *satrapēs*.

Like *Pēnelopē*, decline *Circē*, a famous sorceress; *Cybelē*, the mother of the gods; *epitomē*, an abridgment; *grammaticē*, grammar;—also, *aloē*, *crambē*, *Danaē*, *Phœnīcē*.

Obs. 1. When the plural of proper names occurs, it is like the plural of *penna;* thus, *Atrīdæ*, *Atrīdārum*, etc.

Obs. 2. Nouns in *ēs* have sometimes *a* in the vocative. They also sometimes have the accusative in *em* by the third declension, and occasionally form the other cases, as if from stems in *i*–.

Obs. 3. Many Greek nouns in *ē* have also the regular Latin forms in *a*, as *mūsica*, music, etc.

53.—Gender.—Latin Nouns in *a* (stem *a*–) are feminine. But appellations of men, as *nauta*, a sailor; names of rivers (33); likewise *Hadria*, the Hadriatic; *comēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole, and *dāma*, a fallow-deer, are masculine.

Greek Nouns in *ās*, *ēs*, are masculine; those in *ē* are feminine.

IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.

54.—*Familia*, "family," has commonly the **gen. sing.** in ās, in connection with the words *pater*, father; *māter*, mother; *fīlius*, son; and *fīlia*, daughter, and the two words are then often written as one, thus: *paterfamiliās*, a father of a family.

55.—The poets use sometimes āī for ae in the **gen. sing.**: *aulāī* for *aulae*, of a hall.

56.—The **gen. plur.** is sometimes shortened from ārum into ûm, particularly in compounds of *cola*– and *gena*–, as in *caelicolum* for *caelicolārum*, of the inhabitants of heaven, and some nouns denoting *measures*, *money*, etc., *drachmum* for *drachmārum*, of drachmas.

57.—The **dat.** and **abl. plur.** have ābus for īs in *dea*, goddess, and *fīlia*, daughter, in order to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus*, god, and *fīlius*, son. So also in the fem. of *duo*, two; *ambo*, both. The grammarians give corresponding forms from *nāta*, daughter; *equa*, mare; *asina*, she-ass; *anima*, breath; *līberta*, freedwoman; but these are not found in good writers.

EXERCISES ON THE FIRST DECLENSION.

[The words in the following exercises will be found in 51, 52.]

1. *Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly:* Penna, pennam, pennārum, pennīs, pennā, pennæ;—āram,

ārīs; sellæ, sellā, sella, sellārum; tubīs, tubam, tubæ; līterā, līterārum, pennīs, ārās, tubæ, līteīs;—Pēnelopēs, Pēnelopēn, Ænēān, Anchīsēs, Anchīsæ, Ænēā.

2. *Translate the following words into Latin:* The pen, of pens, with pens, from a pen, in a pen, by pens; from the altars; of a trumpet; with letters; a seat; O altar; the seat of Penelope; of Æneas; with Anchises; a trumpet; from the altar; to a seat; with a pen; of the altars, etc., *ad libitum.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

58.—Latin Nouns of the second declension have in the nominative singular *masculine*, ***us, er, ir***, *neuter*, ***um.***

A few ***Greek Nouns*** have nom. sing. *masc.* in ***os***, *neut.* in ***on.***

59.—The stems of all these words end in *o*–, and the nominative singular was formed from the stem by adding *s*, before which in most words the vowel *o* was changed into the duller sound *u*. Thus from *servo*–, slave, came nom. sing. *servos*, and afterwards *servus*.

60.—But if the liquid consonant *r* precede the *o* of the stem (as in *puero*–, boy; *agro*–, field; *viro*–, man), nearly always the ending *s* was not added, but the final *o* was dropped. So nom. sing. *puer*, (agr) *ager*, *vir*. It is to be noticed that if there be no vowel before the *r*, an *e* is inserted, in order that the *r* may be properly articulated.

61.— CASE-ENDINGS.

Masculine. Singular.	Plural.	*Neuter.* Singular.	Plural.
N. us, er, ir.	*N.* ī,	*N.* um,	*N.* a,
G. ī,	*G.* ōrum,	*G.* ī,	*G.* ōrum,
D. ō,	*D.* īs,	*D.* ō,	*D.* īs,
Ac. um,	*Ac.* ōs,	*Ac.* um,	*Ac.* a,
V. e, er, ir,	*V.* ī,	*V.* um,	*V.* a,
Ab. ō,	*Ab.* īs.	*Ab.* ō.	*Ab.* īs.

Dominus, *a lord*, Masc. (domino–).

Singular.		Plural.	
N. domin**us**,	*a lord.*	*N.* domin**ī**,	*lords.*
G. domin**ī**,	*of a lord.*	*G.* domin**ōrum**,	*of lords.*
D. domin**ō**,	*to* or *for a lord.*	*D.* domin**īs**,	*to* or *for lords.*
Ac. domin**um**,	*a lord.*	*Ac.* domin**ōs**,	*lords.*
V. domin**e**,	*O lord.*	*V.* domin**ī**,	*O lords.*
Ab. domin**ō**,	*with*, etc., *a lord.*	*Ab.* domin**īs**,	*with*, etc., *lords.*

Thus decline:

Ventus (vento–),	*the wind.*	Fluvius (fluvio–),	*a river.*
Oculus (oculo–),	*the eye.*	Hortus (horto–),	*a garden.*
Annus (anno–),	*a year.*	Radius (radio–),	*a ray.*

Observe that nouns in *us* have the vocative in *e:* as, *ventus, vente.*

PUER, *a boy*, Masc. (puero–).

Singular.		Plural.	
N. puer,	*a boy.*	*N.* puer**ī**,	*boys.*
G. puer**ī**,	*of a boy.*	*G.* puer**ōrum**,	*of boys.*
D. puer**ō**,	*to* or *for a boy.*	*D.* puer**īs**,	*to* or *for boys.*
Ac. puer**um**,	*a boy.*	*Ac.* puer**ōs**,	*boys.*
V. puer,	*O boy.*	*V.* puer**ī**,	*O boys.*
Ab. puer**ō**,	*with*, etc., *a boy.*	*Ab.* puer**īs**,	*with*, etc., *boys.*

62.—All the nouns in *er* declined like *puer*, are the compounds of *fero* and *gero;* as, *Lūcifer*, the morning star; *armiger*, an armor-bearer; also the nouns *adulter*, an adulterer; *Celtibēr*, a Celtiberian; *Ibēr*, a Spaniard; *Līber*, Bacchus; *gener*, a son-in-law; *socer*, a father-in-law; *vesper*, the evening; *presbyter*, elder; and sometimes *Mulciber*, a name of Vulcan: also the plural *līberī*, children. The only words in *ir* are *vir*, man, and its compounds, *duumvirī*, etc., and the national name *Trēvir.* There is one adjective ending in *ur*, *satur*, sated, declined like *puer.*

Words in *er* and *ir*, it is probable, originally ended in *erus* and *irus;* and hence, in some words, both forms are still found; as, *socerus* and *socer.*

63.—All other nouns in *er*, lose *e* in the other cases when an ending is added; as,

LIBER, *a book*, Masc. (libro–).

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:	
N. liber,	*N.* libr**ī**,	Ager,	*a field.*
G. libr**ī**,	*G.* libr**ōrum.**	Aper,	*a wild boar.*
D. libr**ō**,	*D.* libr**īs**,	Culter,	*a knife.*
Ac. libr**um**,	*Ac.* libr**ōs**,	Magister,	*a master.*
V. liber,	*V.* libr**ī**,	Auster,	*the south wind.*
Ab. libr**ō.**	*Ab.* libr**īs.**	Cancer,	*a crab.*

REGNUM, *a kingdom*, Neut. (regno–).

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:	
N. regn**um**,	*N.* regn**a**,	Antrum,	*a cave.*
G. regn**ī**,	*G.* regn**ōrum**,	Astrum,	*a star.*
D. regn**ō**,	*D.* regn**īs**,	Dōnum,	*a gift.*
Ac. regn**um**,	*Ac.* regn**a**,	Jugum	*a yoke.*
V. regn**um**,	*V.* regn**a**,	Saxum,	*a stone.*
Ab. regn**ō.**	*Ab.* regn**īs.**	Pōmum,	*an apple.*

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

Arbiter,	*a judge.*	Folium,	*a leaf.*	Socer,	*a father-in-law.*
Bellum,	*war.*	Gladius,	*a sword.*	Tēlum,	*a dart.*
Cadus,	*a cask.*	Lupus,	*a wolf.*	Torus,	*a couch.*
Cervus,	*a stag.*	Mūrus,	*a wall.*	Tectum,	*the roof.*
Collum,	*the neck.*	Nīdus,	*a nest.*	Truncus,	*the trunk.*
Equus,	*a horse.*	Ŏvum,	*an egg.*	Vēlum,	*a sail.*
Faber,	*an ărtist.*	Prælium,	*a battle.*	Vadum,	*a ford.*
Fīcus, f.,	*a fig-tree.*	Rāmus,	*a branch.*	Vōtum,	*a vow.*

IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.

64.—When **iī** occur in the ***gen. sing.***, they are often contracted into **ī**, but the accent remains on the same syllable, as in the full form: *ingénī* for *ingénii.*

65.—Proper names in **ius** (not adjectives, like *Dēlius*, nor nouns in which the *i* is long, as *Dārīus*) contract **ie** of the ***vocative*** into **ī**: *Virgilius*, voc. sing. *Virgilī*. So also *fīlius*, son, makes *fīlī*, and *genius*, guardian spirit, makes *genī*.

66.—The Genitive Plural.—Some nouns, especially those which denote value, measure, weight, commonly form the genitive plural in **ûm**, instead of **ōrum**; as, *nummûm*, *sestertiûm*, etc. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deûm*, *Danaûm*, etc.; also, *dīvôm* is used for *dīvōrum*.

67.— Deus, *a god*, is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.	
N. De**us**,	*N.* De**ī**, *or* Di**ī**,	Contr. Dī,
G. De**ī**,	*G.* De**ōrum**,	
D. De**ō**,	*D.* De**īs**, *or* Di**īs**,	" Dīs,
Ac. De**um**,	*Ac.* De**ōs**,	
V. De**us**,	*V.* De**ī**, *or* Di**ī**,	" Dī,
Ab. De**ō**.	*Ab.* De**īs**, *or* Di**īs**.	" Dīs.

But the plural forms *deī* and *deīs* are rare.

GREEK NOUNS.

68.—Greek Nouns in *os* and *on*, are often changed into *us* and *um*; as, *Alphēos*, *Alphēus*; *Ilion*, *Ilium*: and those in *ros*, into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*. When thus changed, they are declined like Latin nouns of the same terminations. Otherwise,

Greek Nouns are thus declined:

ANDROGEŌS, Masc.; DĒLOS, Fem.—BARBITON, *a lyre*, Neut.

	Singular.			Singular.
N.	Androge**ōs**,	Dēl**os**,	*N.*	barbit**on**,
G.	Androge**ō**, *or* **ī**,	Dēl**ī**,	*G.*	barbit**ī**,
D.	Androge**ō**,	Dēl**ō**,	*D.*	barbit**ō**,
Ac.	Androge**ō**, **ōn**, *or* **ōna**,	Dēl**on**,	*Ac.*	barbit**on**,
V.	Androge**ōs**,	Dēl**e**,	*V.*	barbit**on**,
Ab.	Androge**ō**.	Dēl**ō**.	*Ab.*	barbit**ō**.

69.—*Greek Nouns* in ***eus*** are declined partly by the third declension, and retain some Greek forms. Thus, *Orpheus* is declined,

N. Orph**ēus**.	
G. Orphe**os**, e**ī**, *or* **ēī**.	We find also the genitives *Achilleī*, *Ulixeī*, though *Achillēs*, *Ulixēs* are otherwise of the third declension.
D. Orphe**ī**, **ēī**, *or* e**ō**.	
Ac. Orphe**a**, –e**um**.	
V. Orph**ēu**.	
Ab. Orphe**ō**.	

70.—The proper name *Panthūs* has in Virgil the vocative *Panthū*.

In a very few words the nom. plur. has *oe* (Greek, *οι*): *canēphoroe* from *canēphoros*, basket-bearers.

The Greek gen. plur. in *ōn* (*ων*) is found in a few words, chiefly the titles of books: *Georgicōn*, of the Georgics, and in a few proper names: *Colōnia Thēraeōn*, the colony of the Theraeans.

The gen. sing. in *ū* (Greek *ου*) occurs in a few names: *Menandrū*, of Menander.

The word *pelagus*, sea, has the nom. and acc. plur. *pelagē*.

GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

71.—*Masculines* have the nominative ending in ***us*, (*os*), *er*, *ir*.**

Neuters " " ***um* (*on*).**

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

72.—1. Of nouns ending in *us*, the names of plants, countries, towns, islands, and precious stones, with few exceptions, are feminine (34).

Obs. In many cases, where the name of a tree ends in *us*, fem., there is a form in *um* denoting the fruit of the tree; as, *cerasus*, *cerasum*, cherry; *mālus*, *mālum*, apple; *mōrus*, *mōrum*, mulberry; *pirus*, *pirum*, pear; *prūnus*, *prūnum*, plum; *pōmus*, *pōmum*, fruit (in general). But *fīcus* means both a fig-tree and a fig.

2. The following five words are feminine: viz., *alvus*, the belly; *carbasus*, sail; *colus*, the distaff; *humus*, the ground; and *vannus*, a winnowing fan.

3. *Vīrus*, juice, poison, and *pelagus*, the sea, are neuter, and have the accusative and vocative like the nominative. *Vulgus*, the common people, is neuter, and very rarely masculine. *Pampinus*, a vine branch, is rarely feminine, commonly masculine.

4. Many Greek nouns in *us*, are feminine, especially compounds of *ὁδός*; as, *methodus*, *periodus*, etc. So also, *biblus*, *papȳrus*, *diphthongus*, *paragraphus*, *diametros*, *perimetros*.

EXERCISES ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

List of words in the following exercises:

Puer,	*a boy.*	Regnum,	*a kingdom.*	Solum,	*the soil.*
Dominus,	*a lord.*	Ventus,	*the wind.*	Oculus,	*the eye.*
Liber,	*a book.*	Cælum,	*heaven.*	Fīlius,	*a son.*

Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly:—Puerī, dominōrum, dominō, puerō, puerum, puerōs, librī, librīs, librum, librō, dominīs, domine, regnum, regna, regnōrum—ventus, ventō, ventum—oculus, oculōrum—fīliī, fīlī, fīliīs, fīliōs.

Translate the following words into Latin;—To a boy, from a boy, O boy, O boys, of boys; books, of books, for books, in books, with a book; a lord, from a lord, to a lord, of lords, the lords; of a kingdom, the kingdom, to the kingdoms; to the winds of heaven, lords of the soil, etc., *ad libitum.*

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

73.—Nouns of the third declension are very numerous; they are of all genders, and generally increase one syllable in the oblique cases. Its final letters, in the nominative, are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, *a*, *i*, *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns, and *d* to a few foreign names.

Obs. A noun is said to *increase*, when it has more syllables in the genitive singular than it has in the nominative.

74.—The ***stem*** of most words of this declension ends in a ***consonant;*** and for these the ending of the genitive singular is **is**.

Many words, however, have ***stems*** ending in **i**, and

for these the genitive ending is **s**, which with the **i** of the stem gives *is;* and this being the same as the ending for *consonant*-stems, *is* is generally stated as the genitive ending for all nouns of this declension.

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Consonant-stems.				*I*-stems. *Note:* these endings include the stem vowel.			
	Sing.		Plur.		Sing.		Plur.	
	m. *or* f.	n.	m. *or* f.	n.	m. *or* f.	n.	m. *or* f.	n.
N.	s (?)	–	ēs	a	is (ēs)	e	ēs	ia
G.	is	is	um	um	is	is	ium	ium
D.	ī	ī	ibus	ibus	ī	ī	ibus	ibus
Ac.	em	–	ēs	a	em (im)	e	ēs (īs)	ia
V.	s (?)	–	ēs	a	is	e	ēs	ia
Ab.	e	e	ibus	ibus	e (ī)	ī (e)	ibus	ibus

For the arrangement of these case-endings in Madvig's order, see 50.

In the table of case-endings given above (74), the (?) implies that some nouns do not take the ending *s*. The dash (–) implies that no case-ending is there added.

75.—In order to determine how a noun of this declension is to be inflected, it is therefore necessary to know the **stem** and the **gender.**

Words of this declension are called *Parisyllaba* or *Imparisyllaba.*

76.—*Parisyllaba* are those which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative singular. These have stems ending in *i*–, e. g. *nāvis*, a ship, gen. *nāvis*, stem *nāvi*–.

77.—*Imparisyllaba* are those which have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative singular. These have stems ending in **consonants,** e. g. *hiems*, winter, gen. *hiemis*, stem, *hiem*–.

78.—But there are a few neuter nouns whose stems end in *āli*–, *āri*–, which have for the most part lost the ending *e* of the nominative singular, and these *appear* to be *imparisyllaba*, but are not really so. Indeed in some of them the full form is found, as well as the mutilated one, e. g. *cochlear* and *cochleāre*, a spoon, from the stem *cochleāri*–. Of such words the stems will be printed thus: animāl(i–).

79.—Nearly all ***parisyllaba*** (*i*-stems) make their nominative singular in **is** or **ēs** (m. *or* f.), or **e** (n.)

80.—But there are a few nouns and several adjectives with stems ending in *ri*, which take no ending in the nominative singular, but drop the final *i*–, and insert *e* before *r*, for the sake of clear articulation, if there be no vowel before *r* in the stem; e. g. *lintri*–, wherry, makes the nom. sing. *linter*, in which the *e* is inserted for the sake of articulation.

81.—In the case of all ***imparisyllaba*** (***consonant***-stems), the stem generally ends in the consonant which precedes *is* in the genitive case. Thus: *lapis*, a stone, gen. sing. *lapid-is*, stem, *lapid*–.

82.—But in some words in which the consonant before *is* is **r**, the **r** is the representative of an original **s**, which, in accordance with a common principle in Latin, is changed into *r* between two vowels (95). Thus: *mōs*, custom, genit. *mōris*, stem *mōs*–, (not mōr–).

83.—There are many words, however, which, though they appear by the above rule to have stems ending in consonants, yet form some of their cases, particularly in the plural, as if from stems ending in *i*–. It is probable that the original stem of such words ended in *i* throughout. Such words will be printed thus: *stirp*(*i*–). See 119.

84.—In some words with consonant stems, in which the consonant of the genitive is preceded by a short **i**, this is not the original vowel of the stem, but has been changed from a short **o**, a short **e**, or a short **u**, which appears in the nominative. This is on the principle that in passing over a *short* syllable in the middle of a word, the voice naturally changes the **heavier** vowel *o* or *e* to the **lighter** sound *i* (see 4). Thus from *homo*, man, and *mīles*, soldier, the genitives are *homin-is*, *mīlit-is*, but the stems are *homon*–, *mīlet*–; the lighter vowel *i* having replaced the heavier vowels *o* and *e*; since it is evidently easier to say *hominis*, *mīlitis*, than to pronounce *homonis*, *mīletis*, with the middle vowels distinctly articulated. (See 89, 96.)

85.—On the contrary, in some words, particularly neuter nouns, the genitive gives the true stem-vowel; but this has passed in the nominative into the **duller** vowel **u**. Thus: the genitive *rōbor–is* gives the true stem *rōbor*–, but the nominative sing. is *rōbur*. So the genitive *oper–is* gives the true stem-vowel *e*, though the nominative sing. is *opus*.

EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A.—IMPARISYLLABA.

86.—I. ***Consonant***-stems ***with*** the nominative ending *s*; masculine or feminine.

These stems end in a ***mute***, *c*, *g*; *t*, *d*; *p*, *b*; or the ***liquid*** *m*, or the ***spirant*** *v*.

87.—When *s* is added to a palatal (**c**, **g**,) **x** is written for *cs* or *gs*.

88.—When *s* is added to a lingual (t, d,) the lingual is left out before *s*.

	dux, *leader*. (duc-) *c*.	lēx, *law*. (lēg-) *f*.	nepōs, *grandson*. (nepōt-) *m*.	lapis, *stone*. (lapid-) *m*.
		Singular.		
N.	dux (=duc**s**, 87)	lēx (=lēg**s**, 87)	nepōs (=nepōt**s**)	lapis (lapid**s**, 88)
G.	duc**is**	lēg**is**	nepōt**is**	lapid**is**
D.	duc**ī**	lēg**ī**	nepōt**ī**	lapid**ī**
Ac.	duc**em**	lēg**em**	nepot**em**	lapid**em**
V.	dux (=duc**s**)	lēx (=lēg**s**)	nepōs (=nepōt**s**)	lapis (=lapid**s**)
Ab.	duc**e**	lēg**e**	nepōt**e**	lapid**e**
		Plural.		
N.	duc**ēs**	lēg**ēs**	nepōt**ēs**	lapid**ēs**
G.	duc**um**	lēg**um**	nepōt**um**	lapid**um**
D.	duc**ibus**	lēg**ibus**	nepōt**ibus**	lapid**ibus**
Ac.	duc**ēs**	lēg**ēs**	nepōt**ēs**	lapid**ēs**
V.	duc**ēs**	lēg**ēs**	nepōt**ēs**	lapid**ēs**
Ab.	duc**ibus**	lēg**ibus**	nepōt**ibus**	lapid**ibus**

	[daps]* *feast*. (dap-) f.	urbs, *city*. urb(i-) f. (83)	hiems, *winter*, (hiem-) *f*.	nix, *snow*. niv(i-) *f*. (83)
		Singular.		
N.	[dap**s**]*	urb**s**	hiem**s**	nix (=niv**s**)†
G.	dap**is**	urb**is**	hiem**is**	niv**is**
D.	dap**ī**	urb**ī**	hiem**ī**	niv**ī**
Ac.	dap**em**	urb**em**	hiem**em**	niv**em**
V.	[dap**s**]*	urb**s**	hiem**s**	nix (=niv**s**)
Ab.	dap**e**	urb**e**	hiem**e**	niv**e**
		Plural.		
N.	dap**ēs**	urb**ēs**	hiem**ēs**	niv**ēs**
G.	dap**um**	urb**ium** (83)	hiem**um**	niv**ium** (83)
D.	dap**ibus**	urb**ibus**	hiem**ibus**	niv**ibus**
Ac.	dap**ēs**	urb**ēs** (**īs**)	hiem**ēs**	niv**ēs** (**īs**)
V.	dap**ēs**	urb**ēs**	hiem**ēs**	niv**ēs**
Ab.	dap**ibus**	urb**ibus**	hiem**ibus**	niv**ibus**

* The nom. sing. is only found quoted by the grammarians from the oldest writers.

† The *v* appears to have passed into the palatal *g*. Compare the verb *ningo*. The same connection between *v* and a palatal occurs in *fluo* (*fluxi*), *struo* (*struxi*,) *vivo* (*vixi*). Compare for the omission of *v* in *fluo*, *struo*, *pluo* and *pluvia*, *diluvium* and *luo*, *exuviae* and *exuo*.

	miles, *soldier.* (milet–) *m.*	obses, *hostage.* (obsed–) *c.*	seges, *crop.* (seget–) *f.*
		Singular.	
N.	miles (= milet**s**, 88)	obses (= obsed**s**, 88)	seges (= seget**s**, 88)
G.	milit**is** (84)	obsid**is** (84)	seget**is** (89)
D.	milit**ī**	obsid**ī**	seget**ī**
Ac.	milit**em**	obsid**em**	seget**em**
V.	miles (= milet**s**)	obses (= obsed**s**)	seges (= seget**s**)
Ab.	milit**e**	obsid**e**	seget**e**
		Plural.	
N.	milit**ēs**	obsid**ēs**	seget**ēs**
G.	milit**um**	obsid**um**	seget**um**
D.	milit**ibus**	obsid**ibus**	seget**ibus**
Ac.	milit**ēs**	obsid**ēs**	seget**ēs**
V.	milit**ēs**	obsid**ēs**	seget**ēs**
Ab.	milit**ibus**	obsid**ibus**	seget**ibus**

89.—In *mīles* and *obses*, observe the change of the stem-vowel *e* to the lighter vowel *i* in the oblique cases. All words of more than one syllable, whose stems end in a *single mute* preceded by a short *e*, experience this change, except *abiēs* (*abiet–*), fir, *ariēs* (*ariet–*), ram, *pariēs* (*pariet–*), wall, *seges* (*seget–*), crop, *teges* (*teget–*), mat, *interpres* (*interpret–*), interpreter, *fēnisex* (*fēnisec–*), mower, *aquilex* (*aquileg–*), water inspector, and the compounds of *ped–*, foot, and the adjectives *hebes* (hebet–), dull, and *teres* (teret–), rounded. Observe, also, the lengthening of the stem-vowel in the nominatives *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*.

90.—II. ***Consonant stems,*** which are ***without*** the nominative ending ***s*** ; masculine or feminine. These end in one of the ***liquids***, *l*, *n*, or *r*, or in the ***spirant*** *s*.

91.—Stems ending in **l** remain unchanged in the nominative singular.

92.—Stems ending in **n** remain unchanged in the nominative singular, unless the **n** is preceded by *o*, in which case **n** is dropped and *ō* is sometimes shortened: sermōn–, nom. s. *sermo*.

93.—Stems ending in **r** remain unchanged in the nominative singular, except that

(1) Stems ending in *ōr*-shorten the *o*: *amōr–*, nom. sing. *amor.*

(2) Stems ending in *tr–* insert *e* before *r*, for the sake of articulation: *patr–*, nom. sing. *pater.*

94.—Stems ending in *s* remain unchanged in the nominative, but in the oblique cases *s* is changed to *r*. (82.)

	consul, *consul.* (consul–) *m.*	sermo, *speech.* (sermōn–) *m.*	amor, *love.* (amōr–) *m.*	flōs, *flower.* (flōs–) *m.*
		Singular.		
N.	consul (91)	sermo (92)	amor (93)	flōs (94)
G.	consul**is**	sermōn**is**	amōr**is**	flōr**is** (82)
D.	consul**ī**	sermōn**ī**	amōr**ī**	flōr**ī**
Ac.	consul**em**	sermōn**em**	amōr**em**	flōr**em**
V.	consul	sermo	amor	flōs
Ab.	consul**e**	sermōn**e**	amōr**e**	flōr**e**
		Plural.		
N.	consul**ēs**	sermōn**ēs**	amōr**ēs**	flōr**ēs**
G.	consul**um**	sermōn**um**	amōr**um**	flōr**um**
D.	consul**ibus**	sermōn**ibus**	amōr**ibus**	flōr**ibus**
Ac.	consul**ēs**	sermōn**ēs**	amōr**ēs**	flōr**ēs**
V.	consul**ēs**	sermōn**ēs**	amōr**ēs**	flōr**ēs**
Ab.	consul**ibus**	sermon**ibus**	amōr**ibus**	flōr**ibus**

95.—Observe the change of **s** to **r** in the oblique cases of *flōs*. All words whose stems end in **s** experience this change, except *vās* (vās–), a vessel, which retains **s** throughout.

	pater, *father.* (patr–) *m.*	virgo, *maiden.* (virgon–) *f.*	anser, *goose.* (anser–) *m.*	pecten, *comb.* (pecten–) *m.*
		Singular.		
N.	pater (93)	virgo (92)	anser (93)	pecten (92)
G.	patr**is**	virgin**is** (84)	anser**is**	pectin**is** (84)
D.	patr**ī**	virgin**ī**	anser**ī**	pectin**ī**
Ac.	patr**em**	virgin**em**	anser**em**	pectin**em**
V.	pater	virgo	anser	pecten
Ab.	patr**e**	virgin**e**	anser**e**	pectin**e**
		Plural.		
N.	patr**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	anser**ēs**	pectin**ēs**
G.	patr**um**	virgin**um**	anser**um**	pectin**um**
D.	patr**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	anser**ibus**	pectin**ibus**
Ac.	patr**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	anser**ēs**	pectin**ēs**
V.	patr**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	anser**ēs**	pectin**ēs**
Ab.	patr**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	anser**ibus**	pectin**ibus**

Observe in *pater* the insertion of **e** before **r**, in the nom. sing. (93), and in *virgo*, *pecten*, observe the ***lightening*** of the stem-vowels **o** and **e** to **i** in the oblique cases (84).

96.—All words in **o** increasing ***short*** (*i. e.*, with stems ending in **on–**, —not *ōn–*), change **o** to **i** in the oblique cases, as *virgo* does; except a few national names, as *Macedo* (*Macedon–*), a Macedonian, which retain the **o** through all the cases.

97.—The noun *caro* (*caron–*), flesh, leaves out the vowel, by syncope (15), and makes the genitive *carnis*, for *caronis*.

III. *Neuter nouns* with *consonant*-stems, *without* any nominative-*ending:*

	fulgur, *lightning.* (fulgur–) *n.*	carmen, *song.* (carmen–) *n.*	onus, *burden.* (ones–) *n.*	tergus, *hide.* (tergos–) *n.*
			Singular.	
N.	fulgur	carmen	onus (85)	tergus (85)
G.	fulgur**is**	carmin**is** (89)	oner**is** (82)	tergor**is** (95)
D.	fulgur**ī**	carmin**ī**	oner**ī**	tergor**ī**
Ac.	fulgur	carmen	onus	tergus
V.	fulgur	carmen	onus	tergus
Ab.	fulgur**e**	carmin**e**	oner**e**	tergor**e**
			Plural.	
N.	fulgur**a**	carmin**a**	oner**a**	tergor**a**
G.	fulgur**um**	carmin**um**	oner**um**	tergor**um**
D.	fulgur**ibus**	carmin**ibus**	oner**ibus**	tergor**ibus**
Ac.	fulgur**a**	carmin**a**	oner**a**	tergor**a**
V.	fulgur**a**	carmin**a**	oner**a**	tergor**a**
Ab.	fulgur**ibus**	carmin**ibus**	oner**ibus**	tergor**ibus**

Observe in *carmen*, the ***lightening*** of the stem-vowel **e** to **i**, when a syllable is added (89). Also, in *onus*, *tergus*, observe the change of the stem-vowels **e**, **o**, to **u**, in the nom. sing. (85), and the change of **s** into **r** when between two vowels (95).

	caput, *head.* (caput–) *n.*	marmor, *marble.* (marmor–) *n.*	femur, *thigh.* (femor–) *n.*
		Singular.	
N.	caput	marmor	femur (85)
G.	capit**is** (84)	marmor**is**	femor**is**
D.	capit**ī**	marmor**ī**	femor**ī**
Ac.	caput	marmor	femur
V.	caput	marmor	femur
Ab.	capit**e**	marmor**e**	femor**e**

		Plural.	
N.	capita	marmora	femora
G.	capitum	marmorum	femorum
D.	capitibus	marmoribus	femoribus
Ac.	capita	marmora	femora
V.	capita	marmora	femora
Ab.	capitibus	marmoribus	femoribus

In *caput* observe the change of *u* into *i*, when a syllable is added (84).

98.—In *femur* observe the change of the stem-vowel **o** to **u** in the nom. sing. There are only four words in or–, in which this occurs, viz.: *femur* (*femor–*), thigh; *ebur* (*ebor–*), ivory; *jecur* (*jecor–*), liver; *rōbur* (*rōbor–*), oak.

B.—PARISYLLABA.

I. *Stems ending in i–, Masculine or Feminine.*

	auris, *ear.* (auri–,) *f.*	turris, *tower.* (turri–,) *f.*	nūbēs, *cloud.* (nūbi–,) *f.*	linter, *wherry.* (lintri–,) *f.*
		Singular.		
N.	auris	turris	nubēs	linter (80)
G.	auris	turris	nūbis	lintris
D.	aurī	turrī	nūbī	lintrī
Ac.	aurem	turrim (em) (111)	nūbem	lintrem
V.	auris	turris	nūbēs	linter
Ab.	aure	turrī (e) (111)	nūbe	lintre
		Plural.		
N.	aurēs	turrēs	nūbēs	lintrēs
G.	aurium	turrium	nūbium	lintrium
D.	auribus	turribus	nūbibus	lintribus
Ac.	aurēs (īs)	turrīs (ēs)	nūbēs (īs)	lintrēs (īs)
V.	aurēs	turrēs	nūbēs	lintrēs
Ab.	auribus	turribus	nūbibus	lintribus

Observe the accusative plural in *ēs* or *īs*; see 114.

99.—Observe that the nom. sing. of *nūbēs* is like that of Decl. V. There are several words which thus appear to have a stem ending in **ē**. Such are *clādēs*, a defeat; *rūpēs*, a rock; *sēdēs*, a seat. *Famēs*, hunger, has also *famē* in the abl. sing. (185).

In *lintri–*, observe that (like words in *–ro–*, 60) the **i** is dropped in the nom. sing., and an **e** inserted before it to help the articulation of **r** (80).

II. ***Stems ending in i–, Neuter.***

mare, *sea.* (mari–,) *n.*	animal, *animal.* animăl(i–,) *n.*	Praeneste, *Præneste.* (Praenesti–,) *n.*
	Singular.	
N. mare	animal (78)	Praeneste
G. mar**is**	animăl**is**	Praenest**is**
D. mar**ī**	animăl**ī**	Praenest**ī**
Ac. mar**e**	animal	Praenest**e**
V. mare	animal	Praenest**e**
Ab. mar**ī**	animăl**ī**	Praenest**e**
	Plural.	
N. mar**ia**	animăl**ia**	
G. mar**ium**	animăl**ium**	
D. mar**ibus**	animăl**ibus**	
Ac. mar**ia**	animăl**ia**	
V. mar**ia**	animăl**ia**	
Ab. mar**ibus**	animăl**ibus**	

100.—Observe the ***abl. sing.*** generally in **ī**, but in *Praeneste* in **e**. Other names of towns, *Caere*, *Reāte*, *Arelāte*, etc., and the mountain *Soracte*, have the ablative singular in *e*, instead of *ī*. So also has *mare* sometimes in the poets, and generally *rēte*, a net.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

101.—The nouns *cinis*, m. (*ciner–*), ash, *cucumis*, m. (*cucumer–*), cucŭmber, *pulvis*, m. (*pulver–*), *vōmis*, m. (*vōmer–*), ploughshare, and the adjective *pūbēs*, (*puber–*), adult, make the genitive in **eris**. But *vōmis* and *pūbēs* have sometimes the nominative *vōmer*, *pūber*, and *cucumis* has in Pliny the genitive *cucumis* and the ablative *cucumī*.

102.—The nouns *sanguis*, m. (*sanguin–*), blood, and *pollis*, c. (*pollen–*), fine meal, have the genitive in **inis**. But *pollis* has sometimes the nominative neuter *pollen*.

103.—The two nouns *sūs*, c. (*su–*), pig, and *grūs*, c. (*gru–*), crane, take the endings of the consonant declension (***imparisyllaba***). They are properly uncontracted nouns of the fourth declension. (See 141.)

104.—The following words form their nominative singular from a ***different stem*** from that which gives the other cases: *Jūpiter*, Jupiter, gen. *Jovis* (*Jov–*), *senex*, old man, gen. *senis* (*sen–*), *supellex*, f. furniture, gen. *supellectilis* (*supellectil–*), *iter*, n. journey, gen. *itineris* (*itiner–*).

105.—The neuter *femur*, thigh, has sometimes the stem *femen–*, gen. *feminis*, in the other cases; so also *jecur*, n. liver, has the genitives *jecoris*, *jecinoris*, or *jocinoris*.

106.—The stems of *mel*. n. honey, *fel*, n. gall, *fār*, n. corn, *os*, n. bone, *cor*, n. heart, *lāc*, n. milk, *ās*, m. as (a pound), *bēs*, m. two-thirds, *sēmis*, m. half, end in ***two consonants,*** and make their genitives *mellis*, *fellis*, *farris*, *ossis*, *cordis*, *lactis*, *assis*, *bessis*, *sēmissis*.

107.—*grȳps*, griffin, makes *grȳphis*; *auceps*, fowler, makes *aucupis; vībex*, weal, makes *vībīcis; tigris*, tiger, makes *tigris* or *tigridis; bōs*, ox, cow, makes *bovis;* and in the plural gen. dat. abl. *boum*, *bōbus* or *būbus*. (123.)

108.—The river *Anio* makes the gen. *Aniēnis* and *Nērio*, a name of the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis*.

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

109.—In the table of case-endings in 74, the endings **im** and **I** are given as occurring sometimes for **em** and **e**, as the accusative and ablative singular of stems ending in *i*. As no general rule can be given for these words, the principal ones must be here enumerated. For the sake of convenience they are here placed together, and are marked with the following signs:

§ placed *before* a word means "**im** always
† placed *before* a word means "**im** generally } in the accusative."
‡ placed *before* a word means "**im** rarely

§ placed *after* a word means "**I** always
† placed *after* a word means "**I** generally } in the ablative."
‡ placed *after* a word means "**I** rarely

If no sign is placed *before* a word, the accusative is regular, in **em**.
If no sign is placed *after* a word, the ablative is regular, in **e**.

110.—I. Names of ***rivers*** with *i*-stems: § *Tiberis* §, the Tiber, § *Athesis* §, the Adige, and some foreign names of places: § *Hispalis* §, Seville.

111.—II. § *amussis* §, a rule.
§ *būris* §, plough-tail.
§ *cucumis*[1] §, cucumber.
§ *rāvis* §, hoarseness.
§ *sitis* §, thirst.
§ *tussis* §, cough.
§ *vīs* §, force.

† *febris* †, fever.
† *pelvis* †, basin.
† *puppis* †, stern.

‡ *nāvis* †, ship.
‡ *sēmentis* ‡, sowing.
‡ *strigilis* †, scraper.

amnis ‡, river.
anguis ‡, snake.
avis[2] ‡, bird.
bīlis ‡, bile.
cīvis †, citizen.
collis ‡, hill.
corbis ‡, basket.

---

[1] Cucumis is generally declined from a stem cucumer-. See 101.
[2] Avis, in the sense of 'omen,' always has ī in the ablative.

† *restis* ‡, rope.
† *secūris* †, axe.
† *turris* †, tower.

‡ *clāvis* †, key.
‡ *classis* ‡, fleet.
‡ *messis*, harvest.

fīnis ‡, end.
ignis †, fire.
orbis †, globe.
postis ‡, post.
ratis †, boat.
vectis ‡, lever.
unguis ‡, nail.

112.—III. Neuters in **e, al, ar,** from stems in *i*, *āl(i–)*, *ār(i–)*: *vectigal* §, (*vectīgāl(i–)*), tribute. But *mare* †, sea, and *rēte* ‡, net.

113.—IV. Adjectives in **er,** or **is** (stem in *i*–), used as nouns, particularly the names of ***months:*** *Octōber* §, October, *familiāris* §, friend, *volucris* §, bird, *aedīlis* ‡, an aedile.

But proper names, such as *Martiālis*, Martial, *Juvenālis*, Juvenal, have *e* always.

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

114.—The accusative plural, masc. or fem., from stems ending in *i*, was generally formed by the best writers in **īs (eis)**, but in later authors, whom most modern editions have followed, *ēs* became the usual form. Thus, *civis*, citizen (*cīui–*), makes *cīvīs* or *cīvēs; urbs*, city (*urb(i–)*), makes *urbīs* or *urbēs*. This holds also for adjectives with *i stems*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

115.—The genitive plural of ***parisyllaba*** (i–stems) regularly ends in **ium;** but *struēs* (*strui–*), heap, *vātēs* (*vāti–*), seer, *canis* (*cani–*), dog, *juvenis* (*juveni–*), a youth, *always* have **um.** *Volucris* (*volucri–*), bird, *apis* (*api–*), bee, *sēdēs* (*sēdi–*), seat, *mensis* (*mensi–*), month, *often* have **um.**

116.—Of ***imparisyllaba*** (*consonant*-stems) which properly have *um*, the following take **ium:**

(1.) Words of more than one syllable ending in the nom. in **ns** or **rs** (stems in *nt(i–)*), or *rt(i–)*), as *cliens* (*client(i–)*), a client, *clientium ; cohors* (*cohort(i–)*), a cohort, *cohortium*. But of these many have *um* in poetry, and *parens* (*parent(i–)*), has *um* in prose also.

117.—(2.) Many nouns in **ās, īs** (stems *āt(i–)*), *īt(i,–)* particularly national names, as *Quirīs* (*Quirīt(i–)*), *Quirītium*, *Arpīnās* (*Arpīnāt(i–)*), *Arpīnātium*. So also in *Optimātēs*, nobles, and *Penātēs*, household gods; and occasionally in other words; as *cīvitās*, state, makes *cīvitātium* often in Livy.

118.—(3.) *Caro*, flesh (st. *caron–*), has *carnium*. (See 97.)

119.—(4.) Monosyllables ending in **s** or **x,** if the stem-syllable be long either by nature or by position: thus *frons* (*frond(i–)*), leaf, *frondium*, *arx*

(*arc(i-)*), citadel, *arcium*, *līs* (*līt(i-)*), law-suit, *lītium*. Also in *nix*, snow, *nivium ; mās*, male, *marium ; strix*, owl, *strigium*, though in these the vowel of the stem is short.

120.—But these, though the stem-syllable is long, take **um**: *vōx* (*vōc-*), voice, *vōcum ; rēx* (*rēg-*), king; *lēx* (*lēg-*), law; *fūr* (*fūr-*), thief; *laus* (*laud-*), praise; *mōs* (*mōs-*), custom; *flōs* (*flōs-*), flower; and the three Greek words, *grȳps* (*grȳph-*), griffin; *lynx* (*lync-*), lynx; *sphinx* (*sphing-*), sphinx.

121.—Many monosyllables do not appear to have been used in the genitive plural. Such are: *cor* (*cord-*), heart, *fax* (*fac-*), torch; *fel* (*fell-*), gall; *glōs* (*glōs-*), sister-in-law; *lac* (*lact-*), milk (no plural); *lūx* (*lūc-*), light; *mel* (*mell-*), honey; *nex* (*nec-*), death; *ōs* (*ōs-*), mouth; *pāx* (*pāc-*), peace; *sōl* (*sōl-*), sun, *vēr* (*vēr-*), spring.

122.—Some plural names of festivals, as *Flōrālia* (*Flōrāli-*), have sometimes the genitive plural in *-āliōrum*, or as if they were of the second declension.

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES FOR DECLENSION.

Acer, -eris, n., *a maple tree* (acer-).
Ætas, -ātis, f., *age* (aetāt-).
Arbor, -oris, f., *a tree* (arbor-).
Ariēs, -etis, m., *a ram* (ariet-).
Ars, -tis, f., *an art* (art(i-)).
Carcer, -eris, m., *a prison* (carcer-).
Cardo, -inis, m., *a hinge* (cardon-).
Carmen, -inis, n., *a poem* (carmen-).
Cervīx, -īcis, f., *the neck* (cervīc-).
Cōdex, -icis, m., *a book* (cōdec-).
Cor, cordis, n., *the heart* (cord-).
Dens, -tis, m., *a tooth* (dent(i-)).
Dōs, dōtis, f., *a dowry* (dōt(i-)).
Frāter, -tris, m., *a brother* (fratr-).
Fūr, fūris, c., *a thief* (fūr-).
Genus, -eris, n., *a kind* (genes-).
Hērēs, -ēdis, c., *an heir* (hērēd-).
Homo, -inis, c., *a man* (homon-).
Lac, -tis, n., *milk* (lact-).
Laus, -dis, f., *praise* (laud-).
Lex, lēgis, f., *a law* (lēg-).
Monīle, -is, n., *a necklace* (monīli-).
Mons, -tis, m., *a mountain* (mont(i-)).
Mūnus, -eris, n., *a gift* (mūnes-).
Nox, noctis, f., *night* (noct(i-)).
Regio, -ōnis, f., *a region* (regiōn-).
Trabs, -abis, f., *a beam* (trab-).
Turris, -is, f., *a tower* (turri-).
Uter, ūtris, m., *a bottle* (ūtri-).
Vulnus, -eris, n., *a wound* (vulnes-).

EXERCISES ON THE EXAMPLES DECLINED IN 88-99.

Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly:—Ducis, ducī, ducum; lapide, lapidem; nepōtum, nepōtis; nivium, nivibus; mīles, mīlitī, mīlitum; obsidēs, obside; virginī, virginēs, virgine; sermōnis, sermōnem, sermōnum; oneris, onus, onera; capitis, capitibus; animālī, animālium, animālia; femoris, femur; turrī, turris; linter, lintris, lintrīs; mare, marī, maribus; carminis, carminum, carminī.

Translate the following words into Latin:—Of a city, with snow, of the consuls, to love, by flowers, of the fathers, to geese, by a burden, of clouds to stones, of wherries, by a head, to a father, the ears of the animal, by the speech of the consul, the laws of the city, by the lightning of the clouds, to the hides of the animals, *ad libitum*.

123.—Some nouns of the third declension are peculiar in different cases, as follows:

JUPITER (Jov–) (104).

Singular.	
N.	Jūpiter,
G.	Jovis,
D.	Jovī,
Ac.	Jovem,
V.	Jūpiter,
Ab.	Jove.

VIS, *force, power*, Fem. (vīs(i–)).

	Singular.		Plural.
N.	vīs,	*N.*	vīrēs,
G.	[vīs],	*G.*	vīrium.
D.	—,	*D.*	vīribus,
Ac.	vim,	*Ac.*	vīrēs,
V.	vīs,	*V.*	vīrēs,
Ab.	vī.	*Ab.*	vīribus.

Bōs, *an ox*, or *cow*, Masc. or Fem. (bov–).

	Singular.		Plural.
N.	bōs,	*N.*	bovēs,
G.	bovis,	*G.*	boum,
D.	bovī,	*D.*	bōbus, *or* būbus,*
Ac.	bovem,	*Ac.*	bovēs,
V.	bōs,	*V.*	bovēs,
Ab.	bove.	*Ab.*	bōbus, *or* būbus.

PECULIARITIES IN THE DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

124.—Nom. sing.—Greek proper names of men in *ōn* have generally the Latin form in *o*, as *Agamemno*, *Solo;* but geographical names retain *ōn*, as *Babylōn*, though of these we find *Croto*, *Frusino*, *Tarraco*, etc.

125.—Gen. sing.—The Greek ending *os* is sometimes found: *Pallas* (*Pallad–*), *Pallados;* *Tēthys* (*Tēthy–*), *Tēthyos;* *Orpheus*, *Orpheos;* *Pān*, *Pānos*. Parisyllaba in *ēs* (proper names) have sometimes *ī* for *is:* *Ulixēs*, *Ulixī* (in poetry, also, *Ulixeī*).

126.—Proper names in ō, like *Dīdō*, generally take ūs in the genitive, and are unaltered in the other cases: *Dīdō*, *Dīdūs*, *Dīdō*. But these are more rarely declined as if with stems ending in *ōn–*: *Dīdō*, *Dīdōnis*, etc.

---

* Contracted for *bovibus*.

127.—Acc. sing.—Many words take **a** for **em**; but in prose writers, for the most part, only proper names and the words *āĕr* (ăer–), air, *aethēr* (aether–), sky. So *Hector*, *Hectora; paeān*, *paeāna; tyrannis*, *tyrannida*.

128.—The ending **im** or **in** is found in a few words: *Charybdis*, *Charybdin; Zeuxis*, *Zeuxin; poēsis*, *poēsim* or *poēsin*.

Proper names in *ēs* have sometimes *ēn: Aeschinēs*, *Aeschinēn*. So *Thalēs* (*Thalēt–*) makes *Thalētem*, *Thalem*, and *Thalēn; Darēs* (*Darēt–*) makes *Darēta* and *Darēn*.

129.—Voc. sing.—In the voc. sing. *s* of the nominative is usually dropped: *Orpheus*, *Orpheu; Pallās* (stem *Pallant–*), *Pallă; Periclēs*, *Periclē*. Yet names in *ēs* sometimes merely shorten the *e: Sŏcratēs*, *Sŏcratē* or *Sŏcrates*.

130.—Abl. sing.—The abl. sing. from proper nouns in *is* (stem *id–*) is rarely found in *ī* for *ide: Daphnis*, *Daphnide*, and *Daphnī*.

131.—The ***nom. voc. acc. plur. neuter*** are found in *ē: epos*, *epē; melos*, *melē*. So also *Tempē*, the vale of *Tempé*. Compare *pelagē* from *pelagus* (70).

132.—The ***nom.*** and ***voc. plur. masc.*** or ***fem.*** are sometimes found in *es* for *ēs: Arcas*, *Arcades*.

133.—The ***acc. plur. masc.*** or ***fem.*** is sometimes found is *as* for *ēs: Cyclōps*, *Cyclōpas*, for *Cyclōpēs; aspis*, *aspidas*, for *aspidēs*.

134.—The ***gen. plur.*** of a few words is found in *ōn: metamorphōsēs*, the name of a poem, *metamorphōseōn; Chalybēs*, *Chalybōn*.

135.—The ***dat.*** and ***abl. plur.*** of words in *–ma* (stem *–mat–*) is generally made in *īs* for *ibus: poēma* (*poēmat–*), *poēmatīs*.

In a few proper names, *si* or *sin* is found: *Trōas* (*Trōad–*), *Trōasin*.

136. GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
S. Lampas,	–adis, *or* –ados,	–adī,	–adem, *or* –ada,	–as,	–ade.
Pl. Lamp-ades,	–adum,	–adibus,	–adēs, *or* –adas,	–ades,	–adibus.
S. Trō-as,	–adis, *or* –ados,	–adī,	–adem, *or* –ada,	–as,	–ade.
Pl. Trō-ades,	–adum,	–adibus, –asi, *or* –asin,	–adēs, *or* adas,	–ades,	–adibus, –asi, *or* –asin.
S. Hērōs,	–ōis,	–ōï	–ōem, *or* ōa,	–ōs,	–ōĕ.
S. Phyll-is,	–idis, *or* –idos,	–idi,	–idem, *or* ida,	–i, *or*–is,	–ide.
S. Par-is,	–idis, *or* –idos,	–idi,	–idem, –im, *or* –in,	–i,	–ide.
S. Chlam-ys,	–ydis, *or* –ydos,	–ydi,	–ydem, *or* –ida,	–ys,	–yde.
S. Cap-ys,	–yis, *or* –yos,	–yi,	–ym, *or* –yn,	–y,	–ye.
S. Hæres-is,	–is. –ios, *or* –eos,	–i,	–im, *or* –in,	–i,	–i.
S. Orph-eus,	–eos, *or* –eī, *or* –ei,	–eī, *or* –ei,	–ea,	–eu,	–eo.
S. Dīd-ō,	–ūs, *or* –ōnis,	–ō, *or* –ōni,	–ō, *or* –ōnem,	–ō,	–o, *or*–ōne

For the rules of gender of words of the third declension, see 151–175.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

137.—The Fourth Declension has two terminations of the nominative singular, *us* and *ū*. Those in *ū* are neuter, those in *us* for the most part masculine.

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Masculine and Feminine. Singular.	Plural.	*Neuter.* Singular.	Plural.
N.	us,	ūs,	ū,	ua,
G.	ūs,	uum,	ūs,	uum,
D.	uī, (ū),	ibus,	ū (uī),	ibus,
Ac.	um,	ūs,	ū,	ua,
V.	us,	ūs,	ū,	ua,
Ab.	ū,	ibus.	ū,	ibus.

Cursus, *course*, Masc. (cursu–).

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	curs**us**,	curs**ūs**,
G.	curs**ūs**,	curs**uum**,
D.	curs**uī**,	curs**ibus**,
Ac.	curs**um**,	curs**ūs**,
V.	curs**us**,	curs**ūs**,
Ab.	curs**ū**,	curs**ibus**.

Thus decline:

Cantus,	*a song.*
Cāsus,	*a fall.*
Currus,	*a chariot.*
Fluctus,	*a wave.*
Gradus,	*a step.*
Senātus,	*the senate.*

Cornu, *a horn*, Neut. (cornu–).

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	corn**ū**,	corn**ua**,
G.	corn**ūs**,	corn**uum**,
D.	corn**ū**,	corn**ibus**,
Ac.	corn**ū**,	corn**ua**,
V.	corn**ū**,	corn**ua**,
Ab.	corn**ū**.	corn**ibus**.

Thus decline:

Genū,	*the knee.*
Pecū,	*cattle.*
Verū,	*a spit.*

Note.—The only neuters in this declension are *cornū*, *gelū*, *genū*, *verū*, and *pecū*, which has the dative *pecuī*: *tonitrus*, *ūs*, m., and *tonitruum*, *ī*, n., thunder, are in common use; *tonitrū* is hardly ever found in classic writers, and never in the nominative or accusative singular.

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Flātus, *a blast.*	Mōtus, *a motion.*	Rītus, *a ceremony.*
Ictus, *a stroke.*	Nūtus, *a nod.*	Sinus, *a bay.*
Manus, f., *the hand.*	Passus, *a pace.*	Situs, *a situation.*

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

138.—The following nouns are feminine, viz.:

Acus, *a needle.*	Fīcus, *a fig.*	Porticus, *a gallery.*
Anus, *an old woman.*	Īdūs, pl., *the Ides.*	Quinquātrūs, pl. *a festival.*
Colus, *distaff.*	Manus, *the hand.*	Specus,* *a den.*
Domus, *a house.*	Penus, *store.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*

Penus has also the stem *peno–*, masc. and neuter, and *penos–*, neut.

PECULIARITIES IN DECLENSION.

139.—The Genitive and Dative Singular:—In some writers, the genitive singular is occasionally found in *uis;* as, *ējus anuis causā*, for *anūs.* Ter., and sometimes also in *ī;* as, *senātī* and *tumultī.* Sall. In others, the dative is sometimes found in *ū*, as, *resistere impetū*, for *impetuī;* to resist an attack.

140.—The Dative and Ablative Plural:—These nouns in *cus* (stem, *cu–*), have *ubus* instead of *ibus* in the dative and abl. plur., acus, *needle*, arcus, *bow*, lacus, *lake*, (quercus, *oak?*) specus, *den;* and also artus, *joint*, partus, *birth*, tribus, *tribe*, verū, *spit.* Sometimes, also, portus, *harbor*, sinus, *bay*, genū, *knee.*

OBSERVATIONS.

141.—1. Nouns of this declension seem to have belonged anciently to the third, and were declined like *grus, gruis;* thus, *cursūs*=*cursuis*, gen. sing., and *cursuēs*, nom. and acc. plur. See 103.

142.—2. Several names of trees of this declension are, in whole or in part, of the second also; such as *Fīcus, laurus, cupressus, myrtus.* The cases ending in *ūs* and *ū* are preferred to those of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m., and the compounds of *manus*, as *ūnimanus, centimanus*, etc., are always of the second.

143.—Jesus, the name of the Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *ū* in all the other oblique cases. This word does not properly belong to this declension, but is after the Greek: Ἰησοῦς, οῦ, οῦ, οῦν, οῦ.

144.—5. Domus, *a house*, Fem., is thus declined (domo–, or domu–).

Singular.	Plural.
N. dom**us**,	*N.* dom**ūs**,
G. dom**ūs**,	*G.* dom**ōrum**, *or* **–uum**,
D. dom**uī**, *or* **ō**,	*D.* dom**ibus**,
Ac. dom**um**,	*Ac.* dom**ūs**, *or* **ōs**,
V. dom**us**,	*V.* dom**ūs**,
Ab. dom**ō**.	*Ab.* dom**ibus**.

* Sometimes masculine and neuter.

There is, besides, the form *domī*, which is a ***locative*** (934), and means "at home." Colus, *f.*, *a distaff*, is declined like domus, having dat. *colō*, abl. *colō* or *colū*, nom. plur. *colūs*, gen. *coluum*, ac. *colōs*, dat. abl. *colibus*.

145.—Several nouns derived from verbs are of this declension, but are found only in the dative or ablative singular, such as *despicātuī*, *ostentuī*, *dērīsuī*; *jussū*, *rogātū*, *monitū*, *mandātū*, *nātū*.

EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

1. *Tell the gender, number, and case of the following words, from the paradigm and additional examples, p. 37, and translate:*

Cursus, cursūs, cursuum, flātibus, flātū, manuum, manibus, nūtū, passuum, passibus, passūs, cornua, tonitribus, verubus, cāsū, currum, curruī, fluctū, fluctibus, cornibus, etc.

2. *Translate the following words into Latin, and tell the gender, number, and case, in which the words are put; viz.:*

Of a course, with the hand, for the hand, of a horn, to a horn, with a horn, from horns, horns, the horns, of the chariot, for a chariot, of chariots, from the waves, for the waves, from his hands, with a nod, etc.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

146.—The Fifth Declension has but one termination of the nominative singular, namely, *ēs*; as, *rēs*, a thing; *diēs*, a day.

All nouns of this declension are ***feminine***, except *diēs*, a day, which is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; and *merīdiēs*, the mid-day, which is masculine in the singular, and wants the plural.

Note.—*Diēs* is fem. in the sing. when it means "a space of time," and often when it means "an appointed day."

1. Dies, *a day* (diē–).

Singular.	Plural.	Terminations: Singular.	Terminations: Plural.
N. di**ēs**,	*N.* di**ēs**,	ēs,	ēs,
G. di**ēī**,	*G.* di**ērum**,	ēī, ē,	ērum,
D. di**ēī**,	*D.* di**ēbus**,	ēī, ē,	ēbus,
Ac. di**em**,	*Ac.* di**ēs**,	em,	ēs,
V. di**ēs**,	*V.* di**ēs**,	ēs,	ēs,
Ab. di**ē**.	*Ab.* di**ēbus**.	ē,	ēbus.

147.—*Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of the fifth declension which have the ***plural*** complete in the best writers. *Speciēs* has the gen. dat. and ab. plur. in later authors; *aciēs*, *effigiēs*, *faciēs*, *seriēs*, and *spēs*, in the plural, have only the nominative, accusative, and vocative; the other nouns of this declension have no plural.

2. Facies, *the face*, Fem. (faciē–).

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:
N. faciēs,	*N.* faciēs,	
G. facieī,	*G.* ——	Aciēs, *an army* (aciē–).
D. facieī,	*D.* ——	Effigiēs, *an image* (effigiē–).
Ac. faciem,	*Ac.* faciēs,	Seriēs, *a series* (seriē–).
V. faciēs,	*V.* faciēs,	Spēs, *hope* (spē–).
Ab. faciē.	*Ab.* ——	

148.—The **e** of the stem of this declension is always ***long,*** except in the acc. sing.; and in the gen. and dat. sing. of *rēs*, *fidēs*, *spēs*, in which it is generally short, being preceded by a consonant.

149.—The poets sometimes make the ***genitive,*** and more rarely the dative singular, in **ē**; as, *fidē* for *fideī*, Ov.: sometimes in **ī**; as, *perniciī* for *perniciēī*, Nep.; and *plēbī* for *plēbeī*, Liv.

150.—Many words of the first declension with stems ending in *ia–*, as *barbaria*, *dūritia*, *luxuria*, have collateral forms in the fifth declension, especially in the nom., acc., and abl. singular, *barbariēs*, *dūritiem*, *luxuriē*.

EXERCISES ON THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

1. *Tell the gender, number, and case of the following nouns, and translate them:*—Diēī, speī, aciem, aciē, facieī, faciēs, diēbus, diērum, diēs, faciem, effigiem, seriēs, rērum, diēbus, diem, etc., *ad libitum.*

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, and tell the gender,* etc.:—The image, of the face, the things, of the army, the hope of the army, a series, of days, to a day, from the days, with the army, to an image, etc.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES ON ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

Tell the gender, declension, case, and number of the following nouns, in the order here mentioned, and give the translation; thus, Pennā, *a noun, feminine, of the first declension, in the ablative singular,* "*with a pen*".

Via, puerī, generō, ventīs, puerōrum, sermo, sedīle, sedīlī, sedīlium, sedīlibus, cursuum, cursūs, sellæ, tubam, regnō, templī, diēs, rērum, capite, capitum, itineribus, partis, parentibus, rūpe, urbīs, vulpem, vulpibus, parente, sedīlia, diē, colōrem, mīlitis, mīlitibus, sermōnēs, honōre, manus, manūs,

manibus, faciem, āla, tubam, mensārum, bellum, dominōrum, templum, puerōrum, bella, bellō, etc.*

Translate the following into Latin, and state the gender, declension, case, and number, always following the same order; thus, "Of boys," puerōrum, a noun, masculine, of the second declension, in the genitive plural:

From the way, to a speech, with a part, of a seat, of seats, to the wind, a kingdom, to a boy, of boys, with lords, foxes, of tables, to parents, with seats, of soldiers, from the head, heads, to a part, with a trumpet, in a time of war, the time, of color, in a journey, to a seat, of a rock, to sons-in-law, with fruit, of the face, with a seat, to tables, of rocks, etc.

GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

151.—The rules for gender in this declension admit so many exceptions that it is thought best to state the chief exceptions in memorial lines borrowed from Dr. Kennedy's Latin Grammar, which can easily be learned by heart. Beneath each rule the words quoted are translated and their stems given.

152.— First Principal Rule.

Masculīs inscrītur
Quod claudit **o, or, os,** vel **er.**
Et nōmen dēsinens in **es,**
Sī flectit cāsūs imparēs.

Exceptions.

153.—(1.) Illa fēminīna sunt
In **-do** et **-go** quae dēsinunt:
Sed masculīna manent *cardo,*
Ligo, ordo, atque, *margo.*

[*Cardon-*, hinge; *ligōn-*, mattock; *ordon-*, rank; *margon-*, rim.]

154.—(2.) Sunt in **-io** fēminīna:
Tantum illa masculīna,
Quae vel oculīs spectābis,
Vel tū manibus tractābis.
(3.) *Caro* (*carnis*), māvult sē
Fēminīnīs addere.
(*caron-*, flesh).

---

* The following are the words used in these exercises; the declension is indicated by the stem, according to 45.

Āla, *wing*, āla-.
Bellum, *war*, bello-.
Caput, *head*, caput-.
Color, *color*, colōr-.
Diēs, *day*, diē-.
Dominus, *lord*, domino-.
Faciēs, *face*, faciē-.
Fructus, *fruit*, fructu-.
Gener, *son-in-law*, genero-.
Honor, *honor*, honōr-.
Iter, *way*, itiner-, *n.*
Manus, *hand*, manu-.
Mensa, *table*, mensa-.
Mīles, *soldier*, mīlet-.
Parens, *parent*, parent(i)-.
Pars, *part*, part(i-).
Puer, *boy*, puero-.
Regnum, *kingdom*, regno-.
Rēs, *thing*, rē-.
Rūpēs, *rock*, rūpi-.
Sedīle, *seat*, sedīli-.
Sella, *seat*, sella-.
Sermo, *speech*, sermōn-.
Templum, *temple*, templo-.
Tempus, *time*, tempos-.
Tuba, *trumpet*, tuba-.
Urbs, *city*, urb(i)-.
Ventus, *wind*, vento-.
Via, *way*, via-.
Vulpēs, *fox*, vulpi-.

155.—(4.) Neutra pauca sunt in **or,**
Aequor, *ador*, *marmor*, *cor;*
Fēminīnum est *arbor.*

[*Aequor–*, sea; *ador–*, spelt; *marmor–*, marble; *cord–*, heart; *arbor–*, tree.]

156.—(5.) Fēminīna *cōs* et *dōs*,
Neutra sunt utrumque *os.*

[*cōt–*, whet-stone; *dōt–*, dowry; *ōs–*, mouth; *oss–*, bone.]

157.—(6.) Neutra multa sunt in **er,**
Verber, *siler*, *acer*, *vēr*,
Tūber, *ūber*, et *cadāver*,
Piper, *iter*, et *papāver.*

[*Verber–*, blow; *siler–*, willow; *acer–*, maple; *vēr–*, spring; *tūber–*, swelling; *ūber–*, udder; *cadāver–*, corpse; *piper–*, pepper; *iter–* (*itiner–*), journey; *papāver–*, poppy.]

158.—(7.) *Aes* est neutrum; sex in **es,**
Quae flectunt cāsūs imparēs
Fēminīna, *compes*, *teges*,
Mercēs, *merges*, *quiēs*, *seges.*

[*Aes–*, copper; *comped*(*i–*), fetter; *teget–*, mat; *mercēd–*, wages; *merget–*, sheaf; *quiēt–*, rest; *seget–*, crop.]

Second Principal Rule.

159.—Fēminīnīs inserās
Quae claudunt **is, x, aus,** et **as.**
S cum consonante nexa,
Es aequāliter inflexa.

160.— *Exceptions.*

(1.) Multa sunt quae claudit **is**
Masculīnī generis,
Amnis, *axis*, *callis*, *collis*,
Caulis, *cucumis* et *follis*,
Fascis, *fūnis*, *fustis*, *fīnis*,
Ignis, *orbis*, atque *crīnis*,
Pānis, *piscis*, *postis*, *ensis*,
Sentis, *corbis*, *torquis*, *mensis*,
Torris, *unguis*, et *canālis*,
Vectis, *vermis*, et *sodālis*,
Cassis, *cinis*, *glīs* et *anguis*,
Lapis, *pulvis*, atque *sanguis.*

[*Amni–*, river; *axi–*,* axle; *calli–*,* path; *colli–*, hill; *cauli–*, stalk; *cucumer–*, cucumber; *folli–*, bellows; *fasci–*, bundle; *fūni–*,* rope; *fusti–*, club; *fīni–*,* end; *igni–*, fire; *orbi–*, globe; *crīni–*, hair; *pāni–*, bread; *pisci–*, fish; *posti–*, post; *ensi–*, sword; *senti–*,* path; *corbi–*, basket; *torqui–*,* collar; *mensi–*, month; *torri–*, brand; *ungui–*, nail; *canāli–*, channel; *vecti–*, lever; *vermi–*, worm; *sodāli–*, comrade; *cassi–*, snare; *ciner–*, ash; *glīr–*, dormouse, *angui–*,* snake; *lapid–*, stone; *pulver–*, dust; *sanguin–*, blood. Those marked * are also found used as feminines.]

162.—(2.) Plēraque quae claudit **ex**
Masculīna sunt, ut *grex;*
Sed fēminīna manent *nex*,
Supellex, *īlex*, *cārex*, *lēx.*

[*Greg–*, flock; *nec–*, death; *suppellec–*(*til–*), furniture; *īlec–*, holm-oak; *cārec–*, rush; *lēg–*, law.]

163.—(3.) Masculīna sunt in **ix**
Fornix, *phoenīx* et *calix.*

[*Fornic–*, arch; *phoenīc–*, phœnix; *calic–*, cup.]

164.—(4.) Masculīna sunt in **ās**
Vās (*vadis*), *gigās*, *elephās.*
As (*assis*), *mās* et *adamās.*
Neutra *vās* (*vāsis*), *nefās*, *fās.*

[*Vad–*, surety; *gigant–*, giant; *ele-*

phant–, elephant; *ass–*, pound of copper; *mas–*, male; *adamant–*, diamond; *vās–*, vessel; *nefās*, wrong; *fās*, right.]

165.—(5.) **Masculinis adde *mons*,**
Fons et *torrens*, *grȳps* et *pons*.
Rudens, *hȳdrōps*, *dens* et *bidens*,
Oriens, *occidens* et *tridens*.

[*Mont*(*i*–), mountain; *font*(*i*–), fountain; *torrent*(*i*–), torrent; *grȳph–*, griffin; *pont*(*i*–), bridge; *rudent*(*i*–), rope; *hȳdrōp–*, dropsy; *dent*(*i*–), tooth; *bident*(*i*–), pitchfork; (but *bident*(*i*–), animal for sacrifice, is *fem.*); *orient–*, east; *occident–*, west; *trident*(*i*–), trident.]

167.—(6.) **Masculina sunt in ēs**
verrēs et *acīnăces*.

[*Verri–*, boar-pig; *acinaci–*, scimitar.]

Third Principal Rule.

168.—Neutra claudunt **a** et **e**, | **ar, ur, us, c, l, n,** et **t.**

Exceptions.

169.—(1.) **Masculina sunt in ur**
Furfur, *vultur*, *turtur*, *fūr*.

[*Furfur–*, bran; *vultur–*, vulture; *turtur–*, turtle-dove; *fūr–*, thief.]

170.—(2.) **Masculina sunt in us**
Lepus (*leporis*) et *mūs*.

[*Lepos–*, hare; *mūs–*, mouse.]

171.—(3.) Fēminīna sunt **in ūs**
Virtūs, **atque** *servitūs*,
Juventūs, *incūs*, atque *palūs*,
senectūs, *tellūs* **atque** *salūs*;
Quibus longa manet ***u***
In genitīvī transitū.

[*Virtūt–*, virtue; *servitūt–*, slavery; *juventūt–*, youth; *palūd–*, marsh; *senectūt–*, old age; *tellūr–*, earth; *salūt–*, health.]

172.—(4.) Est et *pecus* (*pecudis.*)
Fēminīnī generis.

[*pecud–*, a head of cattle.]

173.—(5.) **Mascula in l sunt** *mūgil*,
consul, *sāl*, *sōl*, atque *pugil*.

[*mūgil–*, mullet; *consul–*, consul; *sal–*, salt; *sōl–*, sun; *pugil–*, boxer.]

174.—(6.) **Masculina sunt** *rēn*,
splēn,
Pecten, *delphīn*, *attagēn*.

[*rēn–*, kidney; *splēn–*, spleen; *pecten–*, comb; *delphīn–*, dolphin; *attagēn–*, heath-fowl.]

175.—(7.) Fēminīna sunt in *on*.
Gorgōn, *sindon*, *halcyōn*.

[*Gorgon–*, gorgon; *sindon–*, linen; *halcyon–*, king-fisher.

DOUBLE OR COMPOUND NOUNS.

176.—There are a few nouns which are made up of two nouns of different declensions. In these—

(1.) If two nominatives combine, both parts are declined, and then they are often printed separately, as *rēspublica*, or *rēs publica*.

(2.) If a nominative combines with an oblique case, the noun in the

nominative only is declined, as *paterfamiliās*, father of a family. These also are sometimes printed separately.

RESPUBLICA, *a commonwealth*, Fem. (rē-publica-.)

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	rēspublica,	*N.*	rēspublicae,
G.	reīpublicae,	*G.*	rērumpublicārum,
D.	reīpublicae,	*D.*	rēbuspublicīs,
Ac.	rempublicam,	*Ac.*	rēspublicās,
V.	rēspublica,	*V.*	rēspublicae,
Ab.	rēpublicā.	*Ab.*	rēbuspublicīs.

JŪSJURANDUM, *an oath*, Neut. (jūs-jūrando-).

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	jūsjūrandum,	*N.*	jūrajūranda,
G.	jūrisjūrandī,	*G.*	————
D.	jūrījūrandō,	*D.*	————
Ac.	jūsjūrandum,	*Ac.*	jūrajūranda,
V.	jūsjūrandum,	*V.*	jūrajūranda.
Ab.	jūrejūrandō.	*Ab.*	————

MATERFAMILIAS, *a mistress of a family*, Fem. (mātr-familiās.)

Singular.	
N.	māterfamiliās,
G.	mātrisfamiliās,
D.	mātrīfamiliās,
Ac.	mātremfamiliās,
V.	māterfamiliās,
Ab.	mātrefamiliās.

Here, *familiās* is an old form of the genitive (54), and is governed by *māter*. So, *Pater-familiās*, *fīlius-familiās*, *fīlia-familiās*. Pl. *mātrēs-familiārum*, etc. In this way, *familiae* is used as well as *familiās*.

IRREGULAR OR ANOMALOUS NOUNS.

Some nouns are ***defective***, *i. e.*, want some of their parts.

A. Nouns defective in number, *i. e.*, such as are used only in one number.

177.—I. Only in the singular (**singulāria tantum**).

(1.) Proper names, as *Cæsar*, *Italia*, *Rōma*. These are used in the plural—

(*a*) If there are several individuals of the same name: as *trēs Scīpiōnēs*, three men named Scipio.

(*b*.) If they are used as common nouns: *Cicerōnēs*, orators like Cicero.

(2.) Abstract nouns: *pietās*, piety; *justitia*, justice. Yet these are sometimes found in the plural, if they are conceived as attributes of several individuals: *amōrēs*, loves; *odia*, hatreds.

(3.) Collective nouns: *vulgus*, *plēbs*, the common people.

(4.) Material nouns: *aes*, bronze; *ferrum*, iron. But such words are sometimes used in the plural to denote things made of the material, as *aera*, statues of bronze; *ligna*, logs of wood.

(5.) Some separate words, as *album*, list; *mundus*, female ornament.

178.—II. Only in the plural (**plūrālia tantum**).

(1.) Many names of cities, groups of islands, mountains, etc.: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Alpēs*, the Alps; *Baleārēs*, the Balearic Islands.

(2.) Names of festivals, as indicating the several games or sacrifices which together made up the festival: *Latīnae*, *Sāturnālia*, *Terminālia*.

(3.) Some common nouns only applicable to classes: *mājōrēs*, ancestors; *līberī*, children; *posterī*, descendants.

(4.) Many separate words: *arma*, arms; *argūtiae*, shrewdness; *dīvitiae*, riches; *insidiae*, ambush; *moenia*, walls; *mānēs*, shades of the dead; *rēliquiae*, remnant; *Īdūs*, the Ides; *Nōnae*, the Nones.

179.—III. ***Heterological Nouns.*** There are many nouns which are used with one meaning in the singular, and another in the plural. Thus:

Singular.	Plural.
Aedēs, *a temple.*	Aedēs, (1) *a house*, (2) *temples.*
Aqua, *water.*	Aquae, (1) *waters*, (2) *mineral springs.*
Auxilium, *assistance.*	Auxilia, *auxiliary troops.*
Bonum, *any thing good.*	Bona, *goods*, *property.*
Carcer, *a prison.*	Carcerēs, *the barriers of a race-course.*
Castrum, *a fort.*	Castra, *a camp.*
Comitium, *a place in the Roman* forum *where the comitia were held.*	Comitia, *an assembly of the people for the purpose of voting.*
Cōpia, *plenty.*	Cōpiæ, *troops.*
Facultās, *power*, *ability.*	Facultātēs, *wealth*, *property.*
Fascis, *a bundle of twigs*, *a fagot.*	Fascēs, *a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrate of Rome.*
Fīnis, *the end of any thing.*	Fīnēs, *borders*, *territory.*
Fortūna, *fortune.*	Fortūnæ, *an estate*, *possessions.*
Grātia, *grace*, *favor.*	Grātiæ, *thanks.*
Hortus, *a garden.*	Hortī, (1) *gardens*, (2) *pleasure-grounds.*

Singular.	Plural.
Litera, *a letter of the alphabet.*	Literæ, (1) *a letter, epistle,* (2) *letters,* (3) *literature.*
Nātālis, *a birth-day.*	Nātālēs, *birth, descent.*
Opera, *labor.*	Operae, *workmen.*
Opis (genitive), *help.*	Opēs, *wealth, power.*
Pars, *a part, portion.*	Partēs, (1) *parts,* (2) *a party, faction.*
Principium, *a beginning, a first principle,* or *element.*	Principia, *a place in the camp where the general's tent stood.*
Rostrum, *the beak of a bird, the sharp part of the prow of a ship.*	Rostra, *a stage in the Roman forum, from which orators used to address the people.*
Sal, *salt.*	Salēs, *witticisms.*

Observe that some of these words have in the plural a meaning corresponding to that of the singular, as well as a different meaning.

B. Nouns defective in case: *i. e.*, nouns which want some of their cases.

A noun used in one case only, is sometimes called a *monoptote;* in two cases, a *diptote;* in three, a *triptote;* in four, a *tetraptote;* in five, a *pentaptote.* An indeclinable word is called an *aptote.* These words are derived from the Greek numerals and the word πτωτο-, *declined.*

180.—I. Many neuters are used only in their three ***similar cases,*** *nom., voc., ac.*

(1.) Greek nouns ending in *os: epŏs,* epic poem; *melos,* strain; plural, *epē, melē.*

(2.) Some Latin nouns (*singulāria tantum*): *fās,* right; *nefās,* wrong; *instar,* image; *nihil* (*nīl*), nothing.

181.—II. Many other nouns are used in the singular throughout, but are found only in the ***similar cases*** of the plural, *nom., voc., ac.: collum,* neck; *fār,* corn; *fel,* gall; *mel,* honey; *pāx,* peace; *pix,* pitch; *rūs,* the country, and most words of the fifth declension (147), with some of the fourth, as *metus,* fear.

182.—III. There are several more words which are defective in case, the chief of which are given in the following list. The cases found in use are noted by the letters *N., G., D., A., Ab.* ***before*** the word, for the singular, and ***after*** the word for the plural. The words are given in their stems in order that there may be no possibility of mistake about the declension. A * placed *before* or *after* a word implies that the singular or the plural is found throughout.

Ab. ambāg–, **f. winding.*
A. Ab. cassi–, **m. net.*
Ab. comped(i–), **f. fetter.*
G. D. A. Ab. dap–, **f. feast.*
G. D. A. Ab. diciōn–, *f. sway.*
Ab. fauc(i–), **f. throat.*
fora–,[1] *f. A. D. Ab., door.*
N. Ab. fort–, *f. chance.*
G. D. A. Ab. frūg–, **f. fruit.*
N. glōs–, *f. sister-in-law.*
grāt–, *f. N. A. Ab., thanks.*
incita–,[2] *A. standstill.*
infitia–,[3] *A. denial.*
ingrātia–, *Ab. unwillingness.*
N. inquiēt–, *f. unrest.*
Ab. jūger–, *D. Ab. acre.*
N. A. Ab. lui–, *f. pestilence* (n. s. *luēs*).
N. A. Ab. māni–, *n. morning* (Ab. *māne*).
G. nauco–, *n. trifle.*
Ab. obec–, **c. barrier.*
G. A. Ab. op–, **f. help.*
Ab. pondo–, *pound.*
A. Ab. prec–, **f. prayer.*
N. A. senti–, *m. N. Ab. thorn*
A. Ab. sordi–, **f. filth.*
G. Ab. spont–, *f. choice.*
D. A. vēnu–, *m.* vēno–, *n. sale.*
G. A. Ab. vic–, *f. N. D. A. Ab. change.*
N. A. Ab. vīs(i–), **f. force.*

C. Nouns defective in declension: *i. e.*, indeclinable nouns.

183.—(1.) The names of the letters of the alphabet: *alpha*, *bēta*, etc.

(2.) Words used as nouns without really being so: as, *triste illud* vale, that sad word, *farewell.*

(3.) *Secus*, sex, and *sēmis*, half, used as an adjective.

(4.) Some foreign names, as *Jācob*, *Gabriel* (but these have sometimes Latinized forms, *Jacōbus*, and are declined). *Jēsus* has *Jēsum* in the acc. and *Jēsū* in other cases.

184.—Some nouns are variable: *i. e.*, have some of their cases differing either in ***declension*** or in ***gender*** from others.

Nouns variable in declension are those which form some of their cases from more than one stem. These are called ***heteroclites*** (from ἑτερο–, another; κλιτο–, declined).

Nouns variable in gender are those which are of different genders in some of their cases. These are called ***heterogeneous*** (ἑτερο–, another; γενες–, gender.

185.—I. ***Heteroclite Nouns.***

(1.) Several nouns belong to the second and fourth declensions, partic-

---

[1] Only used in a locative sense: *to, at,* or *from the doors.*
[2] Only used in the phrase *ad incitās* (or *ad incita*) *redigere*, "to reduce to extremities."
[3] Only used in connection with *īre*, *infitiās īre*, "to deny."

ularly names of trees: as *cupressus*, cypress; *pīnus*, pine (142). Some nouns of the fourth declension have rarely a gen. in *ī; senātus*, senate; *tumultus*, tumult; *sumptus*, expense.

(2.) Jūgerum (jūgero–, n.), *acre*, has some forms of the third decl. (from *jūger–*, 182).

(3.) Vās (vās–, n.), *a vessel*, has the plural of the second decl. (vāso–, n.).

(4.) Names of festivals, as *Bacchānālia* (*Bacchānāli–*), have sometimes the gen. plur. in *ōrum*, as if from a stem in *o*. (122).

(5.) Requiēs (requiēt–), *rest*, has sometimes the acc. and abl. sing. *requiem*, *requiē*, of the fifth decl.

(6.) Many nouns of the third decl. (*i*-stems) have the nom. sing. in *ēs*, as if of the fifth decl.: *nūbēs*, cloud; and some have this along with the regular form in *is*: *fēlēs* and *fēlis*, cat; *vulpēs* and *vulpis*, fox: *famēs*, hunger, has also the abl. sing. *famē*. Also, *plēb–*, the commonalty, has sometimes the nom. gen. dat. sing. of the fifth decl.

(7.) Many nouns of the first declension have forms also of the fifth (150): *barbaria* and *barbariēs*, barbarism; *mollitia* and *mollitiēs*, softness.

186.—II. *Heterogeneous Nouns.*

Some nouns adopt either regularly or generally a different gender in the plural from that of the singular. Some of these are also *heteroclite*. The chief of these are:

Singular.	Plural.
jocus, m. jest.	*jocī*, m. and *joca*, n.
locus, m. place.	*locī*, m. (topics, passages) and *loca*, n. (places).
sībilus, m. hissing.	*sībilī*, m. and (poetic) *sībila*, n.
carbasus, f. canvas.	*carbasa*, n. (rarely *carbasī*, m.).
margarīta, f. pearl.	*margarītae*, f. and *margarīta*, n.
caelum, n. heaven.	*caelī*, m.
frēnum, n. rein.	*frēnī*, m. and *frēna*, n.
rastrum, n. rake.	*rastrī*, m. and *rastra*, n.
epulum, n. festival.	*epulae*, f. banquet.
balneum, n. bath.	*balneae*, f. and later *balnea*, n.

187.—Also the following proper names have neuter forms in the plural:

Dindymus, m. *a hill in Phrygia;* Ismarus, m. *a hill in Thrace.*
Maenalus, m. *a mountain in Arcadia;* Pangæus, m. *a mountain in Thrace.*
Tartarus, m. *hell;* Tāygetus, m. *a mountain in Laconia;* Pergamus, f. *the citadel of Troy.*

188.—Some nouns have two forms of different genders or declensions, or both. Thus:

> *cōnātus* (*cōnātu–*, m.), and *cōnātum* (*cōnāto–*, n.), attempt.
> *menda* (*menda–*, f.), and *mendum* (*mendo–*, n.), fault.
> *clipeus* (*clipeo–*, m. and rarely n.), shield.
> *baculum* (*baculo–*, n. and rarely m.), staff.
> *callum* (*callo–*, n. and rarely m.), callosity.

THE ADJECTIVE.

189.—An ADJECTIVE is a word used to qualify a substantive; as, *vir* BONUS, a GOOD man; DECEM *nāvēs*, TEN ships.

A noun is qualified by an adjective when the object named is thereby *described*, *limited*, or *distinguished* from other things of the same name.

1. The ***accidents*** of the adjective are *gender*, *number*, and *case*, and, of most adjectives, also *comparison.*

2. Adjectives, in Latin, indicate the gender, number, and case, by the termination; as, *bon-us*, *bon-a*, *bon-um.*

3. ***Participles*** have the *form* and *declension* of adjectives, while, in *time* and *signification*, they belong to the verb.

4. Some adjectives denote each gender by a different termination in the nominative, and consequently have ***three terminations.*** Some have one form common to the masculine and feminine, and are adjectives of ***two terminations;*** and some are adjectives of ***one termination,*** which is common to all genders.

5. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

6. Adjectives of ***three*** terminations (except thirteen), are of the ***first*** and ***second*** declensions; but those of ***one*** or ***two*** terminations, are of the ***third.***

Exc. Thirteen adjectives in **er**, of three terminations, are of the third declension. (See 198.)

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

190.—Adjectives of the ***first*** and ***second*** declensions have the masculine always in **us** or **er**; the feminine always in *a*, and the neuter always in *um*; as, masculine *bonus*, feminine *bona*, neuter *bonum*, good.

The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*, and in *er* like *puer* or *liber;* the feminine in *a*, like *penna;* and the neuter in *um*, like *regnum:* thus,

1. Bonus, bona, bonum, *good* (bono- *m.* or *n.*, bona- *f.*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bon**us**,	**a**,	**um**,	bon**ī**,	**æ**,	**a**,
G.	bon**ī**,	**æ**,	**ī**,	bon**ōrum**,	**ārum**,	**ōrum**,
D.	bon**ō**,	**æ**,	**ō**,	bon**īs**,	**īs**,	**īs**,
Ac.	bon**um**,	**am**,	**um**,	bon**ōs**,	**ās**,	**a**,
V.	bon**e**,	**a**,	**um**,	bon**ī**,	**æ**,	**a**,
Ab.	bon**ō**,	**ā**,	**ō**.	bon**īs**,	**īs**,	**īs**.

In the same manner decline:

Altus, *high.*	Cavus, *hollow.*	Lætus, *joyful.*
Amplus, *large.*	Doctus, *learned.*	Plēnus, *full.*
Blandus, *flattering.*	Dūrus, *hard.*	Prīvātus, *private.*
Cārus, *dear.*	Fīdus, *faithful.*	Rectus, *right.*

Also all participles, numerals, and pronouns, in *us;* as, *amātus*, *amātūrus*, *amandus*,—*prīmus*, *secundus*, etc.—*meus*, *tuus*, *suus*.

Note.—*Meus* has *mī* in the vocative masculine, seldom *meus*.

2. Tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender* (tenero–, *m.* or *n.*, tenera–, *f.*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	tener,	**a**,	**um**,	tener**ī**,	**æ**,	**a**,
G.	tener**ī**,	**æ**,	**ī**,	tener**ōrum**,	**ārum**,	**ōrum**
D.	tener**ō**,	**æ**,	**ō**,	tener**īs**,	**īs**,	**īs**,
Ac.	tener**um**,	**am**,	**um**,	tener**ōs**,	**ās**,	**a**,
V.	tener,	**a**,	**um**,	tener**ī**,	**æ**,	**a**,
Ab.	tener**ō**,	**ā**,	**ō**.	tener**īs**,	**īs**,	**īs**.

In the same manner decline:

Asper, *rough.*	Miser, *wretched.*	Lacer, *mangled.*
Līber, *free.*	Prosper, *prosperous.*	Satur, *full* (satura, saturum).

Also, compounds derived from *gero* and *fero;* as, *lāniger*, bearing wool; *opifer*, bringing help. But *asper* sometimes is declined like *āter*.

But most adjectives in *er* lose the *e* in all the genders, i. e. the *e* does not belong to the stem, but is only euphonically inserted in the nom. sing. (See 60.)

3, ATER, ATRA, ATRUM, *black* (ātro–, *m.* or *n.*, ātra–, *f.*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	āter,	ātra,	ātrum,	ātrī,	ātrae,	ātra,
G.	ātrī,	ātrae,	ātrī,	ātrōrum,	ātrārum,	ātrōrum,
D.	ātrō,	ātrae,	ātrō,	ātrīs,	ātrīs,	ātrīs,
Ac.	ātrum,	ātram,	ātrum,	ātrōs,	ātrās,	ātra,
V.	āter,	ātra,	ātrum,	ātrī,	ātrae,	ātra,
Ab.	ātrō,	ātrā,	ātrō.	ātrīs,	ātrīs,	ātrīs.

In like manner decline:

Æger, *sick.*	Macer, *lean.*	Sacer, *sacred.*
Crēber, *frequent.*	Pulcer, *fair.*	Sinister, *left.*

Dexter, right, has *dextra*, *dextrum ;* or *dextera*, *dexterum.*

191.—4. The following adjectives have the genitive singular in **īus**, and the dative in **ī ;** namely,

Alius, *another of many.*	Sōlus, *alone.*
Alter (altero–), *the other of two.*	Tōtus, *whole*
Alteruter, *the one or other.*	Ullus, *any.*
Neuter, *neither.*	Unus, *one.*
Nullus, *none.*	Uter (utro–), *whether.*

And the compounds of *uter*, *uterlibet*, *utervīs*, which of the two you please, *uterque* each, in which the syllables *libet*, *vīs*, *que*, are attached to each form of *uter*.

In the other cases, they are like *bonus*, *tener*, or *āter ;* as,

TŌTUS, TŌTA, TŌTUM, *whole.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	tōtus,	a,	um,	tōtī,	ae,	a,
G.	tōtīus,	īus,	īus,	tōtōrum,	ārum,	ōrum,
D.	tōtī,	ī,	ī,	tōtīs,	īs,	īs,
Ac.	tōtum,	am,	um,	tōtōs,	ās,	a,
V.	tōte,	a,	um,	tōtī,	ae,	a,
Ab.	tōtō,	ā,	ō.	tōtīs,	īs,	īs.

Alteruter is sometimes declined in both its parts, and sometimes only in the latter, thus: genitive, *alterius utrīus*, or *alterutrīus*.

192.—The ending *īus* in the genitive of these words (except, perhaps, *alter*) is always to be read in prose with ī. But all of them, with the exception of *alius*, are often found short in poetry. *Alīus* has ī, because there

is in it a double contraction. Thus, the stem being *alio-*, we have first *alio-ius*, then *aliius*, and lastly *alius*. The neuter *nom.* and *acc. sing.* of alius is *aliud*, and the *dat. sing.* is *aliī*.

Some of these adjectives are occasionally found with the common endings in the genitive and dative. Cicero has *aliae pecudis*, Cæsar has *alterae legiōnī*, and *nullō consiliō* (dat.).

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

193.—Rule 1. Adjectives of the ***third*** declension have **e** or **ī** in the ablative singular; but if the neuter is in *e*, the ablative has **ī** only. (194.) For the acc., pl., see 114.

Rule 2. The genitive plural ends in **ium**, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in **ia.**

Exc. Except comparatives, which have **um** and **a.** (195, 196.)

I. *Adjectives of* ***one*** *termination* (***consonant***-stems).

1. Felix, *happy* (fēlīc(i–)).

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	fēlīx (=cs),	fēlīx,	fēlīx,	*N.*	fēlīc**ēs**,	**ēs**,	**ia**,
G.	fēlīc**is**,	**is**,	**is**,	*G.*	fēlīc**ium**,	**ium**,	**ium**,
D.	fēlīc**ī**,	**ī**,	**ī**,	*D.*	fēlīc**ibus**,	**ibus**,	**ibus**,
Ac.	fēlīc**em**,	**em**,	fēlīx,	*Ac.*	fēlīc**ēs**,	**ēs**,	**ia**,
V.	fēlīx,	fēlīx,	fēlīx,	*V.*	fēlīc**ēs**,	**ēs**,	**ia**,
Ab.	fēlīc**e** *or* **ī**,	**e** *or* **ī**,	**e** *or* **ī**.	*Ab.*	fēlīc**ibus**,	**ibus**,	**ibus**,

In like manner decline:

Ferōx, *bold.*	Supplex, *suppliant.*	Trux, –ucis, *cruel.*
Sagāx, *sagacious.*	Tenāx, *tenacious.*	Vēlōx, –ōcis, *swift.*

2. Prudens, *prudent* (prūdent(i–)).

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	prūdens (=ts),	prūdens,	prūdens,
G.	prūdent**is**,	prūdent**is**,	prūdent**is**,
D.	prūdent**ī**,	prūdent**ī**,	prūdent**ī**,
Ac.	prūdent**em**,	prūdent**em**,	prūdens,
V.	prūdens,	prūdens,	prūdens,
Ab.	prūdent**e**, *or* **ī**.	prūdent**e**, *or* **ī**.	prūdent**e**, *or* **ī**.

	Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	prūdent**ēs**,	prūdent**ēs**,	prūdent**ia**,
G.	prūdent**ium**,	prūdent**ium**,	prūdent**ium**,
D.	prūdent**ibus**,	prūdent**ibus**,	prūdent**ibus**,
Ac.	prūdent**ēs**,	prūdent**ēs**,	prūdent**ia**,
V.	prūdent**ēs**,	prūdent**ēs**,	prūdent**ia**,
Ab.	prūdent**ibus**.	prūdent**ibus**.	prūdent**ibus**.

In like manner decline:

Clēmens, -tis, *gentle.* Ingens, *great.* Recens, *fresh.*

Also all participles in *ns;* as, *amans*, *docens*, *legens*, *audiens*, etc.

Note.—Participles have **e** oftener than **i** in the ablative singular, and in the ablative absolute they have **e** only.

194.—In adjectives of one ending the ***ablative*** is much more commonly found in **ī** than in **e**. The following, however, have **e** always: *compos* (*compot–*), possessing; *dēses* (*dēsed–*), sluggish; *pauper* (*pauper–*), poor; *princeps* (*princep–*), foremost; *pūbēs* (*pūber–*), adult; *sospes* (*sospet–*), safe; *superstes* (*superstet–*), surviving; and almost always *āles* (*ālet–*), winged; *dīves* (*dīvet–*), rich; commonly, too, *vetus* (*vetes–*), old; *ūber* (*ūber–*), fertile. On the contrary, *pār* (*par–*), equal, and *memor* (*memor–*), mindful, always have **ī**.

195.—The ***neuter plural*** (ia) is formed only from those adjectives of one termination whose stems end in *ant–*, *ent–*, *āt–*, *ert–*, *ord–*, *āc–*, *īc–*, *ōc–* (e. g. *elegans*, *sapiens*, *Lārīnās*, *sollers*, *concors*, *tenāx*, *fēlīx*, *ferōx*), and from numeral adjectives in *plex–*, such as *simplex*, *duplex;* and from the following: *anceps* (*ancipit–*), two-sided; *praeceps* (*praecipit–*), steep; *locuplēs* (*locuplēt–*), rich; *pār* (*par–*), equal; and in later writers a few others. *Vetus* has *vetera.*

196.—The ***genitive plural*** has **um** in those adjectives which have *e* in the ablative sing. (194). Also, *memor*, mindful, *cicur*, tame, and compounds in *ceps* (like *anceps*, *ancipit–*). But *plus*, more, and its compound *complūrēs*, have *ium.*

II. *Adjectives of **two** terminations* (chiefly **I**-stems).

8. Mītis, mīte, *meek* (mīti–).

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	mīt**is**,	**is**,	**e**,	*N.*	mīt**ēs**,	**ēs**,	**ia**,
G.	mīt**is**,	**is**,	**is**,	*G.*	mīt**ium**,	**ium**,	**ium**,
D.	mīt**ī**,	**ī**,	**ī**,	*D.*	mīt**ibus**,	**ibus**,	**ibus**,
Ac.	mīt**em**,	**em**,	**e**,	*Ac.*	mīt**ēs**,	**ēs**,	**ia**,
V.	mīt**is**,	**is**,	**e**,	*V.*	mīt**ēs**,	**ēs**,	**ia**,
Ab.	mīt**ī**,	**ī**,	**ī**.	*Ab.*	mīt**ibus**,	**ibus**,	**ibus**.

In the same manner decline:

Agilis, *active.*	Dēbilis, *weak.*	Tālis, *such.*
Brevis, *short.*	Incolumis, *safe.*	Ūtilis, *useful.*

197. 4. *Comparative Degree,*—Mītior, mītius, *more meek* (mītiōr–).

	Singular. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Plural. Masc.	Fem.	Ne
N.	mītior,	mītior,	mītius,	*N.*	mītiōr**ēs,**	**ēs,**	**a,**
G.	mītiōr**is,**	**is,**	**is,**	*G.*	mītiōr**um,**	**um,**	**ur**
D.	mītiōr**ī,**	**ī,**	**ī,**	*D.*	mītiōr**ibus,**	**ibus,**	**ib**
Ac.	mītiōr**em,**	**em,**	mītius,	*Ac.*	mītiōr**ēs,**	**ēs,**	**a,**
V.	mītior,	mītior,	mītius,	*V.*	mītiōr**ēs,**	**ēs,**	**a,**
Ab.	mītiōr**e** *or* **ī,**	**e** *or* **ī,**	**e** *or* **ī.**	*Ab.*	mītiōr**ibus,**	**ibus,**	**ib**

In like manner decline:

Altior, *higher.*	Fēlīcior, *happier.*	Melior, *better.*
Brevior, *shorter.*	Fortior, *braver.*	Mollior, *softer.*
Dūrior, *harder.*	Mājor, *greater.*	Pējor, *worse.*

Comparative adjectives have the ablative in **e** much more c monly than in **ī.**

Plūs, more, has only the neuter gender in the singular, and is declined:

	Singular. Neut.		Plural. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	plūs,	*N.*	plūrēs,	ēs,	a (ia),
G.	plūris,	*G.*	plūrium,	ium,	ium,
D.	——	*D.*	plūribus,	ibus,	ibus,
Ac.	plūs.	*Ac.*	plūrēs,	ēs,	a (ia),
V.	——	*V.*	——	——	——
Ab.	plūre.	*Ab.*	plūribus,	ibus,	ibus.

Note.—The neuter plural in *ia* is hardly ever used. The compou *complūrēs,* has no singular.

198.—III. *Adjectives of* ***three*** *terminations* (*–ri*-stem

5. Acer *or* acris, acre, *sharp* (ācri–).

	Singular. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Plural. Masc.	Fem.	Ne
N.	ācer, *or* ācr**is,**	**is,**	**e,**	*N.*	ācr**ēs,**	**ēs,**	**ia,**
G.	ācr**is,**	**is,**	**is,**	*G.*	ācr**ium,**	**ium,**	**iu**
D.	ācr**ī,**	**ī,**	**ī,**	*D.*	ācr**ibus,**	**ibus,**	**ib**
Ac.	ācr**em,**	**em,**	**e,**	*Ac.*	ācr**ēs,**	**ēs,**	**ia,**
V.	ācer, *or* ācr**is,**	**is,**	**e,**	*V.*	ācr**ēs,**	**ēs,**	**ia,**
Ab.	ācr**ī,**	**ī,**	**ī.**	*Ab.*	ācr**ibus,**	**ibus,**	**ib**

The ending *is* is sometimes found masculine, and the ending *er* very rarely feminine.

Besides *ācer*, the following twelve are declined in this way:

Alacer, *cheerful.*	Equester, *equestrian.*	Salūber, *wholesome.*
Campester, *flat, level.*	Paluster, *marshy.*	Silvester, *woody.*
Celeber, *famous.*	Pedester, *on foot.*	Terrester, *terrestrial.*
Celer, *swift.*	Puter, *putrid.*	Volucer, *swift.*

Celer retains *e* before *r* in all its forms, and has *um* instead of *ium* in the gen. plur.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

Irregular adjectives are *Defective* or *Redundant.*

I. DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

199.—1. The adjectives *frūgī*, temperate (really a dat. sing. of *frūg–*); *sat* or *satis*, sufficient; *sēmis*, half; and the plurals *quot*, how many? *tot*, so many; *aliquot*, some; *quotquot*, and *quotcunque*, how many soever; *totidem*, just so many, are ***indeclinable.*** *Nēquam*, worthless, is also indeclinable, but used in both numbers.

2. *Exspēs*, hopeless, and *potis*, neuter *pote* sometimes *potis*, able, are used only in the ***nominative.*** They are of all genders, and *potis* is also found joined with plural nonns.

Tantundem, as much, has *tantīdem* in the genitive, and *tantundem*, m. and n., in the nominative and accusative singular.

Necesse, or *necessum*, necessary; and *volupe*, pleasant, are used only in the ***nominative*** and ***accusative*** singular.

3. *Macte* and *mactī*, common words of encouragement, brave! gallant! are used only in the ***vocative*** singular and plural.

Prīmōris, genitive, first, wants the nominative and vocative singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter; likewise, *sēminecis*, half dead, which is not used in the neuter, and has *sēminecum* in the genitive plural.

Paucī, few, and *plērīque*, the most part, are seldom used in the singular.

Caeter, or *caeterus*, the rest, is not used in the nominative singular masculine.

Victrīx, victorious, and *ultrīx*, revengeful, are only feminine in the singular, but feminine and neuter in the plural: *victrīcēs*, *victrīcia*.

II. REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

200.—Several adjectives have forms of ***three*** endings (stems in *o–*, m. or n., and *a–*, f.), and also of ***two*** endings (stems in *i–*). The chief of this sort are:

exanimus, a, um,	*and* exanimis, e. *lifeless.*
sēmianimus, a, um,	*and* sēmianimis, e. *half alive.*
ūnanimus, a, um,	*and* ūnanimis, e. (*rare*), *harmonious.*
imbēcillus, a, um,	*and* imbēcillis, e. (*rare*), *weak.*
inermus, a, um (*rare*),	*and* inermis, e. *unarmed.*
sēmisomnus, a, um,	*and* sēmisomnis, e. *half asleep.*
bijugus, a, um,	*and* bijugis, e. *double-yoked.*
hilarus, a, um (*rare*),	*and* hilaris, e. *cheerful.*
effrēnus, a, um,	*and* effrēnis, e. (*rare*), *unbridled.*
prōclīvus, a, um (*rare*),	*and* prōclīvis, e. *prone.*

EXERCISES ON ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives and substantives to be declined together:*

Parva casa, *a small cottage.*
Clārus poēta, *a famous poet.*
Pulcra fīlia, *a beautiful daughter.*
Dulce pōmum, *a sweet apple.*
Docilis puer, *a docile boy* (puero–).
Breve ævum, *a short life.*
Capāx antrum, *a capacious den.*
Magnum opus, *a great work* (opes–).
Serēnus diēs, *a clear day* (diē–).
Densa nūbēs, *a thick cloud* (nūbi–).
Fidus pastor, *a faithful shepherd.*
Alta arbor, a *high tree.*
Priscus mōs, *an ancient custom.*
Calida æstas, *a warm summer.*
Tūtus portus, *a safe harbor.*
Nōbile carmen, *a noble poem.*
Antīqua urbs, *an ancient city.*
Magna dōs, *a great dowry* (dōt(i–)).
Cava nāvis, *a hollow ship.*
Culpātus Paris, *wicked Paris* (Parid–).
Miser Trōs, *a miserable Trojan.*
Infēlīx Dīdō, *unhappy Dido.*

2. *Translate the following words into English, according to their number and case:*

Operis magnī,	Urbem antīquam,	Urbis antiquæ,
Clārō poētæ,	Poētīs clārīs,	Paridī culpātō,
Diēī serēnō,	Puerī docilēs,	Arborēs altæ,
Diēī serēnī,	Dōte magnā,	Trōis miserī,
Densīs nūbibus,	Mōrum priscōrum,	Dīdō infēlīcī,
Fīdī pastōris,	Carminis nōbilis,	Portibus tūtīs,
Ævō brevī,	Calidā æstāte,	Dulcium pōmōrum.

3. *Translate the following phrases into Latin, observing to put the adjective in the same gender, number, and case, with the substantive.* The words will be found in the list above:

To a small cottage,	Of sweet apples,	In a short life,
Of a capacious den,	High trees,	With a sweet apple,
From lofty trees,	With great dowries,	With clear days,
For unhappy Dido,	Of ancient customs,	Noble poems,
In a hollow ship,	Of an ancient city,	Of ancient cities,
A wretched Trojan,	To a great work,	In small cottages,
With thick clouds,	O wicked Paris,	In a great work,
From a clear day,	Faithful shepherds,	With wicked Paris,

A safe harbor,	To a thick cloud,	In a warm summer,
In a clear day,	With high trees,	Of a short life,
Of small cottages,	Beautiful daughters,	With docile boys.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

201.—*Numeral Adjectives* are those which signify number. In Latin they are divided into four classes, viz.:

1. ***Cardinal***, which express number simply, answering the question "*quot*," or "how many?" as, *one*, *two*, *three*, *four*, etc.

2. ***Ordinal***, denoting the place of any thing in a row or series, (*ordon–*), and answering the question "*quotus*," or "which in numerical order?" as, *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, etc.

3. ***Distributive***, answering the question "*quotēnī*," or "how many to each?" as, *bīni*, two by two, *or* two to each.

4. ***Multiplicative***, answering the question "*quotuplex*," or "how many fold?"

I. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

202.—The ***Cardinal*** numbers are:

Ūnus, Duo, Trēs, } declined.	I.	*one.*
	II.	*two.*
	III.	*three.*
Quătuor,	IIII, or IV.	*four.*
Quinque,	V.	*five.*
Sex,	VI.	*six.*
Septem,	VII.	*seven.*
Octo,	VIII.	*eight.*
Novem,	VIIII, or IX.	*nine.*
Decem,	X.	*ten.*
Undecim,	XI.	*eleven.*
Duodecim,	XII.	*twelve.*
Tredecim,	XIII.	*thirteen.*
Quătuordecim,	XIIII, or XIV.	*fourteen.*
Quindecim,	XV.	*fifteen.*
Sēdecim, *or* Sexdecim,	XVI.	*sixteen.*

Septemdecim,	XVII.	*seventeen.*
Duodēvīgintī,[1]	XVIII.	*eighteen.*
Undēvīgintī,[1]	XVIIII, or XIX.	*nineteen.*
Vīgintī,	XX.	*twenty.*
Vīgintī ūnus, *or* Unus et vīgintī,[2]	XXI.	*twenty-one.*
Vīgintī duo, *or* Duo et vīgintī, etc.	XXII.	*twenty-two.*
Duodētrīgintā,[1]	XXVIII.	*twenty-eight.*
Undētrīgintā,[1]	XXIX.	*twenty-nine.*
Trīgintā,	XXX.	*thirty.*
Quādrāgintā,	XXXX, or XL.	*forty.*
Quinquāgintā,	L.	*fifty.*
Sexāgintā,	LX.	*sixty.*
Septuāgintā,	LXX.	*seventy.*
Octōgintā,	LXXX.	*eighty.*
Nōnāgintā,	LXXXX, or XC.	*ninety.*
Centum,	C.	*a hundred.*
Centum ūnus, *or* Centum et ūnus, etc.	CI.	*a hundred and one, etc.*
Ducentī, -æ, -a,	CC.	*two hundred.*
Trecentī,	CCC.	*three hundred.*
Quādringentī,	CCCC.	*four hundred.*
Quingentī,	IↃ, or D.	*five hundred.*
Sexcentī,	IↃC, DC.	*six hundred.*
Septingentī,	IↃCC, or DCC.	*seven hundred.*
Octingentī,	IↃCCC, or DCCC.	*eight hundred.*
Nongentī,	IↃCCCC, or DCCCC.	*nine hundred.*
Mille,	CIↃ, or M.	*a thousand.*
Duo millia, *or* Bis mille,	CIↃCIↃ, or MM.	*two thousand.*
Quinque millia, *or* Quinquiēs mille,	IↃↃ, or V̄.	*five thousand.*
Decem millia, *or* Deciēs mille,	CCIↃↃ, or X̄.	*ten thousand.*
Quinquāgintā millia, *or* Quinquāgiēs mille,	IↃↃↃ, or L̄.	*fifty thousand.*
Centum millia, *or* Centiēs mille,	CCCIↃↃↃ, or C̄.	*a hundred thousand.*

[1] Literally, *two from twenty*, *one from twenty*, and so for the corresponding numbers of each of the other decades.

[2] In compounding numbers from twenty up to one hundred either the tens without *et*, or the units with *et*, are placed first, as in English. The hundreds in prose are always placed before the tens with or without *et*, then the tens, then the units, as *centum sexāgintā septem* or *centum et sexāgintā septem*, 167.

OBSERVATIONS.

203.—1. *Eighteen* and *nineteen* are sometimes expressed by *decem et octo* and *decem et novem.*

2. The Cardinal numbers, except *ūnus* and *mille*, want the singular.

3. **Unus,** as a numeral, is not used in the plural, except when joined with a substantive that wants the singular; as, *ūna moenia*, one wall; or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *ūna vestīmenta*, one suit of clothes. (See 209.) *Ūnus* is declined like *tōtus* (191).

Duo, *two*, and **Trēs**, *three*, are thus declined:

	Plural.				Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	duo,	duæ,	duo,	*N.*	trēs,	trēs,	tria,
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	*G.*	trium,	trium,	trium,
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	*D.*	tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
Ac.	duōs, –o,	duās,	duo,	*Ac.*	trēs,	trēs,	tria,
V.	duo,	duæ,	duo,	*V.*	trēs,	trēs,	tria,
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	*Ab.*	tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

Ambō, both, is declined like *duo*, but the *o* is usually long. Duo has *ŏ* once in Virgil. Duo has often the gen. plur. *duum.* It is not declined when it forms part of a compound numeral, as *duodecim.*

4. All the cardinal numbers, from *quātuor* to *centum* inclusive, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, they are declined like the plural of *bonus* (190).

204.—**Mille** (or *mīle*) is used as an undeclined numeral, and with the plural forms *millia, millium, millibus.*

Mille is (*a*) A substantive in the nom. or acc. case: *mille hominum*, a thousand (of) men.

(*b*) An adjective in any case: *dē mille fabae modiīs*, from a thousand pecks of beans.

Millia is always a substantive: *duo millia armātōrum*, two thousand (of) armed men. But if a declined numeral with its noun follows, the genitive may be understood after *millia: tria millia* (mīlitum) *et quingentī mīlitēs*, three thousand five hundred soldiers.

ROMAN METHOD OF NOTATION BY LETTERS.

205.—The capital letters used by the Romans to denote numbers, were C, I, L, V, X, which are therefore called ***Numeral Letters.*** I denotes *one;* V, *five;* X, *ten;* L, *fifty;* and C, *a hundred.* By the various combinations of these letters, all numbers were expressed as follows:

The repetition of a letter repeats its value; thus, II signifies *two;* III, *three;* XX, *twenty;* XXX, *thirty;* CC, *two hundred;* CCC, *three hundred,* etc. V and L are never repeated.

When a letter of less value is placed before another of greater value, the value of the less is *taken from* the greater. When placed after it, the value of the less is *added to* the greater; thus:

IV. Four,	V. Five,	VI. Six.
IX. Nine,	X. Ten,	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty,	L. Fifty,	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety,	C. A hundred,	CX. A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* was marked CIↃ, which was afterwards expressed by M, the initial of *mille*. *Five hundred* is marked IↃ, afterwards changed into D.

The annexing of Ↄ to IↃ makes its value ten times greater; thus, IↃↃ denotes *five thousand;* IↃↃↃ, *fifty thousand.* The number is doubled by prefixing to I as many C's as there are Ↄ's after it; thus, CIↃ, *a thousand;* CCIↃↃ, *ten thousand;* CCCIↃↃↃ, *a hundred thousand.* Any higher than this, according to Pliny, was expressed by repetition; thus, CCCIↃↃↃ, CCCIↃↃↃ, *two hundred thousand.*

Thousands are sometimes expressed by a line drawn over the numeral letters; thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$ denotes *three thousand;* $\overline{\text{X}}$, *ten thousand*, etc.

II. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

206.—The ***Ordinal Numerals*** are formed from the cardinal. They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bonus*; as, *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second; etc. (See the following table.)

III. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

207.—***Distributive Numerals*** are all plural, and declined like the plural of *bonus;* but usually have *ûm* instead of *ōrum* in the genitive; as, *singulī, æ, a;* etc.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs:

Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
1. Prīmus, *first*,	Singulī, *one by one.*	Semel, *once.*
2. Secundus, *second*,	Bīnī, *two a piece*,	Bis, *twice.*
3. Tertius, *third*,	Ternī, *or* trīnī, etc.	Ter, *thrice.*
4. Quartus, etc.,	Quaternī,	Quater, *four times.*
5. Quintus,	Quīnī,	Quinquiēs, *or* –ens.
6. Sextus,	Sēnī,	Sexiēs, *or* sexiens.
7. Septimus,	Septēnī,	Septiēs.
8. Octāvus,	Octōnī,	Octiēs.
9. Nōnus,	Novēnī,	Noviēs.
10. Decimus,	Dēnī,	Deciēs.
11. Undecimus,	Undēnī,	Undeciēs.
12. Duodecimus,	Duodēnī,	Duodeciēs.

	Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
13.	Tertius decimus,	Ternī dēnī,	Terdeciēs, *or* tredeciēs.
14.	Quartus decimus,	Quaternī dēnī,	Quaterdeciēs, *or* quătuor deciēs.
15.	Quintus decimus,	Quīnī dēnī,	Quindeciēs.
16.	Sextus decimus,	Sēnī dēnī,	Sēdeciēs.
17.	Septimus decimus,	Septēnī dēnī,	Septiēs deciēs.
18.	Duodēvīcēsimus,	Duodēvīcēnī,	Duodēvīciēs.
19.	Undēvīcēsimus,	Undēvīcēnī,	Undēvīciēs.
20.	Vīcēsimus, *or* vīgēsimus,	Vīcēnī,	Vīciēs.
21.	Vīcēsimus prīmus,	Vīcēnī singulī,	Semel et vīciēs.
22.	Vīcēsimus secundus,	Vīcēnī bīnī,	Bis et vīciēs, etc.
30.	Trīcēsimus, *or* trīgēsimus,	Trīcēnī,	Trīciēs.
40.	Quădrăgēsimus,	Quădrāgēnī,	Quădrāgiēs.
50.	Quinquăgēsimus,	Quinquăgēnī,	Quinquăgiēs.
60.	Sexăgēsimus,	Sexăgēnī,	Sexăgiēs.
70.	Septuăgēsimus,	Septuăgēnī,	Septuăgiēs.
80.	Octōgēsimus,	Octōgēnī,	Octōgiēs.
90.	Nōnăgēsimus,	Nōnăgēnī,	Nōnăgiēs
100.	Centēsimus,	Centēnī,	Centiēs.
200.	Ducentēsimus,	Ducēnī,	Ducentiēs.
300.	Trecentēsimus,	Trecēnī,	Trecentiēs.
400.	Quădringentēsimus,	Quădringēnī,	Quădringentiēs.
500.	Quingentēsimus,	Quingēnī,	Quingentiēs.
600.	Sexcentēsimus,	Sexcēnī,	Sexcentiēs.
700.	Septingentēsimus,	Septingēnī,	Septingentiēs.
800.	Octingentēsimus,	Octingēnī,	Octingentiēs.
900.	Nongentēsimus,	Nongēnī,	Nōngentiēs.
1000.	Millēsimus,	Singula millia,	Milliēs.
2000.	Bis millēsimus, etc.	Bīna millia, etc.,	Bis milliēs, etc.

208.—Instead of *prīmus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *ūnus et vīcēsimus*, *ūnus et trīcēsimus*, etc.; and twenty-second, etc., by *duo*, or *alter et vīcēsimus*, in which *duo* is indeclinable. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et;* as, *vīcēsimus quartus*, or *quartus et vīcēsimus*.

209.—Distributives are used in a variety of ways. 1st. Often in multiplication, with adverbial numerals; as, *bis bīna*, twice two, i. e. four;

bis sēnēs, twice six, i. e. twelve; *ter novēnae virginēs*, thrice nine maidens. 2d. Instead of cardinals, with words which have no singular (*Plūrālia tantum*, 178); as, *bīnī cōdicillī*, two writings; or with nouns in the plural having the meaning of a singular, but still different from the meaning of the same word in the singular number (179); as, *bīna castra, bīnae aedēs, bīnae līterae;* two camps, two houses, two epistles. *Duo, duae*, with these nouns, would mean two forts or castles; two temples; two letters of the alphabet. In this case, *ūnī* and *trīnī* are used for *singulī* and *ternī*. 3d. *Bīnī* is used for *duo*, to denote things which exist in pairs; as, *bīnī scyphī*, a pair of goblets, belonging to each other. In ordinary language, distributives occur only in the plural—among the poets sometimes in the singular in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *centēnā arbore* (=*centum arboribus*), literally "with a tree a hundred fold."

The singular of some distributives is sometimes used in the sense of a multiplicative; as, *bīnum corpus*, a double body, Lucr.

The learner should carefully notice the distinction between the cardinal and distributive numerals in their ordinary use. Thus, for example, *Duo consulēs* VIGINTI *nāvēs habēbant*, means, "the two consuls *together* had twenty ships," i. e. twenty in all, or ten each; but *Duo consulēs* VICĒNĀS *nāvēs habēbant*, means, "the two consuls had twenty ships *each*," or *forty* in all.

IV. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMBERS.

210.—Multiplicatives denote how many fold; they all end in *ex*, and are declined like *fēlīx*. They are as follows:

Simplex, *single.*	Quadruplex, *fourfold.*
Duplex, *double.*	Quintuplex, *fivefold.*
Triplex, *threefold.*	Centuplex, *a hundredfold*, etc., etc.

211.—10. To these classes may be added:

1st. ***Proportionals,*** which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *dūplus*, twice as great.

2d. ***Temporals,*** which denote time; as, *bīmus*, two years old; *biennis*, of two years' continuance.

3d. Those which denote ***how many parts*** a thing contains; as, *bīnārius*, of two parts.

4th. ***Interrogatives;*** as, *quot*, how many? *quotus*, which in numerical order? *quotēnī*, how many each? *quotiēs*, how many times?

212.—Fractions are expressed by the ordinal adjectives agreeing with *pars* or *partēs*, expressed or understood, as $\frac{1}{3}$ *tertia pars*, $\frac{3}{7}$ *trēs septimae*. But for $\frac{2}{3}$ and $\frac{3}{4}$ the Romans said, *duae partēs, trēs partēs*, and so on, when the numerator is one less than the denominator. When the denominator is 12, the unit being represented by *ās*, the several fractions are expressed by

the names proper for the various parts of the *ās:* viz., *uncia*, $\frac{1}{12}$; *sextans*, $\frac{2}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{6}$; *quadrans*, $\frac{3}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$; *triens*, $\frac{4}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{3}$; *quincunx*, $\frac{5}{12}$; *sēmis*, $\frac{6}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$; *septunx*, $\frac{7}{12}$; *bēs*, $\frac{8}{12}$ or $\frac{2}{3}$; *dōdrans* (=de-quadrans, or $1-\frac{1}{4}$), $\frac{9}{12}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$; *dextans* (=de-sextans, or $1-\frac{1}{6}$), $\frac{10}{12}$ or $\frac{5}{6}$; *deunx* (=de-uncia, or $1-\frac{1}{12}$), $\frac{11}{12}$.

213.—Mixed numbers were denoted by the Latin for the fractional part accompanied by that number of the *ordinal* series which exceeds by one the given whole number. Thus $3\frac{1}{4}$ is *quadrans quartus*, i. e. the fourth is a quarter, implying that the three preceding parts were wholes.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

214.—Adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the ***Positive, Comparative,*** and ***Superlative.***

The ***Positive*** expresses a quality simply; as, *bonus*, good. The ***Comparative*** expresses a quality in a higher or lower degree in one object than in another, or than in several taken together. The ***Superlative*** expresses a quality in the highest or lowest degree in one object compared with several taken separately; as, gold is *heavier* than silver; it is the *most precious* of the metals. Hence, those adjectives only can be compared whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

215.—The *Superlative* is often used to express a very high or a very low degree of a quality, without implying comparison; as, *vir doctissimus*, "a very learned man;" *hortus amoenissimus*, "a most delightful garden." Thus used, it is called the ***superlative of eminence,*** and is commonly translated with the article *a*, or *an;* when comparison is implied, the article *the* must be used.

The *Comparative* is always of the third declension, and declined like *mītior* (197). The Superlative is always of the first and second, and declined like *bonus* (190).

RULES OF COMPARISON.

216.—1. The ***comparative*** is formed from the theme (46) of the positive, by adding **ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **ius** for the neuter; as,

Positive.	Theme.	Comparative. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Dūrus, *hard*,	dūr–	dūr**ior**,	dūr**ior**,	dūr**ius**,	*harder.*
Brevis, *short*,	brev–	brev**ior**,	brev**ior**,	brev**ius**,	*shorter.*
Audāx, *bold*,	audāc–	audāc**ior**,	audāc**ior**,	audāc**ius**,	*bolder.*

217.—2. The ***superlative*** is formed from the theme of the positive, by adding **issimus, a, um:** in the older language, *issumus;* as,

Positive.	Theme.	Superlative.			
Dūrus, *hard,*	dūr–	dūr**issimus,**	**a,**	**um,**	*hardest.*
Brevis, *short,*	brev–	brev**issimus,**	**a,**	**um,**	*shortest.*
Audāx, *bold,*	audāc–	audāc**issimus,**	**a,**	**um,**	*boldest.*

218.—*Exc.* If the positive end in *er* (stem in *ro–* or *ri–*), the superlative is formed by adding **rimus, a, um,** to the nominative masculine; as,

Positive.	Superlative.
Pulcer, *fair,*	pulcer**rimus, a, um.**
Pauper, *poor,*	pauper**rimus, a, um.**

So **vetus** (*vetes–*) old has *veterrimus*, and **mātūrus**, ripe, sometimes *mā-turrimus*, especially in the adverb, *māturrimē.*

Hence these adjectives are compared thus:

Dūrus,	dūrior,	dūrissimus;	*Hard,*	*harder,*	*hardest.*
Brevis,	brevior,	brevissimus;	*Short,*	*shorter,*	*shortest.*
Audāx,	audācior,	audācissimus;	*Bold,*	*bolder,*	*boldest.*
Pulcer,	pulcrior,	pulcerrimus;	*Fair,*	*fairer,*	*fairest.*
Pauper,	pauperior,	pauperrimus;	*Poor,*	*poorer,*	*poorest.*

In the same manner compare:

Altus, *high.*	Firmus, *strong.*	Līber, *free* (lībero–).
Capax, *capacious* (capāc–).	Fortis, *brave.*	Piger, *slow* (pigro–).
Crēber, *frequent* (crēbro–).	Gravis, *heavy.*	Prūdens, *prudent.*
Dignus, *worthy.*	Integer, *entire* (integro–).	Sapiens, *wise.*
Doctus, *learned.*	Lentus, *slow.*	Vehemens, *vehement.*
Fēlīx, *happy* (fēlīc–).	Levis, *light.*	Vēlōx, *swift* (vēlōc–).

219. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISONS.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.			
Bonus,	melior,	optimus;	*Good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Magnus,	mājor,	maximus;	*Great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Malus,	pējor,	pessimus;	*Bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Multus,	plūs, n.	plūrimus;	*Much,*	*more,*	*most.*
Parvus,	minor,	minimus;	*Little,*	*less,*	*least.*

Dīves, *rich,* dīvitior (dītior), dīvitissimus (dītissimus).
Nēquam (*indecl.*), *worthless,* nēquior, nēquissimus.
Frūgī (*indecl.*), *frugal,* frūgālior, frūgālissimus.

Obs. Plūs has only the neuter in the singular. In the plural, it is regular, and is declined (197).

220.—The following **six** adjectives form the superlative in **limus**:

Facilis, *easy*,	facilior,	facillimus.
Difficilis, *difficult*,	difficilior,	difficillimus.
Similis, *like*,	similior,	simillimus.
Dissimilis, *unlike*,	dissimilior,	dissimillimus.
Gracilis, *lean*,	gracilior,	gracillimus.
Humilis, *low*,	humilior,	humillimus.

From *imbēcillis*, weak, is rarely formed a superlative, *imbēcillimus*; but the regular form is much more common, from *imbēcillus*.

221.—Some compounds in **dicus**, **ficus**, and **volus**, form the comparative in *entior*, and the superlative in *entissimus*, as if from participles in *ens* (**ent–**).

Beneficus, *beneficent*,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus.
Benevolus, *benevolent*,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus.
Maledicus, *railing*,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus.
Mīrificus, *wonderful*,	mīrificentior,	mīrificentissimus.

But of *mīrificus* the regular superlative is also found.

So *egēnus*, needy, and *prōvidus*, prudent, take for their degrees those of the participles *egens* (*egent–*) and *prōvidens* (*prōvident–*).

222.—Some adjectives have either no positive form at all, or have, representing the positive, a corresponding **preposition** or adverb, or an adjective used in some peculiar connection or meaning. The superlative has an irregular and sometimes a double form.

citrā,	*prep.*	citerior,	*on this side*,	citimus.
extrā,[1]	*prep.*	exterior,	*outer*,	extrēmus (*rarely* extimus).
infrā,[2]	*prep.*	inferior,	*lower*,	infimus, *or* īmus.
intrā,	*prep.*	interior,	*inner*,	intimus.
prope,[3]	*prep.*	propior,	*nearer*,	proximus.
post,[4]	*prep.*	posterior,	*hinder*,	postrēmus.[5]
prō,	*prep.*	prior,	*former*,	prīmus.
suprā,[6]	*prep.*	superior,	*upper*,	suprēmus, *or* summus.
ultrā,	*prep.*	ulterior,	*further*,	ultimus.

---

[1] The adj. *exterus* is used in the plural, in the sense of *foreign*.

[2] The adj. *inferus* is used only in connection with *mare*, *mare inferum*, the lower sea, the sea southwest of Italy, and in reference to the infernal regions—*inferī*, the gods below.

[3] *Propinquus* is used as a positive adjective of *propior*, its own comparative, *propinquior*, being rare.

[4] *Posterus* is used for *next in order of time*; *posterā nocte*, on the following night. In the plural it means *posterity*.

[5] The superlative *postumus* is found in good writers only in the sense of *last-born*, after the father's death.

[6] *Superus* is only used with *mare*, *mare superum*, the upper sea, the Adriatic, and in reference to the upper regions, of heaven or the world, *superī*, the gods above.

	dēterior,	*worse*,	dēterrimus.
Greek ὠκύς,	ōcior,	*swifter*,	ōcissimus.
	potior,	*preferable*,	potissimus.

223.—The following adjectives want the ***comparative:***

Inclutus, *renowned*,	inclutissimus.	Pār, *equal*,	parissimus.
Invictus, *invincible*,	invictissimus.	Persuāsus, *persuaded*,	persuāsissimus.
Meritus, *deserving*,	meritissimus.	Sacer, *sacred*,	sacerrimus.
Novus, *new*,	novissimus.	Vetus, *old*,	veterrimus.
Nūperus, *late*,	nūperrimus.		

224.—The following adjectives want the ***superlative:***

Adolescens, *young*,	adolescentior.	Prōclīvis, *prone*,	prōclīvior.
Diūturnus, *lasting*,	diūturnior.	Prōnus, *prone*,	prōnior.
Ingens, *huge*,	ingentior.	Satur, *full*,	saturior.
Juvenis, *young*,	jūnior.	Senex, *old*,	senior.
Opīmus, *rich*,	opīmior.		

Note.—The superlative of *juvenis*, or *adolescens*, is supplied by *minimus nātū*, the youngest in birth; *senex* takes *maximus nātū*, the oldest.

Almost all adjectives in **īlis, ālis,** and **bilis,** want the superlative; as, *cīvīlis*, civil, *cīvīlior; rēgālis*, regal, *rēgālior; flēbilis*, lamentable, *flēbilior.*

Note.—Some adjectives of these terminations have the superlative also; as, *aequālis, frūgālis, hospitālis, līberālis, vōcālis—affābilis, amābilis, habilis, ignōbilis, mīrābilis, mōbilis, mūtābilis, nōbilis, stabilis.*

Some adjectives of other terminations also want the superlative; as, *arcānus, ior*, secret; *dēclīvis, ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, far off, *ior; propinquus*, near, *ior; salūtāris*, healthful, *salūtārior.*

Anterior, former, and *sequior*, worse, are found only in the comparative.

225.—Many adjectives have ***no degrees*** of comparison, because they denote invariable qualities. They are such as denote *substance, origin, possession*, or *definite time;* as, *aureus*, golden; *adamantinus*, of adamant; *Graecus; Rōmānus; peregrīnus*, foreign; *paternus*, paternal; *aestīvus*, of summer; *hībernus*, of winter; *vīvus*, living, etc.

226.—Many adjectives which do not denote invariable qualities, are yet ***without comparative*** and ***superlative*** forms. They are—

1st. Adjectives ending in *imus, īnus, ōrus*, and most adjectives in *īvus;* as, *lēgitimus, mātūtīnus, canōrus, fugitīvus:* also adjectives in *us* after a vowel; as, *dubius, idōneus, arduus*, etc.; except adjectives in *quus*, in which, however, the first *u* does not form a syllable (5); and sometimes *assiduus, ēgregius, pius, strēnuus*, and *vacuus*, which are sometimes regularly compared.

2d. Compound adjectives, one of whose component parts is a noun or a verb; as, *versicolor, pestifer, dēgener, magnanimus, consonus*, etc., and such

as have the derivative terminations *icus*, *idus*, *ulus*, *ālis*, *īlis*, *bundus* as, *modicus*, *trepidus*, *garrulus*, *mortālis*, *hostīlis*, *furibundus*, etc.

3d. Diminutives, which in themselves imply a sort of comparison; as, *tenellus*, somewhat tender; *mājusculus*, somewhat big.

4th. Many adjectives which cannot be classed under distinct heads; as, *albus*, white; *almus*, gracious; *lacer*, torn; *lassus*, tired; *memor*, mindful; *mīrus*, wonderful; *nāvus*, active; *praecox*, early ripe; *rudis*, rude; *sospes*, safe; and many others noted in the dictionaries.

227.—In most, or in all adjectives of these classes, and sometimes in others also, the comparative is made by prefixing **magis,** more; and the superlative by prefixing **valdē** or *maximē*, most, to the positive; as, *arduus*, high; *magis arduus*, higher; *valdē*, or *maximē arduus*, highest, or very high. Sallust has *maximē tūtōs*.

228.—Comparison is sometimes made by means of the ***prepositions*** *prae*, *ante*, *praeter*, or *suprā*, with the positive; as, *Prae nōbīs beātus*, happier than we, Cic.; *Ante aliās insignis*, most distinguished, Liv. A high degree of quality without comparison is expressed by prefixing *valdē*, *imprīmīs*, *apprīmē*, *admodum*, etc., or by the preposition *per* or *prae* prefixed in composition; as, *perdifficilis*, very difficult; *praeclārus*, very illustrious.

229.—The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, yet, and of both comparative and superlative, by prefixing *longē* or *multō*, far, much; as, *multō melior*, much better; *longē nōbilissimus*, far the noblest. *Quam* with the superlative renders it emphatic; as, *quam doctissimus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrimē*, as speedily as possible (1003).

THE PRONOUN.

230.—A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

There are eight classes of pronouns:

1. ***Personal*** pronouns: *ego*, I; *tū*, thou.
2. ***Reflective*** pronouns: *sē*, himself.
3. ***Possessive*** pronouns: *meus*, my; *noster*, our.
4. ***Demonstrative*** pronouns: *ille*, that; *hic*, this.
5. ***Distinctive*** pronouns: *is*, that one (named).
6. ***Relative*** pronouns: *quī*, who.
7. ***Interrogative*** pronouns: *quis*, who?
8. ***Indefinite*** pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

The last six classes are sometimes called adjective pronouns, since they are often used in agreement with nouns; and the first two are called substantive pronouns.

In all speech three things are implied: the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person or thing spoken of. These are called, in Grammar, the *First*, *Second*, and *Third* persons; and the pronouns representing them are called *Personal Pronouns*.

I. *Personal Pronouns.*

231.—The pronoun of the first person is *Ego*, I; of the second, *Tū*, thou *or* you. For the third Personal Pronoun the distinctive pronoun *is* (243) is usually employed.

Ego, *I*, First Person, Masc. or Fem.

	Singular.			Plural.	
N.	ego,	*I.*	*N.*	nōs,	*we.*
G.	meī,	*of me.*	*G.*	nostrûm, *or* nostrī,*	*of us.*
D.	mihi,	*to me.*	*D.*	nōbīs,	*to us.*
Ac.	mē,	*me.*	*Ac.*	nōs,	*us.*
V.	——	——	*V.*	——	——
Ab.	mē,	*with*, etc., *me.*	*Ab.*	nōbīs,	*with*, etc., *us.*

Tū, *thou*, Second Person, Masc. or Fem.

	Singular.			Plural.	
N.	tū,	*thou*, or *you.*	*N.*	vōs,	*ye*, or *you.*
G.	tuī,	*of thee*, or *of you.*	*G.*	vestrûm, *or* vestrī,	*of you.*
D.	tibi,	*to thee*, or *to you.*	*D.*	vōbīs,	*to you.*
Ac.	tē,	*thee*, or *you.*	*Ac.*	vōs,	*you.*
V.	tū,	*O thou*, or *O you.*	*V.*	vōs,	*O ye*, or *you.*
Ab.	tē,	*with*, etc., *thee*, or *you.*	*Ab.*	vōbīs,	*with*, etc., *you.*

II. *Reflective Pronouns.*

232.—The oblique cases of the First and Second Personal Pronouns are used also as the reflectives of those persons. The subject of the sentence is always to be re-

* *Nostrum*, *vestrum*, G. partitive; *nostri*, *vestri*, G. objective (1016, 1017).

garded as the nominative of a Reflective Pronoun, and this, in the case of *suī*, determines its number and gender.

Suī, *of himself, of herself, of itself*, Third Person,

Masc., Fem., Neut.

	Singular.			Plural.	
N.	—	—	*N.*	—	—
G.	suī,	*of himself*, etc.	*G.*	suī,	*of themselves.*
D.	sibi,	*to himself*, etc.	*D.*	sibi,	*to themselves.*
Ac.	sē,	*himself*, etc.	*Ac.*	sē	*themselves.*
V.	—	—	*V.*	—	—
Ab.	sē,	*with*, etc., *himself*, etc.	*Ab.*	sē,	*with*, etc., *themselves.*

OBSERVATIONS.

233.—The syllable **met** may be joined for the sake of emphasis to all these forms, except to the genitive plural of *ego* and *tū*: *egomet*, I myself, *tibimet*. However, the nom. *tū* has *tūte*, or *tūtemet*, instead of *tūmet*.

234.—The acc. and abl. of *sē* are sometimes ***reduplicated:*** *sēsē;* so *tētē* is sometimes found and rarely *mēmē*.

235.—Instead of *vestrum*, *vestrī*, **vostrum** and **vostrī** were used by the oldest and best writers.

III. *Possessive Pronouns.*

236.—The Possessive Pronouns denote possession, and are derived from the substantive pronouns as follows:

Meus,	a,	um,	*my, my own,*	*from*	mē.
Tuus,	a,	um,	*thy, thy own,*	"	tū.
Suus,	a,	um,	*his, her, its, his own,* etc.,	"	suī.
Noster,	tra,	trum,	*our, our own,*	"	nōs.
Vester,	tra,	trum,	*your, your own,*	"	vōs.

In ***form,*** possessive pronouns are regular adjectives of the first and the second declension. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* has *mī*, seldom *meus*, in the vocative singular masculine. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *āter*.

237.—The emphatic syllables **pte** and **met** are sometimes found appended, particularly in the ablative sing.: *suāpte manū*, with his own hand; *suāmet fraude*, by his own deceit.

238.—There is, besides, a possessive: *cūjus, a, um*, whose? formed from the interrogative *quis: cūjum pecus*, whose cattle?

IV. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

239.—Demonstrative Pronouns are such as point out with precision a person or thing (as if with the finger).

They are *hic*, this; *ille*, *iste*, that. They are declined as follows:

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this*; Plural, *these*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	hic,	haec,	hoc.	hī,	hae,	haec.
G.	hūjus,	hūjus,	hūjus.	hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum.
D.	huīc,	huīc,	huīc.	hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
Ac.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc.	hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

2. Ille, illa, illud, *that*; Plural, *those*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ille,	illa,	illud.	illī,	illae,	illa.
G.	illīus,	illīus	illīus.	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum.
D.	illī,	illī,	illī.	illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud.	illōs,	illās,	illa.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	illō,	illā,	illō.	illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

Note.—Virgil has **ollī** as a dative singular, and nominative plural; and Cicero, in an antique formula, has *olla* and *ollōs*, from an ancient form *ollus*, the root of which is found in *ōlim*, at yonder time.

Iste, "that," is declined like *ille*.

240.—**Hic** means "this," referring to something near the speaker, or just spoken of. **Ille,** "that," refers to something at a distance, or before spoken of; sometimes to what is well known and celebrated, and therefore regarded as present; as, *Mēdēa illa*, "the well-known Medea;" *Alexander ille*, "the illustrious Alexander." **Iste,** "that," refers to something near or some way connected with the person spoken to, and opposite to the speaker. Accordingly, *hic* is often called the demonstrative of the ***first*** person, *iste* of the ***second,*** and *ille* of the ***third.***

241.—*Hic*, and some cases of the other demonstratives, are rendered emphatic by adding **ce**; as, *hicce*, *hūjusce*, *huncce*, etc. When **ne** interrogative is also added, *ce* is changed into *ci*; as, *hiccine*, *hōscine*, etc.

242.—From *ille* and *iste* with the same particle **ce** (which is, however, only found in full in the oldest language), are formed the compounds *illīc* and *isthīc* or *istīc*, used in some of the cases for *ille* and *iste*, but with greater emphasis. Those parts only are in use which end in **c**, as follows:

Istic is thus declined:

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Neut.* (rarely *Fem.*)
N.	istīc,	istaec,	istōc, *or* istūc.	*N.* } istaec.
Ac.	istunc,	istanc,	istōc, *or* istūc.	*Ac.* }
Ab.	istōc,	istāc,	istōc.	

Illīc is declined in the same manner. Interrogative forms with **ne** are found: *illancine*, *istīcine*, etc.

V. *Distinctive Pronouns.*

243.—The Distinctive Pronouns are *is*, and its derivatives, *īdem* and *ipse*. They define or distinguish particular objects, as those spoken of ***in the discourse.*** *Is* is either the correlative and antecedent of *quī*, so that *is quī* means "the particular person who," or it is used as a mere pronoun of reference to a word previously mentioned. *Idem* means "the very he," "the same;" and *ipse*, "the man himself."

1. Is, ea, id, *that;* Plural, *those.*

	Singular.				Plural.	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	is,	ea,	id.	*N.*	iī,	eae,	ea.
G.	ējus,	ējus,	ējus.	*G.*	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum.
D.	eī,	eī,	eī.	*D.*	iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs.
Ac.	eum,	eam,	id.	*Ac.*	eōs,	eās,	ea.
V.	—	—	—	*V.*	—	—	—
Ab.	eō,	eā,	eō.	*Ab.*	iīs *or* eīs	iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs.

2. From *is*, and the syllable **dem**, is formed *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*, "the same," which is thus declined:

	Singular.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	īdem,	eadem,	idem.
G.	ējusdem,	ējusdem,	ējusdem.
D.	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem.
Ac.	eundem,	eandem,	idem.
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.

		Plural.	
N.	īīdem,	eaedem,	eadem.
G.	eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem.
D.	eīsdem *or* iīsdem, etc.,		
Ac.	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem.
V.	———	———	———
Ab.	eīsdem *or* iīsdem, etc.		

3. From *is*, with **pse** (*ispse* = *ipse*), is formed *ipse*, self, very, which is thus declined. The nom. is sometimes *ipsus*.

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum.	*N.*	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa.
G.	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsīus.	*G.*	ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	*D.*	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.
Ac.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum.	*Ac.*	ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsa.
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
Ab.	ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	*Ab.*	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

244.—In the old language the uncontracted forms of *ipse* are sometimes found; *eapse*, *eampse*, *eōpse*, for *ipsa*, *ipsam*, *ipsō* (in Plautus). In the word *reāpse* (= *rē ipsā*, in fact) the form *eāpse* was in use at a later period. In colloquial Latin such combinations occur as *eccum*, *eccam*, *eccōs*, etc., for *ecce* (lo!) *eum*, *eam*, *eōs;* so we have *eccillum*, or *ellum*, for *ecce illum*, or *ēn illum*, behold him!

VI. *Relative Pronouns.*

245.—A Relative Pronoun is one that relates to, and connects its clause with, a noun or pronoun before it, called the antecedent.

The simple relative *quī* is thus declined:

Quī, quae, quod, *who, which, that.*

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quī,	quae,	quod.	*N.*	quī,	quae,	quae.
G.	cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus.	*G.*	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum.
D.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	*D.*	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod.	*Ac.*	quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
Ab.	quō,	quā,	quō.	*Ab.*	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

Note.—**Quīs** and **queis** are sometimes used in the dative and ablative, instead of *quibus*. *Quōjus* and *quoi* are ancient forms for *cūjus*, *cuī*.

Cui is sometimes a dissyllable with both vowels short.

Uter, which of two, is sometimes used with the force of a relative.

Quī is sometimes used for the ablative singular in all genders. To all forms of the ablative, *cum* is frequently annexed; as, *quōcum*, *quibuscum*, etc.

VII. *Interrogative Pronouns.*

246.—Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions, to which some answer other than "yes" or "no" is expected. These may be called "word-questions;" as, *quis fēcit?* "who did it?" answer (not "yes" or "no," but) "Cæsar."

The interrogatives are:

Quisnam? Quis?	*who? what?*	Cūjus?	*whose?*
		Cūjās?	*of what country?*
Quī? Quīnam?	*which? what?*		

The simple interrogative *quis* is thus declined:

Quis, quae, quod, or quid? *Who, which, what?*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quis, *or* quī,	quae,	quid, *or* quod.
G.	cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus.
D.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī.
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quid, *or* quod.
V.	———	———	———
Ab.	quō,	quā,	quō.

Plural.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quī,	quae,	quae.
G.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum.
D.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.
Ac.	quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.	———	———	———
Ab.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

Quis and **quem** sometimes are used in reference to females in early Latin. As for the relative, *quīs* (*queis*), *quōjus*, *quoī*, *quī*, are found in early Latin for *quibus*, *cūjus*, *cuī*, *quō*. *Quī* is often used in the sense of "how?"

Of the compound forms given above, only the *quis* or *quī* is declined.

247.—**Cūjus**, *a*, *um?* "whose?" used instead of the genitive of *quis*, is defective. The parts in use are as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Masc.*	*Fem.*
N. cūjus,	cūja,	cūjum.		*N.* cūjī,	cūjae.
Ac. cūjum,	cūjam,	——		*Ac.* ——	cūjās.
Ab. ——	cūjā,	——			

248.—*Cūjās* (*cūjāt(i-)*), "of what country?" is declined like an adjective of one termination; so also *nostrās*, "of our country?" and *vestrās*, "of your country.'

VIII. *Indefinite Pronouns.*

249.—Indefinite Pronouns are such as do not refer to any distinct person or thing, and answer to the English "some one," "any one," "a man," etc.

The ***simple*** indefinite is *quis*, or *quī*, which is declined like the relative pronoun, except in these cases:

	Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. quis (quī),	qua (quae),	quid (quod).	*N.* quī,	quae,	qua (quae).
A. quem,	quam,	quid (quod).	*A.* quōs,	quās,	qua (quae).

The forms in parentheses are used adjectively, *i. e.*, in connection with nouns, the others substantively. But *quis* is used in both ways.

250.—This indefinite pronoun is always *enclitic; i. e.*, it never stands first in a sentence, but is always attached to a previous word; very often to one of the forms of the relative pronoun, or to *sī*, *nē*, *nisi*, *num*, or the inseparable prefixes *ec–* and *ali–*.

251.—The ***compound*** indefinite pronouns are:

Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquod), *some one.*
Quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (quodpiam), *some one.*
Quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *a certain one.*
Quisquam, quidquam *or* quicquam, *any one at all.*
Quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), *each one.*
Quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (quodvīs), *any one you please.*
Quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (quodlibet), *any one you please.*

The forms given in parentheses are used as adjectives.

These are declined in the same way as the simple indefinite or relative pronoun; but **aliquis** has *aliqua* for *aliquae* in the fem. sing. and neut. plur.; whereas *qua* is not used in the cases of the other compound indefinites. Also *aliquī* is sometimes used adjectively.

252.—**Quisquam** has no feminine, but in colloquial Latin the masculine forms are of the common gender, and its plural is supplied by *ullus.* **Quīdam** generally changes *m* to *n* before *d: quendam* for *quemdam.*

Indefinite Relatives.

253.—There are two compound relative pronouns, called ***indefinite relatives:*** *quīcunque*, and *quisquis*, whosoever. *Quīcunque* is declined like the simple relative, but its parts are sometimes separated by one or more words: *quod jūdicium cunque*, for *quod cunque jūdicium*, whatever judgment. (Tmesis, 15.)

254.—**Quisquis** has only the following forms in use:

Sing.	*N.*	quisquis,	quidquid *or* quicquid,
	A.	quemquem (rare),	quidquid *or* quicquid,
	Ab.	quōquō, quāquā (late),	quōquō.
Plur.	*N.*	quīquī (rare),	
	D.	quibusquibus (rare).	

An old genitive **cuīcuī**, for *cūjuscūjus*, occurs in the word *cuicuimodī*, *of whatever kind.*

255.—In connection with **ec**– and **num**, *quis* forms an interrogative indefinite: *ecquis*, *numquis? is there any one who?* These are sometimes strengthened by the addition of the syllable *nam: ecquisnam?* They are declined like the simple indefinite, but *qua* is often used for *quae* in the fem. sing. and neut. plur.

256.—*Nēmo* (*nēmon*–), no one, is used in the singular, but not generally in the genitive or ablative, for which *nullīus*, *nullō*, are used.

Correlative Pronominal Adjectives.

257.—***Correlative pronouns*** are those whose forms express notions mutually opposed. They may be arranged thus:

Demonstrative.	*Relative and Interrogative.*	*Indefinite.*	*Indefinite Relative.*
(1.) tālis, *of such kind.*	quālis, *of which (what?) kind.*	quāliscunque, *of whatever kind.*	quālislibet, *of any kind you please.*
(2.) tantus, *so great.*	quantus (*so great*), *as, how great?*	quantuscunque? *how great soever.*	aliquantus, *of some considerable size.*
(3.) tot, *so many.*	quot (*so many*), *as, how many?*	quotcunque, *or* quotquot, *how many soever.*	aliquot, *a certain number, some.*

The words in (3) are undeclined, and are, of course, *plūrālia tantum* (178).

THE VERB.

258.—A VERB is a word used to express the act, being, or state, of its subject; as, *Canes* CURRUNT, *Dogs* RUN; *Ego* SUM, *I* AM. DORMIT, "He SLEEPS."

REMARK.—The use of the verb in simple propositions (616, 4) is to affirm. That of which it affirms is called its ***subject*** (616, 9, 635, 1136, 1400).

259.—In relation to their meaning and office in a sentence, Verbs are of ***three kinds,*** *Transitive, Intransitive,* and *Attributive.*

1. ***A Transitive Verb*** expresses an act done by one person or thing to another; as, *Tabulam icit,* "He strikes the table." *Tabula ab illo, icitur,* "The table is struck by him." The transitive verb has two forms, called the *Active Voice* and the *Passive Voice* (262).

2. An ***Intransitive Verb*** expresses the *being,* or *state,* of its subject, or an act not done to another; as, *Curro,* "I run;" *Audit,* "He hears" (716, 724).

The intransitive verb is commonly without the form of the passive voice (453).

3. An ***Attributive Verb*** connects an attribute with its subject; as, *Nix candida est,* "Snow is white" (666).

Obs. 1. The *transitive* verb has a substantive after it expressed or understood as an object to which the action of the verb passes from the subject. The *intransitive* verb has no object and no immediate relation to anything beyond its subject. The *attributive* verb requires after it some adjective or substantive as an attribute of its subject to complete the meaning of the assertion (667).

Obs. 2. The verbs that express *being* simply, in Latin, are *sum, fio, existo,* signifying, in general, "to be," or "exist." The state of being expressed by intransitive verbs may be a state of rest, as *dormio,* "I sleep;" or of motion, as *cado,* "I fall;" or of action, as *curro,* "I run."

INFLECTION OF VERBS.

260.—To the inflection of verbs belong *Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers,* and *Persons.*

1. The ***Voices,*** in Latin, are two, *Active* and *Passive.*

2. The ***Moods*** are four, the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive.*

3. The ***Tenses*** are six, the *Present* (present imperfect); *Imperfect* (past imperfect); *Future; Perfect* (present perfect); *Pluperfect* (past perfect); and *Future Perfect.*

The names in *italics* are the usual ones; those in parentheses are more fully descriptive of the use of the tenses.

4. The ***Numbers*** are two, *Singular* and *Plural.*

5. The ***Persons*** are three, *First*, *Second*, and *Third.*

Besides the Moods, to the Verb belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines.*

The ***Conjugation*** of a verb is the arrangement of its moods, tenses, etc., according to a certain order. Of these, in Latin, there are ***four,*** called the *First*, *Second*, *Third*, and *Fourth Conjugations.*

Obs. A few verbs in Latin are of more than one conjugation, and a few have some of their parts belonging to one conjugation, and others to another.

VOICE.

261.—Voice is a particular form of the verb which shows the relation of the *subject*, or thing spoken of, to the action expressed by the verb.

The transitive verb, in Latin, has two voices, called the *Active* and the *Passive.*

262.—1. ***The Active Voice*** represents the subject of the verb as acting on some object; as, *amo tē*, "I love thee."

2. ***The Passive Voice*** represents the subject of the verb as acted upon; as, *amātur*, "he is loved."

263.—If S be taken to represent the subject, and O the object, and an arrow (————————>) to represent the action of the verb, the active and passive voices will stand thus:

Active. S ————————> O. (Brutus killed Cæsar.)
Passive. [OS] <———————— (Cæsar was killed.)

It thus appears that the ***subject*** of a ***passive*** verb is always the ***object*** of an ***active*** one. (1078).

Intransitive verbs, which have no proper passive, are also said to be in the active voice. Their meaning may be thus shown—

Intransitive S ————→

MOODS.

264.—Mood is the *mode* or *manner* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The moods, in Latin, are ***four,*** namely, the *Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative,* and *Infinitive.*

Of these, the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative are called ***Finite*** moods, because in them the action is *limited* by a termination to a particular subject. A verb in these moods is called a ***Finite Verb.***

I. The ***Indicative Mood*** asserts the action or state expressed by the verb, simply as a fact, and generally in an independent clause; as, *scrībo,* "I write;" *tempus fugit,* "time flies;" or inquires about a fact, as, *nōnne scrībo,* "do I not write?"

II. The ***Subjunctive Mood*** asserts the action or state expressed by the Verb, as a conception formed by the mind; as, *venīret hodiē,* "he might come to-day." (***1161.***)

The Subjunctive Mood is sometimes translated like the Indicative; as, *quum Cæsar in Galliā,* "when Cæsar was in Gaul;" sometimes by the English Potential, as *edimus ut vīvāmus,* "we eat that we may live;" or by the Infinitive, as, "we eat to live." (***1174.***)

III. The ***Imperative Mood*** commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits; as, *scrībe,* "write thou;" *īto,* "let him go."

IV. The ***Infinitive Mood*** expresses the meaning of the verb in a general manner, without any distinction of person or number; as, *scrībere,* "to write;" *scripsisse,* "to have written;" *scrībī,* "to be written."

The infinitive mood is really the form in which a ***verb becomes a noun.*** It is of the neuter gender, undeclined, and is used in the nominative or the accusative case.

265.—Besides these moods the Latin verb has:

The ***Gerund,*** which is a verbal noun of the second declension, used in the singular, but not in the nominative case. It supplies the wanting cases of the infinitive, and answers generally to the English verbal noun in *ing: legendī causā*, for the sake of reading; *ad arandum nātus*, born for ploughing.

The ***Supine,*** which is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular: *spectātum veniunt*, they come to see; *optimum factū*, best to be done.

The ***Participles,*** which are verbal adjectives, and express the action or state described by the verb as a property belonging to a person or thing; *Cato moriens*, Cato (when) dying; *urbs capta*, the city being taken; *Dīdō moritūra*, Dido about to die.

TENSES.

266.—Tenses are certain forms of the verb which serve to point out the distinctions of time.

Time is naturally divided into the *Present*, *Past*, and *Future;* and an action may be represented either as *incomplete* and *continuing*, or as *completed*, at the time spoken of. This gives rise to six tenses, which are expressed in Latin by distinct forms of the verb; thus, we have in the indicative mood:

I. Three tenses for *incomplete* action; *i. e.*, ***imperfect tenses.***

(1.) Present (***present imperfect***): *scrībo*, I write, *or* I am writing.
(2.) Imperfect (***past imperfect***): *scrībēbam*, I was writing.
(3.) ***Future:*** *scrībam*, I shall write.

II. Three tenses for *completed* action; *i. e.*, ***perfect tenses.***

(1.) Perfect (***present perfect***): *scripsī*, I have written.
(2.) Pluperfect (***past perfect***): *scripseram*, I had written.
(3.) ***Future perfect:*** *scripsero*, I shall have written.

267.—The tense called ***Perfect*** (present perfect), which is strictly to be translated by the English tense with "have" (*I have written*), often answers to our (so called) imperfect tense (*I wrote*), and is then called the ***aorist*** (or the perfect indefinite, or the historical perfect). (See An. and Pr. Gr., 415–418.)

The name *imperfect* has been omitted with the ***Future*** tense, because it is usually employed as a *simple future*, without reference to duration.

268.—The ***subjunctive*** mood has no future tense. The ***imperative*** has a present and future tense. The ***infinitive*** has three tenses, describing the action as unfinished (imperfect), or as finished (perfect), or as intended or destined (future). These are commonly called the present, perfect, and future infinitive.

269.—The ***participles*** are:

In the ***active*** voice, the present (***imperfect***), and the ***future.***
In the ***passive*** voice, the ***perfect.***

But besides these, the ***gerundive*** is sometimes called a future participle passive. It is, however, both in form and use much more nearly allied to the imperfect participle active.

NUMBER AND PERSON.

270.—1. Every tense of the verb has ***two numbers***, the singular and the plural, corresponding to the singular and the plural of nouns and pronouns.

2. In each number, the verb has ***three persons***, called *first*, *second*, and *third*. The first asserts of the person speaking: the second, of the person spoken to; and the third, of the person or thing spoken of. In the *imperative*, there is no first person.

CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

271.—Nearly all Latin verbs are called Regular; *i. e.*, they form their moods and tenses according to one or other of ***four*** models or types, which are called ***conjugations.*** These conjugations are usually distinguished from each other by the ending of the present (imperfect) infinitive. Thus:

	First Conj.	*Second Conj.*	*Fourth Conj.*	*Third Conj.*
Infin. ends in	**āre,**	**ēre,**	**īre.**	**ere.**

272.—The true account of the matter, however, is that all Latin verbs have ***stems*** which end in **a, e, i,** or in a ***consonant*** or **u.** We have then for the

	First Conj.	*Second Conj.*	*Fourth Conj.*	*Third Conj.*
stems in	**a,**	**e,**	**i,**	**a consonant or u.**

The ending of the present (imperfect) infinitive being **re,** this is added directly to the stem-vowels of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, making these vowels long, **āre, ēre, īre,** but is attached to stems of the

third conjugation by the help of a connecting vowel, **e**, which is always short, thus making the ending **ere**.

273.—The theory by which the long vowels are accounted for, is that originally the consonant conjugation was the only one; and that when the vowel-verbs came into use, the person-endings with connecting vowels were attached to them, and afterwards the connecting vowels united with the vowels of the stems. Accordingly, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are sometimes called ***contracted*** conjugations.

274.—The ***Complete Conjugation*** of Latin verbs requires that not only the stem, as given above (which may be called the *first stem*), should be known, but also two modified forms of this, which may be called respectively the *second* and the *third stem.*

The ***First Stem*** is that from which *all the imperfect tenses* are made.

The ***Second Stem*** is that from which the *perfect tenses active* are made.

The ***Third Stem*** is that with which the *perfect tenses passive* are made.

It is only in the tenses made from the first stem (***imperfect tenses***) that there is any distinction between the various conjugations. The perfect tenses of all verbs are made alike from the second and third stems respectively.

275.—As these three forms of the stem are involved in certain forms of the verb, and may be ascertained from them, those forms are commonly called the ***principal parts*** of the verb. These are (from the verb *amo*, to love):

1. The ***Present Infinitive***, *amāre*, giving *ama–*, 1*st stem.*

2. The ***Perfect Indicative***, *amāvī*, giving *amāv–*, 2*d stem.*

3. The ***Supine***, *amātum*, giving *amāto–*, 3*d stem.*

The 3d stem is here given as ending in **o**, instead of **u**, since the use of it as the perfect participle passive (and therefore as an adjective of the 2d and 1st declensions) is much more frequent than its use as a supine (*i. e.*, a noun of the 4th declension).

276.—To these three principal parts, the present (pres. imperfect) is generally prefixed, and we then have as ***examples of the four conjugations***—

Conjugation 1st (*amo*, to love).

Amo,	**amāre,**	**amāvī,**	**amātum,**
	(1. **ama–**)	(2. **amāv–**)	(3. **amāto–**).

Conjugation 2d (*moneo*, to advise).

Moneo,	**monēre,**	**monuī,**	**monitum,**
	(1. **mone–**)	(2. **monu–**)	(3. **monito–**).

Conjugation 4th (*audio*, to hear).

Audio,	**audīre,**	**audīvī,**	**audītum,**
	(1. **audi–**)	(2. **audīv–**)	(3. **audīto–**).

Conjugation 3d (*rego*, to rule).

Rego,	**regere,**	**rexī,**	**rectum,**
	(1. **reg–**)	(2. **rex–**)	(3. **recto–**).

Observe that 1, 2, 3, are placed before the stems of the verb, meaning respectively first stem, second stem, third stem; and that the fourth conjugation is placed before the third, in order that the three vowel conjugations may appear together.

THE IRREGULAR VERB *sum*.

277.—The irregular verb ***sum***, "I am" (stems, 1. **es–**, 2. **fu–**), is used as an ***auxiliary verb*** in forming the perfect tenses of the passive voice, and therefore must be committed to memory first.

Principal Parts.

Pres. ind.	Pres. inf.	Perf. ind.	Supine.
sum	esse	fuī	
	(1. **es–**)	(2. **fu–**)	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing.	1. *Ego* Sum,	*I am,*
	2. *Tū* Es,	*Thou art*, or *you are,*
	3. *Ille* Est,	*He is;*
Plur.	1. *Nōs* Sumus,	*We are,*
	2. *Vōs* Estis,	*Ye*, or *you are,*
	3. *Illi* Sunt,	*They are.*

IMPERFECT, *was* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Eram,	*I was,*
2.	Erās,	*Thou wast,* or *you were,*
3.	Erat,	*He was ;*
Plur. 1.	Erāmus,	*We were,*
2.	Erātis,	*Ye,* or *you were,*
3.	Erant,	*They were.*

Future, *shall*, or *will be.*

Sing. 1.	Ero,	*I shall,* or *will be,*
2.	Eris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt be,*
3.	Erit,	*He shall,* or *will be ;*
Plur. 1.	Erimus,	*We shall,* or *will be,*
2.	Eritis,	*You shall,* or *will be,*
3.	Erunt,	*They shall* or *will be.*

PERFECT (***Present Perfect***), *have been ;* ***aorist,*** *was.*

Sing. 1.	Fuī,	*I have been,* or *I was,*
2.	Fuistī,	*Thou hast been,* or *thou wast,*
3.	Fuit,	*He has been,* or *he was ;*
Plur. 1.	Fuimus,	*We have been,* or *we were,*
2.	Fuistis,	*Ye have been,* or *ye were,*
3.	Fuērunt, *or* fuēre,	*They have been,* or *they were.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been* (***Past Perfect***).

Sing. 1.	Fueram,	*I had been,*
2.	Fuerās,	*Thou hadst been,*
3.	Fuerat,	*He had been ;*
Plur. 1.	Fuerāmus,	*We had been,*
2.	Fuerātis,	*Ye had been,*
3.	Fuerant,	*They had been.*

Future Perfect, *shall*, or *will have been.*

Sing. 1.	Fuero,	*I shall,* or *will have been,*
2.	Fueris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt have been,*
3.	Fuerit,	*He shall,* or *will have been ;*
Plur. 1.	Fuerimus,	*We shall,* or *will have been,*
2.	Fueritis,	*Ye shall,* or *will have been,*
3.	Fuerint,	*They shall,* or *will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Sim,	*I may*, or *can be*,
2.	Sīs,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst be*,
3.	Sit,	*He may*, or *can be;*
Plur. 1.	Sīmus,	*We may*, or *can be*,
2.	Sītis,	*Ye may*, or *can be*,
3.	Sint,	*They may*, or *can be*.

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should be* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Essem,	*I might*, etc., *be*,
2.	Essēs,	*Thou mightst*, etc., *be*,
3.	Esset,	*He might*, etc., *be;*
Plur. 1.	Essēmus,	*We might*, etc., *be*,
2.	Essētis,	*Ye might*, etc., *be*,
3.	Essent,	*They might*, etc., *be*.

PERFECT, *may have been* (***Present Perfect***).

Sing. 1.	Fuerim,	*I may have been*,
2.	Fueris,	*Thou mayst have been*,
3.	Fuerit,	*He may have been;*
Plur. 1.	Fuerimus,	*We may have been*,
2.	Fueritis,	*Ye may have been*,
3.	Fuerint,	*They may have been*.

PLUPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have been* (***Past Perfect***).

Sing. 1.	Fuissem,	*I might*, etc., *have been*,
2.	Fuissēs,	*Thou mightst*, etc., *have been*,
3.	Fuisset,	*He might*, etc., *have been;*
Plur. 1.	Fuissēmus,	*We might*, etc., *have been*,
2.	Fuissētis,	*Ye might*, etc., *have been*,
3.	Fuissent,	*They might*, etc., *have been*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres.	2. Es, *be thou*,	Este, *be ye*.
Fut.	2. Esto, *thou shalt be*,	Estōte, *ye shall be*,
	3. Esto, *he shall be*,	Sunto, *they shall be*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. (Imperf.)	Esse,	*To be*,
PERF.	Fuisse,	*To have been*.
FUT.	Esse futūrus, a, um,	*To be about to be*.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. Futūrus, a, um, *About to be.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imperative.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participle.*
PRES.	sum,	sim,	es,	esse,	
IMP.	eram,	essem,			
PERF.	fui,	fuerim,		fuisse,	
PLUP.	fueram,	fuissem,			
FUT.	ero,		esto,	esse futūrus,	futūrus.
F. PERF.	fuero.				

278.—Obs. 1. The ***Future Infinitive*** is made by joining the Future Participle with the Infinitive, *esse*. The Participle so used must agree in case, gender, and number with the subject, being what is called the ***complement*** (666) of *esse*. The same remark applies to all the other compound tenses in which a participle is connected with parts of the verb *sum*.

279.—Obs. 2. The ***compounds*** of *sum;* namely, *adsum*, *absum*, *dēsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *praesum*, *subsum*, *supersum*, are conjugated like the simple verb; but *insum*, and *subsum*, want the perfect, and the tenses formed from it. *Prōsum*, and *possum* from *potis* and *sum*, are irregular, and are given 411, 412.

Obs. 3. Instead of *Essem*, ***forem*** is sometimes used, but not in the 1st and 2d persons plural (445); and also *fore*, instead of *futūrus esse*.

280.—Obs. 4. The ***participle*** *ens* is not in use, but appears in three compounds, *absens*, *praesens*, and *potens*. In two of these the letter *s* is probably a remnant of the original stem *es–* (i. e. *ab-es-ens*, *prae-es-ens*). Also, the supine and gerund are wanting.

Obs. 5. Other ***ancient forms*** are: *siem*, *siēs*, *siet*, *sient*, and *fuam*, *fuās*, *fuat*, *fuant*, for *sim*, *sīs*, *sit*, *sint*.

EXERCISES ON THE VERB *SUM*.

1. *Give the designation of the verb,—conjugate it; give the tense, mood, person, number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order;* thus: *Sum*, verb intransitive, irregular, found in the present indicative, active, first person singular, "I am;"—*Fuit*, verb intransitive, irregular, found in the present perfect indicative, active, third person singular, "he has been;" aorist, "he was." *

* In these and all following exercises on the verb, it will be of great importance, in order to form habits of accuracy, and as a preparation for future exercises in translating and parsing, to require the pupil, in this manner, to state every thing belonging to a verb, in the order here indicated, or in any other the teacher may direct, always, however, observing the same; and also, for the saving of time and unnecessary labor, to state them in the fewest words possible, and without waiting to have every word drawn from him by questions. Let it be observed, also, that the term *active* here has no reference to the class of the verb, but only to its form, being that of the active voice.

Est, erat, erit, fueram, fuerim, fuero, sit, esset, fuistī, fuimus, fuērunt, fuēre, erunt, sint, sumus, erant, essent, fuissent, esse, esto, sunto, fuisse, es, erās, fuerās, fuistis, futūrus esse, futūrus, sint, etc., *ad libitum.*

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, naming the part of the verb used;* thus: "I will be," *ero,* in the future indicative, active, first person singular.

We are, they were, you have been, thou hast been, they will be, he may be, I shall have been, to be, be thou, let them be, about to be, to be about to be, we should be, we should have been, I may have been, they will have been, they may have been, they have been, you were, thou wast, he is, they are, etc., *ad libitum.*

3. The verb *sum* forms the *copula* connecting the subject and the predicate in a simple proposition, the predicate of which is not a verb. Thus in the proposition: "*Man* is *mortal,*" *man* is the subject; *mortal,* the predicate; and *is,* the copula. With the verb *sum* as a copula in different tenses, and the exercises (p. 56), form simple sentences; thus, *casa est* (*erat, fuit,* etc.) *parva,* "the cottage is (was, has been, etc.) small;" plural, *casae sunt parvae,* "the cottages are small."

In this way, translate into English the following propositions (see p. 56).

Poēta erat clārus,—opus magnum erit,—nūbēs densae sunt,—aestās calida fuit,—urbs antīqua fuit,—etc.

Translate the following English sentences into Latin:

Life is short,—the day was clear,—the boys are docile,—the shepherd will be faithful,—the apples are sweet,—etc.

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

The examples of the four regular conjugations are now given to be learned by heart. The tenses of the Passive Voice are arranged opposite to those of the Active; not that they may be learned simultaneously, but that when those of the Active have been learned the Passive may be compared with them in form and meaning, and may thus be acquired more readily and intelligently.

281.—A complete analysis of the forms of the verb, based upon their derivation from their stems, will be found in 330, etc. Meanwhile, it may be worth while for young pupils to observe, in regard to the formation of the tenses in the Indicative Mood, ***Active,*** that:

1. The ***Present*** is a ***primary*** tense, as formed directly from the first stem.

2. The ***Imperfect*** is formed from the Present by changing:

In the 1st Conjugation,		**o** into **ābam**;	as, *amo, amābam.*
"	2d "	**eo** into **ēbam**;	as, *moneo, monēbam.*
"	3d and 4th "	**o** into **ēbam**;	as, *rego, regēbam, audio, audiēbam.*

3. The ***Future*** is formed from the Present by changing:

In the 1st Conjugation,		**o** into **ābo**;	as, *amo, amābo.*
"	2d "	**eo** into **ēbo**;	as, *moneo, monēbo.*
"	3d and 4th "	**o** into **am**;	as, *rego, regam, audio, audiam.*

4. The ***Perfect*** is a ***primary*** tense, as formed directly from the second stem.

5. The ***Pluperfect*** in ***all*** conjugations is formed from the Perfect by changing **ī** into **eram**; as, *amāvī, amāveram.*

6. The ***Future Perfect*** in ***all*** conjugations is formed from the Perfect by changing **ī** into **ero**; as, *amāvī, amāvero.*

In the formation of the ***Passive*** Tenses in the Indicative Mood, from the Active, observe that:

1. In the ***Present*** Tense, **r** is added; as, *amo, amor.*

2. In the ***Imperfect*** Tense, **m** is changed to **r**; as, *amābam, amābar.*

3. In the ***Future*** Tense, **r** is added to **bo**; as, *amābo, amābor;* and **m** is changed to **r**; as, *audiam, audiar.*

4. The ***Perfect Tenses*** Passive are not made from the corresponding Active ones, but are formed (in all the moods) by joining the Perfect Participle Passive with the different tenses (Present, Imperfect, Future, etc.) of the verb *sum.* The Perfect Participle so used is a *complement* (666), and must agree in case, gender, and number, with the subject.

282.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Pres. Ind.*	*Supine.*
Amo,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum, *to love.*
	(1. **ama**–)	(2. **amāv**–)	(3. **amāto**–).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *love, do love, am loving* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Am**o** (=**ao**),	*I love, do love, am loving,*
2.	Am**ās**,	*Thou lovest, dost love, art loving,*
3.	Am**at**,	*He loves, does love, is loving;*
Plur. 1.	Am**āmus**,	*We love, do love, are loving,*
2.	Am**ātis**,	*Ye,* or *you love, do love, are loving,*
3.	Am**ant**,	*They love, do love, are loving.*

Imperfect, *loved, did love, was loving* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Am**ābam**,	*I loved, did love, was loving,*
2.	Am**ābās**,	*Thou lovedst, didst love, wast loving,*
3.	Am**ābat**,	*He loved, did love, was loving;*
Plur. 1.	Am**ābāmus**,	*We loved, did love, were loving,*
2.	Am**ābātis**,	*Ye loved, did love, were loving,*
3.	Am**ābant**,	*They loved, did love, were loving.*

Future, *shall* or *will love.*

Sing. 1.	Am**ābo**,	*I shall,* or *will love,*
2.	Am**ābis**,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt love,*
3.	Am**ābit**,	*He shall,* or *will love;*
Plur. 1.	Am**ābimus**,	*We shall,* or *will love,*
2.	Am**ābitis**,	*Ye shall,* or *will love,*
3.	Am**ābunt**,	*They shall,* or *will love.*

Perfect, *have loved* (***Present Perfect***); ***Aorist***, *loved, did love.*

Sing. 1.	Amāv**ī**,	*I have loved, loved, did love,*
2.	Amāv**istī**,	*Thou hast loved, lovedst, didst love,*
3.	Amāv**it**,	*He has loved, loved, did love;*
Plur. 1.	Amāv**imus**,	*We have loved, loved, did love,*
2.	Amāv**istis**,	*Ye have loved, loved, did love,*
3.	Amāv**ērunt**, *or* –āv**ēre**,	*They have loved, loved, did love.*

283.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*
Amor,	amārī,	amātus, *To be loved.*
	(1. **ama**–)	(3. **amāto**–).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am loved* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing.	1. **Amor** (=**aor**),	*I am loved,*
	2. Am**āris**, *or* **āre**,	*Thou art loved,*
	3. Am**ātur**,	*He is loved;*
Plur.	1. Am**āmur**,	*We are loved,*
	2. Am**āminī**,	*Ye are loved,*
	3. Am**antur**,	*They are loved.*

IMPERFECT, *was loved* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing.	1. Am**ābar**,	*I was loved,*
	2. Am**ābāris**, *or* **ābāre**,	*Thou wast loved,*
	3. Am**ābātur**,	*He was loved;*
Plur.	1. Am**ābāmur**,	*We were loved,*
	2. Am**ābāminī**,	*Ye were loved,*
	3. Am**ābantur**,	*They were loved.*

Future, *shall,* or *will be loved.*

Sing.	1. Am**ābor**,	*I shall,* or *will be loved,*
	2. Am**āberis**, *or* **ābere**,	*Thou shalt,* or *will be loved,*
	3. Am**ābitur**,	*He shall,* or *will be loved;*
Plur.	1. Am**ābimur**,	*We shall,* or *will be loved,*
	2. Am**ābiminī**,	*Ye shall,* or *will be loved,*
	3. Am**ābuntur**,	*They shall,* or *will be loved.*

PERFECT, *have been loved* (***Present Perfect***); ***Aorist,*** *was loved.*

Sing.	1. Amāt**us** sum, *or* fuī,	*I have been loved,* etc.,
	2. Amāt**us** es, *or* fuistī,	*Thou hast been loved,*
	3. Amāt**us** est, *or* fuit.	*He has been loved;*
Plur.	1. Amāt**ī** sumus, *or* fuimus,	*We have been loved,*
	2. Amāt**ī** estis, *or* fuistis,	*Ye have been loved,*
	3. Amāt**ī** sunt, fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been loved.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT, *had loved* (***Past Perfect***).

S. 1.	Amāv**eram**,	*I had loved,*
2.	Amāv**erās**,	*Thou hadst loved,*
3.	Amāv**erat**,	*He had loved;*
P. 1.	Amāv**erāmus**,	*We had loved,*
2.	Amāv**erātis**,	*Ye had loved,*
3.	Amāv**erant**,	*They had loved.*

Future Perfect, *shall*, or *will have loved*.

S. 1.	Amāv**ero**,	*I shall*, or *will have loved,*
2.	Amāv**eris**,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt have loved,*
3.	Amāv**erit**,	*He shall*, or *will have loved;*
P. 1.	Amāv**erimus**,	*We shall*, or *will have loved,*
2.	Amāv**eritis**,	*Ye shall*, or *will have loved,*
3.	Amāv**erint**,	*They shall*, or *will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can love* (***Present Imperfect***).

S. 1.	Am**em**,	*I may*, or *can love,*
2.	Am**ēs**,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst love,*
3.	Am**et**,	*He may*, or *can love;*
P. 1.	Am**ēmus**,	*We may*, or *can love,*
2.	Am**ētis**,	*Ye may*, or *can love,*
3.	Am**ent**,	*They may*, or *can love.*

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should love* (***Past Imperfect***).

S. 1.	Am**ārem**,	*I might love,*
2.	Am**ārēs**,	*Thou mightst love,*
3.	Am**āret**,	*He might love;*
P. 1.	Am**ārēmus**,	*We might love,*
2.	Am**ārētis**,	*Ye might love,*
3.	Am**ārent**,	*They might love.*

PERFECT, *may have loved* (***Present Perfect***).

S. 1.	Amāv**erim**,	*I may have loved,*
2.	Amāv**eris**,	*Thou mayst have loved,*
3.	Amāv**erit**,	*He may have loved;*
P. 1.	Amāv**erimus**,	*We may have loved,*
2.	Amāv**eritis**,	*Ye may have loved,*
3.	Amāv**erint**,	*They may have loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT, *had been loved* (***Past Perfect***).

S. 1.	**Amātus** eram, *or* fueram,	*I had been loved,*
2.	**Amātus** erās, *or* fuerās,	*Thou hadst been loved,*
3.	**Amātus** erat, *or* fuerat,	*He had been loved;*
P. 1.	**Amātī** erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been loved,*
2.	**Amātī** erātis, *or* fuerātis,	*Ye had been loved,*
3.	**Amātī** erant, *or* fuerant,	*They had been loved.*

Future Perfect, *shall*, or *will have been loved.*

S. 1.	**Amātus** ero, *or* fuero,	*I shall have been loved,*
2.	**Amātus** eris, *or* fueris,	*Thou wilt have been loved,*
3.	**Amātus** erit, *or* fuerit,	*He will have been loved;*
P. 1.	**Amātī** erimus, *or* fuerimus,	*We shall have been loved,*
2.	**Amātī** eritis, *or* fueritis,	*Ye will have been loved,*
3.	**Amātī** erunt, *or* fuerint,	*They will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be loved* (***Present Imperfect***).

S 1.	**Amer,**	*I may*, or *can be loved,*
2.	**Amēris,** *or* **-ēre,**	*Thou mayst*, or *canst be loved,*
3.	**Amētur,**	*He may*, or *can be loved;*
P. 1.	**Amēmur,**	*We may*, or *can be loved,*
2.	**Amēminī,**	*Ye may*, or *can be loved,*
3.	**Amentur,**	*They may*, or *can be loved.*

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should be loved* (***Past Imperfect***).

S. 1.	**Amārer,**	*I might be loved,*
2.	**Amārēris,** *or* **-ārēre,**	*Thou mightst be loved,*
3.	**Amārētur,**	*He might be loved;*
P. 1.	**Amārēmur,**	*We might be loved,*
2.	**Amārēminī,**	*Ye might be loved,*
3.	**Amārentur,**	*They might be loved.*

PERFECT, *may have been loved* (***Present Perfect***).

S. 1.	**Amātus** sim, *or* fuerim,	*I may have been loved,*
2.	**Amātus** sīs, *or* fueris,	*Thou mayst have been loved,*
3.	**Amātus** sit, *or* fuerit,	*He may have been loved;*
P. 1.	**Amātī** sīmus, *or* fuerimus,	*We may have been loved,*
2.	**Amātī** sītis, *or* fueritis,	*Ye may have been loved,*
3.	**Amātī** sint, *or* fuerint,	*They may have been loved.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should, have loved* (**Past Perfect**).

S.	1. Amāv**issem,**	*I might have loved,*
	2. Amāv**issēs,**	*Thou mightst have loved,*
	3. Amāv**isset,**	*He might have loved;*
P.	1. Amāv**issēmus,**	*We might have loved,*
	2. Amāv**issētis,**	*Ye might have loved,*
	3. Amāv**issent,**	*They might have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

S.	2. Am**ā,**	*Love thou.*
P.	2. Am**āte,**	*Love ye.*

FUTURE.

S.	2. Am**āto,**	*Thou shalt love,*
	3. Am**āto,**	*He shall love,*
P.	2. Am**ātōte,**	*Ye shall love,*
	3. Am**anto,**	*They shall love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. (IMPERF.)	Am**āre,**	*To love,*
PERF.	Amāv**isse,**	*To have loved,*
FUT.	Esse am**ātūrus,** a, um,	*To be about to love,*
F. PERF.	Fuisse am**ātūrus,** a, um,	*To have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Am**ans** (amant(i-)),	*Loving,*
PERF.		
FUT.	Am**ātūrus,** a, um,	*About to love.*

GERUNDS.

Gen.	Am**andī,**	*Of loving.*
Dat.	Am**andō,**	*To loving,*
Acc.	Am**andum,**	*Loving,*
Abl.	Am**andō,**	*With, from,* etc., *loving.*

SUPINES.

Acc.	Amāt**um,**	*To love,*
Abl.	Amāt**ū,**	*To be loved, in loving.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should, have been loved* (**Past Perfect**).

S. 1.	Amātus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might have been loved,*
2.	Amātus essēs, *or* fuissēs,	*Thou mightst have been loved,*
3.	Amātus esset, *or* fuisset,	*He might have been loved;*
P. 1.	Amātī essēmus, *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been loved,*
2.	Amātī essētis, *or* fuissētis,	*Ye might have been loved,*
3.	Amātī essent, *or* fuissent,	*They might have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

S. 2.	Am**āre**,	*Be thou loved.*
P. 2.	am**āminī**,	*Be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

S. 2.	Am**ātor**,	*Thou shalt be loved,*
3.	Am**ātor**,	*He shall be loved*
P. 2.		
3.	Am**antor**,	*They shall be loved*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. (IMPERF.).	Am**ārī**,	*To be loved.*
PERF.	Esse, *or* fuisse amāt**us**,	*To have been loved.*
FUT.	Amāt**um īrī**,	*To be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.		
PERF.	Amāt**us**, a, um,	*Loved, having been loved.*
FUT.		

GERUNDIVE.

Amandus, a, um, *To be loved, being loved.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imp.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Amo,	Amem,	Amā,	Amāre,	Amans,
IMP.	Amābam,	Amārem,			
PERF.	Amāvī,	Amāverim,		Amāvisse,	
PLUP.	Amāveram,	Amāvissem,			
FUT.	Amābo,		Amāto	Esse amātūrus,	Amātūrus.
F. PERF.	Amāvero,			Fuisse amātūrus,	

After the same manner, inflect:

Creo,	creāre, (1. **crea–**),	creāvī, (2. **creāv–**),	creātum, (3. **creāto–**),	*Create.*
Rogo,	rogāre, (1. **roga–**),	rogāvī, (2. **rogāv–**),	rogātum, (3. **rogāto–**),	*Ask.*
Voco,	vocāre, (1. **voca–**),	vocāvī, (2. **vocāv–**),	vocātum, (3. **vocāto–**),	*Call.*
Domo,	domāre, (1. **doma–**),	domuī, (2. **domu–**),	domitum, (3. **domito–**).	*Tame.*

EXERCISES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION; ACTIVE VOICE.

284.—1. *Give the designation of the verb, conjugate it; give the tense, mood, voice, person, number, and translation, of the following words, always observing the same order*, thus: *Amo*, a verb transitive, first conjugation; *amo, amāre, amāvī, amātum.* It is found in the present indicative, active, first person singular, "I love," "I do love," "I am loving."

Amābat, amāverat, amet, amāveritis, amābunt, creāvimus, creāverat, domuerat, domuisset, amāvero, domuero, vocāverim, vocā, vocāre, domā, creāvisse, domuisse, amātūrus, domitūrus, amans, amandum, amātū, domitum, domābam, domābo, creat, creāret, amāret, amāvistī, amāvēre, domuistis, amāto, amandō, amāvērunt, creāre, vocāvērunt, vocāverint, vocābunt, vocārētis, domābitis, etc., *ad libitum.*

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, giving the part of the verb used*, thus: "I was loving," *amābam*, in the imperfect indicative active, first person singular:

He will love, I might love, I had loved, I might have loved, he shall love, I may love, he created, I called, I may have called, he will tame, he has tamed, he would have tamed, love thou, let them love, to love, about to love, of loving, to have loved, they were loving, they have loved, thou hast created, thou hast tamed, etc., *ad libitum.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imp.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Amor,	Amer,	Amāre,	Amārī,	
IMP.	Amābar,	Amārer,			
PERF.	Amātus sum,	Amātus sim,		Esse, *or* Fuisse amātus,	Amātus,
PLUP.	Amātus eram,	Amātus essem,			
FUT.	Amābor,		Amātor	Amātum īrī.	Amandus,
F. PERF.	Amātus ero,				

After the same manner, inflect:

Creor,	creārī, (1. crea-),	creātus, (3. creāto-),	*Be created.*
Rogor,	rogārī, (1. roga-),	rogātus, (3. rogāto-),	*Be asked.*
Vocor,	vocārī, (1. voca-),	vocātus, (3. vocāto-),	*Be called.*
Domor,	domārī, (1. doma-),	domitus, (2. domito-).	*Be tamed.*

EXERCISES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION; PASSIVE VOICE.

285.—1. *Give the designation of the verb, conjugate it; give the tense, mood, voice, person, number, and translation, of the following words, always following the same order*, thus: *Amor*, verb transitive, first conjugation; *amo, amāre, amāvī, amātum;* found in the present indicative passive, first person singular, "I am loved."

Amābātur, amantur, amātus est, amābitur, amābar, amārētur, amentur, amātus sim, amātus ero, amātī fuērunt, amātī essēmus, amābāminī, amāris, amātus esset, amātī fuissent, amābuntur, amantor, amāre, amātus esse, amātus, amātum īrī, amandus, amēminī, amārēminī, amantur, creātur, creārētur, vocābitur, domantur, vocātus sum, etc.

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, giving the part of the verb used*, thus: "I am loved," *amor*, in the present indicative passive, first person singular:

He is loved, they are loved, I have been loved, they were created, he had been called, they will be tamed, I might be loved, they may have been loved, to be loved, to have been called, I had been called, being called, they are tamed, they have been tamed, he will be loved, they will have been loved, they may be called, I may be called, he might have been created, they will be loved, etc.

286.—*The Infinitive with a subject.* The infinitive, after another verb, and with an accusative before it as its subject, is translated into English in the indicative or potential mood; and the accusative in Latin is made the nominative in English; as, *dīcit mē amāre,* "he says that I love." The accusatives are thus translated:

Mē, that I;	*nōs*, that we;	*hominem*, that the man.
Tē, that thou;	*vōs*, that you;	*hominēs*, that the men.
Illum (*eum*), that he;	*illōs* (*eōs*), that they;	*fēminās*, that the women.

Infinitives, after verbs of the present, past, and future tenses, are rendered according the following rules, viz.:

287.—Rule I. *When the preceding verb is of the present or future tense, the present infinitive is translated as the present indicative; the perfect infinitive, as the perfect indicative; and the future infinitive, as the future indicative*, thus:

Dīcit mē scrībere, he says that I write, *or* am writing;
Dīcit mē scripsisse, he says that I wrote;
Dīcit mē scriptūrum esse, he says that I will write.

Rule II. *When the preceding verb is in past time* (i. e., *in the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect tense*), *the present infinitive is translated as the imperfect, or perfect indicative; the perfect infinitive, as the pluperfect indicative; and the future infinitive, as the imperfect subjunctive*, thus:

Dixit mē scrībere, he said that I wrote, *or* was writing;
Dixit mē scripsisse, he said that I had written;
Dixit mē scriptūrum esse, he said that I would write.

Rule III. *The future perfect of the infinitive with a subject, is always translated as the pluperfect subjunctive, whatever be the tense of the preceding verb*, thus:

Dīcit mē scriptūrum fuisse, he says that I would have written;
Dixit mē scriptūrum fuisse, he said that I would have written;
Dīcet mē scriptūrum fuisse, he will say that I would have written.

1. *According to the preceding rules and examples, translate the following sentences into English, observing that dīcit,* "he says," *is present time; dixit,* "he said," *past; and dīcet,* "he will say," *future.*

Dīcit mē vocāre, tē amāre, nōs amāvisse, vōs amātūrōs esse, nōs amātūrōs fuisse, illōs domāre, tē amātūrum esse, illōs rogātūrōs esse, hominēs rogātūrōs fuisse.

Dixit mē vocāre, tē amāre, nōs amāvisse, nōs amātūrōs esse, nōs amātūrōs fuisse, vōs domāre, tē amātūrum esse, illum rogāvisse, vōs rogāre, illam rogātūram esse.

Dixit nōs vocāre; *dīcet* illum creāre, *dīcit* tē creātūrum esse; *dixit* sē amātūrum esse; *dīcit* illōs creātūrōs, illum vocātūrum, vōs domitūrōs esse, domitūrōs fuisse, mē rogāre, tē rogāvisse, vōs rogātūrōs, etc.

Dīcit eum amārī, illōs vocātōs esse, mē vocātum īrī, tē amātum īrī, mē creārī, eōs domārī, illum amātum fuisse, nōs domitōs esse, nōs domitum īrī, illōs amārī, illōs vocātum īrī.

Dixit eum amārī, illōs vocātōs esse, mē vocātum īrī, tē amātum īrī, mē creārī, eōs domārī, illum amātum fuisse, nōs domitōs esse, nōs domitum īrī, illōs amārī, illōs vocātum īrī, tē amārī.

Dīcet eum amārī, etc., as in the preceding.

2. *Translate the following English into Latin, taking care to put the participle of the future infinitive in the same gender, number, and case, as the accusative preceding it:*

He said that I loved, that I was calling. *He says* that they will tame, that I would have created, that they will call, that he loves. *He will say* that I love, that I have loved, that I will love. *He said* that I had called, that they would have called, that they tamed, that they would tame, that he would have tamed. *He says* that I am asking, that they are asking, that they are calling, that we did call, that they do ask, that we will ask, etc.

3. *Translate the following English into Latin, taking care that the participle of the perfect infinitive be put in the same gender, number, and case, as the accusative before it:*

He says that I am loved, that he was loved, that he will be called, that they were created, that we were tamed. *He said* that I was called, that we were created, that they had been created. *He will say* that I was loved, that I will be loved, that they will be called, that you are called, that he will be called. *He said* that they had been tamed, etc.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE AND THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Give the designation, etc., as directed above: Amābo, amārem, amārētur, amātus sim, amant, vocātur, creārentur, domantur, domitum īrī, creārī, amant, amābuntur, amārent, amāvissent, amāverat, amētis, amātis, amābātis, amāveris, amā, amāvisse, amandum, amātur, vocātum īrī, vocātus es, vocātī erant, vocātus esset (*dīcit sē*, "he says that he"), amātūrum esse (*dixit sē*, "he said that he"), amāre, amārī (*nōs*, "that we"), vocātōs esse, amanto, amābunt, amāvistis, amāvēre, amārētis (*vōs*, "that you"), rogāre, rogāvisse, rogātōs esse, rogātūrōs fuisse, rogābunt.

Conjugate and inflect the following verbs like *Amo*, viz.:

Accūso, *I accuse.*	Certo, *I strive.*	Reparo, *I repair.*
Æstimo, *I value.*	Cōgito, *I think.*	Rogo, *I ask.*
Ambulo, *I walk.*	Festīno, *I hasten.*	Servo, *I keep.*
Cūro, *I care.*	Nāvigo, *I sail.*	Vīto, *I shun.*

288.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Moneo,	monēre,	monuī,	monitum,	*To advise.*
	(1. **mone–**),	(2. **monu–**),	(3. **monito–**).	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *I advise, do advise, am advising* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing.	1. Mon**eo,**	*I advise,*
	2. Mon**ēs,**	*Thou advisest,*
	3. Mon**et,**	*He advises;*
Plur.	1. Mon**ēmus,**	*We advise,*
	2. Mon**ētis,**	*Ye advise,*
	3. Mon**ent,**	*They advise.*

IMPERFECT, *advised, did advise, was advising* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing.	1. Mon**ēbam,**	*I advised,*
	2. Mon**ēbās,**	*Thou advisedst,*
	3. Mon**ēbat,**	*He advised;*
Plur.	1. Mon**ēbāmus,**	*We advised,*
	2. Mon**ēbātis,**	*Ye advised,*
	3. Mon**ēbant,**	*They advised.*

Future, *shall,* or *will advise.*

Sing.	1. Mon**ēbo,**	*I shall,* or *will advise,*
	2. Mon**ēbis,**	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt advise,*
	3. Mon**ēbit,**	*He shall,* or *will advise;*
Plur.	1. Mon**ēbimus,**	*We shall,* or *will advise,*
	2. Mon**ēbitis,**	*Ye shall,* or *will advise,*
	3. Mon**ēbunt,**	*They shall,* or *will advise.*

PERFECT, *have advised* (***Present Perfect***); ***Aorist,*** *advised, did advise.*

Sing.	1. Monu**ī,**	*I have advised,*
	2. Monu**istī,**	*Thou hast advised,*
	3. Monu**it,**	*He has advised;*
Plur.	1. Monu**imus,**	*We have advised,*
	2. Monu**istis,**	*Ye have advised,*
	3. Monu**ērunt,** *or* **ēre,**	*They have advised.*

289.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*
Moneor,	monērī,	monitus, *To be advised.*
	(1. mone–),	(3. monito–).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am advised* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing. 1. Mone**or**,	*I am advised,*
2. Mon**ēris**, *or* **ēre**,	*Thou art advised,*
3. Mon**ētur**,	*He is advised;*
Plur. 1. Mon**ēmur**,	*We are advised,*
3. Mon**ēminī**,	*Ye are advised,*
3. Mone**ntur**,	*They are advised.*

IMPERFECT, *was advised* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing. 1. Mon**ēbar**,	*I was advised,*
2. Mon**ēbāris**, *or* **ēbāre**,	*Thou wast advised,*
3. Mon**ēbātur**,	*He was advised;*
Plur. 1. Mon**ēbāmur**,	*We were advised,*
2. Mon**ēbāminī**,	*Ye were advised,*
3. Mon**ēbantur**,	*They were advised.*

Future, *shall*, or *will be advised.*

Sing. 1. Mon**ēbor**,	*I shall*, or *will be advised,*
2. Mon**ēberis**, *or* **ēbere**,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt be advised,*
3. Mon**ēbitur**,	*He shall*, or *will be advised;*
Plur. 1. Mon**ēbimur**,	*We shall*, or *will be advised,*
2. Mon**ēbiminī**,	*Ye shall*, or *will be advised,*
3. Mon**ēbuntur**,	*They shall*, or *will be advised.*

PERFECT, *have been* (***Present Perfect***); ***Aorist***, *was advised.*

Sing. 1. Monit**us** sum, *or* fuī,	*I have been advised,*
2. Monit**us** es, *or* fuistī,	*Thou hast been advised,*
3. Monit**us** est, *or* fuit,	*He has been advised;*
Plur. 1. Monit**ī** sumus, *or* fuimus,	*We have been advised,*
2. Monit**ī** estis, *or* fuistis,	*Ye have been advised,*
3. Monit**ī** sunt, fuērunt, etc.,	*They have been advised.*

PLUPERFECT, *had advised* (***Past Perfect***).

S. 1.	Monu**eram**,	*I had advised,*
2.	Monu**erās**,	*Thou hadst advised,*
3.	Monu**erat**,	*He had advised ;*
P. 1.	Monu**erāmus**,	*We had advised,*
2.	Monu**erātis**,	*Ye had advised,*
3.	Monu**erant**,	*They had advised.*

Future Perfect, *shall*, or *will have advised.*

S. 1.	Monu**ero**,	*I shall,* or *will have advised,*
2.	Monu**eris**,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt have advised,*
3.	Monu**erit**,	*He shall,* or *will have advised ;*
P. 1.	Monu**erimus**,	*We shall,* or *will have advised,*
2.	Monu**eritis**,	*Ye shall,* or *will have advised,*
3.	Monu**erint**,	*They shall,* or *will have advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can advise* (***Present Imperfect***).

S. 1.	Mone**am**,	*I may,* or *can advise,*
2.	Mone**ās**,	*Thou mayst,* or *canst advise,*
3.	Mone**at**,	*He may,* or *can advise ;*
P. 1.	Mone**āmus**,	*We may,* or *can advise,*
2.	Mone**ātis**,	*Ye may,* or *can advise,*
3.	Mone**ant**,	*They may,* or *can advise.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should advise* (***Past Imperfect***).

S. 1.	Mon**ērem**,	*I might advise,*
2.	Mon**ērēs**,	*Thou mightst advise,*
3.	Mon**ēret**,	*He might advise ;*
P. 1.	Mon**ērēmus**,	*We might advise,*
2.	Mon**ērētis**,	*Ye might advise,*
3.	Mon**ērent**,	*They might advise.*

PERFECT, *may have advised* (***Present Perfect***).

S. 1.	Monu**erim**,	*I may have advised,*
2.	Monu**eris**,	*Thou mayst have advised,*
3.	Monu**erit**,	*He may have advised ;*
P. 1.	Monu**erimus**,	*We may have adrised,*
2.	Monu**eritis**,	*Ye may have advised,*
3.	Monu**erint**,	*They may have advised.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been advised* (***Past Perfect***).

S. 1.	Monit**us** eram, *or* fueram,	*I had been advised,*
2.	Monit**us** erās, or fuerās,	*Thou hadst been advised,*
3.	Monit**us** erat, *or* fuerat,	*He had been advised;*
P. 1.	Monit**ī** erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been advised,*
2.	Monit**ī** erātis, *or* fuerātis,	*Ye had been advised,*
3.	Monit**ī** erant, *or* fuerant,	*They had been advised.*

Future Perfect, *shall*, or *will have been advised.*

S. 1.	Monit**us** ero, *or* fuero,	*I shall have been advised,*
2.	Monit**us** eris, *or* fueris,	*Thou wilt have been advised,*
3.	Monit**us** erit, *or* fuerit,	*He will have been advised;*
P. 1.	Monit**ī** erimus, *or* fuerimus,	*We shall have been advised,*
2.	Monit**ī** eritis, *or* fueritis,	*Ye will have been advised,*
3.	Monit**ī** erunt, *or* fuerint,	*They will have been advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be advised* (***Present Imperfect***).

S. 1.	Mone**ar,**	*I may be advised,*
2.	Mone**āris,** *or* **-eāre,**	*Thou mayst be advised,*
3.	Mone**ātur,**	*He may be advised;*
P. 1.	Mone**āmur,**	*We may be advised,*
2.	Mone**āminī,**	*Ye may be advised,*
3.	Mone**antur,**	*They may be advised.*

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should be advised* (***Past Imperfect***).

S. 1.	Mon**ērer,**	*I might be advised,*
2.	Mon**ērēris,** *or* **-ērēre,**	*Thou mightst be advised,*
3.	Mon**ērētur,**	*He might be advised;*
P. 1.	Mon**ērēmur,**	*We might be advised,*
2.	Mon**ērēminī,**	*Ye might be advised,*
3.	Mon**ērentur,**	*They might be advised.*

PERFECT, *may have been advised* (***Present Perfect***).

S. 1.	Monit**us** sim, *or* fuerim,	*I may have been advised,*
2.	Monit**us** sīs, *or* fueris,	*Thou mayst have been advised,*
3.	Monit**us** sit, *or* fuerit,	*He may have been advised;*
P. 1.	Monit**ī** sīmus, *or* fuerimus,	*We may have been advised,*
2.	Monit**ī** sītis, *or* fueritis,	*Ye may have been advised,*
3.	Monit**ī** sint, *or* fuerint,	*They may have been advised.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should have advised* (**Past Perfect**).

S.	1. Monu**issem**,	*I might have advised,*
	2. Monu**issēs**,	*Thou mightst have advised,*
	3. Monu**isset**,	*He might have advised;*
P.	1. Monu**issēmus**,	*We might have advised,*
	2. Monu**issētis**,	*Ye might have advised,*
	3. Monu**issent**,	*They might have advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT

Sing.	2. Mon**ē**,	*Advise thou,*
Plur.	2. Mon**ēte**,	*Advise ye.*

FUTURE.

Sing.	2. Mon**ēto**,	*Thou shalt advise,*
	3. Mon**ēto**,	*He shall advise;*
Plur.	2. Mon**ētōte**,	*Ye shall advise,*
	3. Mon**ento**,	*They shall advise.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. (Imperf.)	Mon**ēre**,	*To advise,*
PERF.	Monu**isse**,	*To have advised,*
FUT.	Esse mon**itūrus**,	*To be about to advise,*
F. PERF.	Fuisse mon**itūrus**,	*To have been about to advise.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mon**ens** (monent(i-)),	*Advising,*
PERF.		
FUT.	Mon**itūrus**,	*About to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Gen.	Mon**endī**,	*Of advising,*
Dat.	Mon**endō**,	*To advising,*
Acc.	Mon**endum**,	*Advising,*
Abl.	Mon**endō**,	*With,* etc., *advising.*

SUPINES.

Acc.	Mon**itum**,	*To advise,*
Abl.	Mon**itū**,	*To be advised,* or *in advising.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should have been advised* (**Past Perfect**)

S. 1. Monit**us** essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might have been advised,*
2. Monit**us** essēs, *or* fuissēs,	*Thou mightst have been advised,*
3. Monit**us** esset, *or* fuisset,	*He might have been advised;*
P. 1. Monit**ī** essēmus, *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been advised,*
2. Monit**ī** essētis, *or* fuissētis,	*Ye might have been advised,*
3. Monit**ī** essent, *or* fuissent,	*They might have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

S. 2. Mon**ēre,**	*Be thou advised.*
P. 2. Mon**ēminī,**	*Be ye advised.*

FUTURE.

S. 2. Mon**ētor,**	*Thou shalt be advised,*
3. Mon**ētor,**	*He shall be advised.*
P. 2.	
3. Mon**entor,**	*They shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. (Imperfect),	Mon**ērī,**	*To be advised,*
PERF.	Esse, *or* fuisse monit**us,**	*To have been advised,*
FUT.	Monit**um īrī,**	*To be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.		
PERF.	Monit**us,** a, um,	*Advised,* or *having been advised,*
FUT.		

GERUNDIVE.

Mon**endus,** a, um, *To be advised,* or *being advised.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Moneo,	Moneam,	Monē.	Monēre,	Monens,
IMP.	Monēbam,	Monērem,			
PERF.	Monuī,	Monuerim,		Monuisse,	
PLUP.	Monueram,	Monuissem			
FUT.	Monēbo,		Monēto	Esse monitūrus,	Monitūrus.
F. PERF.	Monuero.			Fuisse monitūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect:

Doceo,	docēre,	docuī,	doctum,	*To teach.*
	(1. **doce–**),	(2. **docu–**),	(3. **docto–**).	
Jubeo,	jubēre,	jussī,	jussum,	*To order.*
	(1. **jube–**),	(2. **juss–**),	(3. **jusso–**).	
Video,	vidēre,	vīdī,	vīsum,	*To see.*
	(1. **vide–**),	(2. **vīd–**),	(3. **vīso–**).	

290. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed* 284.—Monēbo, monuit, monēret, monuerit, monē, monuisse, monens, monendum, monēbat, monent, monento, monuistī, monuēre, monuerātis, monuissent.—Docent, jubēbat, jusserat, vidēret, videat, vidēbit, docueris, docē, doctūrus, jussūrus, vīsum, jussū, docens, etc.

2. *Translate the following into Latin*, etc., *as directed* 284.—I have advised, I will advise, he may advise, I might advise, he will have advised, they advise, they had advised, they might have advised, thou hast advised, ye have advised, I did advise, he was advising.—He teaches, they taught, we had ordered, we would have ordered, I saw, I have seen, thou wilt see, he may see, they would have ordered, etc.

3. *Translate according to the rules* 286, 287.—*Dīcit* (he says) mē monēre,—nōs monuisse,—illōs monēre,—vōs monitūrōs esse,—mē monitūrum fuisse.—*Dixit* (he said) sē monēre,—nōs vidēre,—eum vīdisse,—nōs vīsūrōs esse,—mē vīsūrum esse,—mē vīsūrum fuisse,—vōs vīdisse,—sē docēre,—nōs docuisse,—vōs doctūrōs esse,—illam (*that she*) vīsūram esse,—illum doctūrum esse, etc.

4. *As directed* 286, 287.—*He says* that I advised; *he said* that I advised,—that I had advised,—that I would advise. *He says* that I will advise,—that I would have advised. *He said* that he (*sē*) saw,—had seen,—would see,—would have seen. *I advise* that you should order. *He says* that I am advising,—that we will order, etc.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed* 284, 285.—Monēbam, monuerat, monuerit, monēbunt, moneam, monē, monēbar, monitus es, monuit, monērī, doctus sum, docear, docērer, docēbitur, docento, docentor, docentur, jubet, jussērunt, jusserint, jubēbo, jubērentur, jussus esse, jubē, video, vident, vidērētur, vidē, vīdistis, vīderātis, vidērent, vīdero, videndum, videns, vīsūrus, vīdisse, vīsum īrī, vidērī, monēbuntur, moneantur, vidērentur, jusserim, jubēbam, jubērer, videntur, docuērunt, docē, docens.

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles*
PRES.	Moneor,	Monear,	Monēre	Monērī,	
IMP.	Monēbar,	Monērer,			
PERF.	Monitus sum,	Monitus sim,		Esse, *or* Fuisse monitus,	Monitus.
PLUP.	Monitus eram,	Monitus essem			
FUT.	Monēbor,		monētor	Monitum īrī.	Monendus.
F. PERF.	Monitus fuero.				

After the same mānner, inflect:

Doceor,	docērī, (1. doce–),	doctus, (3. docto–),	*To be taught.*
Jubeor,	jubērī, (1. jube–),	jussus, (3. jusso–),	*To be ordered.*
Videor,	vidērī, (1. vide–),	vīsus, (3. vīso–).	*To be seen.*

291. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed* 285.—Moneor, monētur, monēbātur, monēbitur, monitus est, monitī estis, moneāmur, monērētur, monitus ero, monēre, monērī, monitus, monitus esse, monendus. Vidērētur, vīsus, vīsum īrī, docērentur, doceantur, docēminī, doceāminī, jubēbitur, jussī fuērunt, jubērentur, jubētor, etc.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 285.—I was advised, he has been advised;—he may be advised, we will be advised, we were advised, I am advised, they might have been advised. Be ye advised, to be about to be advised, to be advised, he may have been seen;—they should be ordered, we will be seen, they will be taught, having been taught, to be taught, they shall be taught;—they have been ordered, we might have been ordered, to be about to be ordered, being ordered, they may have been ordered, etc.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 284, 285.—I am advised, he advises, they will advise, ye have advised, they will have advised, he will be advised, he is taught, he has taught, they will teach, I will see, they may see, they are seen, he has been seen, to order, to have been ordered, ordering, about to order, to have seen, I might see, I might have been seen, they will not (*nōn*) see, he will not see, I do not advise, he is teaching, he is not teaching, he will not order, I will order, etc.

3. *As directed* 286, 287.—*Dīcit* sē monēre,—nōs monuisse,—eum monitūrum esse,—vōs vidēre,—eum vīsum īrī. *Dixit* sē monēre,—nōs monuisse,—eum monitūrum esse,—vōs vidēre,—eum vīsum īrī. *Dīcet* sē monēre, etc.,—vōs monuisse,—hominēs monitūrōs esse,—fēminam monitūram esse, vōs jubēre.

4. *As directed* 286, 287.—*He says* that he advises,—that he will advise,—that we have advised. *He said* that I advised,—that he had advised,—that they would have advised,—that I would order,—would have ordered,—would not have ordered,—was taught,—had been taught,—would be taught, etc.

292.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Rego,	regere,	rexī,	rectum,	*To rule.*
	(1. **reg**–)	(2. **rex**–)	(3. **recto**–).	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *rule, do rule, am ruling* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Reg**o**,	*I rule, do rule, am ruling,*
2.	Reg**is**,	*Thou rulest, dost rule, art ruling,*
3.	Reg**it**,	*He rules, does rule, is ruling;*
Plur. 1.	Reg**imus**,	*We rule, do rule, are ruling,*
2.	Reg**itis**,	*Ye rule, do rule, are ruling,*
3.	Reg**unt**,	*They rule, do rule, are ruling.*

IMPERFECT, *ruled, did rule, was ruling* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Reg**ēbam**,	*I ruled, did rule, was ruling,*
2.	Reg**ēbās**,	*Thou ruledst, didst rule, wast ruling,*
3.	Reg**ēbat**,	*He ruled, did rule, was ruling;*
Plur. 1.	Reg**ēbāmus**,	*We ruled, did rule, were ruling,*
2.	Reg**ēbātis**,	*Ye ruled, did rule, were ruling,*
3.	Reg**ēbant**,	*They ruled, did rule, were ruling.*

Future, *shall*, or *will rule.*

Sing. 1.	Reg**am**,	*I shall*, or *will rule,*
2.	Reg**ēs**,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt rule,*
3.	Reg**et**,	*He shall*, or *will rule;*
Plur. 1.	Reg**ēmus**,	*We shall*, or *will rule,*
2.	Reg**ētis**,	*Ye shall*, or *will rule,*
3.	Reg**ent**,	*They shall*, or *will rule.*

PERFECT, *have ruled* (***Present Perfect***); ***Aorist,*** *ruled, did rule.*

Sing. 1.	Rex**ī**,	*I have ruled, ruled, did rule,*
2.	Rex**istī**,	*Thou hast ruled, ruledst, didst rule,*
3.	Rex**it**,	*He has ruled, ruled, did rule;*
Plur. 1.	Rex**imus**,	*We have ruled, ruled, did rule,*
2.	Rex**istis**,	*Ye have ruled, ruled, did rule,*
3.	Rex**ērunt**, *or* **ēre**,	*They have ruled, ruled, did rule.*

293.—THIRD CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*
Regor,	regī,	rectus, *To be ruled.*
	(1. reg–)	(3. recto–).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am ruled* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing. 1. Reg**or**,	*I am ruled,*
2. Reg**eris**, *or* **ere**,	*Thou art ruled,*
3. Reg**itur**,	*He is ruled,*
Plur. 1. Reg**imur**,	*We are ruled,*
2. Reg**iminī**,	*Ye are ruled,*
3. Reg**untur**,	*They are ruled.*

IMPERFECT, *was ruled* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing. 1. Reg**ēbar**,	*I was ruled,*
2. Reg**ēbāris**, *or* **ēbāre**,	*Thou wast ruled,*
3. Reg**ēbātur**,	*He was ruled,*
Plur. 1. Reg**ēbāmur**,	*We were ruled,*
2. Reg**ēbāminī**,	*Ye were ruled,*
3. Reg**ēbantur**,	*They were ruled.*

Future, *shall,* or *will be ruled.*

Sing. 1. Reg**ar**,	*I shall,* or *will be ruled,*
2. Reg**ēris**, *or* **ēre**,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt be ruled,*
3. Reg**ētur**,	*He shall,* or *will be ruled;*
Plur. 1. Reg**ēmur**,	*We shall,* or *will be ruled,*
2. Reg**ēminī**,	*Ye shall,* or *will be ruled,*
3. Reg**entur**,	*They shall,* or *will be ruled,*

PERFECT, *have been ruled* (***Present Perfect***); ***Aorist,*** *was ruled.*

Sing. 1. Rect**us** sum, *or* fuī,	*I have been ruled,*
2. Rect**us** es, *or* fuistī,	*Thou hast been ruled,*
3. Rect**us** est, *or* fuit,	*He has been ruled;*
Plur. 1. Rect**ī** sumus, *or* fuimus,	*We have been ruled,*
2. Rect**ī** estis, *or* fuistis,	*Ye have been ruled,*
3. Rect**ī** sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre,	*They have been ruled.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled* (**Past Perfect**).

S. 1. Rexer**am**,	*I had ruled,*
2. Rexer**ās**,	*Thou hadst ruled,*
3. Rexer**at**,	*He had ruled;*
P. 1. Rexer**āmus**,	*We had ruled,*
2. Rexer**ātis**,	*Ye had ruled,*
3. Rexer**ant**,	*They had ruled.*

Future Perfect, *shall*, or *will have ruled.*

S. 1. Rex**ero**,	*I shall*, or *will have ruled,*
2. Rex**eris**,	*Thou shalt, or wilt have ruled,*
3. Rex**erit**,	*He shall*, or *will have ruled;*
P. 1. Rex**erimus**,	*We shall*, or *will have ruled,*
2. Rex**eritis**,	*Ye shall*, or *will have ruled,*
3. Rex**erint**,	*They shall*, or *will have ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can rule* (**Present Imperfect**).

S. 1. Reg**am**,	*I may*, or *can rule,*
2. Reg**ās**,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst rule,*
3. Reg**at**,	*He may*, or *can rule;*
P. 1. Reg**āmus**,	*We may*, or *can rule,*
2. Reg**ātis**,	*Ye may*, or *can rule,*
3. Reg**ant**,	*They may*, or *can rule.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should rule* (**Past Imperfect**).

S. 1. Reg**erem**,	*I might rule,*
2. Reg**erēs**,	*Thou mightst rule,*
3. Reg**eret**,	*He might rule;*
P. 1. Reg**erēmus**,	*We might rule,*
2. Reg**erētis**,	*Ye might rule,*
3. Reg**erent**,	*They might rule.*

PERFECT, *may have ruled* (**Present Perfect.**)

S. 1. Rex**erim**,	*I may have ruled,*
2. Rex**eris**,	*Thou mayst have ruled,*
3. Rex**erit**,	*He may have ruled;*
P. 1. Rex**erimus**,	*We may have ruled,*
2. Rex**eritis**,	*Ye may have ruled,*
3. Rex**erint**,	*They may have ruled,*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT, *had been ruled* (**Past Perfect**).

S. 1. Rect**us** eram, *or* fueram,	*I had been ruled,*
2. Rect**us** erās, *or* fuerās,	*Thou hadst been ruled,*
3. Rect**us** erat, *or* fuerat,	*He had been ruled;*
P. 1. Rect**ī** erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been ruled,*
2. Rect**ī** erātis, *or* fuerātis,	*Ye had been ruled,*
3. Rect**ī** erant, *or* fuerant,	*They had been ruled.*

Future Perfect, *shall*, or *will have been ruled.*

S. 1. Rect**us** ero, *or* fuero,	*I shall*, or *will have been ruled,*
2. Rect**us** eris, *or* fueris,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt have been ruled,*
3. Rect**us** erit, *or* fuerit,	*He shall*, or *will have been ruled,*
P. 1. Rect**ī** erimus, *or* fuerimus,	*We shall*, or *will have been ruled,*
2. Rect**ī** eritis, *or* fueritis,	*Ye shall*, or *will have been ruled,*
3. Rect**ī** erunt, *or* fuerint,	*They shall*, or *will have been ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can be ruled* (**Present Imperfect**).

S. 1. Reg**ar,**	*I may*, or *can be ruled,*
2. Reg**āris,** *or* **āre,**	*Thou mayst*, or *canst be ruled,*
3. Reg**ātur,**	*He may*, or *can be ruled;*
P. 1. Reg**āmur,**	*We may*, or *can be ruled,*
2. Reg**āminī,**	*Ye may*, or *can be ruled,*
3. Reg**antur,**	*They may*, or *can be ruled.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should be ruled* (**Past Imperfect**).

S. 1. Reg**erer,**	*I might be ruled,*
2. Reg**erēris,** *or* **erēre,**	*Thou mightst be ruled,*
3. Reg**erētur,**	*He might be ruled;*
P. 1. Reg**erēmur,**	*We might be ruled,*
2. Reg**eremini,**	*Ye might be ruled,*
3. Reg**erentur,**	*They might be ruled.*

PERFECT, *may have been ruled* (**Present Perfect**).

S. 1. Rect**us** sim, *or* fuerim,	*I may have been ruled,*
2. Rect**us** sīs, *or* fueris,	*Thou mayst have been ruled,*
3. Rect**us** sit, *or* fuerit.	*He may have been ruled;*
P. 1. Rect**ī** sīmus, *or* fuerimus,	*We may have been ruled,*
2. Rect**ī** sītis, *or* fueritis,	*Ye may have been ruled,*
3. Rect**ī** sint *or* fuerint,	*They may have been ruled.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would*, or *should have ruled* (**Past Perfect**).

S. 1. Rex**issem**,	*I might have ruled,*
2. Rex**issēs**,	*Thou mightst have ruled,*
3. Rex**isset**,	*He might have ruled;*
P. 1. Rex**issēmus**,	*We might have ruled,*
2. Rex**issētis**,	*Ye might have ruled,*
3. Rex**issent**,	*Thou might have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

S. 2. **Rege**,	*Rule thou.*
P. 2. **Regite**,	*Rule ye.*

FUTURE.

S. 2. Reg**ito**,	*Thou shalt rule,*
3. Reg**ito**,	*He shall rule.*
P. 2. Reg**itōte**,	*Ye shall rule,*
3. Reg**unto**,	*They shall rule.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. (Imperfect).	Reg**ere**,	*To rule,*
PERF.	Rex**isse**,	*To have ruled,*
FUT.	Esse rect**ūrus**,	*To be about to rule,*
F. PERF.	Fuisse rect**ūrus**,	*To have been about to rule.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. (Imperfect).	Rege**ns**,	*Ruling,*
PERF.		
FUT.	Rect**ūrus**, a, um,	*About to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Gen. Reg**endī**,	*Of ruling,*
Dat. Reg**endō**,	*To ruling,*
Acc. Reg**endum**,	*Ruling,*
Abl. Reg**endō**,	*With,* etc., *ruling.*

SUPINES.

Acc. Rect**um**,	*To rule.*
Abl. Rect**ū**,	*To be ruled,* or *in ruling.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should have been ruled* (**Past Perfect**).

S. 1.	Rect**us** essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might have been ruled,*
2.	Rect**us** essēs, *or* fuissēs,	*Thou mightst have been ruled,*
3.	Rect**us** esset, *or* fuisset,	*He might have been ruled;*
P. 1.	Rect**ī** essēmus, *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been ruled,*
2.	Rect**ī** essētis, *or* fuissētis,	*Ye might have been ruled,*
3.	Rect**ī** essent, *or* fuissent,	*They might have been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

S. 2.	Reg**ere,**	*Be thou ruled,*
P. 2.	Reg**iminī,**	*Be ye ruled.*

FUTURE.

S. 2.	Reg**itor,**	*Thou shalt be ruled,*
3.	Reg**itor,**	*He shall be ruled.*
P. 2.		
3.	Reg**untor,**	*They shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. (Imperfect).	Reg**ī,**	*To be ruled.*
PERF.	Esse, *or* fuisse rect**us,**	*To have been ruled.*
FUT.	Rect**um īrī,**	*To be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.		
PERF.	Rect**us,** a, um,	*Ruled, having been ruled.*
FUT.		

GERUNDIVE.

Regendus, a, um, *To be ruled, being ruled.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imp.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Rego,	Regam,	Rege,	Regere,	Regens,
IMP.	Regēbam,	Regerem,			
PERF.	Rexī,	Rexerim,		Rexisse,	
PLUP.	Rexeram,	Rexissem.			
FUT.	Regam,		regito.	Esse rectūrus,	Rectūrus.
F. PERF.	Rexero.			Fuisse rectūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect:

Lego,	legere,	lēgī,	lectum,	*To read.*
	(1. leg–),	(2. lēg–),	(3. lecto–).	
Scrībo,	scrībere,	scripsī,	scriptum,	*To write.*
	(1. scrīb–),	(2. scrips–),	(3. scripto–).	
Caedo,	caedere,	cecīdī,	caesum,	*To slay.*
	(1. caed–),	(2. cecīd–),	(3. caeso–).	

VERBS IN *-IO.*—ACTIVE VOICE.

294.—There are a few verbs, the present of which ends in **io**, which belong, not to the fourth, but to the third conjugation. In these, in some forms, a consonant-stem was strengthened by the addition of **i**. Their stems may be represented thus: *cap*(*i*–). This **i**, however, is only inserted when the endings (in the *fourth* conjugation) begin with a vowel (*i. e.*, when two vowels come together), and, accordingly, in regard to quantity, they follow the third conjugation.

296.—

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
Capio,	capere,	cēpi,	captum, *To take.*
	(1. cap(i–),	(2. cēp–),	(3. capto–).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
PRES.	Cap–io,	–is,	–it;	–imus,	–itis,	–iunt.
IMP.	Capi–ēbam,	–ēbas,	–ēbat;	–ēbāmus,	–ēbātis,	–ēbant.
FUT.	Capi–am,	–ēs,	–et;	–ēmus,	–ētis,	–ent.
PERF.	Cēp–ī,	–istī,	–it;	–imus,	–istis,	–ērunt, *or* –ēre.
PLUP.	Cēp–eram,	–erās,	–erat;	–erāmus,	–erātis,	–erant.
F. P.	Cēp–ero,	–eris,	–erit;	–erimus,	–eritis,	–erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Capi–am,	–ās,	–at;	–āmus,	–ātis,	–ant.
IMP.	Cap–erem,	–erēs,	–eret;	–erēmus,	–erētis,	–erent.
PERF.	Cēp–erim,	–eris,	–erit;	–erimus,	–eritis,	–erint.
PLUP.	Cēp–issem,	–issēs,	–isset;	–issēmus,	–issētis,	–issent.

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imp.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Regor,	Regar,	Regere,	Regī,	
IMP.	Regēbar,	Regerer,			
PERF.	Rectus sum,	Rectus sim,		Esse, *or* fuisse rectus,	Rectus,
PLUP.	Rectus eram,	Rectus essem.			
FUT.	Regar,		Regitor	Rectum īrī.	Regendus.
F. PERF.	Rectus ero.				

After the same manner inflect:

Legor,	legī, (1. leg–),	lectus, (3. lecto–).	*To be read.*
Scrībor,	scrībī, (1. scrīb–),	scriptus, (3. scripto–).	*To be written.*
Caedor,	caedī, (1. caed–),	caesus, (3. caeso–).	*To be slain.*

VERBS IN *–IO.*—PASSIVE VOICE.

295.—The verbs conjugated thus are: capio, *I take;* cupio, *I desire;* facio, *I make;* fodio, *I dig;* fugio, *I flee;* jacio, *I throw;* pario, *I bring forth;* quatio, *I shake;* rapio, *I seize;* sapio, *I taste.* Also [lacio], *I draw;* [specio], *I see;* which occur only in compounds. Besides three deponents: gradior, *I walk;* morior, *I die;* patior, *I suffer.* All of these verbs have compounds which are inflected in the same way.

297.—

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Capior,	capī, (1. cap(i–),	captus, (3. capto–).	*To be taken.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
PRES.	Cap–ior,	eris, *or* –ere,	–itur;	– imur,	–iminī,	–iuntur.
IMP.	Capi–ēbar,	–ēbāris, *or* –ēbāre,	–ēbātur;	–ēbāmur,	–ēbāminī,	–ēbantur.
FUT.	Capi–ar,	–ēris, *or* –ēre,	–ētur;	–ēmur,	–ēminī,	–entur.

PERF. Captus sum, *or* fuī; captus es, *or* fuistī, etc.
PLUP. Captus eram, *or* fueram; captus erās, *or* fuerās, etc.
F. P. Captus ero, captus eris, captus erit, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Capi–ar,	–āris, *or* –āre,	–ātur;	–āmur,	–āminī,	–antur.
IMP.	Cap–erer,	–erēris, *or* –erēre,	–erētur;	–erēmur,	–erēminī,	–erentur.

PERF. Captus sim, *or* fuerim; captus sīs, *or* fueris, etc.
PLUP. Captus essem, *or* fuissem; captus essēs, *or* fuissēs, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES. Cape, capite.
FUT. Capito, capito, capitōte, capiunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Capere, FUT. Esse captūrus,
PERF. Cēpisse, F. PERF. Fuisse captūrus.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Capiens, FUT. Captūrus, a, um,

GERUNDS.
Acc. Capiendum,
Gen. Capiendī, etc.

SUPINES.
Acc. Captum,
Abl. Captū.

So also:

Rapio,	rapere,	rupuī,	raptum,	*To seize.*
	(1. rap(i–)),	(2. rapu–),	(3. rapto–).	
Fugio,	fugere,	fūgī,	fugitum,	*To flee.*
	(1. fug(i–)),	(2. fūg–).		

298.—EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed* 284: Regēbam, rexistī, rexeram, regam, regerem, rexero, rexisset, rege, rexisse, regens. Scrībit, scrībēbat, scripsit, scrībēmus, scrībāmus, legunt, legeret, leget, lege, lēgērunt, lēgerant. Capiunt, capiēbat, capiunto, caperem, cēpit, cēperim, cēperam, cēpissem, capit, capere, capiendum, etc.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 284: He rules, we are ruling, he has ruled, we will rule, they will have ruled, ye might rule, they may rule, we will rule, they were ruling, he had ruled, they might have ruled. He has read, they will read, we shall read, to have read, to have written, to write, writing, write thou, let them write.

3. *Translate according to the rules in* 286, 287: (*Dīcit*, "he says"), mē regere,—mē scrībere,—sē rexisse,—nōs rectūrōs esse,—illum scripsisse,—mē scriptūrum fuisse,—vōs lectūrōs esse,—mē capere,—vōs cēpisse,—vōs captūrōs esse,—vōs captūrōs fuisse. (*Dixit*, "he said"),—mē regere,—mē rexisse,—mē rectūrum esse, etc.

4. *As directed in* 286, 287: *He says* that I rule,—that he ruled,—that we write,—that they will write,—that he is about to write. *He writes* that he rules,—that you are reading,—that you will write. *He said* that he was writing,—that you had written,—that we would write,—would have written.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES. Capere, capiminī.
FUT. Capitor, capitor, capiuntor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Capī, FUT. Captum īrī.
PERF. Esse, *or* fuisse captus.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Captus, a, um.

GERUNDIVE.

FUT. Capiendus, a, um.

So, also:

Rapior,	rapī, (1. rap(i–)),	raptus, (3. rapto–).	*To be seized.*
Patior,	patī, (1. pat(i–)),	passus, (3. passo–).	*To suffer.*

299.—EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed* 285.—Regitur, regētur, regiminī, rectus est, rectus fuerit, regerer, regar, regor, regere, reguntor, rectus, rectum īrī, rectus esse, regī, regēbātur, reguntur, regentur, rectus sim, rectus esset. Capiar, capiuntur, capiuntur, capiēbātur, captus sum, etc.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* 285.—He is ruled, I was ruled, they will be ruled, they have been ruled, we might be ruled, he might have been ruled, they were ruled, ye had been ruled, to have been ruled, being ruled, to be ruled, let them be ruled. They are taken, they will be taken, let them be taken, they have been taken, he will be taken, they might be taken, be thou taken, etc.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed in* 284, 285.—Regēbat, rexērunt, rexerat, reget, rexit, rexerint, legit, lēgit, leget, legat, lēgerit, scripserit, scripsisse, scrībitur, scriptus est, scriptum īrī, legī, legere, lēgisse, rexisse, lectus esse, legitor, rectus, regens, scriptūrus, scrībendus, lectū, scrībere, scripsēre, capitor, cēpērunt, cēperint, scriptum esse, rexī, regī, regam, regeret, etc.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed in* 286, 287: I rule, I am ruled, he rules, they are ruled, they have ruled, they have been ruled, they will rule, he might rule, they might be ruled, we will read, he may have been taken, they will have been ruled, he might have written, to be ruled, rule thou, let him be ruled, they were writing, they might write, to have written, to have read, to have ruled, to have taken, they had written, had ruled, had read, had taken.

300.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum, *To hear.*
	(1. audi-),	(2. audīv-),	(3. audīto-).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *hear, do hear, am hearing* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing. 1. Aud**io,**	*I hear, do hear, am hearing,*
2. Aud**īs,**	*Thou hearest, dost hear, art hearing,*
3. Aud**it,**	*He hears, does hear, is hearing;*
Plur. 1. Aud**īmus,**	*We hear, do hear, are hearing,*
2. Aud**ītis,**	*Ye hear, do hear, are hearing,*
3. Aud**iunt,**	*They hear, do hear, are hearing.*

IMPERFECT, *heard, did hear, was hearing* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing. 1. Audi**ēbam,**	*I heard, did hear, was hearing,*
2. Audi**ēbās,**	*Thou heardst, didst hear, wast hearing*
3. Audi**ēbat,**	*He heard, did hear, was hearing;*
Plur. 1. Audi**ēbāmus,**	*We heard, did hear, were hearing,*
2. Audi**ēbātis,**	*Ye heard, did hear, were hearing,*
3. Audi**ēbant,**	*They heard, did hear, were hearing.*

Future, *shall,* or *will hear.*

Sing. 1. Aud**iam,**	*I shall,* or *will hear,*
2. Aud**iēs,**	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt hear,*
3. Aud**iet,**	*He shall,* or *will hear;*
Plur. 1. Aud**iēmus,**	*We shall,* or *will hear,*
2. Aud**iētis,**	*Ye shall,* or *will hear,*
3. Aud**ient,**	*They shall,* or *will hear.*

PERFECT, *have heard* (***Present Perfect***); ***Aorist,*** *heard, did hear.*

Sing. 1. Audīv**ī,**	*I have heard, heard, did hear,*
2. Audīv**istī,**	*Thou hast heard, heardst, didst hear,*
3. Audīv**it,**	*He has heard, heard, did hear;*
Plur. 1. Audīv**imus,**	*We have heard, heard, did hear,*
2. Audīv**istis,**	*Ye have heard, heard, did hear,*
3. Audīv**ērunt,** *or* **ēre,**	*They have heard, heard, did hear,*

301.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*
Audior,	audīrī,	audītus, *To be heard.*
	(1. audi–),	(3. audīto–).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am heard* (***Present Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Audi**or,**	*I am heard,*
2.	Aud**īris,** *or* **īre,**	*Thou art heard,*
3.	Aud**ītur,**	*He is heard;*
Plur. 1.	Aud**īmur,**	*We are heard,*
2.	Aud**īminī,**	*Ye are heard,*
3.	Audi**untur,**	*They are heard.*

IMPERFECT, *was heard* (***Past Imperfect***).

Sing. 1.	Audi**ēbar,**	*I was heard,*
2.	Audi**ēbāris,** *or* **ēbāre,**	*Thou wast heard,*
3.	Audi**ēbātur,**	*He was heard;*
Plur. 1.	Audi**ēbāmur,**	*We were heard,*
2.	Audi**ēbāminī,**	*Ye were heard,*
3.	Audi**ēbantur,**	*They were heard.*

Future, *shall,* or *will be heard.*

Sing. 1.	Audi**ar,**	*I shall,* or *will be heard,*
2.	Audi**ēris,** *or* **ēre,**	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt be heard,*
3.	Audi**ētur,**	*He shall,* or *will be heard;*
Plur. 1.	Audi**ēmur,**	*We shall,* or *will be heard,*
2.	Audi**ēminī,**	*Ye shall,* or *will be heard,*
3.	Audi**entur,**	*They shall,* or *will be heard.*

PERFECT, *have been heard* (***Present Perfect***); ***Aorist,*** *was heard.*

Sing. 1.	Audīt**us** sum, *or* fuī,	*I have been heard,*
2.	Audīt**us** es, *or* fuistī,	*Thou hast been heard,*
3.	Audīt**us** est, *or* fuit,	*He has been heard;*
Plur. 1.	Audīt**ī** sumus, *or* fuimus,	*We have been heard,*
2.	Audīt**ī** estis, *or* fuistis,	*Ye have been heard,*
3.	Audīt**ī** sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre,	*They have been heard.*

Pluperfect, *had heard* (***Past Perfect***).

S.	1. Audi**veram**,	*I had heard,*
	2. Audi**verās**,	*Thou hadst heard,*
	3. Audi**verat**,	*He had heard ;*
P.	1. Audi**verāmus**,	*We had heard,*
	2. Audi**verātis**,	*Ye had heard,*
	3. Audi**verant**,	*They had heard.*

Future Perfect, *shall*, or *will have heard.*

S.	1. Audi**vero**,	*I shall*, or *will have heard,*
	2. Audi**veris**,	*Thou shalt*, or *wilt have heard,*
	3. Audi**verit**,	*He shall*, or *will have heard ;*
P.	1. Audi**verimus**,	*We shall*, or *will have heard,*
	2. Audi**veritis**,	*Ye shall*, or *will have heard,*
	3. Audi**verint**,	*They shall*, or *will have heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may*, or *can hear* (***Present Imperfect***).

S.	1. Audi**am**,	*I may*, or *can hear,*
	2. Audi**ās**,	*Thou mayst*, or *canst hear,*
	3. Audi**at**,	*He may*, or *can hear ;*
P.	1. Audi**āmus**,	*We may*, or *can hear,*
	2. Audi**ātis**,	*Ye may or can hear,*
	3. Audi**ant**,	*They may*, or *can hear.*

Imperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should hear* (***Past Imperfect***).

S.	1. Aud**īrem**,	*I might hear,*
	2. Aud**īrēs**,	*Thou mightst hear,*
	3. Aud**īret**,	*He might hear ;*
P.	1. Aud**īrēmus**,	*We might hear,*
	2. Aud**īrētis**,	*Ye might hear,*
	3. Aud**īrent**,	*They might hear.*

Perfect, *may have heard* (***Present Perfect***).

S.	1. Audi**verim**,	*I may have heard,*
	2. Audi**veris**,	*Thou mayst have heard,*
	3. Audi**verit**,	*He may have heard ;*
P.	1. Audi**verimus**,	*We may have heard,*
	2. Audi**veritis**,	*Ye may have heard,*
	3. Audi**verint**,	*They may have heard.*

PLUPERFECT, *had been heard* (**Past Perfect**).

S. 1.	Audītus eram, *or* fueram,	*I had been heard,*
2.	Audītus erās, *or* fuerās,	*Thou hadst been heard,*
3.	Audītus erat, *or* fuerat,	*He had been heard;*
P. 1.	Audītī erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been heard,*
2.	Audītī erātis, *or* fuerātis,	*Ye had been heard,*
3.	Audītī erant, *or* fuerant,	*They had been heard.*

Future Perfect, *shall,* or *will have been heard.*

S. 1.	Audītus ero, *or* fuero,	*I shall,* or *will have been heard,*
2.	Audītus eris, *or* fueris,	*Thou shalt,* or *wilt have been heard,*
3.	Audītus erit, *or* fuerit,	*He shall,* or *will have been heard;*
P. 1.	Audītī erimus, *or* fuerimus,	*We shall,* or *will have been heard,*
2.	Audītī eritis, *or* fueritis,	*Ye shall,* or *will have been heard,*
3.	Audītī erunt, *or* fuerint,	*They shall,* or *will have been heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may,* or *can be heard* (**Present Imperfect**).

S. 1.	Aud**iar**,	*I may,* or *can be heard,*
2.	Aud**iāris**, *or* **āre**,	*Thou mayst,* or *canst be heard,*
3.	Aud**iātur**,	*He may,* or *can be heard;*
P. 1.	Aud**iāmur**,	*We may,* or *can be heard,*
2.	Aud**iāminī**,	*Ye may,* or *can be heard,*
3.	Aud**iantur**,	*They may,* or *can be heard.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should be heard* (**Past Imperfect**).

S. 1.	Aud**īrer**,	*I might be heard,*
2.	Aud**īrēris**, *or* **īrēre**,	*Thou mightst be heard,*
3.	Aud**īrētur**,	*He might be heard;*
P. 1.	Aud**īrēmur**,	*We might be heard,*
2.	Aud**īrēminī**,	*Ye might be heard,*
3.	Aud**īrentur**,	*They might be heard.*

PERFECT, *may have been heard* (**Present Perfect**).

S. 1.	Audītus sim, *or* fuerim,	*I may have been heard,*
2.	Audītus sīs, *or* fueris,	*Thou mayst have been heard,*
3.	Audītus sit, *or* fuerit,	*He may have been heard;*
P. 1.	Audītī sīmus, *or* fuerimus,	*We may have been heard,*
2.	Audītī sītis, *or* fueritis,	*Ye may have been heard.*
3.	Audītī sint, *or* fuerint,	*They may have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should hear* (**Past Perfect**).

S. 1. Audīv**issem,**	*I might have heard,*
2. Audīv**issēs,**	*Thou mightst have heard,*
3. Audīv**isset,**	*He might have heard;*
P. 1. Audīv**issēmus,**	*We might have heard,*
2. Audīv**issētis,**	*Ye might have heard,*
3. Audīv**issent,**	*They might have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sing. 2. Aud**ī,** *hear thou.* *Plur.* 2. Aud**īte,** *hear ye.*

FUTURE.

Sing. 2. Aud**īto,** *thou shalt hear.* *Plur.* 2. Aud**ītōte,** *ye shall hear.*
3. Aud**īto,** *he shall hear.* 3. Aud**iunto,** *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. (Imperf.)	Aud**īre,**	*To hear,*
PERF.	Audīv**isse,**	*To have heard,*
FUT.	Esse aud**īturus,**	*To be about to hear,*
F. PERF.	Fuisse aud**ītūrus**	*To have been about to hear.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Aud**iens,**	*Hearing,*
PERF.	
FUT. Aud**ītūrus,** a, um,	*About to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Gen. Aud**iendī,**	*Of hearing,*
Dat. Aud**iendō,**	*To hearing,*
Acc. Aud**iendum,**	*Hearing,*
Abl. Aud**iendō,**	*With,* etc., *hearing.*

SUPINES.

Acc. Audīt**um,**	*To hear,*
Abl. Audīt**ū,**	*To be heard,* or *in hearing.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Audio,	Audiam,	Audī,	Audīre,	Audiens,
IMP.	Audiēbam,	Audīrem,			
PERF.	Audīvī,	Audīverim,		Audīvisse,	
PLUP.	Audīveram,	Audīvissem			
FUT.	Audiam,		Audīto	Esse audītūrus,	Audītūrus.
F. PERF.	Audīvero.			Fuisse audītūrus.	

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would,* or *should have been heard.*

S. 1. Audīt**us** essem, *or* fuissem, — *I might have been heard,*
2. Audīt**us** essēs, *or* fuissēs, — *Thou mightst have been heard,*
3. Audīt**us** esset, *or* fuisset, — *He might have been heard;*

P. 1. Audīt**ī** essēmus, *or* fuissēmus, — *We might have been heard,*
2. Audīt**ī** essētis, *or* fuissētis, — *Ye might have been heard,*
3. Audīt**ī** essent, *or* fuissent, — *They might have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sing. 2. Aud**īre,** *be thou heard.* — *Plur.* 2. Aud**īminī,** *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

S. 2. Aud**ītor,** *thou shalt be heard.* — *P.* 2.
3. Aud**ītor,** *he shall be heard.* — 3. Aud**iuntor,** *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud**īrī,** — *To be heard.*
PERF. Esse, *or* fuisse audīt**us,** — *To have been heard.*
FUT. Audīt**um īrī,** — *To be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.
PERF. Audīt**us,** a, um, — *Heard, having been heard.*
FUT.

GERUNDIVE.

Aud**iendus,** a, um, *To be heard, being heard.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imp.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
PRES.	Audior,	Audiar,	Audīre	Audīrī,	
IMP.	Audiēbar,	Audīrer,			
PERF.	Audītus sum,	Audītus sim,		Esse, *or* fuisse audītus,	Audītus,
PLUP.	Audītus eram,	Audītus essem		Audītum īrī.	
FUT.	Audiar,		Audītor		Audiendus
F. PERF.	Audītus ero,				

After the same manner, inflect:

Mūnio,	mūnīre, (1. mūni–),	mūnīvī, (2. mūnīv–),	mūnītum, (3. mūnīto–).	*To fortify.*
Venio,	venīre, (1. veni–),	vēnī, (2. vēn–),	ventum, (3. vento–).	*To come.*
Vincio,	vincīre, (1. vinci–),	vinxī, (2. vinx–),	vinctum, (3. vincto–).	*To bind.*

302. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed* 284.—Audio, audiunt, audīvit, audiet, audīrent, audī, audīvisse, audīverant, audīvērunt, mūniant, mūnient, mūnīverunt, mūnīverint, mūniunto, mūniunt, vēnerat, vēnisset, vinxistī, vinxisse, vinciet, vincīrent, vinciēbam, veniens, ventum, ventūrus, etc.

2. *Translate the following into Latin*, etc., *as directed* 284.—I have heard, he heard, they were hearing, we will hear, you might hear, they could have heard, hear thou, let them hear, to have heard, hearing, to be about to hear, he shall have come, they will bind, let them bind, to have bound, binding, of binding, with binding, he had come, he had bound, they will fortify, I was hearing, they would have heard, the men (*hominēs*) may have heard, about to hear, of hearing, they had bound—may have bound—will have bound; bind ye, I have bound, to bind, to have bound, about to bind, binding, to have been about to fortify, to have fortified, etc.

3. *Translate according to the rules* 286, 287.—*Dīcit* (*he says*) mē audīre,—vōs audīre,—eōs audīvisse,—hominem audītūrum esse,—hominem audītūrum fuisse,—hominēs audītūrōs esse,—fēminam, f. (*that the woman*) ventūram esse,—ventūram fuisse. *Dixit* (*he said*) sē (*that he himself*) ventūrum esse,—eum (*that he*, viz. some other person, not himself) ventūrum fuisse,—nōs ventūros esse,—etc.

4. *As directed* 286, 287.—*He says* that I hear,—that we hear,—that they have heard,—that they will hear,—that he (*himself*) will come,—that he (*some other*) will come,—that the men will come,—that the women will come. *He said* that he (*himself*) came,—that he (*another*) came,—that they had come,—that they would come,—that they would have come,—that the women would come,—would have come, etc. *He will say* that I hear,—that I heard,—that I will hear.

After the same manner, inflect:

Mūnior,	mūnīrī, (1. **mūni–**),	mūnītus, (3. **mūnīto–**).	*To be fortified.*
Polior,	polīrī, (1. **poli–**),	polītus, (3. **polīto–**).	*To be polished.*
Vincior,	vincīrī, (1. **vinci–**),	vinctus, (3. **vincto–**).	*To be bound.*

303. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed* 285.—Audior, audiar, audiēbātur, audītus sum, audiētur, audīminī, audiēminī, audiāminī, audīrēminī, audītus fueris, audīre, audīrī, audiuntur, audiuntor, audientur, audiantur, audītī sunt, audītus erat, mūniēbantur, mūnītus fuerit, mūnītus esse, mūnītus, mūnītur, vincītur, vinciātur, vinciētur, vincītor.

2. *Translate the following into Latin*, *as directed* 285.—He is heard, we were heard, he has been heard, they will be heard, ye may be heard, he should be heard, hear ye, to be heard, to be about to be heard, I was bound, he will be bound, they would be bound, we may have been bound, to be fortified, being fortified, to be about to be fortified, to have been fortified, etc.

Promiscuous Exercises on the Fourth Conjugation.

1. *Give the designation*, etc., *as directed* 284, 285.—Audīvit, audīvēre, audiēbātur, audīrētur, audiuntur, audiuntor, mūnient, mūnīverint, mūnī, mūnīre, mūnītor, mūniens; veniat, veniendi, vēnī, vēnēre, vinciunt, vinciuntor, vincīrent, vinxisset, vinctus esset, vinctus fuerit, vēnit, venit, etc.

2. *Translate the following words into Latin*, *as directed* 285.—I was heard, he heard, he has heard, we were heard, ye had been heard, they will be heard, they may be heard, they might have been heard, let them come, they should come, they will come, they will have come, I might have been bound, thou hast been bound, thou wilt be bound, thou art bound, thou wast bound, to be about to be bound, being bound, to be bound, binding, etc.

3. *As directed* 286, 287.—*Dīcit* (*he says*) sē audīre,—sē audīvisse,—eum audītūrum esse,—eōs audītūrōs fuisse,—eum audītum esse,—nōs audītum īrī. *Dixit* (*he said*) nōs audīrī,—vōs audītōs esse,—illōs audītūrōs esse,—fēminās audītūrās fuisse,—fēminās audītum īrī,—vōs vincīre,—vōs vincīrī, etc.

4. *Translate as directed* 286, 287.—*He says* (*dīcit*) that he was heard,—that he will hear,—that he bound,—that he was bound,—that he will come,—that we will not (*nōn*) come. *He said* (*dixit*) that he (*himself*) heard,—that he (*some other*) heard,—that we would hear,—that they would not be heard,—that we were bound,—that we had been bound,—that we would be bound,—that he had polished,—that they had been polished,—would be polished,—would have polished,—would not be polished;—to have been polished,—bound,—fortified,—to be fortified. *He will say* (*dīcet*) that we will hear,—will be heard,—will be bound,—polished, etc.

DEPONENT VERBS.

304.—Deponent Verbs are those which, under a passive form, have an active signification; *i. e.*, they assert of their subject that he does something, not that something is done to him: as, *loquor*, I speak; *morior*, I die. They are called *deponent* because they *lay aside* (*dēpōnunt*) the passive meaning, though they keep the passive form.

305.—It appears probable that the passive voice of Latin verbs was originally ***reflective,*** being identical in meaning with the Greek ***middle*** voice, and represented the subject as acting upon himself. Thus, from *verto*, *I turn* (*another*), came *vertor*, meaning originally *I turn myself*, but afterwards *I am turned* (*by another*). Deponent verbs would thus seem to be middle verbs in which the reflective meaning was lost sight of, without the further change taking place which would have made them passive verbs.

306.—Of many deponent verbs active forms are found as well, and sometimes some of the forms of deponent verbs are found used in a ***passive*** sense, particularly the perfect participle.

Deponent verbs are conjugated and inflected like the passive voice of the conjugations to which they belong; except that they have also the participles, gerunds, supines, and future of the infinitive, like the active voice. The future infinitive of the passive form is very rare.

307.—DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Miror,	mirāri,	mirātus,	*To admire.*
	(1. mira–),	(3. mirāto–).	

[Inflected like *Amor*, 283.]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Miror, –āris, *or* –āre, etc.,	*I admire, am admiring, etc.*
IMP.	Mirābar, –ābāris, *or* –ābāre,	*I admired, was admiring.*
FUT.	Mirābor, –āberis, *or* –ābere,	*I shall admire.*
PERF.	Mirātus sum, *or* fui, etc.,	*I have admired, I admired.*
PLUP.	Mirātus eram, *or* fueram,	*I had admired.*
F. PERF.	Mirātus ero, etc.,	*I shall, or will have admired.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mirer, –ēris, *or* –ēre, etc.,	*I may,* or *can admire.*
IMP.	Mirārer, –ārēris, *or* ārēre,	*I might admire.*
PERF.	Mirātus sim, *or* fuerim, etc.,	*I may have admired.*
PLUP.	Mirātus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might, etc., have admired.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Mīrāre, etc.,	*Admire thou, etc.*
Fut.	Mīrātor,	*Thou shalt admire.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Mīrārī,	*To admire.*
Perf.	Mīrātus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have admired.*
Fut.	Mīrātūrus esse,	*To be about to admire.*
F. Perf.	Mīrātūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to admire.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Mīrans,	*Admiring.*
Perf.	Mīrātus,	*Having admired.*
F. Act.	Mīrātūrus, a, um,	*About to admire.*

GERUNDIVE.

Mīrandus, a, um, *To be admired, being admired.*

GERUND.

Gen. Mīrandī, etc., *Of admiring.*

SUPINES.

Acc.	Mīrātum,	*To admire.*
Abl.	Mīrātū,	*To be admired, in admiring.*

Synopsis of the moods and tenses, as in *Amor*, 283.

308.—DEPONENT VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Deponents of the second conjugation are few in number. Of these, *medeor*, "to heal," has no participle. *Mereor* has *merui*, as well as *meritus sum*, in the perfect indicative. *Reor* has no imperfect subjunctive.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Polliceor,	pollicērī,	pollicitus,	*To promise.*
	(1. pollice–),	(3. pollicito–).	

[Inflected like *Moneor*, 289.]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Polliceor, –ēris, *or* –ēre, etc.,	*I promise, etc.*
Imp.	Pollicēbar, –ēbāris, *or* –ēbāre, etc.,	*I promised,* etc.
Fut.	Pollicēbor, –ēberis, *or* –ēbere,	*I will promise.*
Perf.	Pollicitus sum, *or* fui, etc.,	*I have promised,* etc.
Plup.	Pollicitus eram, *or* fueram, etc.,	*I had promised,* etc.
F. Perf.	Pollicitus ero, *or* fuero,	*I shall,* or *will have promised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Pollicear, -āris, *or* -āre, etc.,	*I may*, or *can promise*, etc.
IMP.	Pollicērer, -ērēris, *or* -ērēre,	*I might*, etc., *promise*.
PERF.	Pollicitus sim, *or* fuerim, etc.,	*I may have promised*, etc.
PLUP.	Pollicitus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might*, etc., *have promised*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Pollicēre,	*Promise thou*, etc.
FUT.	Pollicētor, etc.,	*Thou shalt promise*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Pollicērī,	*To promise*.
PERF.	Pollicitus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have promised*,
FUT.	Pollicitūrus esse,	*To be about to promise*.
F. PERF.	Pollicitūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to promise*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Pollicens,	*Promising*.
PERF.	Pollicitus,	*Having promised*.
F. ACT.	Pollicitūrus, a, um,	*About to promise*.

GERUNDIVE.

Pollicendus, a, um, *To be promised*, etc.

GERUND.

Gen. Pollicendī, etc., *Of promising*.

SUPINES.

Acc. Pollicitum, *To promise*.

Abl. Pollicitū, *To be promised, in promising*.

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in *Moneor*, 289.

309.—DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Ūtor,	ūtī, (1. ūt-),	ūsus, (3. ūso-).	*To use*.

[Inflected like *Regor*, 293.]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Ūtor, -eris, *or* -ere, etc.,	*I use, do use, am using*, etc.
IMP.	Utēbar, -ēbāris, *or* -ēbāre,	*I used, did use, was using*, etc.
FUT.	Utar, ēris, *or* ēre,	*I shall use*, etc.
PERF.	Usus sum, *or* fuī, etc.,	*I have used, used, did use*, etc.
PLUP.	Usus eram, *or* fueram, etc.,	*I had used, etc.*
F. PERF.	Usus ero, *or* fuero, etc.,	*I shall*, or *will have used, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Ūtar, –āris, *or* –āre, etc.,	*I may*, or *can use*, etc.
Imp.	Uterer, –erēris, *or* erēre, etc.,	*I might*, *could*, etc., *use*.
Perf.	Usus sim, *or* fuerim, etc.,	*I may have used*, etc.
Plup.	Usus essem, *or* fuissem, etc.,	*I might have used*, etc,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Ūtere, etc.,	*Use thou*, etc.
Fut.	Utitor, etc.,	*Thou shalt use*, etc.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Ūtī,	*To use.*
Perf.	Usus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have used.*
Fut.	Usūrus esse,	*To be about to use.*
F. Perf.	Usūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to use.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Ūtens,	*Using.*
Perf.	Usus,	*Having used.*
F. Act.	Usūrus, a, um,	*About to use.*

GERUNDIVE.

Ūtendus, a, um, *To be used*, etc.

GERUND.

Gen. Ūtendī, etc. *Of using.*

SUPINES.

Acc.	Ūsum,	*To use.*
Abl.	Ūsū,	*To be used, in using.*

Synopsis of the moods and tenses, as in *Regor*, 293.

310.—DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Mētior,	mētīrī,	mensus,	*To measure.*
	(1. mēti–),	(3. menso–).	

[Inflected like *Audior*, 301.]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Mētior, –īris, *or* –īre, etc.,	*I measure, am measuring.*
Imp.	Mētiēbar, –ēbāris, *or* –ēbāre,	*I measured, was measuring.*
Fut.	Mētiar, –ēris, *or* –ēre,	*I shall measure.*
Perf.	Mensus sum, *or* fuī, etc.,	*I have measured, measured.*
Plup.	Mensus eram, *or* fueram, etc.,	*I had measured.*
F. Perf.	Mensus ero, *or* fuero, etc.,	*I shall*, or *will have measured.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mētiar, –āris, *or* –āre, etc.,	*I may, or can measure.*
IMP.	Mētīrer, –rēris, *or* –rēre,	*I might*, etc., *measure.*
PERF.	Mensus sim, *or* fuerim,	*I may have measured.*
PLUP.	Mensus essem, *or* fuissem,	*I might*, etc., *have measured.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mētīre, etc.,	*Measure thou*, etc.
FUT.	Mētītor, etc.,	*Thou shalt measure.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mētīrī,	*To measure.*
PERF.	Mensus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have measured.*
FUT.	Mensūrus esse,	*To be about to measure.*
F. PERF.	Mensūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to measure.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mētiens,	*Measuring.*
PERF.	Mensus,	*Having measured.*
F. ACT.	Mensūrus, a, um,	*About to measure.*

GERUNDIVE.

Mētiendus, a, um, — *To be measured*, etc.

GERUND.

Gen. Mētiendī, — *Of measuring*, etc.

SUPINES.

Acc. Mensum, — *To measure.*

Abl. Mensū, — *To be measured, in measuring.*

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in *Audior*, 301.

311.—EXERCISES ON DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Mīror, *I admire*,
2. Polliceor, *I promise.*
3. Ūtor, *I use.*
4. Mētior, *I measure.*

Give the designation of the verb, conjugate it; give the tense, mood, person, number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order*, thus: *Mīror*, verb transitive, deponent, first conjugation, *Mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus.* It is found in the present indicative, first person singular; "*I admire, do admire, am admiring.*"

Mīrābātur, mīrābitur, mīrantur, mīrābuntur, mīrārentur, pollicitus sum, pollicitus erat, pollicitus fuerit, pollicērentur, ūtitur, ūsus est, ūtī, ūsūrus,

* In parsing deponent verbs, it is necessary, in giving the designation, to state whether the verb, as there used, is *transitive* or *intransitive.* But in stating the part of the verb used, it is unnecessary to mention the *voice*, because deponent verbs have only the passive voice.

ūtens, ūtendum, ūterētur, ūtar, mētīris, mētiuntur, mētiuntor, mētīminī, mensus erat, mensus sit, mensī fuērunt, ūtere, ūtēre, pollicēre, pollicitus, pollicens.

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, naming the part of the verb used*, thus: "I have admired," *mīrātus sum*, in the perfect indicative, first person singular.

They will use, we shall measure, let them measure, about to use, we have used, they may have used, he will have used, they will promise, they would have promised, we might admire, I would have used, use thou, let them use, promise ye, they have promised, promising, having promised, to measure.

3. *Translate the following into English, according to the rules and examples* 286, 287: *Dīcit* (*he says*) mē mīrārī,—vōs pollicērī,—nōs mīrātōs esse,—eōs pollicitūrōs esse,—hominēs mensūrōs esse,—fēminās pollicitūrās esse,—tē ūtī,—sē mīrārī,—eum mīrārī,—mē mensūrum esse,—vōs usūrōs esse. *Dīcitur* (*he is said*) pollicitus esse. *Dixit* (*he said*) sē mīrārī,—nōs pollicitōs esse,—eōs pollicitūrōs esse,—vōs mensōs esse,—fēminās mensūrās esse, eum pollicitum esse.

4. *Translate the following into Latin, according to directions* 286, 287: *He says* (*dicit*) that I am using,—that thou admirest,—that he has measured,—that we will promise,—that the men will measure,—that the women will use,—that you will measure,—that I would have used,—that they would have admired,—that they admired. *He said* (*dixit*) that I was using, —had been using,—that you were measuring,—that he measured,—that they had promised,—that they would use.

312.—SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

There are ***four verbs*** which have their imperfect tenses made in the active form, while their perfect tenses follow the passive. They are therefore called ***semi-deponents***. These are:

OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	*To dare.*
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gāvīsus sum,	*To rejoice.*
Soleo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	*To be accustomed.*

OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Fīdo,	fīdere,	fīsus sum,	*To trust.*

And the two compounds of this, *confīdo*, I trust, and *diffīdo*, I distrust. But *confīdo* has rarely also the active form of the perfect.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS are inflected thus:

313.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Audeo,	audēre,	ausus,	*To dare.*
	(1. aude–),	(3. auso–).	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Audeo, –ēs, –et, etc.,	*I dare, do dare, am daring.*
Imp.	Audēbam, –ēbās, –ēbat, etc.,	*I dared, was daring,* etc.
Fut.	Audēbo, –ēbis, –ēbit, etc.,	*I shall dare.*
Perf.	Ausus sum, *or* fuī, etc.,	*I have dared, dared, did dare.*
Plup.	Ausus eram, *or* fueram,	*I had dared.*
F. Perf.	Ausus ero, etc.	*I shall have dared.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Audeam, –eās, –eat, etc.,	*I may,* or *can dare.*
Imp.	Audērem, –ērēs, –ēret, etc.,	*I might, could,* etc., *dare.*
Perf.	Ausus sim, *or* fuerim, etc.,	*I may have dared.*
Plup.	Ausus essem, *or* fuissem, etc.,	*I might,* etc., *have dared.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Audē, etc.,	*Dare thou,* etc.
Fut.	Audēto, etc.,	*Thou shalt dare,* etc.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Audēre,	*To dare.*
Perf.	Ausus esse, *or* fuisse,	*To have dared.*
Fut.	Ausūrus esse,	*To be about to dare.*
F. Perf.	Ausūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to dare.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Audens,	*Daring.*
Perf.	Ausus, a, um,	*Having dared.*
F. Act.	Ausūrus, a, um,	*About to dare.*

GERUNDIVE.

Audendus, a, um, — *To be dared.*

GERUND.

Gen. Audendī, etc., — *Of daring.*

SUPINES.

Acc. Ausum,	*To dare.*
Abl. Ausū,	*To be dared, in daring.*

314.—The following verbs are called *Neutral Passives*, namely: *fīo*, "I am made," or "I become;" *vāpulo*, "I am beaten;" *vēneo*, "I am sold." They have an active form, but a passive signification, and serve as passives to *facio*, *verbero*, and *vendo*. *Fīo* has the passive form in the preterite tenses.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

315.—Contractions. In the perfect tenses formed by the ending **v-**, that letter is often omitted. And then in the ***first*** and ***second*** conjugations, the **a** or **e** of the stem make a contraction with the following **i** or **e**. Thus:

amāvistī = amāstī, amāvērunt = amārunt, amāvisse = amāsse,
dēlēvisti = dēlēstī, dēlēveram = dēlēram. dēlēvisse = dēlēsse.

316.—The third person singular is rarely found so contracted (but Lucretius has *irrītāt* for *irrītāvit*, and *disturbāt* for *disturbāvit*). It is doubtful if *-āvimus* or *-ēvimus* were ever contracted into *-āmus*, *-ēmus*.

317.—In the ***fourth*** conjugation **v** is constantly omitted before **e**, without further contraction (audiērunt, audieram, *for* audīvērunt, audīveram), and before **i**, with contraction (audīstī, dēsīstī, *for* audīvistī, desiistī. In the first person sing. the omission of *v* is rare, except in petiī for petīvī, and the compounds of *eo* (*i-*), "go," in which the *v* is regularly omitted (rediī, praeteriī, *for* redīvī, praeterīvī).

318.—In the ***third*** conjugation, the two perfects, *nōvī*, and *mōvī* in compounds, often omit *v* with contraction: nōrim, nōstī, nōsse, admōrunt, for nōverim, nōvistī, nōvisse, admōvērunt.

319.—The third person plur. form in *ēre*, however, never drops *v*.

320.—Perfects in **si** or **xi** sometimes, particularly in the older language, omit *is*, *iss*, *sis*, *ssi*, thus: prōmistī = promīsistī, dixtī = dixistī, dixe = dixisse, scripstī = scripsistī, accestis = accessistis.

321.—The ***third person plur.*** of the (present) perfect has both *ērunt* and *ēre*. The latter form is not uncommon in the poets and historians, but is rarely found in Cicero. The poets in a few words shorten the *e* in *ĕrunt* (*dederunt*, *steterunt*) by *systole*. (1519, 5).

322.—In the ***second person sing.*** of the passive tenses the form in *re* is common, except in the present (imperfect) indicative, because in that tense it would give a form identical with other parts of the verb; thus, *amāre* might be taken for the infinitive active or for the present imperative passive.

323.—The four verbs *dīco*, *dūco*, *facio*, *fero*, omit *e* in the second sing. of the present ***imperative active,*** making *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer* (for *dīce dūce*, *face*, *fere*), and so also in the compounds: *ēdūc*, *perfer*, *calefac*. (*Dīc*, however, does not occur in compounds.) But those compounds of *facio*

which change *a* to *i* are regular: *conficio* makes *confice* (not *confic*). The verb *sum* (*es*–) ought to be classed with these four verbs, as the imperative is *es* (not *ese*). *Face* sometimes occurs in the poets, rarely *dīce*, *dūce*. The present imperative of the verb *scio* (*sci*–), "know," hardly occurs, but the future is used in the same sense: *scītō*, *scītōte*.

324.—The ending of the ***gerund,*** and ***gerundive*** participle passive, in the third and fourth conjugation, is often *undum*, *undus* for *endum*, *endus*: *sepeliundum*, *potiundus*. In certain phrases this form is always used: *dē repetundīs rēbus accūsāre*, to accuse of extortion, *decemvirī jūrī dīcundō*, a commission of ten for declaring the law.

325.—Other obsolete or rare forms are:

ier for **ī** in the present infinitive passive *amārier*, *scrībier* for *amārī*, *scrībī*.

ībam, ībar. for **iēbam, iēbar,** in the (past) imperfect of Conjugation IV: *scībam*, *largībar*, for *sciēbam*, *largiēbar*.

ībo, ībor for **iam, iar**, in the future of Conjugation IV: *servībo*, *opperībor*, for *serviam*, *opperiar*. The verb *eo* (*i*–), "go," has always *ībam*, *ībo*. See 413.

im for **am** in the present (imperfect) subjunctive, especially in *edim* (433) (for *edam*) and *duim* from *do*, particularly in prayers and execrations: *dī duint*, may the gods grant. This termination is the regular one in *sim* (from *sum*) and *velim*, *mālim*, *nōlim*. See 417–419.

In the second and third person sing. of the future imperative passive, **mino** was anciently used for **tor**, *praefāminō*, for *praefātor*. Also **to** is sometimes found for **tor** in the sing. and plur.: *tuento*, *ūtito*, *ūtunto*, for *tuentor*, *ūtitor*, *ūtuntor*.

326.—In place of the usual ***future,*** another was formed in the older language in the first, second (rare), and third conjugations, by adding to the stem **so** or **sso** (compare the Greek future): *levasso* (from *leva*–), *prohibesso* (from *prohibe*–), *axo* (from *ag*–), *capso* (from *cap*–), *faxo* (from *fac*–). From this future was formed a subjunctive tense in *im* (*levassim*, *prohibessim*, *faxim*); as, *nē nōs cūrassīs*, "don't mind us." In the later periods of the language, *faxo* and *faxim* occur, and from *audeo*, *ausim*, used in doubtful assertions, "I might venture."

327.—Perfect Tenses made with sum or fui, etc. The perfect tenses passive have been given as conjugated with two forms of the auxiliary verb, the imperfect and the perfect. Of these, the imperfect (*sum*, *eram*, etc.) are much the most common; and there is often a distinction of meaning to be observed, the past existence of the state implied by the participle being more prominently brought out by the use of the perfect tenses of the auxiliary. Thus in the words, *ējus nōn longē ā Tanagrīs simulācrum ē marmore in sepulcrō positum fuit* (a marble monument of him was placed over his tomb not far from Tanagra), it is asserted that the monument *was formerly* erected, whether it be in existence now or not.

328.—The verb *sum*, through all its tenses, with the ***future participle*** in **rus**, is used to express the intention, at the time referred to, of doing a thing presently; or that the action is, or was, or will be, on the point of being done. When this idea is to be conveyed, this form of expression is used in preference to the future, which simply denotes that an act will be effected in future time. This, which is inflected as follows, is sometimes called the—

FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Amātūrus (a, um), sum,	*I am about to love.*
IMP.	Amātūrus eram,	*I was about to love.*
PERF.	Amātūrus fui,	*I have been about to love.*
PLUP.	Amātūrus fueram,	*I had been about to love.*
FUT.	Amātūrus ero,	*I shall be about to love.*

(*Amātūrus fuero* is not used.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Amātūrus sim,	*I may be about to love.*
IMP.	Amātūrus essem,	*I might*, etc., *be about to love.*
PERF.	Amātūrus fuerim,	*I may have been about to love.*
PLUP.	Amātūrus fuissem,	*I might*, etc., *have been about to love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Amātūrus esse,	*To be about to love.*
PERF.	Amātūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to love.*

329.—In like manner, the ***gerundive participle*** in **dus** is joined with all the tenses of the verb *sum*, and expresses the *propriety* or *necessity* of doing something at the time referred to, and thus forms what is called the—

SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

Thus,	PRES.	Amandus sum,	*I deserve*, or *ought to be loved*, etc.
	IMP.	Amandus eram,	*I deserved*, or *ought to be loved*, etc.,

and so forth through all the other tenses, as with the participles in *rus*. In analysing such expressions, however, it is better to parse each word of the compound separately, and combine them by the rules of syntax.

330.—The ***future infinitive passive*** is a compound of *īrī*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*, "to go," used impersonally, and the supine in *um;* so that *amātum īrī*, literally is, "that people are going to love." Of course, *amātum* being a supine, must not be changed in form to agree with its subject, as is the case with the perfect participle *amātus*, etc.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

331.—It has been said that the conjugation of Latin verbs is various only in the imperfect tenses, or those which are formed from the first stem. The perfect tenses of all verbs are made alike from the second and third stems; and though each conjugation is commonly said to have a regular way of forming the second and third stems, this is not so universal as to justify a distinction of conjugations on this basis, or to dispense with long lists of exceptions to the so-called regular formation.

332.—It will be seen, on examination of the following tables, that for the most part the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods are formed by attaching to the stem certain ***endings*** (or ***accidents***) of which one (the latter) marks the ***person, number,*** and ***voice;*** and the other (the former) marks the ***time*** of the action.

333.—Tense Endings (Accidents of Time).

	Conj.	*Stem-vowel.*	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	1.	**a,**	none.	**a** changed to **e,**
	2.	**e,**	"	**a,**
	4.	**i,**	"	**a,**
	3.	**cons.** *or* **u,**	"	**a.**
PAST.	1.	**a,**	**–ba,**	**–re,**
	2.	**e,**	**–ba,**	**–re,**
	4.	**i,**	**ēba,**	**–re,**
	3.	**cons.** *or* **u,**	**ēba,**	**ere.**
FUTURE.	1.	**a,**	**–b,**	
	2.	**e,**	**–b,**	
	4.	**i,**	**e** (changed to **a** in 1. sing.),	
	3.	**cons.** *or* **u,**	**e** (changed to **a** in 1. sing.).	

Person Endings (Accidents of Voice, Person, Number).

		ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
		S ——————> (O ?)		[OS] <——————	
For stems in		**a, e, i.**	**cons.** *or* **u.**	**a, e, i.**	**cons.** *or* **u.**
Sing.	1. (I)	**m,**	**o.**	**r,**	**or.**
	2. (Thou)	**–s,**	**is.**	**–ris (re),**	**eris (ere).**
	3. (He)	**t,**	**it.**	**–tur,**	**itur.**
Plur.	1. (We)	**–mus,**	**imus.**	**–mur,**	**imur.**
	2. (Ye)	**–tis,**	**itis.**	**–mini,**	**imini.**
	3. (They)	**nt,**	**unt.**	**ntur,**	**untur.**

334.—*Obs.* 1. The ***present*** (imperfect) tense, having no tense ending, takes in the first person **o, or,** instead of **m, r,** and the stem-vowel *a* of the first conjugation is then dropped.

Obs. 2. In the ***present*** (imperfect) tense, verbs in **i** take **unt, untur** instead of **nt, ntur.**

Obs. 3. When the stem (of the verb or of a tense) ends in *a*, *e*, *i*, the ***stem-vowel*** is made ***long*** before any ending consisting of a whole syllable and beginning with a consonant; and also before the single consonant *s*. This is indicated by a dash (–) before the endings which thus make the vowel long. The only exception to this occurs in the case of the verb *do* (*da–*), I give, which keeps *a* short before all endings which consist of a whole syllable: *dabam*, *dabo*, *datus*.

Obs. 4. When an ending for either tense or person is added by the help of a connecting vowel, which is the case always in the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is always short. The only exception to this is that *e* before the tense-ending *ba* is always long: audiēbam, regēbam.

Obs. 5. In the present imperative active the (–) means that the stem-vowels become long.

335.—In the present perfect subjunctive active the dash is placed before *–s*, *–mus*, *–tis*, because the vowel *i* is probably long in those persons. There is, however, some doubt on the matter. See Anthon's "Latin Prosody," p. 65.

336.—In the following table, which presents the accidents of tense, voice, person, and number at one view, personal formations which are the same are not repeated in letters, but only indicated by ". The reason of placing the fourth conjugation before the third will be clearly seen.

ACTIVE VOICE.—Imperfect Tenses (*First Stem*).

S ——> O

	Conj.	Verb Stem.	Tense Stem.	Singular. 1 (I)	2 (thou)	3 (he)	Plural. 1 (we)	2 (ye)	3 (they)
Indic. Mood.									
Pres. Imperf.	1.	Ama–		(a) **o**	**–s**	**t**	**–mus**	**–tis**	**nt**
	2.	Mone–		"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–		"	"	"	"	"	**unt**
	3.	Reg–		"	**is**	**it**	**imus**	**itis**	"
Past Imperf.	1.	Ama–	amā**ba**–	**m**	**–s**	**t**	**–mus**	**–tis**	**nt**
	2.	Mone–	monē**ba**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–	audi**ēba**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	3.	Reg–	reg**ēba**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
Future.	1.	Ama–	amā**b**–	**o**	**is**	**it**	**imus**	**itis**	**unt**
	2.	Mone–	monē**b**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–	audi**e**–	[a] **m**	**–s**	**t**	**–mus**	**–tis**	**nt**
	3.	Reg–	reg**e**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
Subj. Mood.									
Pres. Imperf.	1.	Ama–	am**e**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	2.	Mone–	mone**a**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–	audi**a**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	3.	Reg–	reg**a**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
Past Imperf.	1.	Ama–	amā**re**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	2.	Mone–	monē**re**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–	audī**re**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	3.	Reg–	rege**re**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
Imper. Mood.									
Present.	1.	Ama–			—			**–te**	
	2.	Mone–			—			"	
	4.	Audi–			—			"	
	3.	Reg–			**e**			**ite**	

PASSIVE VOICE.—Imperfect Tenses (*First Stem*).

[OS] <————

Indic. Mood.	Conj.	Verb Stem.	Tense Stem.	Singular. 1 (I)	2 (thou)	3 (he)	Plural. 1 (we)	2 (ye)	3 (they)
Pres. Imperf.	1.	Ama–		(a) **or**	**-ris**	**-tur**	**-mur**	**-minī**	**ntur**
	2.	Mone–		"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–		"	"	"	"	"	**untur**
	3.	Reg–		"	**eris**	**itur**	**imur**	**iminī**	"
Past Imperf.	1.	Ama–	amā**ba**–	**r**	**-ris**	**-tur**	**-mur**	**-minī**	**-ntur**
	2.	Mone–	monē**bā**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–	audi**ēbā**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	3.	Reg–	reg**ēba**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
Future.	1.	Ama–	amā**b**–	**or**	**eris**	**itur**	**imur**	**iminī**	**untur**
	2.	Mone–	monē**b**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–	audi**e**–	[a] **r**	**-ris**	**-tur**	**-mur**	**-minī**	**ntur**
	3.	Reg–	reg**e**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
Subj. Mood.									
Pres. Imperf.	1.	Ama–	am**e**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	2.	Mone–	mone**a**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–	audi**a**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	3.	Reg–	reg**a**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
Past Imperf.	1.	Ama–	amā**re**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	2.	Mone–	monē**re**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	4.	Audi–	audī**re**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
	3.	Reg–	reg**ere**–	"	"	"	"	"	"
Imper. Mood.									
Present.	1.	Ama–			**-re**			**-minī**	
	2.	Mone–			"			"	
	4.	Audi–			"			"	
	3.	Reg–			**ere**			**iminī**	

ACTIVE VOICE.—Imperfect Tenses (*First Stem*).

S ———> O

IMPER. MOOD.				Singular. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. 1.	2.	3.
Future.	1.	Ama–			**-to**	**-to**		**-tōte**	**nto**
	2.	Mone–			"	"		"	"
	4.	Audi–			"	"		"	**unto**
	3.	Reg–			**ito**	**ito**		**itōte**	"

INFIN. MOOD.				PARTICIPLE.				GERUND.		
Imperfect.	1.	Ama–	**-re**	Imperfect. 1.	Ama–	**nt(i-)**		1.	Ama–	**ndo–**
	2.	Mone–	"	2.	Mone-	"		2.	Mone–	"
	4.	Audi–	"	4.	Audi–	"		4.	Audi–	**endo–** *or* **undo–**
	3.	Reg–	**ere**	3.	Reg–	**ent(i-)**		3.	Reg–	"

ACTIVE VOICE.—Perfect Tenses (*Second Stem*).

INDIC. MOOD.	2d Stem	Tense Stem.	Singular. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. 1.	2.	3.
Pres. perf.	Rex-		**ī**	**istī**	**it**	**imus**	**istis**	**ērunt**
Past. perf.	Rex-	rex**era–**	**m**	**-s**	**t**	**-mus**	**-tis**	**nt**
Fut. perf.	Rex-	rex**er–**	**o**	**is**	**it**	**imus**	**itis**	**int**
SUBJ. MOOD.								
Pres. perf.	Rex-	rex**eri–**	**m**	**-s**	**t**	**-mus**	**-tis**	**nt**
Past perf.	Rex-	rex**isse–**	"	"	"	"	"	"

INFINITIVE MOOD, Perfect, rex**isse.**
PARTIC. Future, rect**ūro–.**
SUPINES (3d stem), rect**um,** rect**ū.**

NOTE.—The Second Stem of *any* verb may be substituted for *rex–*, above.

PASSIVE VOICE.—Imperfect Tenses (*First Stem*).

[OS] ←———

IMPER. MOOD.			Singular. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. 1.	2.	3.
Future.	1.	Ama–		-**tor**	-**tor**			**ntor**
	2.	Mone–		"	"			"
	4.	Audi–		"	"			**untor**
	3.	Reg–		**ĭtor**	**ĭtor**			"

INFIN. MOOD.			
Imperfect.	1.	Ama–	-**rī**
	2.	Mone–	"
	4.	Audi–	"
	3.	Reg–	**ī**

PARTICIPLE.			
Gerundive.	1.	Ama–	**ndo**–
	2.	Mone–	"
	4.	Audi–	**endo**– *or* –**undo**
	3.	Reg–	"

PASSIVE VOICE.—Perfect Tenses (*Third Stem*).

INDIC. MOOD.	3d Stem.		Singular. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. 1.	2.	3.
Pres. perf.	Recto–	*Sing.* Rect**us**, rect**a**, rect**um**, *Plur.* Rect**ī**, rect**ae**, rect**a**.	Sum	es	est	sumus	estis	sunt
Past perf.			Eram	erās	erat	erāmus	erātis	erant
Future perf.			Ero	eris	erit	erimus	eritis	erunt
SUBJ. MOOD.								
Pres. perf.			Sim	sīs	sit	sīmus	sītis	sint
Past perf.			Essem	essēs	esset	essemus	essētis	essent.

INFINITIVE MOOD, Perfect, rect**us** esse. PARTIC. Perfect, rect**o**–.
Future, rect**um** īrī.

NOTE.—The Third Stem of *any* verb may be substituted for *recto*–, above.

FORMATION OF THE SECOND AND THIRD STEMS.

341.—It has been seen that for the conjugation of a Latin verb it is necessary to know the three forms of its stem, which are involved in the present infinitive, the (present) perfect, and the supine. It is now necessary to speak of the way in which the second and third stems are made.

342.—The second and third stems are formed from the ***root*** of the verb; but this is not always identical with the first stem. In many verbs the root has been *strengthened* to make that form which expresses *unfinished* or *continued* action, *i. e.*, the first stem, and then the letter or letters so added will not usually appear in the second and third stems. Thus, the ***root*** **rup-** "break" has the nasal **m** inserted to make the first stem, thus becoming *rump-*, but the second and third stems are made directly from **rup-** (2. *rūp-*, 3. *rupto-*).

343.—The following are the chief ways in which ***verbal roots*** are ***strengthened*** to make the first or imperfect stem:

(1.) The addition of the liquid (nasal) **n**,	R. si-, "permit,"	1. sin-,	2. sīv-,	3. sito-.
(2.) The insertion of the liquid (nasal) n or m,	R. vic-, "conquer,"	1. vinc-,	2. vīc-,	3. victo-.
	R. rup-, "break,"	1. rump,	2. rūp-,	3. rupto-.
(3.) The addition of sc-,	R. no-, "learn,"	1. nosc-,	2. nōv-,	3. nōto-.
(4.) The addition of t,	R. flec-, "bend,"	1. flect-,	2. flex-,	3. flexo-.
(5.) The lengthening of the root vowel,	R. duc-, "lead,"	1. dūc-,	2. dux-,	3. ducto-.
(6.) The doubling of the liquid l,	R. pel-, "push,"	1. pell-,	2. pepul-,	3. pulso-.

CLASSIFICATION OF PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

There are four modes in which the ***second*** (***perfect active***) ***stem*** is formed.

344.—1. By ***reduplication,*** or repetition of the initial consonant or consonants of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*. Thus, *curr-*, "run," makes 2. cucurr-; *morde-*, "bite," makes 2. momord-; *parc-*, "spare," makes 2. peperc-.

345.—After reduplication the stem-vowel is often changed: *cad-*, "fall," makes 2. *cecid-*; *fall-*, "deceive," makes 2. *fefell-*.

346.—If the verb begins with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication has both consonants, but the *s* is dropped after it: *sponde-*, "promise," makes 2. *spopond-*; *sta-*, "stand," makes 2. *stet-* (for *spospond-* and *stest-*).

347.—In ***compound verbs*** the syllable of reduplication is generally dropped or mutilated; but it is retained in the compounds of *da–*, "give;" *sta–*, "stand;" *disc–*, "learn;" *posc–*, "demand;" and sometimes in those of *curr–*, "run." Thus, from *tend–*, "stretch," we have 2. *tetend–;* but from *contend–*, "strive," we have 2. *contend–* (reduplication dropped); and from *pell–*, "push," we have 2. *pepul–;* but from *repell–*, "push back," we have 2. *reppul–*, or *repul–* (reduplication mutilated). But in *circumsta–*, "stand around," we have the reduplication retained, 2. *circumstet–*. The compounds of *da–*, with prefixes of one syllable, are of the third conjugation, and change *e* of the reduplication into *i: perd–* (from *per–*, *da–*), "destroy," makes 2. *perdid–* (for *perded–*).

348.—2. By ***lengthening the root-vowel:*** *lego*, "I read" (1. *leg–*), *lēgi*, (2. *lēg–*).

It is believed that these verbs had originally a reduplication, and that the long quantity is the result of a contraction of the reduplication and the root-syllable together. Thus, *veni–*, "come" (*veven–*, *veen–*), 2. *vēn–*.

349.—3. By ***adding*** **v** or **u** to the root: *amo*, "I love" (1. *ama–*), *amāvi* (2. *amāv–*); *moneo*, "I advise" (1. *mone–*), *monuī* (2. *monu–*).

The letters *v* and *u* being originally the same, the consonant *v* was employed when the ending was attached to a vowel, and the vowel *u* when the ending was attached to a consonant.

350.—4. By ***adding*** **s** to the root, with certain euphonic alterations of the preceding consonant: *laedo*, "I hurl" (1. *laed–*), *laesī* (2. *laes–*), the *d* being omitted before *s*.

These ***euphonic changes*** are as follows:

351.—(1.) A ***palatal*** (c, g, qu, h,) generally unites with **s**, forming the double consonant **x**: 1. *dūc–*, 2. *dux–;* 1. *reg–*, 2. *rex–;* 1. *coqu–*, 2. *cox–;* 1. *trah–*, 2. *trax–*.

352.—(2.) A ***lingual*** (d, t,) is generally dropped: 1. *claud–*, 2. *claus–;* 1. *mitt–*, "send," 2. *mīs–*.

353.—(3.) **B** is changed to **p**: 1. *scrīb–*, 2. *scrips–;* but is assimilated to *s* in: 1. *jube–*, 2. *juss–*.

354.—(4.) **M** is sometimes assimilated to **s**: 1. *prem–*, 2. *press–*; but is often strengthened by the insertion of **p**: 1. *dēm–*, 2. *demps–*.

355.—(5.) **R** is sometimes assimilated to **s**: 1. *ger–*, 2. *gess–*; and is sometimes dropped: 1. *hauri–*, 2. *haus–*.

356.—A few verbs have the second stem the same as the first. These have probably lost a reduplication, or have absorbed *u* or *v*.

357.—The ***supine*** (or ***third stem***) is formed by adding **tum** (**itum**), or **sum** (to–, ito–, so–).

358.—When **tum** (to–), is added, certain ***euphonic changes*** take place:

(1.) A ***palatal*** (g, qu, h,) becomes c (the ***hard*** palatal, to conform to the order of t, the ***hard*** lingual; see 6): 1. *reg–*, 3. *recto–;* 1. *trah–*, 3. *tracto–*.

359.—(2.) **V** is changed to **u**: 1. *solv–*, 3. *solūto–*; and sometimes unites with the preceding vowel: 1, *move–*, 3. *mōto–*.

360.—(3.) **M** is strengthened by the insertion of **p**: 1. *dĕm–*, 3. *dempto–*.

361.—(4.) **R** is sometimes changed to **s**: 1. *ger–*, 3. *gesto–*.

When **sum** (so–) is added, the same changes occur as in the second stem made by **s**.

362.—The ***future participle*** active is commonly made by adding *–tūrus* or *–sūrus*, *a*, *um* (*–tūro* or *sūro–*), to the root (342), and the same euphonic changes of letters occur as in the formation of the supine (or third stem). Thus, from *trah–*, *scrīb–*, *laed–*, are formed the future participle *tractūrus*, *scriptūrus*, *laesūrus*. In a few verbs, however, the third stems of which vary from the regular formation, the future participles do not adopt these variations. These verbs are:

First stem.	Third stem.	Fut. Participle.
argu–,	argūto–,	arguitūro–.
fru–, *Dep.*,	fructo–, fruito–,	fruitūro–.
agnosc–,	agnito–,	agnōtūro–.
juva–,	jūto–,	juvātūro–.
mor(i–), *Dep.*,	mortuo–,	moritūro–.
nasc–, *Dep.*,	nāto–,	nascitūro–.
ori–, *Dep.*,	orto–,	oritūro–.
par(i–),	parto–,	paritūro–.
ru–,	ruto–,	ruitūro–.
seca–,	secto–,	secātūro–.
sona–,	sonito–,	sonātūro–.

COMPOUND VERBS.

363.—A ***compound verb*** is one made up of a ***root-verb*** and a ***prefix:*** *pōn–*, "put;" *dēpōn–*, "put down." But often the vowel of the ***root*** undergoes ***certain changes.***

364.—(1.) **A** is usually changed to **i** before ***one consonant***, but sometimes into **e**:

capio,	*to take*,	accipio.
rapio,	*to seize*,	arripio.
patior,	*to suffer*,	perpetior.

Exceptions to this are: *perago*, to complete; *perplaceo*, to please greatly; and compounds of *facio*, with adverbs, as, *satisfacio*, to satisfy.

365.—(2.) **A** before ***two consonants*** is usually changed to **e**: carpo, *to pluck*, decerpo; damno, *to condemn*, condemno.

366.—(3.) **A** is sometimes changed to **u**: salto, *to dance*, insulto; quatio, *to shake*, concutio.

367.—(4.) **E** is changed to **i** before one consonant: egeo, *to want*, indigeo; teneo, *to hold*, contineo.

Exceptions to this are perlego, *to read through;* relego, *to read again.*

368.—(5.) **Ae** is changed to **ī**: caedo, *to cut*, occīdo; laedo, *to hurt*, illīdo.

369.—(6.) **Au** is changed to **ō** or **ū**, but in one instance to **ē**: plaudo, *to clap*, explōdo; claudo, *to shut*, inclūdo; audio, *to hear*, obēdio.

REGULAR FORMATION.

370.—Most verbs of each of the conjugations form their second and third stems like the verbs conjugated as examples of them; and, therefore, such formations are called ***regular.***

First conj.: amo, amāre, amāvī, amātum (1. **ama–**, 2. **amāv–**, 3. **amāto–**).

Second conj.: moneo, monēre, monuī, monitum (1. **mone–**, 2. **monu–**, 3. **monito–**).

Third conj.: rego, regere, rexī, rectum (1. **reg–**, 2. **rex–**, 3. **recto–**).

Fourth conj.: audio, audīre, audīvī, audītum (1. **audi–**, 2. **audīv–**, 3. **audīto–**).

IRREGULAR FORMATION.

371.—The following lists contain the verbs in each conjugation which vary from this regular standard. The (present) perfect and supine are given, in accordance with

the common practice, but the second stem may be found by omitting I in the perfect, and the third by changing um into o.

In these lists, 1, 2, 3, mean respectively the *first*, *second*, and *third* stem. A star (*), affixed either to the stem of a verb or to one of the numerals or tenses, implies that either the whole verb or the particular part so marked has the regular form as well as the irregular one.

The letter R affixed either to the stem of the verb or to one of the numerals, implies that either the whole verb or the particular stem so marked is regular.

The letter W affixed to any one of the numerals implies that the particular form so marked is wanting, or not found in use.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

372.— *Regular formation.*

	-o,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum.	
Examples:	Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*to love.*
	Voco,	vocāre,	vocāvi,	vocātum,	*to call.*
	Spēro,	spērāre,	spērāvi,	spērātum,	*to hope.*

IRREGULARITIES.

373.—I. *The Perfect takes a reduplication:*

1. Do, dare, dedi, datum, *to give.*

This verb hardly belongs to the first conjugation, since it keeps the vowel *a* short before all endings consisting of a whole syllable: *dare*, *datur*, *dabam*, *darem*, etc.; and in composition with prefixes of *one* syllable it loses the *a*, and thus becomes of the third conjugation, and then the reduplication takes *i* for *e*; as, *addo*, *addere*, *addidi*, *additum*, "to add."

2. Sto, stāre, steti (346), statum, *to stand.*

The quantity of *a* in *statum* is matter of some doubt. It is best, however, to consider it long, as it is found in the derived participles *constātūrus*, *praestātūrus*, etc. The compounds of *sta–* with prefixes of one syllable have *i* for *e* in the reduplication; as, *adsto*, *adstāre*, *adstiti*. Dista–, 2. W., 3. W.

374.—II. *The Perfect has the root-vowel lengthened.*

1. Juvo, juvāre, jūvi, (jūtum), *to assist.*

The future participle is *juvātūrus* (362), but *jūtūrus* is found in compounds.

2. Lavo, lavāre, lāvi*, lautum, lōtum*, *to wash.*

Lavo is sometimes of the third conjugation: *lavo*, *lavere*.

375.—III. *The Perfect takes* uī.

1. Crepo,	crepāre,	crepuī,	crĕpitum,	*to creak.*
increpa-*, *chide;* discrepa-, 2*, 3. W., *differ.*				
2. Cubo,	cubāre,	cubuī,	cubitum,	*to lie down.*
3. Domo,	domāre,	domuī,	domitum,	*to tame.*
4. Ēneco,	ēnecāre,	ēnecuī*,	ēnectum*,	*to kill.*
neca-, R., *kill.*				
5. Frico,	fricāre,	fricuī,	frictum*,	*to rub.*
6. Mico,	micāre,	micuī,	3. W.,	*to glitter.*
ēmica-, 2. ēmicu-, 3. R., *glance forth;* dīmica-, 2*, 3. R., *fight.*				
7. Plico,	plicāre,	plicuī*,	plicitum*,	*to fold.*
Compounds from adjectives in *plex* (duplica-, triplica-, supplica-), and also replica-, R.				
8. Seco,	secāre,	secuī,	sectum,	*to cut.*
future participle, *secātūrus* (362).				
9. Sono,	sonāre,	sonuī,	sonitum,	*to sound.*
future participle sonātūrus. *Sono* is rarely of the third conjugation. Resona-, R., *resound.*				
10. Tono,	tonāre,	tonuī,	(tonitum?)	*to thunder.*
11. Veto,	vetāre,	vetuī,	vetitum,	*to forbid.*

Pōta-, *drink*, has 3. pōtum*. The participles *pōtus*, *coenātus*, *pransus*, are active in meaning, as if from deponent verbs. Jūra-, *swear*, is sometimes deponent.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

376.— *Regular formation.*

	-eo,	-ēre,	-uī,	-itum.	
Examples:	Moneo,	monēre,	monuī,	monitum,	*to advise.*
	Habeo,	habēre,	habuī,	habitum,	*to have.*
	Dēbeo,	dēbēre,	dēbuī,	dēbitum,	*to owe.*

IRREGULARITIES.

377.—I. *The Perfect takes a reduplication.*

1. Mordeo,	mordēre,	momordī,	morsum,	*to bite.*
2. Pendeo,	pendēre,	pependī,	pensum,	*to hang.*
3. Spondeo,	spondēre,	spopondī (346),	sponsum,	*to promise.*
4. Tondeo,	tondēre,	totondī,	tonsum,	*to shear.*

378.—II. (*a.*) *The Perfect has the root-vowel lengthened.*

1. Caveo,	cavēre,	cāvī,	cautum,	*to beware.*
2. Faveo,	favēre,	fāvī,	fautum,	*to favor.*
3. Foveo,	fovēre,	fōvī,	fōtum,	*to cherish.*

7

4. Moveo,	movēre,	mōvī,	mōtum,	*to move* (trans).
5. Paveo,	pavēre,	pāvī,	3. W.,	*to quake.*
6. Sedeo,	sedēre,	sēdī,	sessum,	*to sit.*

Compounds with prefixes of one syllable change *e* of the stem to *i*; as, *asside–*, *praeside–*, etc.

7. Video,	vidēre,	vīdī,	vīsum,	*to see.*
8. Voveo,	vovēre,	vōvī,	vōtum,	*to vow.*

379.—(*b.*) *The Perfect takes* ī *only.*

1. Connīveo,	connīvēre,	connīvī (connixī),	3. W.,	*to wink.*
2. Ferveo,	fervēre,	fervī (ferbuī),	3. W.,	*to boil, glow.*

This verb is sometimes found in the third conjugation: 1. *ferv–*.

3. Langueo,	languēre,	languī,	3. W.,	*to be languid.*
4. Liqueo,	liquēre,	liquī (licuī),	3. W.,	*to be clear.*
5. Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandī,	pransum,	*to dine.*
6. Strīdeo,	strīdēre,	strīdī,	3. W.,	*to screech.*

Also found in the third conj.: 1. *strīd–*.

380.—III. *The Perfect takes* vī.

1. Aboleo,	abolēre,	abolēvī,	abolitum,	*to destroy.*

From the unused *ole–*, grow.

2. Cieo,	ciēre,	cīvī,	citum,	*to stir up.*

There is a kindred verb of conj. 4: *cio, cīre, cīvī, citum.* This is most common in compounds.

3. Dēleo,	dēlēre,	dēlēvī,	dēlētum,	*to blot out.*
4. Fleō,	flēre,	flēvī,	flētum,	*to weep.*
5. Impleo,	implēre,	implēvī,	implētum,	*to fill.*

So also other compounds of *ple–*, which is not used.

6. Neo,	nēre,	nēvī,	nētum,	*to spin.*
7. Vieo,	viēre,	(viēvī?)	viētum,	*to plait.*

381.—IV. *The Perfect takes* si.

1. Algeo,	algēre,	alsī,	3. W.,	*to be cold.*
2. Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsī,	arsum,	*to be on fire.*
3. Augeo,	augēre,	auxī,	auctum,	*to increase.*
4. Frīgeo,	frīgēre,	frixī?	3. W.,	*to be cold.*
5. Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsī,	3. W.,	*to shine.*

This verb is sometimes found in the third conj.: 1. *fulg–*.

6. Haereo,	haerēre,	haesī,	haesum,	*to stick.*
7. Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsī,	indultum,	*to indulge.*
8. Jubeo,	jubēre,	jussī,	jussum,	*to order.*
9. Lūceo,	lūcēre,	luxī,	3. W.,	*to shine.*
10. Lūgeo,	lūgēre,	luxī,	3. W.,	*to grieve.*
11. Maneo,	manēre,	mansī,	mansum,	*to remain.*
12. Mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsī,	mulsum,	*to soothe.*

Compounds have also: 3. *mulcto–.*

13. Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsī,	mulsum,	*to milk.*
14. Rīdeo,	rīdēre,	rīsī,	rīsum,	*to laugh.*
15. Sorbeo,	sorbēre,	sorpsī*,	sorptum,	*to swallow*
16. Suādeo,	suādēre,	suāsī,	suāsum,	*to advise.*
17. Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersī,	tersum,	*to wipe.*

Also sometimes of conj. 3: 1. *terg–.*

18. Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsī,	tortum,	*to twist.*
19. Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursī,	3. W.,	*to swell.*
20. Urgeo,	urgēre,	ursī,	3. W.,	*to press.*

382.—The following are regular in the perfect, but irregular in the supines (third stem):

1. Censeo,	censēre,	censuī,	censum,	*to reckon.*

Also, 3. *censĭto–.*

2. Doceo,	docēre,	docuī,	doctum,	*to teach.*
3. Misceo,	miscēre,	miscuī,	mixtum (mistum),	*to mix.*
4. Teneo,	tenēre,	tenuī,	tentum,	*to hold.*
5. Torreo,	torrēre,	torruī,	tostum,	*to roast.*

383.—Irregular Deponents:

1. Fateor,	fatērī,	fassus,	*to confess.*
2. Medeor,	medērī,	3. W.,	*to cure.*
3. Reor,	rērī,	ratus,	*to think.*
4. Tueor,	tuērī,	tūtus*,	*to protect.*

384.—Many verbs of the second conjugation are regular in the perfect, but have no third stem. Such are: *calle–*, be skilled; *cande–*, shine; *ege–*, want; *flōre–*, bloom; *horre–*, shudder; *late–*, lie hid; *nite–*, shine; *palle–*, be pale; *pate–*, be open; *rige–*, be stiff; *sile–*, be silent; *stude–*, study; *time–*, fear; *tume–*, swell; *vige–*, flourish.

385.—Many more verbs of the second conjugation have only the first stem. Such are: *albe–*, be white; *ave–*, desire; *cāne–*, be hoary; *hebe–*, be blunt; *maere–*, be sad; *polle–*, be powerful; *renīde–*, shine; *squāle–*, be filthy; *vege–*, be active.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

386.— ***Regular Formation.***

	-o,	-ere,	-sī,	-tum.	
Examples:	Rego,	regere,	rexī,	rectum,	*to rule.*
	Carpo,	carpere,	carpsī,	carptum,	*to pluck.*
	Dūco,	dūcere,	duxī,	ductum,	*to lead.*

Since even of these so-called regular verbs the *s* of the perfect ending often changes the consonant of the stem (see 351–355), it will be best to give all the simple verbs of this conjugation which have a second or third stem, arranged according to the formation of the second stem.

IRREGULARITIES.

387.—I. ***The Perfect takes a reduplication*** (see 347 for the reduplication in compounds):

1.	Addo, (347),	addere,	addidī,	additum,	*to add.*
2.	Cado,	cadere,	cecidī,	cāsum,	*to fall.*
3.	Caedo,	caedere,	cecīdī,	caesum,	*to fell.*

Compounds have 3. *-ciso-*; as, *concīd-*, 2. *concīd-*, 3. *conciso-*.

4.	Cano,	canere,	cecinī,	(cantum ?)	*to sing.*

The compounds *concin-*, *occin-*, *praecin-*, have 2. *-uī*, without supine; other compounds are without perfect and supine.

5.	Curro,	currere,	cucurrī,	cursum,	*to run.*
6.	Disco,	discere,	didicī,	3. W.,	*to learn.*
7.	Fallo,	fallere,	fefellī,	falsum,	*to deceive.*
8.	Pango,	pangere,	pepigī,	pactum,	*to bargain.*

The deponent *paciscor* is more commonly used in this sense. See 399, 18.

9.	Parco,	parcere,	{ pepercī (parsī), }	{ parsum parcitum, }	*to spare.*
10.	Pario,	parere,	peperī,	partum,	*to bring forth.*

Future participle is *paritūrus* (362). Compounds are of Conj. IV. (403, 404).

11.	Pello,	pellere,	pepulī,	pulsum,	*to push.*
12.	Pendo,	pendere,	pependī,	pensum,	*to weigh.*
13.	Posco,	poscere,	poposcī,	3. W.,	*to demand.*
14.	Pungo,	pungere,	pupugī,	punctum,	*to prick.*

Compounds have the perfect in *-punxī*.

15.	Tango,	tangere,	tetigī,	tactum,	*to touch.*
16.	Tendo,	tendere,	tetendī,	{ tensum (tentum), }	*to stretch.*

Compounds, except *ostend-* and *dētend-*, generally have *-tentum.* However, *ostento-* is also found, particularly when used as a neuter noun.

17.	Tundo,	tundere,	tutudī,	tūsum (tunsum),	*to beat.*

388.—II. (*a*) *The Perfect has the root-vowel lengthened.*

1.	Ago,	agere,	ēgī,	actum,	*to drive.*

So the compounds *circumago* and *perago.* But other compounds change *ag-* of the first stem to *ig-;* as *redig-*, 2. *redēg-*, 3. *redacto-*. *Cōgo* (for co-ago), makes *coēgī*, *coactum*, and *dēgo*, *dēgī*, 3. W.

2.	Capio,	capere,	cēpī,	captum,	*to take.*
3.	Edo,	edere,	ēdī,	ēsum,	*to eat.*
4.	Emo,	emere,	ēmī,	emptum,	*to buy.*

This verb originally meant "to take," and this meaning is found in all its compounds. If these are of three syllables in the present they follow the simple verb, but (except *coëmo*) change *e* of the first stem to *i;* thus: *redim-*, 2. *redēm-*, 3. *redempto-*. For the dissyllabic compounds of *em-*, see 394, 8.

5.	Facio,	facere,	fēcī,	factum,	*to make.*
6.	Fodio,	fodere,	fōdī,	fossum,	*to dig.*
7.	Frango,	frangere,	frēgī,	fractum,	*to break.*
8.	Fugio,	fugere,	fūgī,	fugitum,	*to flee.*
9.	Fundo,	fundere,	fūdī,	fūsum,	*to pour.*
10.	Jacio,	jacere,	jēcī,	jactum,	*to throw.*
11.	Lego,	legere,	lēgī,	lectum,	*to read.*

So the compounds (*collig-*, *sēlig-*, etc.), but *dilig-* love, *intellig-*, understand, and *neglig-*, neglect, make 2. *dilex-*, *intellex-*, *neglex-*.

12.	Linquo,	linquere,	līquī,	3. W.,	*to leave.*

The third stem is found in compounds: *relicto-*.

	Porricio,	porricere,	porrēcī,	porrectum,	*to offer.*
13.	Rumpo,	rumpere,	rūpī,	ruptum,	*to burst.*
14.	Scabo,	scabere,	scābī,	3. W.,	*to scratch.*
15.	Vinco,	vincere,	vīcī,	victum,	*to conquer.*

(b.) *The Perfect takes* I *only.*

389.—(1.) Stems ending in u or v.

1.	Acuo,	acuere,	acuī,	acūtum,	*to sharpen.*
2.	Arguo,	arguere,	arguī,	argūtum,	*to charge.*
3.	Bătuo,	bătuere,	bătuī,	3. W.,	*to beat.*
4.	Congruo,	congruere,	congruī,	3. W.,	*to agree.*

5. Exuo,	exuere,	exuī,	exūtum,	*to strip off.*
6. Fervo (see 379, 2).				
7. Induo,	induere,	induī,	indūtum,	*to put on,*
8. Innuo,	innuere,	innuī,	3. W.,	*to give a nod.*
9. Imbuo,	imbuere,	imbuī,	imbūtum,	*to imbue.*
10. Luo,	luere,	luī,	3. W.,	*to wash.*

Compounds have a third stem: *ablūtum.*

11. Metuo,	metuere,	metuī,	3. W.,	*to fear.*
12. Minuo,	minuere,	minuī,	minūtum,	*to lessen.*
13. Pluo,	pluere,	pluī (plūvī),	3. W.,	*to rain.*
14. Ruo,	ruere,	ruī,	rutum,	*to fall, rush.*

Fut. partic. *ruitūrus.* (362.)

15. Solvo,	solvere,	solvī,	solūtum,	*to loosen.*
16. Spuo,	spuere,	spuī,	spūtum,	*to spit.*
17. Statuo,	statuere,	statuī,	statūtum,	*to set up.*
18. Sternuo,	sternuere,	sternui,	3. W.,	*to sneeze.*
19. Suo,	suere,	suī,	sūtum,	*to sew.*
20. Tribuo,	tribuere,	tribuī,	tribūtum,	*to assign.*
21. Volvo,	volvere,	volvī,	volūtum,	*to roll.*

390.—(2.) STEMS ENDING IN OTHER CONSONANTS.

1. Accendo,	accendere,	accendī,	accensum,	*to light up.*

So other compounds of the obsolete *cando: incendo*, etc.

2. Bibo,	bibere,	bibī,	3. W,	*to drink.*
3. Cūdo,	cūdere,	cūdī,	cūsum,	*to hammer.*
4. Dēfendo,	dēfendere,	dēfendī,	dēfensum,	*to ward off.*

So other compounds of the obsolete *fendo: offendo*, etc.

5. Dēgo (388, 1),	dēgere,	dēgī,	3. W.,	*to dwell.*
6. Findo,	findere,	fidī,	fissum,	*to cleave.*
7. Frendo,	frendere,	2. W.,	fressum,	*to gnash.*
8. Ico,	īcere,	īcī,	ictum,	*to strike.*
9. Lambo,	lambere,	lambī,	3. W.,	*to lick.*
10. Mando,	mandere,	mandī,	mansum,	*to chew.*
11. Pando,	pandere,	pandī,	passum (pansum),	*to spread.*
12. Percello (391, 8).	percellere,	perculī,	perculsum,	*to strike.*
13. Prehendo,	prehendere,	prehendī,	prehensum,	*to seize.*
14. Psallo,	psallere,	psallī,	3. W.,	*to play (music).*

15.	Scando,	scandere,	scandī,	scansum,	*to climb.*
16.	Scindo,	scindere,	scidī,	scissum,	*to cut.*
17.	Sīdo,	sīdere,	sīdī,	3. W.,	*to settle.*

(*Sēdī*, *sessum*, from *sedeo*, are more common.)

18.	Strīdo (see 379, 6).				
19.	Sisto,	sistere,	stitī (rare),	statum,	*to set.*
20.	Tollo,	tollere,	sustulī,	sublātum,	*to lift up.*

Tulī (for *tetulī*) and *lātum* (properly *tlātum*) are taken by *fero:* so that *tollo* borrows *sustulī*, *sublātum*, from its compound *sustollo.*

21.	Vello,	vellere,	vellī (vulsī),	vulsum,	*to pluck.*
22.	Verro,	verrere,	verrī,	versum,	*to sweep.*
23.	Verto,	vertere,	vertī,	versum,	*to turn.*

Compounds with *dē*, *prae*, *re*, are commonly deponent in the imperfect tenses.

24.	Vīso,	vīsere,	vīsī,	3. W.,	*to visit.*

III. *The Perfect takes* uī *or* vī.

391.—(a.) With uī added.

1.	Alo,	alere,	aluī,	alitum (altum),	*to nourish.*
2.	Colo,	colere,	coluī,	cultum,	*to till.*
3.	Compesco,	compescere,	compescuī,	3. W.,	*to restrain.*
4.	Concino (see 387, 4).	concinere,	concinuī,	3. W.,	*to sing together.*
5.	–Cumbo,	–cumbere,	–cubuī,	–cubitum,	*to lie down.*

Only used in compounds, *incumb–*, *discumb–*, etc. See 375, 2.

6.	Depso,	depsere,	depsuī,	depstum,	*to knead.*
7.	Ēlicio,	ēlicere,	ēlicuī,	ēlicitum,	*to lure forth.*

For other compounds of the obsolete *lacio*, see 394, 2.

8.	Excello (390, 12).	excellere,	excelluī,	excelsus (*adj.*),	*to excel.*
9.	Fremo,	fremere,	fremuī,	fremitum,	*to roar.*
10.	Furo,	furere,	furuī,	3. W.,	*to rage.*
11.	Gemo,	gemere,	gemuī,	gemitum,	*to groan.*
12.	Gigno,	gignere,	genuī,	genitum,	*to beget.*
13.	Meto,	metere,	messuī,	messum,	*to mow.*
14.	Molo,	molere,	moluī,	molitum,	*to grind.*
15.	Necto,	nectere,	nexuī (nexī),	nexum,	*to link together.*

16.	Occulo,	occulere,	occuluī,	occultum,	*to hide.*
17.	Pinso,	pinsere,	pinsuī (pinsī),	pinsum (pistum, *or* pinsitum),	*to pound.*
18.	Pōno,	pōnere,	posuī,	positum,	*to place.*
19.	Rapio,	rapere,	rapuī,	raptum,	*to snatch.*
20.	Sero,	serere,	seruī,	sertum,	*to connect.*
21.	Sterto,	stertere,	stertuī,	3. W.,	*to snore.*
22.	Strepo,	strepere,	strepuī,	strepitum,	*to make a din.*
23.	Texo,	texere,	texuī,	textum,	*to weave.*
24.	Tremo,	tremere,	tremuī,	3. W.,	*to tremble.*
25.	Volo,	velle,	voluī,	3. W.,	*to wish.*

So the compounds of *volo*. See 418, 419.

26.	Vomo,	vomere,	vomuī,	vomitum,	*to vomit.*

392.—(b.) With vī added.

1.	Cerno,	cernere,	crēvī,	crētum,	*to distinguish.*
2.	Cresco,	crescere,	crēvī,	crētum,	*to grow.*
3.	Inveterasco,	inveterascere,	inveterāvī,	inveterātum,	*to grow old in.*
4.	Nosco,	noscere,	nōvī,	nōtum,	*to learn.*

The compounds *agnosco* and *cognosco* have *agnitum*, *cognitum*. (362.)

5.	Pasco,	pascere,	pāvī,	pastum,	*to feed.*
6.	Sero,	serere,	sēvī,	satum,	*to sow.*
7.	Sperno,	spernere,	sprēvī,	sprētum,	*to spurn.*
8.	Sterno,	sternere,	strāvī,	strātum,	*to strew.*
9.	Suesco,	suescere,	suēvī,	suētum,	*to be accustomed.*

393.—(c.) The following have īvī.

1.	Arcesso,	arcessere,	arcessīvī,	arcessītum,	*to summon.*
2.	Capesso,	capessere,	capessīvī,	capessītum,	*to lay hold of.*
3.	Cupio,	cupere,	cupīvī,	cupītum,	*to desire.*
4.	Facesso,	facessere,	facessīvī,	facessītum,	*to cause.*

Also 2. *facess–*.

5.	Incesso,	incessere,	incessīvī,	incessītum,	*to attack.*

Also 2. *incess–*.

6.	Lacesso,	lacessere,	lacessīvī,	lacessītum,	*to provoke.*
7.	Lino,	linere,	līvī (lēvī),	litum,	*to smear.*
8.	Peto,	petere,	petīvī,	petītum,	*to go to, aim at.*

9. Quaero,	quaerere,	quaesīvī,	quaesītum,	*to seek.*
10. Rudo,	rudere,	rudīvī,	rudītum,	*to bray.*
11. Sapio,	sapere,	sapīvī (sapuī),	3. W.,	*to taste ; be wise.*
12. Sino,	sinere,	sīvī,	situm,	*to permit.*
13. Tero,	terere,	trīvī,	trītum,	*to rub.*

394.—IV. *The Perfect takes* sī.

1. Affīgo,	affīgere,	affixī,	afflictum,	*to strike against*

So the other compounds of the obsolete *flīgo*, except proflīgo, which is of Conj. I.

2. Allicio,	allicere,	allexī,	allectum,	*to allure.*

So the other compounds of the obsolete *lacio*, except *ēlicio* (391, 7).

3. Ango,	angere,	anxī,	(anctum),	*to throttle.*
4. Carpo,	carpere,	carpsī,	carptum,	*to pluck.*
5. Cēdo,	cēdere,	cessī,	cessum,	*to yield.*
6. Cingo,	cingere,	cinxī,	cinctum,	*to gird.*
7. Claudo,	claudere,	clausī,	clausum,	*to shut.*
8. Cōmo,	cōmere,	compsī,	comptum,	*to adorn.*

So the other dissyllabic compounds of *emo*, dēmo, sūmo, etc. (388, 4).

9. Conspicio,	conspicere,	conspexī,	conspectum,	*to behold.*

So the other compounds of the obsolete *specio.*

10. Coquo,	coquere,	coxī,	coctum,	*to cook.*
11. Dīco,	dīcere,	dixī,	dictum,	*to say.*
12. Dīligo,	dīligere,	dīlexī,	dīlectum,	*to love.*

So intelligo, negligo. See 388, 11.

13. Dīvido,	dīvidere,	dīvīsī,	dīvīsum,	*to divide.*
14. Dūco,	dūcere,	duxī,	ductum,	*to lead.*
15. Ēmungo,	ēmungere,	emunxī,	ēmunctum,	*to wipe.*
16. Ēvādo,	ēvādere,	ēvāsī,	ēvāsum,	*to go out.*

So other compounds of *vādo.*

17. Fīgo,	fīgere,	fixī,	fixum,	*to fix.*
18. Fingo,	fingere,	finxī,	fictum,	*to form.*
19. Flecto,	flectere,	flexī,	flexum,	*to bend.*

20. Fluo,	fluere,	fluxī,	(fluxus),	*to flow.*
21. Frīgo,	frīgere,	frixī,	frictum,	*to parch.*
22. Fulgo, see 381, 5.				
23. Gero,	gerere,	gessī,	gestum,	*to carry on.*
24. Jungo,	jungere,	junxī,	junctum,	*to join.*
25. Laedo,	laedere,	laesī,	laesum,	*to hurt.*
26. Lūdo,	lūdere,	lūsī,	lūsum,	*to play.*
27. Lingo,	lingere,	linxī,	linctum,	*to lick.*
28. Mergo,	mergere,	mersī,	mersum,	*to sink.*
29. Mitto,	mittere,	mīsī,	missum,	*to send.*
30. Ningo,	ningere,	ninxī,	3. W.,	*to snow.*
31. Nūbo,	nūbere,	nupsī,	nuptum,	*to veil, marry.*
32. Pango, (387, 8),	pangere,	panxī (pēgī),	panctum, (pactum),	*to fasten.*
33. Pecto,	pectere,	pexī (pexuī),	pexum,	*to comb.*
34. Plecto,	plectere,	plexī (plexuī),	plexum,	*to plait.*
35. Pingo,	pingere,	pinxī,	pictum,	*to paint.*
36. Plango,	plangere,	planxī,	planctum,	*to beat the breast.*
37. Plaudo,	plaudere,	plausī,	plausum,	*to clap.*
38. Premo,	premere,	pressī,	pressum,	*to press.*
39. Quatio,	quatere,	2 W.,	quassum,	*to shake.*

The compounds are like *concutio*, *concussī*, *concussum*.

40. Rādo,	rādere,	rāsī,	rāsum,	*to scrape.*
41. Rego,	regere,	rexī,	rectum,	*to rule.*
42. Rēpo,	rēpere,	repsī,	reptum,	*to creep.*
43. Rōdo,	rōdere,	rōsī,	rōsum,	*to gnaw.*
44. Scalpo,	scalpere,	scalpsī,	scalptum,	*to scrape.*
45. Scrībo,	scrībere,	scripsī,	scriptum,	*to write.*
46. Sculpo,	sculpere,	sculpsī,	sculptum,	*to carve.*
47. Serpo,	serpere,	serpsī,	serptum,	*to crawl.*
48. Spargo,	spargere,	sparsī,	sparsum,	*to scatter.*
49. Stinguo,	stinguere,	stinxī,	stinctum,	*to extinguish.*

Compounds are chiefly used, *exstingu–*, *distingu–*.

50. Stringo,	stringere,	strinxī,	strictum,	*to graze.*
51. Struo,	struere,	struxī,	structum,	*to heap up.*
52. Sūgo,	sūgere,	suxī,	suctum,	*to suck.*
53. Tego,	tegere,	texī,	tectum,	*to cover.*
54. Contemno,	contemnere,	contempsī,	contemptum,	*to despise.*
55. Tergo (see 381, 17).				
56. Tingo,	tingere,	tinxī,	tinctum,	*to dye.*

57.	Traho,	trahere,	traxī,	tractum,	*to draw.*
58.	Trūdo,	trūdere,	trūsī,	trūsum,	*to thrust.*
59.	Veho,	vehere,	vexī,	vectum,	*to carry.*
60.	Vīvo,	vīvere,	vīxī,	victum,	*to live.*
61.	Ungo,	ungere,	unxī,	unctum,	*to anoint.*
62.	Ūro,	ūrere,	ussī,	ustum,	*to burn.*

395.—*Inceptives.*

There are many verbs of this conjugation which are called ***inceptives*** or ***inchoatives***, because they denote the *beginning* of an action. Such verbs end in **sco** (**sc–**). Of course, they have in strictness no perfect tenses, but some take the perfect, and a few also the supine, of the simple verbs from which they come. Inceptives are called *verbal*, if they are derived from *verbs*, and *nominal* if they come from *nouns* or *adjectives*.

396.—Examples of *Verbal Inceptives:*

1.	Acesco (ace–),	acuī,	3. W.,	*to grow sour.*
2.	Calesco (cale–),	caluī,	3. W.,	*to grow warm.*
3.	Flōresco (flōre–),	floruī,	3. W.,	*to grow blooming.*
4.	Madesco (made–),	maduī,	3. W.,	*to grow moist.*
5.	Abolesco (ole–),	abolēvī,	abolitum,	*to grow out of use.*

Adolesc– has 3. *adulto–; exolesc–*, 3. *exolēto–; obsolesc–*, 3. *obsolēto–*

6.	Concupisco (cupi–),	concupīvī,	concupītum,	*to grow desirous.*
7.	Obdormisco (dormi–),	obdormīvī,	obdormītum,	*to grow sleepy.*
8.	Revīvisco (vīv–),	revixī,	3. W.,	*to grow lively.*

397.—Examples of *Nominal Inceptives,* most without perfect or supine:

Aegresco (aegro–), *grow sick;* dītesco (dīvet–), *grow rich;* grandesco (grandi–), *grow large;* mītesco (mīti–), *grow mild;* pinguesco (pingui–), *grow fat.*

398.—The following have a perfect in *uī*, as if formed from simple verbs of Conjugation II:

Crēbresco (crēbro–), crēbuī, *grow frequent;* dūresco (dūro–), *grow hard;* ēvānesco (vāno–), *vanish;* innōtesco (nōto–), *become known;* macresco (macro–), *grow lean;* mātūresco (mātūro–) *grow ripe;* nigresco (nigro–) *grow black;* obmūtesco (mūto–), *grow dumb;* obsurdesco (surdo–), *grow deaf;* recrūdesco (crūdo–), *grow raw;* vīlesco (vīli–), *grow worthless.*

399.— *Deponent Verbs.*

1. Amplector,	amplectī,	amplexus,	*to embrace*
2. Apiscor,	apiscī,	aptus,	*to obtain.*

More commonly, *adipiscor*, *adeptus*.

3. Comminiscor,	comminiscī,	commentus,	*to invent.*
4. Dēfetiscor,	dēfetiscī,	dēfessus,	*to grow weary.*
5. Expergiscor,	expergiscī,	experrectus,	*to awake.*
6. Fruor,	fruī,	fructus (fruitus),	*to enjoy.*
7. Fungor,	fungī,	functus,	*to discharge.*
8. Gradior,	gradī,	gressus,	*to walk.*
9. Irascor,	īrascī,	īrātus,	*to be angry.*
10. Lābor,	lābī,	lapsus,	*to slip.*
11. Līquor,	līquī,	(liquefactus),	*to melt.*
12. Loquor,	loquī,	locūtus,	*to speak.*
13. Morior,	morī (morīrī, *rare*),	mortuus,	*to die.*

Future participle, *moritūrus*. (362.)

14. Nanciscor,	nanciscī,	nactus (nanctus),	*to gain.*
15. Nascor,	nascī,	nātus,	*to be born.*

Future participle, *nascitūrus*. (362.)

16. Nītor,	nītī,	nīsus (nixus),	*to strain.*
17. Oblīviscor,	oblīviscī,	oblītūs,	*to forget.*
18. Paciscor (387, 8),	paciscī,	pactus,	*to bargain.*
19. Patior,	patī,	passus,	*to suffer.*
20. Proficiscor,	proficiscī,	profectus,	*to set out.*
21. Queror,	querī,	questus,	*to complain.*
22. Reminiscor,	reminiscī,	3. W.,	*to remember.*
23. Ringor,	ringī,	rictus,	*to show the teeth.*
24. Sequor,	sequī,	secūtus,	*to follow.*
25. Ulciscor,	ulciscī,	ultus,	*to avenge.*
26. Ūtor,	ūtī,	ūsus,	*to use.*
27. Vescor,	vescī,	3. W.,	*to eat.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

400. *Regular Formation.*

	–io,	–īre,	–īvī,	–ītum.	
Examples:	Audio,	audīre,	audīvī,	audītum,	*to hear.*
	Lēnio,	lēnīre,	lēnīvī,	lēnītum,	*to soften.*
	Pūnio,	pūnīre,	pūnīvī,	pūnītum,	*to punish.*

IRREGULARITIES.

401.—The Perfect takes a reduplication.

None in this conjugation.

402.—II. (*a*) *The Perfect has the root-vowel lengthened.*

1. Venio,	venīre,	vēnī,	ventum,	*to come.*

403.—(*b*) **The Perfect has ī alone.**

1. Comperio,	comperīre,	comperī,	compertum,	*to ascertain.*
2. Reperio,	reperīre,	rĕperī,	repertum,	*to find.*

(See 387, 10.)

404.—III. *The Perfect takes* **uī.**

1. Amicio,	amicīre,	(amicuī?)	amictum,	*to clothe.*
2. Aperio,	aperīre,	aperuī,	apertum,	*to open.*
3. Operio,	operīre,	operuī,	opertum,	*to cover.*
4. Salio,	salīre,	saluī (saliī),	saltum,	*to leap.*

405.—IV. *The Perfect takes* **sī.**

1. Farcio,	farcīre,	farsī,	fartum,	*to stuff.*
2. Fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsī,	fultum,	*to prop.*
3. Haurio,	haurīre,	hausī,	haustum,	*to draw* (*water*, etc.)

Future participle, *haustūrus* and *hausūrus.*

4. Sancio,	sancīre,	sanxī,	sanctum*,	*to hallow.*
5. Sarcio,	sarcīre,	sarsī,	sartum,	*to patch.*
6. Sentio,	sentīre,	sensī,	sensum,	*to feel.*
7. Sēpio,	sēpīre,	sepsī,	septum,	*to hedge in.*
8. Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxī,	vinctum,	*to bind.*

406.—The Supine is irregular in—

1. Sepelio,	sepelīre,	sepelīvī,	sepultum,	*to bury.*
2. Eo (413),	īre,	īvī,	itum,	*to go.*
3. Queo (416),	quīre,	quīvī,	quitum,	*to be able.*
4. Nequeo,	nequīre,	nequīvī,	nequitum,	*to be unable.*

407.—Many verbs of the Fourth Conjugation have no second or third stem; particularly desideratives (589), (except *ēsuri–*, 2. W., 3. *esurīto–*, "be hungry;" *nupturi–*, R., "desire to marry;" and *parturi–*, 2. R., 3. W., "be in labour;") and a few others, as: *feri–*, strike; *ganni–*, bark; *singulti–*, sigh, etc.

Deponent Verbs.

408.—I. Regular:

1. Blandior,	blandīrī,	blandītus,	*to flatter.*
2. Largior,	largīrī,	largītus,	*to bestow.*
3. Mentior,	mentīrī,	mentītus,	*to lie.*
4. Mōlior,	mōlīrī,	mōlītus,	*to strive.*
5. Partior,	partīrī,	partītus,	*to share.*
6. Potior,	potīrī,	potītus,	*to gain.*

The forms *potitur*, *potimur*, *poterer*, etc., sometimes occur as if from stem *pot–* (Conj. III.).

7. Sortior,	sortīrī,	sortītus,	*to draw lots.*

409.—II. Irregular:

1. Assentior,	assentīrī,	assensus,	*to assent.*
2. Experior,	experīrī,	expertus,	*to try.*
3. Mētior,	mētīrī,	mensus,	*to measure.*
4. Opperior,	opperīrī,	oppertus*,	*to wait for.*
5. Ordior,	ordīrī,	orsus,	*to begin.*
6. Orior,	orīrī,	ortus,	*to arise.*

Future participle, *oritūrus* (362). The forms *oreris*, *oritur*, etc., as if from a stem, *or–* (Conj. III.), are usual; also, *orerer* for *orīrer*. So, also, the compounds, except *adorior*, which is always of Conj. IV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

410.—Irregular Verbs are those in which some of the secondary parts are not formed from the primary, according to the rules for regular verbs.

The irregular verbs are six; namely, *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *volo*, *fero*, and *fio*. Their compounds are irregular also.

Sum has been inflected already (277). After the same manner are inflected its compounds, *ad–*, *ab–*, *dē–*, *inter–*, *ob–*, *præ–*, *sub–*, *super–sum;* as, *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfui*, etc. *Insum* wants the perfect.

411.—1. Prōsum "to do good," inserts *d* where the simple verb begins with *e*. Really, the original prefix was *prōd–*, the *d* of which was omitted before a consonant. It is inflected thus:

Prōsum,	prōdesse,	prōfuī,	*to do good.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	**Prōsum,**	**prōdes,**	**prōdest;**	**prōsumus,**	**prōdestis,**	**prōsunt.**
Imp.	**Prōd–eram,**	**–erās,**	**–erat;**	**–erāmus,**	**–erātis,**	**–ērant.**
Fut.	**Prōd–ero,**	**–eris,**	**–erit;**	**–erimus,**	**–eritis,**	**–erunt.**
Per.	**Prōfu–ī,**	**–istī,**	**–it;**	**–imus,**	**–istis,**	**–ērunt, *or* –ēre.**
Plu.	**Prōfu–eram,**	**–erās,**	**–erat;**	**–erāmus,**	**–erātis,**	**–erant.**
F. P.	**Prōfu–ero,**	**–eris,**	**–erit;**	**–erimus,**	**–eritis,**	**–erint.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	**Prō–sim,**	**–sīs,**	**–sit;**	**–sīmus,**	**–sītis,**	**–sint.**
Imp.	**Prōd–essem,**	**–essēs,**	**–esset;**	**–essēmus,**	**–essētis,**	**–essent.**
Per.	**Prōfu–erim,**	**–eris,**	**–erit;**	**–erimus,**	**–eritis,**	**–erint.**
Plu.	**Prōfu–issem,**	**–issēs,**	**–isset;**	**–issēmus,**	**–issētis,**	**–issent.**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	**2. Prōd–es;**	**2. Prōd–este.**
Fut.	**2. Prōd–esto;**	**2. Prōd–estōte.**
	3. Prōd–esto;	**3. Prō–sunto.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr.	**Prōd–esse.**	**Fut.**	**Esse prō–futūrus, a, um.**
Per.	**Prō–fuisse.**	**F. P.**	**Fuisse prō–futūrus, a, um.**

PARTICIPLE.

Fut. Prō–futūrus, a, um.

412.—2. **Possum is compounded of *pot–* (*potis, pote*), "able," and *sum*, "I am." It is thus inflected—the *t* being changed into *s* before *s*, and *f* being omitted after *t*:**

Possum, posse, potuī, *I can, I am able.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	**Possum,**	**potes,**	**potest;**	**possumus,**	**potestis,**	**possunt.**
Imp.	**Pot–eram,**	**–erās,**	**–erat;**	**–erāmus,**	**–erātis,**	**–erant.**
Fut.	**Pot–ero,**	**–eris,**	**–erit;**	**–erimus,**	**–eritis,**	**–erunt.**
Per.	**Potu–ī,**	**–istī,**	**–it;**	**–imus,**	**–istis,**	**–ērunt, *or* –ēre.**
Plu.	**Potu–eram,**	**–erās,**	**–erat;**	**–erāmus,**	**–erātis,**	**–erant.**
F. P.	**Potu–ero,**	**–eris,**	**–erit;**	**–erimus,**	**–eritis,**	**–erint.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Pos-sim,	-sīs,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
Imp.	Pos-sem,	-sēs,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
Per.	Potu-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu.	Potu-issem,	-issēs,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Posse. Per. Potuisse. (*The rest wanting.*)

The participial form *potent*(*i*-) is only used as an adjective, "powerful;" cf. 280. Observe that *possem* and *posse* are contracted from *pot-essem* and *pot-esse*.

413.—3. Eo, īre, īvī, itum, *to go.*
1. i-, 2. īv-, 3. ito-,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Eo,	īs,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
Imp.	Ībam,	Ībās,	Ībat;	Ībāmus,	Ībātis,	Ībant.
Fut.	Ībo,	Ībis,	Ībit;	Ībimus,	Ībitis,	Ībunt.
Per.	Īvī,	Īvistī,	Īvit;	Īvimus,	Īvistis,	Īvērunt, *or* Īvēre.
Plu.	Īveram,	Īverās,	Īverat;	Īverāmus,	Īverātis,	Īverant.
F. P.	Īvero,	Īveris,	Īverit;	Īverimus,	Īveritis,	Īverint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Eam,	eās,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
Imp.	Īrem,	Īrēs,	Īret;	Īrēmus,	Īrētis,	Īrent.
Per.	Īverim,	Īveris,	Īverit;	Īverimus,	Īveritis,	Īverint.
Plu.	Īvissem,	Īvissēs,	Īvisset;	Īvissēmus,	Īvissētis,	Īvissent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr. 2. Ī; 2. Īte.

Fut. 2. Īto, 3. Īto; 2. Itōte, 3. eunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Īre. Fut. Esse itūrus, a, um.

Per. Īvisse. F. P. Fuisse itūrus, a, um.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
Pr. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.	Eundum.	1. Itum.
Fut. Itūrus, a, um.	Eundī, etc.	2. Itū.

Eo is irregular in changing i of the stem to e before endings beginning with a, o, u. Observe, also, the omission of the connecting vowel in the past imperfect, and the tense sign b in the future. Some compounds have rarely in the future, *eam*, *iēs*, *iet*, etc.

414.—The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner: *ad–*, *ab–*, *ex–*, *co–*, *in–*, *inter–*, *ob–*, *re–d–*, *sub–*, *per–*, *prae–*, *ante–*, *prō–d–eo:* only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted (see 317); thus, *adeo*, *adīre*, *adiī* (seldom *adīvī*), *aditum*, "to go to;" perf. *adiī*, *adiistī*, or *adistī*, etc., *adieram*, *adierim*, etc. So likewise VĒNEO, *vēniī*, ——, "to be sold" (compounded of *vēnum* and *eo*). But AMBIO, *–īre*, *–īvi*, *–ītum*, "to surround," is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation, but has *ambībam* as well as *ambiēbam*.

415.—*Eo*, like other intransitive verbs is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, "he is going;" *īvit*, "he is gone;" *īverat*, "he was gone;" *īverit*, "he may be gone," or "shall be gone." So, *venit*, "he is coming;" *vēnit*, "he is come;" *vēnerat*, "he was come;" etc. In the passive voice these verbs, for the most part, are used only impersonally; as, *ītur ab illō*, "he is going;" *ventum est ab illīs*, "they are come." The infinitive passive is used as an auxiliary to form the future infinitive passive: *amātum īrī* (330). We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *perīcula adeuntur*, "— are undergone." Cic. *Librī sibyllīnī aditī sunt*, "— were looked into." Liv. *Flūmen pedibus transīrī potest.* Cæs. *Inimīcitiae subeantur.* Cic.

416.—Queo, "I can," and nequeo, "I cannot," are conjugated in the same way as *eo;* only they want the imperative and the gerunds, and the participles are seldom used.

417.—4. Volo, velle, voluī, *To will, to be willing, to wish.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Volo,	vīs,	vult;	volumus,	vultis,	volunt.
Imp.	Vol–ēbam,	–ēbās,	–ēbat;	–ēbāmus,	–ēbātis,	–ēbant.
Fut.	Vol–am,	–ēs,	–et;	–ēmus,	–ētis,	–ent.
Per.	Volu–ī,	–istī,	–it;	–imus,	–istis,	–ērunt, *or* –ēre.
Plu.	Volu–eram,	–erās,	–erat;	–erāmus,	–erātis,	–erant.
F. P.	Volu–ero,	–eris,	–erit;	–erimus,	–eritis,	–erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Velim,	velīs,	velit;	velīmus,	velītis,	velint.
Imp.	Vellem,	vellēs,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
Per.	Volu–erim,	–eris,	–erit;	–erimus,	–eritis,	–erint.
Plu.	Volu–issem,	–issēs,	–isset;	–issēmus,	–issētis,	–issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD. PARTICIPLE.

PR. Velle. PER. Voluisse. PR. Volens.

418.—5. Nōlo, nōlle, nōluī, *To be unwilling* (from *ne* (*nōn*) *volo*).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Nōlo,	nōnvīs,	nōnvult;	nōlumus,	nōnvultis,	nōlunt.
IMP.	Nōl-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
FUT.	Nōl-am,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
PER.	Nōlu-ī,	-istī,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
PLU.	Nōlu-eram,	-erās,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
F. P.	Nōlu-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Nōlim,	nōlīs,	nōlit;	nōlīmus,	nōlītis,	nōlint.
IMP.	Nōllem,	nōllēs,	nōllet;	nōllēmus,	nōllētis,	nōllent.
PER.	Nōlu-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
PLU.	Nōlu-issem,	-issēs,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR. 2. Nōlī; 2. Nōlīte.
FUT. 2. Nōlīto; 3. nōlīto; 2. Nōlītōte; 3. nōlunto.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE.

Pr. Nōlle. PR. Nōlens.
PER. Nōluisse. (*The rest wanting.*)

419.—6. Mālo, mālle, māluī, *To be more willing* (*magis volo*).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Mālo,	māvīs,	māvult;	mālumus,	māvultis,	mālunt.
IMP.	Māl-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
FUT.	Māl-am,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
PER.	Mālu-ī,	-istī,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
PLU.	Mālu-eram,	-erās,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
F. P.	Mālu-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Mālim,	mālīs,	mālit;	mālīmus,	mālītis,	mālint.
IMP.	Māllem,	māllēs,	māllet;	māllēmus,	māllētis,	māllent.
PER.	Mālu-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
PLU.	Mālu-issem,	-issēs,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Mālle.	**Per.** Māluisse.	(*The rest not used.*)

420.—Observe that where **ll** occurs, it is the result of the omission of the connecting vowel *e*, and the consequent assimilation of *r* to *l*. Thus, *vellem* is for *velerem* (*velrem*, *vellem*); *mālle* is for *mālere* (*mālre*, *mālle*).

421.—**Volt, voltis**, are sometimes found for *vult*, *vultis*; **sīs, sultis**, for *sī vīs*, *sī vultis*; **vīn'** for *vīsne*.

422.—7. **Fero, ferre, tulī, lātum**, *To carry, to bring*, or *suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fero,	fers,	fert;	ferimus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Imp.	Fer–ēbam,	–ēbās,	–ēbat;	–ēbāmus,	–ēbātis,	–ēbant.
Fut.	Fer–am,	–ēs,	–et;	–ēmus,	–ētis,	–ent.
Per.	Tul–ī,	–istī,	–it;	–imus,	–istis,	–ērunt, *or* –ēre.
Plu.	Tul–eram,	–erās,	–erat;	–erāmus,	–erātis,	–erant.
F. P.	Tul–ero,	–eris,	–erit;	–erimus,	–eritis,	–erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Fer–ām,	–ās,	–at;	–āmus,	–ātis,	–ant.
Imp.	Fer–rem,	–rēs,	–ret;	–rēmus,	–rētis,	–rent.
Per.	Tul–erim,	–eris,	–erit;	–erimus,	–eritis,	–erint.
Plu.	Tul–issem,	–issēs,	–isset;	–issēmus,	–issētis,	–issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	2. Fer;	2. Ferte.
Fut.	2. Ferto; 3. ferto;	2. Fertōte; 3. ferunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Ferre.	**Fut.** Esse lātūrus, a, um.
Per. Tulisse.	**F. P.** Fuisse lātūrus, a, um.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
Pr. Ferens.	*A.* Ferendum.	1. Lātum.
Fut. Lātūrus, a, um.	*G.* Ferendī, etc.	2. Lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

423.— Feror, ferrī, lātus, *To be brought.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Feror,	ferris, *or* ferre,	fertur;	ferimur,	feriminī,	feruntur.
Imp.	Fer–ēbar,	–ēbāris, *or* –ēbāre,	–ēbātur;	–ēbāmur,	–ēbāminī,	–ēbantur.
Fut.	Fer- ar,	–ēris, *or* –ēre,	–ētur;	–ēmur,	–ēminī,	–entur.

Per. Lātus sum, *or* fuī, lātus es, *or* fuistī, lātus est, *or* fuit, etc.
Plu. Lātus eram, *or* fueram, lātus erās, *or* fuerās, etc.
F. P. Lātus ero, lātus eris, lātus erit, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Ferar,	ferāris, *or* ferāre,	ferātur;	ferāmur,	ferāminī,	ferantur.
Imp.	Ferrer,	ferrēris, *or* ferrēre,	ferrētur;	ferrēmur,	ferrēminī,	ferrentur.

Per. Lātus sim, *or* fuerim, lātus sīs, *or* fuerīs, etc.
Plu. Lātus essem, *or* fuissem, lātus essēs, *or* fuissēs, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	2. Ferre;	2. Feriminī.
Fut.	2. Fertor; 3. fertor;	3. Feruntor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Ferrī.
Per. Esse, *or* fuisse lātus, a, um.
Fut. Lātum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Per. Lātus, a, um.
Fut. Ferendus, a, um.

424.—The irregularity of *fer–* consists in the omission of the connecting vowel *e* or *i* in several of the forms: *fers* for *feris; ferris* for *fereris; ferrem* for *fererem.* It also has *rr* in the present infinitive passive: *ferrī* for *ferī.*

425.—In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fero;* as, *affero, attulī, allātum; aufero, abstulī, ablātum; differo, distulī, dīlātum; confero, contulī, collātum; infero, intulī, illātum; offero, obtulī, oblātum; effero, extulī, ēlātum.* So *circum–, per–, trans–, de–, pro–, ante–, prae–, re–fero.* In some editions, we find, *adfero, adtulī, adlātum; conlātum; inlātum; obfero,* etc., for *offero,* etc.

426.—8. Fīo, fierī, factus, *To be made,* or *done; to become.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fīo,	fīs,	fit;	(fīmus?)	(fītis?)	fīunt.
IMP.	Fīēbam,	fīēbās,	fīēbat;	fīēbāmus,	fīēbātis,	fīēbant.
FUT.	Fīam,	fīēs,	fīet;	fīēmus,	fīētis,	fīent.

PER. Factus sum, *or* fuī, factus es, *or* fuistī, etc.
PLU. Factus eram, *or* fuĕram, factus erās, *or* fuerās, etc.
F. P. Factus ero, factus eris, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fīam,	fīās,	fīat;	fīāmus,	fīātis,	fīant.
IMP.	Fierem,	fierēs,	fieret;	fierēmus,	fierētis,	fierent.

PER. Factus sim, *or* fuerim, factus sīs, *or* fueris, etc.
PLU. Factus essem, *or* fuissem, factus essēs, *or* fuissēs, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR. Fī; fīte.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR. Fierī.
PER. Esse, *or* fuisse factus, a, um.
FUT. Factum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.	SUPINE.
FUT. Faciendus, a, um.	2. Factū.
PER. Factus, a, um.	

427.—The *i* in *fīo* is always long except in *fit*, and before *er* (*fierī*, *fierem*).

428.—The third person singular of *fio* is often used impersonally; as, *fit*, "it happens;" *fīēbat*, "it happened."

429.—*Fīo* is used as the passive of *facio*, from which it takes the participles. The compounds of *facio*, with verbal roots, have *fīo* for their passive; as, *calefacio*, "I warm;" *calefio*, "I become warm," "I am warmed," etc. But compounds with prepositions have the regular passive in *ficior*; as, *conficio*, *conficior*, etc.

430.—Some of the compounds of *fīo* are found only in a few forms:

Confit,	confīat,	confieret,	confierī,		*to be done.*
Dēfit,	dēfīunt,	dēfīet,	dēfīat,	dēfierī,	*to be wanting.*
Infit,	infiunt,				*to begin.*

431.—9 To irregular verbs may be added *edo*, "to eat." Though this is a regular verb of the third conjugation, it has an irregular form re-

sembling *sum* in the present indicative, imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, and the present infinitive; thus:

Edo,	edere, *or* ēsse,	ēdī,	ēsum,	*To eat.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	Edo,	edis, *or* ēs,	edit, *or* ēst;	edimus,	editis, *or* ēstis,	edunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Imp.	Ederem,	ederēs,	ederet;	ederēmus,	ederētis,	ederent.
	or ēssem,	ēssēs,	ēsset;	ēssēmus,	ēssētis,	ēssent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pr.	2. Ede, *or* ēs;		2. edite. ēste.	
Fut.	2. Edito, *or* ēsto,	3. edito; ēsto;	2. editōte, ēstōte.	3. edunto.

432.—Occasionally passive forms so contracted are found: *ēstur* for *editur*, *essētur* for *ederetur*.

433.—The present subjunctive has sometimes *im* for *am*: *edim*, *edis*, *edit*, etc. See 325.
The third stem of the compound *comed–* is both *comēso–* and *comesto–*.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

434.—Defective Verbs are those in which some of the parts are wanting.

1. These three, *ōdī*, *coepī*, and *meminī*, have no first stem, and, therefore, are used only in the perfect tenses; and for this reason, they are called Preterite Verbs.

435.—*Coepī* has a present, as well as a perfect signification; and hence *coeperam* has the sense of the imperfect, as well as of the pluperfect; and *coepero*, of the future, as well as of the future perfect; thus, *coepī*, "I begin," *or* "I have begun;" *coeperam*, "I began," *or* "I had begun;" *coepero*, "I shall begin," *or* "I shall have begun;" and so on of the subjunctive.

436.—*Ōdī* and *meminī* have the sense only of the present, imperfect, and future; as, *ōdī*, "I hate;" *ōderam*, "I hated;" *ōdero*, "I shall hate."

437.—2. The parts of these verbs in use are as follows, through all their persons and numbers; viz.:

Ōdī,	ōderam,	ōdero,	ōderim,	ōdissem,	ōdisse.

PARTICIPLES, ōsus, ōsūrus.

Coepī,	coeperam,	coepero,	coeperim,	coepissem,	coepisse.

PARTICIPLES, coeptus, coeptūrus.

Meminī,	memineram,	meminero,	meminerim,	meminissem,	meminisse.

IMPERATIVE, memento, mementōte.

438.—*Obs.* *Ōsus* is active in sense, "hating;" but is chiefly found in the compounds *exōsus*, *perōsus*.

439.—The passive perfect *coeptus* is commonly used for *coepī* before passive infinitives: *domus aedificārī coepta est* (not *coepit*), "the house began to be built."

440.—*Nōvī*, perf. of *nosco*, "to learn," and *consuēvī*, perf. of *consuesco*, "become accustomed," are imperfect in sense; *nōvī*, "I know," *consuēvī*, "I am accustomed."

441.—There are many verbs, not usually considered among defectives, which want certain tenses, or numbers, or persons; thus, *do*, "I give," has neither *dor* nor *der*. *Fārī*, "to speak," with its compounds, is used only by the poets, and by them chiefly in the third person, *fātur;* the imperative *fāre;* and the participle *fātus*.

442.—The following defective verbs are those which most frequently occur. *Aio*, "I say;"—*inquam*, "I say," which is used only between words quoted, and never stands at the beginning;—*avē*, and *salvē*, "hail;" —*Cedo*, "tell thou," or "give me;"—*quaeso*, "I beseech," originally the same as *quaero*. It is used commonly as an interjection.

The parts of these verbs remaining are the following:

443.

1. AIO, *I say, I affirm.*

Ind.	PR.	Āio,	āis,	āit;	———	———	āiunt.
	IMP.	Āiēbam,	āiēbās,	āiēbat;	āiēbāmus,	āiēbātis,	āiēbant.
	PER.	———	āistī,	āit.			
Sub.	PR.	———	āiās,	āiat.	———	———	āiant.
Imp.	PR.	———	aī,				
Part.	PR.	Āiens, (*adj.*)					

444.

2. INQUAM, *I say.*

Ind.	PR.	Inquam,	inquis,	inquit;	inquimus,	inquitis,	inquiunt.
	IMP.	———	———	inquiēbat;	———	———	inquiēbant.
	FUT.	———	inquiēs,	inquiēt.			
	PER.	———	inquistī,	inquit.			
Imp.	PR.	———	inque.	———	FUT. inquito.		

445.

3. Forem, *I should be.*

Sub.	Imp.	Forem,	forēs,	foret;	———	———	forent.
Inf.	Fut.	Fore, *to be about to be*, the same as *futūrum esse*.					

446.

4. Ave, *hail.*

Imp. Pr. Avē; avēte; Fut. avēto. *Inf.* Pr. Avēre.

447.

5. Salve, *hail.*

Ind. Fut. Salvēbis.
Imp. Pr. Salvē, salvēte; Fut. salvēto.
Inf. Pr. Salvēre.

448.

6. Cedo, *tell, give.*

Imp. Pr. Cedo; (cedite) *contracted*, cette.

449.

7. Quaeso, *I beseech.*

Ind. Pr. Quaeso; quaesumus.

450.—The verb *ova-*, "triumph," seems to occur only in the forms *ovās, ovat, ovēt, ovāret, ovans, ovandī, ovātus, ovātūrus.*

Age and *agite*, "come," are imperatives from *ago*, in a somewhat different sense, just as *avē*, "hail," is an imperative from *aveo*, "to be well."

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

451.—Impersonal Verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal subject* or nominative before them.

452.—***Impersonal verbs***, when translated literally into English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it;* as, *dēlectat*, "it delights;" *decet*, "it becomes;" *contingit*, "it happens;" *ēvenit*, "it comes to pass;" etc. They are inflected thus:

		1st *Conj.*	2d *Conj.*	3d *Conj.*	4th *Conj.*
Ind.	Pr.	Dēlectat,	Decet,	Contingit,	Ēvenit,
	Imp.	Dēlectābat,	Decēbat,	Contingēbat,	Eveniēbat,
	Fut.	Dēlectābit,	Decēbit,	Continget,	Eveniet,
	Per.	Dēlectāvit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evēnit,
	Plu.	Dēlectāverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evēnerat,
	F. P.	Dēlectāverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Ēvēnerit.

Sub.	Pr.	Delectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
	Imp.	Delectāret,	Decēret,	Contingeret,	Evenīret,
	Per.	Delectāverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evēnerit,
	Plu.	Delectāvisset.	Decuisset.	Contigisset.	Evēnisset.
Inf.	Pr.	Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingere,	Evenīre,
	Per.	Delectāvisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evēnisse.

453.—Intransitive verbs, which have no object in the active, can of course (263) have no subject in the passive, and if used with passive forms must be impersonal; as, *pugnātur*, "it is fought;" *favētur*, "it is favored;" *curritur*, "it is run;" *venītur*, "it is come;" from *pugno*, *faveo*, *curro*, and *venio*. Thus,

		1st *Conj.*	2d *Conj.*	3d *Conj.*	4th *Conj.*
Ind.	Pr.	Pugnātur,	Favētur,	Curritur,	Venītur,
	Imp.	Pugnābātur,	Favēbātur,	Currēbātur,	Veniēbātur,
	Fut.	Pugnābitur,	Favēbitur,	Currētur,	Veniētur,
	Per.	Pugnātum est,[1]	Fautum est,[1]	Cursum est,[1]	Ventum est,[1]
	Plu.	Pugnātum erat,[2]	Fautum erat,[2]	Cursum erat,[2]	Ventum erat,[2]
	F. P.	Pugnātum erit.[3]	Fautum erit.[3]	Cursum erit.[3]	Ventum erit.[3]
Sub.	Pr.	Pugnētur,	Faveātur,	Currātur,	Veniātur,
	Imp.	Pugnārētur,	Favērētur,	Currerētur,	Venīrētur,
	Per.	Pugnātum sit,[3]	Fautum sit,[3]	Cursum sit,[3]	Ventum sit,[3]
	Plu.	Pugnātum esset.[4]	Fautum esset.[4]	Cursum esset.[4]	Ventum esset.[4]
Inf.	Pr.	Pugnārī,	Favērī,	Currī,	Venīrī,
	Per.	Pugnātum esse.[5]	Fautum esse.[5]	Cursum esse.[5]	Ventum esse.[5]

454.—Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; namely,

Decet, decuit, etc.,	*It becomes, it became*, etc.
Libet, libuit *or* libitum est, etc.,	*It pleases, it pleased*, etc.
Licet, licuit *or* licitum est, etc.,	*It is lawful, it was lawful*, etc.
Miseret, miseritum est, etc.	*It pities, it pitied*, etc.
Oportet, oportuit, etc.,	*It behooves, it was incumbent on*, etc.
Piget, piguit *or* pigitum est, etc.,	*It grieves, it grieved*, etc.
Poenitet, poenituit, etc.,	*It repents, it repented*, etc.
Pudet, puduit *or* puditum est, etc.,	*It shames, it shamed*, etc.
Taedet, pertaesum est, etc.,	*It wearies, it wearied*, etc.
Liquet, licuit,	*It appears.*

455.—*Decet* is sometimes found in the ***third plural;*** also *licet* and *liquet*, rarely.

[1] *or* fuit. [2] *or* fuerat. [3] *or* fuerit. [4] *or* fuisset. [5] *or* fuisse.

8

Participial forms are found of some of these: *libens*, "willing;" *licens*, "free;" *poenitens*, "penitent;" *poenitendus*, "to be repented of;" *pudendus*, "shameful."

456.—Under impersonal verbs, may be comprehended those which express the ***operations*** or appearances of ***nature;*** as, *fulgurat*, "it lightens;" *fulminat*, *tonat*, "it thunders;" *grandinat*, "it hails;" so, *gelat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lūcescit*, *advesperascit*, etc.

457.—**Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before personal verbs, as their nominative, after the impersonals, in the case which they govern;** as,

Placet mihi,	*It pleases me*, or *I please.*
Placet tibi,	*It pleases thee*, or *thou pleasest.*
Placet illī,	*It pleases him*, or *he pleases.*
Placet nōbīs,	*It pleases us*, or *we please.*
Placet vōbīs,	*It pleases you*, or *you please.*
Placet illīs,	*It pleases them*, or *they please.*

So, *pugnātur ā mē,—ā tē,—ab illō*, etc., "it is fought by me,"—"by thee,"—"by him;" that is, I fight, thou fightest, he fights, etc. Hence, as the meaning of a transitive verb may be expressed by either the active or the passive voice, so, when an intransitive verb is translated by a verb which is transitive in English, the English passive form of that verb is expressed, in Latin, by the passive used impersonally: thus, actively, *faveo tibi*, "I favor you;" passively, *favētur tibi ā mē*, "you are favored by me," and so of others.

458.—Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *dēlectet*, "let it delight." In the passive voice, their participles are used only in the neuter gender. The gerunds and supines are but seldom used.

459. EXERCISES ON IMPERSONALS.

(For the meaning of the impersonals used in the following exercises, see 452-457.)

1. *Give the designation, the place found, the translation;* thus, *dēlectat*, a verb impersonal, first conjugation, found in the present indicative, active; "it delights."

Dēlectābit, decēbat, decēbit, decēret, contingit, continget, contigit, contigerit, ēvenit, ēvēnit, ēveniet, ēveniat, pugnābātur, pugnātum est, pugnētur, pugnārētur, favētur, fautum sit, fautum fuerit, ventum est, ventum erit;—libet, libuit, licitum est, miseret, miseritum est, piget, pudet, fulgurat, tonat, grandinābat, grandinābit, ninxit, etc.

2. *Give the designation*, etc., *as in No.* 1, *and translate as the word following the impersonal requires, according to* 457; thus, *dēlectat mē; dēlectat*, a verb impersonal, first conjugation, present indicative, active; "it delights me," or "I delight."

Dēlectābit mē, tē, illum, nōs, vōs, illōs; decet vōs, decēret vōs; placet tibi; favētur vōbīs, favēbitur nōbīs (ā tē, *by you*); pugnābitur ab illīs; venītur ā tē, ventum est ab illīs,—ā vōbīs,—ā nōbīs,—ab illō,—ā tē,—ā mē; piget mē; licet mihi, licēbit vōbīs, licitum est illīs; miseret mē, miserēbit tē; placuit vōbīs,—nōbīs,—illīs; miseret nōs, etc.

3. *Render the following English into Latin, by the impersonals;* thus, "I delight," *dēlectat mē*, literally, "it delights me."—*N. B.* The noun or pronoun, after *miseret, poenitet, pudet, taedet, piget, decet, dēlectat*, and *oportet*, must be put in the accusative. Intransitive impersonals are followed by the dative of the object, when they have one; and when they express any thing done by another, the agent or doer, when expressed, is put in the ablative, preceded by *ā* or *ab*, as in 457.

Exercises.—It becomes, it has repented, it is fought, it pleases, it is favored; it becomes me, I repent (it repents me), I fight (it is fought by me), you are favored (it is favored to you), you are favored by me; I repented, they have repented, you will repent; they are favored by us,—by you,—by me, etc.; we are favored by them,—by you; they come (it is come by them), they have come, we will come; we run, we will run; if (*sī*) you please, if they please; it was allowed to us, we were allowed; it delights us, *or* we are delighted, they are delighted; it thunders, it lightens, it hailed, etc.

PARTICLES.

The name ***Particles*** is given to the four undeclined parts of speech, the ***Adverb***, the ***Preposition***, the ***Conjunction***, the ***Interjection***.

ADVERBS.

460.—An Adverb is a word used to modify a *verb*, an *adjective*, or another *adverb*, or to denote some circumstance respecting it.

Adverbs may be here considered in respect of *Signification* and *Comparison*.

I. THE SIGNIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

461.—In respect of ***signification,*** adverbs may be arranged, in Latin, under the following heads:

1. Adverbs of ***Place,*** comprehending those which signify:

1st. *Motion* or *rest in a place;* as, *ubi,* "where;" *hīc,* "here;" *illīc,* "there;" *intus,* "within;" *ubīque,* "everywhere;" etc.

2d. *Motion to a place;* as, *quo?* "whither?" *hūc,* "hither;" *illūc, isthūc,* "thither;" *eō,* "to that place;" *aliō,* "to another place;" etc.

3d. *Motion from a place;* as, *unde,* "whence;" *hinc,* "hence;" *illinc, inde,* "thence;" *superne,* "from above;" etc.

4th. *Motion through* or *by a place;* as, *quā?* "which way?" *aliā,* "another way;" etc.

2. Adverbs of ***Time;*** as, *nunc,* "now;" *hodiē,* "to-day;" *tum,* "then;" *nūper,* "lately;" *mox,* "by and by;" *semper,* "always;" etc.

3. Adverbs of ***Quantity;*** as, *parum,* "little;" *multum,* "much;" *paene,* "almost;" *quantō,* "how much;" etc.

4. Adverbs of ***Quality;*** as, *bene,* "well;" *male,* "ill;" *fortiter,* "bravely;" and many others derived from adjectives or participles.

5. Adverbs of ***Manner*** (viz. of action or condition), including those which express *exhortation, affirmation, negation, granting, forbidding, interrogation, doubt, contingency,* etc.; as, *profectō,* "truly;" *nōn, haud,* "not;" *cūr?* "why?" *quārē,* "wherefore;" etc.

6. Adverbs of ***Relation,*** or such as express circumstances of *comparison, resemblance, order, assemblage, separation,* etc.; as, *potius,* "rather;" *ita, sīc,* "so;" *simul,* "together;" *seorsum,* "apart;" etc.

II. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

462.—*Adverbs derived from adjectives* are generally ***compared*** like their primitives. The positive commonly ends in **ē, ō** or **ter;** the comparative, in **ius,** the neuter acc. sing. of the adjective; and the superlative, in **imē;** as,

Positive.	*Comp.*	*Super.*
Altē, *highly;*	altius,	altissimē.
Fortiter, *bravely;*	fortius,	fortissimē.
Acriter, *sharply;*	ācrius,	ācerrimē.
Lībere, *freely;*	līberius,	līberrimē.
Tūtō, *safely;*	tūtius,	tūtissimē.

463.—The following adverbs are compared irregularly, like the adjectives from which they are derived; viz.:

Positive.	*Comp.*	*Super.*
Bene, *well;*	melius,	optimē.
Facile, *easily;*	facilius,	facillimē.
Male, *badly;*	pējus,	pessimē.
Multum, *much;*	plūs,	plūrimum.
Parum, *little;*	minus,	minimē. / minimum.
Prope, *near;*	propius,	proximē.

Positive wanting.

464.—Magis, *more,* maximē; ōcius, *more swiftly,* ōcissimē; prius, *sooner,* prīmō *or* prīmum; potius, *rather,* potissimum.

Comparative wanting.

465.—Paene, *almost,* paenissimē; nūper, *lately,* nūperrimē; novē, *newly,* novissimē; meritō, *deservedly,* meritissimē.

Superlative wanting.

466.—Satis, *enough,* satius; secus, *otherwise,* sēcius.

467.—Two other Adverbs not derived from adjectives are also compared; namely, *diū,* "long," *diūtius, diūtissimē;* and *saepe,* "often," *saepius, saepissimē.*

PREPOSITIONS.

468.—A Preposition is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun following it, and some other word in the sentence.

The preposition, as its name imports, stands before the noun or pronoun which it governs.—In Latin,

469.—1. *Twenty-eight Prepositions govern the* **Accusative**; *viz.:*

Ad, *to, at, towards.*
Apud, *at, near, with.*
Ante, *before* (of time, place, or rank).
Adversus, Adversum, } *against, towards.*
Circā, Circum, } *around, about.*
Circiter, *about* (of time indefinitely).
Cis, Citrā, } *on this side, within.*
Contrā, *against, opposite.*
Ergā, *towards.*
Extrā, *beyond, out of.*
Infrā, *beneath.*
Inter, *between, among, during.*
Intrā, *within.*
Juxtā, *near, beside.*
Ob, *for, on account of, before.*
Penes, *in the power of.*

Per, *through*, *during*, *by*.
Pōne, *behind*.
Post, *behind*, *after*, *since*.
Praeter, *beside* (passing by), *beyond*, *besides*, *except*.
Propter, *near*, *on account of*.
Secundum, *along*, *according to*.
Suprā, *above*.
Trans, *across*, *over*, *beyond*.
Ultrā, *beyond*.

470.—2. *Fifteen Prepositions govern the* **Ablative**; *viz.:*

Ā, Ab, Abs, *from*, *by*, *after*, etc.
Absque, *without*.
Clam, *without the knowledge of*.
Cōram, *before*, *in presence of*.
Cum, *with*.
Dē, *down from*, *concerning*, *of*.
Ē, Ex, *out of*, *from*, *after*.
Palam, *before*, *with the knowledge of*.
Prae, *before*, *in comparison with*, *on account of*.
Prō, *before*, *for*, *according to*.
Sine, *without*.
Tenus, *as far as*, *up to*.

471.—3. *Four Prepositions govern the* **Accusative** *or* **Ablative**; *viz.:*

With the *Accusative*.	With the *Ablative*.
In, *into*, *towards*, *against*.	In, *upon*, *in*, *among*.
Sub, *under* (motion to), *about*.	Sub, *under* (motion or rest), *at*, *near*.
Super, *above*, *over*, *beyond*.	Super, *upon*, *concerning*.
Subter, *under*.	Subter, *under*.

OBSERVATIONS.

472.—1. **Ā** is used before consonants; **ab**, before vowels, and *h*, *j*, *r*, *s*, and sometimes *l*; **abs** chiefly before *tē*. **Ē** is used before consonants.

473.—2. **Tenus** is placed after its case; and also **cum**, when joined to personal pronouns, and sometimes with the relative; as, *quibuscum*, *mēcum*, etc. **Clam** sometimes governs the accusative; as, *clam patre*, or *patrem*.

474.—3. The adverbs **prope**, "nigh;" **usque**, "as far as;" **vers**[us], "towards," are often used with an accusative governed by *ad* understoo[d] and sometimes expressed; but *versus* is always placed after the accusativ[e] *Rōmam versus*, "towards Rome." **Prope**, "nigh," and **procul**, "far," ar[e] sometimes followed by the ablative, governed by *ā*, which after *procul* i[s] generally understood.

4. Prepositions not followed by their case, are to be regarded as adverbs.

475.—5. A preposition with its case is often used as an **adverbial phrase**; as, *ex animō*, "earnestly;" *ex adversō*, "opposite;" *ex imprōvīsō*, "suddenly;" *ex tempore*, "off-hand." *Quamobrem* (*quam ob rem*), "wherefore;" *quā propter* (*quam propter*); *quōcircā* (*quod circa*), etc.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

476.—Prepositions are often prefixed to other words, especially to verbs, the meaning of which they generally modify by their own; thus—

477.—1. **Ā, ab, abs,** "from;" as, *dūco*, "I lead;" *abdūco*, "I lead away," or "from;" sometimes it denotes privation; as, *āmens*, "mad."

478.—2. **Ad,** "to;" as, *addūco*, "I lead to." It is sometimes intensive; as, *adamo*, "I love greatly."

479.—3. **Dē,** in composition, generally signifies "downward;" as, *dēscendo*, "I go down;" *dēcido*, "I fall down." Sometimes it is intensive; as, *deamo*, "I love greatly;" sometimes it denotes privation; as, *dēspēro*, "I despair;" *dēmens*, "mad."

480.—4. **Ē, or ex,** "out of," "from;" as, *exeo*, "I go out." It is sometimes intensive; as, *exōro*, "I beg earnestly;" sometimes privative; as, *exsanguis*, "pale;" *exspēs*, "hopeless."

481.—5. **In,** "into," "in," "against;" as, *infero*, "I bring in;" *irruo*, "I rush against *or* upon." With adjectives it generally reverses the signification, being, in this case, the same in origin and meaning as our **un–**; as, *infīdus*, "unfaithful;" *indignus*, "unworthy." In some compounds, it has contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *invocātus*, "called upon;" or "not called upon;" *immutātus*, "changed," or "unchanged."

482.—6. **Per,** "through," is commonly intensive, especially with adjectives; as, *perfacilis*, "very easy." With *quam*, it is strongly intensive; as, *perquam facilis*, "exceedingly easy." In *perfidus*, "perfidious," it is negative.

483.—7. **Prae,** "before," with adjectives is intensive; as, *praeclārus*, "very clear," "very renowned."

484.—8. **Prō** denotes "forth;" as, *prōdūco*, "I lead forth."

485.—9. **Sub** often diminishes the signification; as, *rīdeo*, "I laugh;" *subrīdeo*, "I smile;" *albus*, "white;" *subalbus*, "whitish." Sometimes it denotes motion upwards; as, *subrigo*, "I raise up:" sometimes concealment; as, *rapio*, "I take;" *subripio*, "I take secretly, "I steal."

INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.

486.—The following syllables, *amb*, *dī* or *dis*, *re* (*red*), *sē*, are called ***Inseparable Prepositions,*** because they are never found, except in compound words. Their general signification is as follows:

Amb,	*about, around;*	as Ambio,	*to surround.*
Dī, *or* **dis,**	*asunder;*	" Dīvello,	*to pull asunder.*
Re,	*back again,*	" Relego,	*to read again.*
Sē,	*apart,* or *aside;*	" Sēpōno,	*to lay aside.*

487.—*Obs.* 1. Some of these syllables, in combining with the simple word, sometimes vary their form, and, also, further modify its signification; as—

1st. **Amb** adds to the verb the general idea of round, round about.

2d. **Dis**, or **dī**, sometimes reverses the meaning of the simple word; as, *facilis*, "easy;" *difficilis*, "difficult;" *fīdo*, "I trust," *diffīdo*, "I distrust." Sometimes it increases it; as, *cupio*, "I desire;" *discupio*, "I desire much."

3d. **Re** sometimes reverses the meaning of the simple word; as, *claudo*, "I shut;" *reclūdo*, "I open."

4th. **Sē** has little variation of meaning. With adjectives, it denotes privation; as, *sēcūrus*, "free from care."

Obs. 2. The syllables **ne** and **vē** are also prefixed to words, and have a negative signification; as, *fās*, "justice;" *nefās*, "injustice," "impiety;"—*scio*, "I know;" *nescio*, "I know not;"—*sānus*, "healthy;" *vēsānus*, "unsound."

CONJUNCTIONS.

488.—A Conjunction is a word which connects words or sentences; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, "and;" *sed*, "but;" *etiam*, "also;" etc.

Conjunctions, according to their different uses, may be divided into two classes:

489.—A. ***Coördinate Conjunctions,*** which connect *similar* sentences or parts of sentences. These comprise ***five*** heads:

490.—1. ***Copulatives,*** or such as connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, *que*, "and;" *etiam*, *quoque*, "also;" and the negative *nec*, *neque*, "nor," "and not;" since they stand for *et* and continue the negation.

491.—2. ***Disjunctives,*** or such as connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *seu*, *sīve*, *ve*, *vel*, "either," "or."

492.—3. ***Adversatives,*** or such as express opposition; as, *at*, *atquī*, *autem*, *cēterum*, *vērum*, "but;" *tamen*, *attamen*, *vēruntamen*, "yet," "although;" *vērō*, "truly."

493.—4. ***Causals,*** or such as express a cause or reason; as, *enim*, *etenim*, *nam*, *namque*, "for."

494.—5. ***Illatives,*** or such as express an inference; as, *ergō*, *idcircō*, "therefore;" *quāpropter*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *quōcircā*, "wherefore."

495.—B. *Subordinate Conjunctions* (or ***subjunctions*),** which connect subordinate or secondary sentences with primary ones. These comprise ***eight*** heads:

496.—1. ***Finals,*** or such as denote a purpose or object; as, *nē*, "lest;" *ut*, *uti*, "that."

497.—2. ***Conditionals,*** or such as express a condition; as, *sī*, *sīn*, "if;" *nisi*, or *nī*, "unless;" *dummodo*, or *modo*, "provided that."

498.—3. ***Consecutives,*** or such as express a consequence: *ut*, "so that;" *quīn*, "but that;" *quōminus*, "that not."

499.—4. ***Temporals,*** or such as express time, as *quum*, *quando*, "when;" *dum*, *dōnec*, "until;" *antequam*, *priusquam*, "before that."

500.—5. ***Concessives,*** or such as express concession; as, *quamquam*, *licet*, "although;" *quamvīs*, "however much," "although."

501.—6. ***Comparatives,*** or such as express comparison; as, *ut*, *sīcut*, "as;" *tanquam*, *quasi*, *velut sī*, "as if."

502.—7. ***Causals,*** or such as express cause; as, *quia*, *quod*, "because;" *quum*, "since."

503.—8. ***Interrogatives,*** or such as express that a question is asked; as, *num*, *utrum*, "whether."

504.—Some words, as *deinde*, "thereafter;" *dēnique*, "finally;" *caeterum*, "but," "moreover;" *vidēlicet*, "to wit;" etc.; may be considered either as adverbs or conjunctions, according as their modifying or connecting power prevails.

505.—*Autem*, *enim*, *vērō*, *quoque*, *quidem*, are never put first in a clause or sentence, and are therefore called ***Postpositive.*** *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, are always annexed to another word. They are called ***Enclitics,*** because they *lean back* upon the preceding word, and throw their accent upon it: *patrē'sque*, *mātrē'sque.*

INTERJECTIONS.

506.—An INTERJECTION is a word used in exclamations, to express an emotion of the mind; as, *Oh! hei! heu!* "Ah!" "alas!"

507.—***Interjections*** may be divided into the following classes:

1. Of ***surprise:*** O! ēn! ecce! papae! atat! etc.
2. Of ***grief:*** ah! ēheu! hei! vae!
3. Of ***joy:*** Iō! ha! ēvoe! eu!

4. Of ***disgust:*** phuī! apage!
5. Of ***address:*** heus! O!
6. Of ***adjuration:*** prō (proh)!

To these may be added the ***abbreviated oaths:*** mehercule, pol, ēdepol, etc.

Nouns, and adjectives in the neuter gender, are sometimes used as interjections; as, *pāx!* "be still!" *malum!* "with a mischief!" *infandum!* "O shame!" *miserum!* "O wretched!" *nefās!* "O the villany!"

Note.—The same interjection is often used to express different emotions, according to its connection; thus, *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, or anger.

FORMATION OF WORDS.*

Derivation of Substantives.

Words are either ***Simple*** or ***Compound.***

508.—A ***Simple*** word may be either—

(1.) A ***Pure Root*** without any addition: **ad, ab, sub, nē, nōn.**

or (2.) A ***word derived*** from a root by the addition of a suffix: *dic-o, dic-tio, dic-ax,* from **dic–.**

509.—A ***Compound*** word is formed from two or more roots: homicīda–, *a manslayer*, from **homon–**, *man*, and **caed–**, *kill.*

510.—A ***Root*** is always a monosyllable, and expresses an elementary notion.

511.—A ***Suffix*** is a termination added to a root to modify its meaning, but not intelligible by itself: as the *s* which is the sign of the nominative singular in most nouns. This letter, however, with the other formative signs of inflection, should be called an *ending*, leaving the word *suffix* to apply only to the terminations used in the derivation of words.

512.—A ***Prefix*** is a syllable placed before a root to modify its meaning: **red–īre**, *to go* ***back.*** In inflection a prefix is only found in the perfect tenses of some verbs: *mo-mordī*, from *morde–.* (See 344.)

513.— A ***Stem*** of a word is that part which remains after taking away all formative signs or endings; as, *agilis* (stem *agili–*), active, *volens* (stem *volent–*), willing, from the ***roots*** **ag–** (*act*), and **vol–** (*will*).

* Mainly from Dr. W. Smith's Smaller Latin Grammar.

514.—Primary Words. Some words are formed at once from the root by adding formative signs (endings). These are called Primary Words; and in them the root and the stem are the same. Thus—

Stem and Root.		Formed Word.	Meaning.
Ag–,	*set in motion;*	ago,	*I set in motion.*
Leg–,	*read;*	legis,	*thou readest.*
Ped–,	*foot;*	pedum,	*of feet.*
Sōl–,	*the sun;*	sōlī,	*to the sun.*

515.—I. *Substantives Derived from Verbs.*

Substantives are derived from verbs by the addition of the following suffixes. When the stem of a verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is often dropped:

516.—1. **Ōr–** (*masc.*) (*n. s.* –or), expresses the action or state of the verb as an abstract substantive:

Amōr–,	*love,*	(ama–);	clāmōr–,	*a shout,*	(clāma–).
Calōr–,	*heat,*	(cale–);	timōr–,	*fear,*	(time–).
Favōr–,	*favor,*	(fave–);	furōr–,	*madness,*	(fur–).

517.—2. **Tōr–** (*masc.*) (*n. s.* –tor), denotes the doer of the action.

Amātōr–,	*a lover,*	(ama–);	audītōr–,	*a hearer,*	(audi–).
Monitōr–,	*an adviser,*	(mone–);	victōr–,	*a conqueror,*	(vic–(vinco)).
Vēnātōr–,	*a hunter,*	(vēna–);	lectōr–,	*a reader,*	(leg–).

518.—Most substantives in **tōr–** have a corresponding feminine substantive in **trīc–** (*n. s.* –trix): victōr–, *fem.* victrīc–, *conqueress;* vēnātōr–, *fem.* vēnātrīc–, *huntress.*

519.—*Note.*—The suffix *tōr–* is subject to the same changes that occur in the formation of the third stem (357); thus, from *curr–*, run (3. *curso–*), we have *cursōr–*, a runner (not *curtōr–*).

520.—3. **Iōn–** and **tiōn–** (*fem.*) (*n.s.* –io, –tio), denote the action itself.

Obsidiōn–,	*a siege,*	(obside–);	oblīviōn–,	*forgetfulness,*	(oblīvisc–).
Actiōn–,	*a doing,*	(ag–);	lectiōn–,	*reading,*	(leg–).

521.—4. **Tu–** (*masc.*) (*n. s.* –tus), also denotes the action.

Actu–,	*a doing,*	(ag–);	audītu–,	*a hearing,*	(audi–).
Auctu–,	*an increase,*	(auge–);	cantu–,	*a singing,*	(can–).

522.—*Note.*—The suffixes *tiōn–*, *tu–*, are subject to the same changes as occur in the third stem; thus, from *vert–*, turn (3. *verso–*), we have *versu–*, *versiōn–*, (not *vertu–*, *vertiōn–*).

523.—5. **Tūra–** (*fem.*) (*n. s.* –tūra), also usually denotes the action.

Mercātūra–,	*a trading,*	(merca–);	apertūra–,	*an opening,*	(aperi–).
Cinctūra–,	*a girding,*	(cing–);	junctūra–,	*a joining,*	(jung–).

524.—6. **Io–** (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –ium) denotes an act or state.

Gaudio–,	*joy,*	(gaude–);	odio–,	*hatred,*	(od–).
Incendio–,	*a fire,*	(incend–);	aedificio–,	*a building,*	(aedifica–).

525.—7. **Men–** (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –men), usually denotes an instrument.

Tegmen–,	*a covering,*	(teg–);	sōlāmen–,	*a consolation,*	(sōla–).
Lūmen–,	*a light,*	(lūce–);	flūmen–,	*a river,*	(flu–).

Note. The suffix *men–* has sometimes a passive force: *agmen–,* "that which is led," "an army marching."

526.—8. **Mento–** (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –mentum) denotes an instrument.

Documento–,	*a proof,*	(doce–);	ornāmento–,	*an ornament,*	(orna–).
Vestīmento–,	*clothing,*	(vesti–);	mōmento–,	*moving force,*	(move–).

527.—9. **Bulo–** and **culo–** (after *l*, **bro–** and **cro–**) (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –bulum, –culum, –brum, –crum), denote an instrument.

Vēnābulo–,	*a hunting-spear,*	(vēna–);	pābulo–,	*fodder,*	(pa–(pascor)).
Ferculo–,	*a tray,*	(fer–);	lavācro–,	*a bath,*	(lava–).
Fulcro–,	*a prop,*	(fulci–);	flābro–,	*a blast,*	(fla–).

528.—*Note* 1.—If the verb ends in *c* or *g*, the suffix is *ulo–*, only.

Jaculo–,	*a dart,*	(jac–);	cingulo–,	*a girdle,*	(cing–).

Note 2.—Sometimes the suffix *bulo–* denotes *a place*; as, *stabulo–* (*sta–*), "a standing-place," or "stall."

529.—10. **Iē–** (*fem.*) (*n. s.* –iēs), denotes that which is made, or the result of an action.

Faciē–,	*a figure,*	(fac–);	congeriē–,	*a heap,*	(conger–).

530.—II. *Substantives Derived from Substantives.*

Substantives are derived from substantives by the addition of the following suffixes:

531.—1. **Ārio–** (*masc.*) (*n. s.* –ārius), denotes a person engaged in some occupation.

Argentārio–,	*a banker,*	(argento–);	statuārio–,	*a statuary,*	(statua–).
Aerārio–,	*a brazier,*	(aes–);	sīcārius,	*an assassin,*	(sīca–).

532.—2. **Ārio–** (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –arium), denotes the place where any thing is kept.

Armārio–,	*a cupboard,*	(armo–);	aviārio–,	*an aviary,*	(avi–).
Columbārio,	*a dove-cote,*	(columba–);	aerārio,	*a treasury,*	(aes–).

533.—3. **Īna–** (*fem.*) (*n. s.* īna), denotes an employment, or the place where it is carried on.

Medicīna–, *the healing art*, (medico–); sūtrīna–, *a shoemaker's shop*, (sūtōr–).

534.—*Note.*—Sometimes *īna–* denotes simply the female (of mobile nouns, 40): rēgīna– *queen;* gallīna–, *hen.* It is properly an adjectival suffix. See 567.

535.—4. **Ātu–** (*masc.*) (*n. s.* –ātus), and **ūra–** (*fem.*) (*n. s.* –ūra), attached to names of officers, denote the office itself.

Consulātu–,	*consulship*,	(consul–);	tribūnātu–,	*tribuneship*,	(tribūno–).
Censūra–,	*censorship*,	(censōr–);	praetūra–,	*praetorship*,	(praetōr–).

536.—5. **Io–** (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –ium), denotes an employment, condition, etc.

Sacerdōtio–,	*priesthood*,	(sacerdōt–);	ministerio–,	*service*,	(ministro–).
Exsilio–;	*exile*,	(exsul–);	hospitio–,	*hospitality*,	(hospet–).

537.—6. **Āl–** and **ār–** (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –al, –ar), denote a material object.

Animāl–, *an animal*, (anima–, *life*); calcār–, *a spur*, (calc–, *heel*).

538.—7. **Ēto–** (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –ētum) affixed to names of trees, etc., denotes the place where they grow, or the trees, etc., themselves collectively.

Myrtēto–,	*a myrtle-grove*,	(myrto–);	quercēto–,	*an oak wood*,	(quercu–).
Olīvēto–,	*an olive-yard*,	(olīva–);	vīnēto–,	*a vine-yard*,	(vīnea–).

539.—8. **Īli–** (*neut.*) (*n. s.* –īle) affixed to the names of animals denotes a place for them.

Bovīli–, *an ox-stall*, (bov–); ovīli–, *a sheep-fold*, (ovi–).

Note.—This is properly an adjectival suffix. See 564.

Diminutives.

540.—Diminutives denote not only *smallness*, but also *endearment*, *commiseration*, or *contempt*. They follow the gender of the substantives from which they are derived, and are formed by the following suffixes:

541.—1. **Ulo–** (*masc.*) (*n. s.* –ulus, –ulum), **ula–** (*fem.*) (*n. s.* –ula), added to substantives of the first and second declension.

Nīdulo–, *m.*, *a little nest* (nīdo–, *m.*);	hortulo–, *m.*, *a little garden* (horto–, *m.*).
Mensula–, *a little table* (mensa–);	silvula–, *a little wood* (silva–).
Scūtulo–, *n.*, *a small shield* (scūto–, *n.*);	saxulo–, *n.*, *a small rock* (saxo–, *n.*).

542.—2. **Culo–** (*masc.* or *neut.*) (*n. s.* –culus, –culum), **cula–**, (*fem.*) (*n. s.* –cula), added to substantives of the third, fourth, and fifth declensions:

Frāterculo–, *a little brother* (frātr–); flōsculo–, *m.*, *a little flower* (flōs–, *m.*). Nāviculo–, *a little ship* (nāvi–, *f.*); avicula–, *a little bird* (avi–, *f.*). Versiculo–, *m.*, *a little verse* (versu–, *m*); rēcula–, *a little thing* (rē–). Corpusculo–, *n.*, *a little body* (corpos–, *n.*); rēticulo–, *n.*, *a little net* (rēti–, *n.*).

543.—*Note* 1.—If a vowel precedes the suffixes **ulo–**, **ula–**, they become **olo–**, **ola–**.

Fīliolo–, *a little son* (fīlio–); fīliola–, *a little daughter* (fīlia–). Malleolo–, *m.*, *a small hammer* (malleo–, *m.*); ātriolo, *n.*, *a small hall*, (ātrio, *n.*).

544.—*Note* 2.—If the final vowel of the stem of the primitive is preceded by *l*, *n*, *r*, and in a few other cases, a contraction takes place, and the termination of the diminutive becomes **ello–**, **ella–**, and sometimes, but rarely, **illo–**, **illa–**.

Ocello–, *m.*, *a little eye* (oculo–, *m.*); libello–, *m.*, *a little book* (libro–, *m.*). Lapillo–, *m.*, *a little stone* (lapid–, *m.*); catella–, *a little chain* (catēna–). Anguilla–, *a little snake* (angui–); sigillo–, *n.*, *a little figure* (signo–, *n.*).

545.—*Note* 3.—If the stem of the primitive ends in *c*, *g*, *t*, *d*, diminutives are generally formed by adding **ulo–**, **ula–**.

Rēgulo–, *a petty king* (rēg–). rādīcula–, *a little root* (rādīc–, *f.*).

Patronymics.

546.—***Patronymics*** are names borrowed from the Greek, to designate a person by a name derived from his father or ancestor.

547.—***Masculine Patronymics*** end in—

1. **Ida–** (*nom. s.* idēs): Priamida–, *a son of Priam* (Priamo–).
2. **Īda–** (*nom. s.* īdēs): Ātrīdā–, *a son of Atreus* (Ātreu–).

Note.—This suffix belongs to stems ending in *eu–*.

3. **Ada–**, **iada–** (*nom. s.* adēs, iadēs): Aeneada–, *a son of Aeneas* (Aenēa–); Thestiada–, *a son of Thestius* (Thestio–).

548.—***Feminine Patronymics*** end in—

1. **Id–** (*nom. s.* –is): Tantalid–, *a daughter of Tantalus* (Tantalo–).
2. **Ēid–** (*nom. s.* –ēis): Nēlēid–, *a daughter of Neleus* (Nēleu–).

Note.—This suffix belongs especially to stems in *eu–*.

3. **Iad–** (*nom. s.* –ias): Lāertiad–, *a daughter of Laertes* (Lāerta–).
4. **Īna–** (*nom. s.* īnē): Neptūnīna–, *a daughter of Neptune* (Neptūno–).
5. **Ōna–** (*nom. s.* ōnē): Acrisiōna–, *a daughter of Acrisius* (Acrisio–).

549.—III. ***Substantives Derived from Adjectives.***

Substantives derived from adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following suffixes:

550.—1. **Ia–**:

Grātia–,	*favor*	(grāto–);	insānia–,	*madness*	(insāno–).
Miseria–,	*misery*	(misero–);	prūdentia–,	*prudence*	(prūdent–).

551.—2. **Tia–**:

Laetitia–,	*joy*	(laeto–);	justitia–,	*justice*	(justo–).
Mollitia–,	*softness*	(molli–);	pigritia–,	*sloth*	(pigro–).

552.—3. **Tāt–** (*fem.*) (*nom. s.* –tās):

Bonitāt–,	*goodness*	(bono–);	vēritāt–,	*truth*	(vēro–).
Pietāt–,	*piety*	(pio–);	lībertāt–,	*liberty*	(libero–).

553.—4. **Tūdon–** (*fem.*) (*nom. s.* –tūdo):

Fortitūdon–,	*bravery*	(forti–);	altitūdon–,	*height*	(alto–).

554.—5. **Mōnia–**:

Sanctimōnia–,	*sanctity*	(sancto–);	castimōnia–,	*purity*	(casto–).

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

I. *Adjectives Derived from Verbs.*

Adjectives are derived from verbs by the addition of the following suffixes:

555.—1. **Bundo–** (*n. s.* –bundus), intensifying the meaning of the imperfect participle:

Laetābundo–, *full of joy* (laeta–).

556.—2. **Ido–** (*n. s.* –idus), denotes the quality expressed by a verb:

Frīgido–, *cold* (frīge–); madido–, *wet* (made–).
Timido–, *fearful* (time–); valido–, *strong* (vale–).

557.—3. **Ili–** and **bili–** (*n. s.* –ilis, –bilis), denote the possibility of the act being done:

Docili–, *teachable* (doce–); facili–, *doable, easy* (fac–).
Amābili–, *lovable* (ama–); mōbili–, *movable* (move–).

558.—4. **Āc(i–)** (*n. s.* –āx), denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one:

Loquāc(i–), *talkative* (loqu–); edāc(i–), *gluttonous* (ed–).
Audāc(i–), *daring* (aude–); vorāc(i–) *voracious* (vora–).

559.—*Note.*—The following suffixes are less common:

Cundo– (*n. s.* –cundus):

Īrācundo–, *passionate* (īra–, īrascor).
Fācundo–, *eloquent* (fa–, fārī)

Ulo– (*n. s.* –ulus):

Querulo–, *querulous* (quer–).

II. *Adjectives Derived from Substantives.*

Adjectives are derived from substantives by the addition of the following suffixes:

560.—1. **Eo** (*n. s.* –eus), denotes the material, and rarely resemblance:

Aureo–, *golden* (auro–); ligneo–, *wooden* (ligno–).
Piceo–, *pitchy* (pic–); virgineo–, *maidenlike* (virgon–).

561.—2. **Icio–**, or **itio–** (*n. s.* –icius, –itius), denotes the material, or relation to something:

Latericio–, *of brick* (later–); tribūnicio–, *relating to a tribune* (tribūno–).

562.—*Note* 1. **Āceo–** (*n. s.* –āceus), has the same meaning, but is rare: argillāceo–, *of clay* (argilla–).

2. Adjectives in **īcio–** (*n. s.* –īcius), derived from the third stem, denote the way in which a thing originates: commentīcio, *feigned* (3. commento–).

563.—3. **Ico–** (*n. s.* –icus), denotes belonging or relating to a thing:

Bellico–, *relating to war* (bello–); cīvico–, *civil* (cīvi–).

Note.—Amīco–, *friendly;* antīco–, *front;* postīco–, *hinder;* aprīco–, *sunny*, have ī.

564.—4. **Īli–** (*n. s.* –īlis), has the same meaning:

Hostīli–, *hostile* (hosti–); servīli–, *slavish* (servo–).

565.—5. **Āli–** (*n. s.* –ālis), has the same meaning:

Fātāli–, *fatal* (fāto–); rēgāli–, *kingly* (reg–).

Note.—If the last syllable of the substantive is preceded by *l*, the adjectival suffix becomes **āri–**: populāri–, *popular* (populo–); salūtāri–, *salutary* (salūt–).

566.—6. **Io–** (*n. s.* –ius) has the same meaning, and is usually formed from personal names:

Patrio–, *belonging to a father* (patr–); ōrātōrio–, *pertaining to an orator* (ōrātōr–).

567.—7. **Īno–** (*n. s.* -īnus) has the same meaning, and is found especially in derivations from the names of animals:

Canīno–, *pertaining to a dog* (cani–).

568.—8. **Āno–** (*n. s.* -ānus) has the same meaning:

Urbāno–, *pertaining to a city* (urb–).

569.—9. **Ārio–** (*n. s.* -ārius) has the same meaning:

Agrārio–, *pertaining to land* (agro–).

570.—10. **Ōso–** (*n. s.* -ōsus) denotes fulness:

Lapidōso–, *full of stones* (lapid–); animōso–, *spirited* (animo–).

571.—11. **Lento–** (*n. s.* -lentus), usually preceded by *u* or *o*, has the same meaning:

Fraudulento–, *deceitful* (fraud–); violento–, *violent* (vīs–).

572.—12. **Āto** (*n. s.* -ātūs), (sometimes **īto–**, **ūto–**), denote provided with something:

Ālāto–, *winged* (āla–), togāto–, *wearing a toga* (toga–).
Aurīto–, *furnished with ears* (auri–); cornūto, *horned* (cornu–).

III.—*Adjectives derived from Proper names.*

573.—Adjectives are derived from ***Roman names*** of men, by the suffixes:

1. **Āno–** or **iāno–** (*n. s.* -ānus, -iānus), Mariāno– (Mario–), Sullāno– (Sulla–), Gracchāno– (Graccho–), Cicerōniāno– (Cicerōn–).
2. **Īno–** (*n. s.* -īnus), (rare): Verrīno– (verri–, with a pun on *verri–*, "a hog)."

574.—From ***Greek names*** of men we have the suffixes:

Ēo–, **īo–**, **ico–** (*n. s.* -eus, -īus–, -icus), Epicurēo– (Epicūro–), Aristotelīo– (Aristoteli–), Platōnico– (Platōn).

Note.—The poets form adjectives in *eo–* from Roman names: Rōmuleo– (Rōmulo–).

575.—Adjectives are formed from the ***names of towns,*** by the addition of the following suffixes:

1. **Ensi–** (*n. s.* -ensis), Cannensi– (Canna–, *pl.*), Cōmensi– (Cōmo–, *n.*), Sulmōnensi– (Sulmōn–).

576.—2. **Īno–** (*n. s.* -īnus), from names of towns in *ia–*, *io–*, neut.

Amerīno– (Ameria–), Caudīno– (Caudio–, *n.*).

577.—3. **Āno–** (*n. s.* ānus), from names of towns in *a–*, and some in *o–*.

Rōmāno– (Rōma–), Thēbāno– (Thēba–, *pl.*), Tusculāno– (Tusculo–, *n.*), Fundāno– (Fundo–, *m. pl.*).

578.—4. **Āt(i–)** (*n. s.* –ās), chiefly from names of towns in *no–*, neut., but sometimes from those in *na–*.

Arpīnāt(i–) (Arpīno–, *n.*), Capēnāt(i–) (Capēna–), Fidēnāt(i–) (Fidēna–, *pl.*).

579.—*Note.* 1. In adjectives derived from the names of Greek towns, the Greek suffixes are often retained. The most common is *io–*, Corinthio– (Corintho–).

2. These adjectives are also used as ***patrial nouns,*** to denote the inhabitants:

Athēniensēs, *the Athenians ;* Rōmānī, *the Romans.*

580.—Sometimes adjectives in *ico–* (*n. s.* –icus), are formed from the names of people, especially when the latter are used only as substantives: Gallico–, *Gallic* (Gallo–), Arabico–, *Arabic* (Arab–).

581.—*Note.*—The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people: Hispānia–, *Spain* (Hispāno–). Adjectives in *ensi–*, *āno–*, derived from such names, denote some relation to the country, not to the people: *exercitus Hispāniensis*, "an army stationed in Spain" (not "a Spanish army," which would be *exercitus Hispānicus*). Similarly, *Gallicānae legiōnēs*, of the Roman forces in Gaul, but *Gallica auxilia*, of the Gallic troops.

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

I. *Verbs derived from Substantives and Adjectives.*

582.—1. ***Derivative Transitive Verbs*** are usually of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the substantive or adjective denotes:

Mātūra–, *make ripe* (mātūro); lībera–, *make free* (lībero–).

Note.—A few verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed: Fīni–, *finish* (fīni–); molli–, *soften* (molli–).

582.—2. Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to be*, or *to provide one's self with*, what the substantive or adjective denotes:

Ancilla–, Dep., *be a hand-maid* (ancilla–); aqua–, Dep., *fetch water* (aqua–).

583.—3. ***Derivative Intransitive Verbs*** are usually of the Second Conjugation:

Calve–, *be bald* (calvo–); albe–, *be white* (aioo–).

Note.—Many verbs of this class are only found as inceptives. (588.)

II. *Verbs derived from Verbs.*

Of these there are four classes:

584.—1. ***Frequentative Verbs*** express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding **ita–** to the first stem of the first conjugation, and to the third stem of the other conjugations, the final vowels of the stems being dropped:

Clāmita–, *cry out often* (clāma–); lectita, *read often* (leg–, 3. lecto–).

585.—*Note:* 1. Many frequentatives, particularly from verbs of Conj. III., simply change *o* of the third stem into *a*. Cursa–, *run often* (curr–, 3. curso–).

586.—2. Sometimes *ita–* is added to the first stem of verbs of Conj. III. Agita–, *move often* (ag–); quaerita–, *inquire often* (quaer–).

587.—3. There are a few verbs in *ess–* or *iss–*, which express intensified action: Capess–, *catch eagerly* (cap–); petiss–, *seek earnestly* (pet–).

588.—2. ***Inceptive*** (or ***Inchoative***) ***Verbs*** express the beginning of an action or state, and are formed by adding **asc–**, **esc–**, **isc–** to the stems of nouns as well as of verbs, the stem-vowel being omitted:

Labasc–, *begin to totter* (laba–); calesc–, *grow warm* (cale–); tremisc–, *begin to tremble* (trem–); obdormisc–, *get sleepy* (dormi–); senesc–, *grow old* (sen–); puerasc–, *become a boy* (puero–); dūresc–, *become hard* (dūro–).

589.—3. ***Desiderative Verbs*** express desire after a thing, and are formed by changing *o* of the third stem into *uri–*: ēsuri–, *desire to eat* (ed–, 3. ēso–); scripturi–, *desire to write* (scrīb–, 3. scripto–).

Note.—By analogy is formed *Sullāturi–*, "desire to play the part of Sulla."

590.—4. ***Diminutive Verbs*** express a diminution or pettiness of the action. They end in **illa–**. Cantilla–, *sing gently* (canta–); sorbilla–, *sip* (sorbe–); conscrībilla–, *scribble* (conscrīb–).

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

591.—Adverbs in ē are derived from adjectives with stems in *o:*
Modestē, *modestly* (modesto–); pulcrē, *beautifully* (pulcro–); doctē, *learnedly* (docto–).

592.*—Note.* 1. From *bono–*, *malo–*, come *bene*, "well," *male*, "ill," with e ***short;*** so also *superne*, *inferne*, from *superno–*, *inferno–*, *interne*.

593.—2. Some adjectives in *o* have adverbs ending in **ter** as well as in ē:

Dūro–	*has*	dūrē	*and*	dūriter,	*severely.*
Firmo–	"	firmē	"	firmiter,	*firmly.*
Largo–	"	largē	"	largiter,	*bounteously.*

Violento– *has only* violenter, *violently.*

594.—Adverbs in ō are derived from adjectives in *o–*, and are really ablatives sing.:
Falsō, *falsely* (falso–); tūtō, *safely* (tūto–).

Note.—The form in ō is rare. From some adjectives come adverbs both in ō and in ē, but with a difference of meaning: certō, *certainly*, certē, *at any rate;* vērō, *in truth, indeed;* vērē, *truly.*

595.—Adverbs in **ter** are formed from adjectives of the third declension:

Graviter, *heavily* (gravi–); fēlīciter, *happily* (fēlīc(i–)).

Note.—If the stem of the adjective ends in *t*, one *t* is omitted: sapienter, *wisely* (sapient–).

596.—The ***neuter acc. sing.*** of many adjectives is used adverbially: facile, *easily;* recens, *lately;* multum, *much.*

597.—Adverbs in **itus** are derived from nouns. and denote *proceeding from* something: coelitus, *from heaven* (coelo–); rādīcitus, *from the roots* (rādīc–).

598.—Adverbs in **tim** are formed from nouns and verbs, and denote way or manner:
Catervātim, *in troops* (caterva–); prīvātim, *as a private person* (prīvāto–); statim, *immediately* (sta–); punctim, *with the point* (puncto–). So also passim, *everywhere* (passo–).

599.—Certain ***cases of nouns*** are used adverbially: jūre, *rightly* (jūs–); injūriā, *unjustly* (injūria–); forte, *by chance* (fort–); noctū, *by night;* temporī, *seasonably.* The last is also written *temperī*, with a comparative *temperius.*

Adverbs formed from numerals are given in 207.

600.—Adverbs of position are formed from the demonstrative pronouns, with their regular differences of relation to the speaker. (240.)

(1) Hīc, *here.*	hūc, *hither.*	hinc, *hence.*
(2) Istīc, *there.*	istūc, *thither.*	istinc, *thence.*
(3) Illīc, *there.*	illūc, *thither.*	illinc, *thence.*

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

601.—A ***compound word*** is formed of two or more roots.

Sometimes a substantive and an adjective, both of which are declined, or a genitive and the substantive on which it depends, are written together; but these are not genuine compounds.

Rēspublica, *gen.* reīpublicae, *the commonwealth.*
Jūsjūrandum, *gen.* jūrisjūrandī, *an oath.*
Senātūs–consultum, *a resolution of the Senate.*
Aquae–ductus, *a water-channel.*
Lēgis–lātor, *a legislator.*

602.—The first part of a compound word may consist of any part of speech; but a ***verb*** is only found in the first part, when *fac–*, "make," is the second; as, ārefac–, *make dry;* calefac–, *make warm*, etc.

The roots *fac–*, "make," *fer–*, "bring," *col–*, "cultivate," *can–*, "sing," are used in the second part of many compound words, and a connecting vowel is often employed, generally ***i:***

Artifec–, *artist* (art–, fac–).
Lētifero–, *death-bearing* (lēto–, fer–).
Agricola–, *husbandman* (agro–, col–).
Tubicen–, *trumpeter* (tuba–, can–).

603.—In the great majority of compound words, the first part is a ***preposition.*** Prepositions in composition undergo certain euphonic changes, of which the most common is the assimilation of the final consonant of the preposition to the initial consonant of the word with which it is combined: alloquor *for* ad–loquor.

***604.*—Ā, ab, abs.**—*Ā* is used before *m* and *v* (ā–moveo, ā–veho); *ab* before vowels and most consonants (ab–igo, ab–dūco); *abs* before *c* and *t* (abs–condo, abs–tulit); *as* (for *abs*) before *p* (as–porto).

***605.*—Ad** remains unchanged before *b, d, j, m, v* (ad–bibo, ad–do, ad–jungo, ad–mitto, ad–volo). The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants (ac–cēdo, ag–gero, ap–pōno, ac–quīro, as–sisto). The *d* is often omitted before *sc, sp, st,* and *gn* (a–spicio, a–scendo, a–strictus, a–gnosco).

***606.*—Com** and **con** (for cum) are considered the same preposition. Com remains unchanged before labials (*p, b, m*), (com-pōno, com-bibo,

com-mitto). The *m* is assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*, (col-ligo, con-necto, cor-ruo). The *m* is changed to *n* before other consonants (con-fero, con-gero, contraho), but is dropped before *vowels*, *h* and *gn* (co-eo, co-hibeo, co-gnosco).

***607.*—Ex** (ec, ē).—**Ex** is used before *vowels* and the consonants *c*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t* (ex–eo, ex–culpo, ex–pōno, ex–quīro, ex-solvo, ex–traho). *Ec* is used with assimilation before *f* (ef–fero). *E* is used before the other consonants (ē–jicio, ē–ligo).

***608.*—In.**—The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r* (il–lūdo, ir–rumpo): is changed into *m* before labials (*p*, *b*, *m*), im–pōno, im–buo, im–mitto): is dropped before *gn* (i–gnosco). Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged (in–sero, in–fero, in–eo).

***609.*—Inter** undergoes assimilation only in the verb *intel–ligo*, and its derivatives.

***610.*—Ob** undergoes assimilation before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p* (oc–curro, of–fero, og–gero, op–pōno); *b* is dropped in o–mitto; and an old form, *obs*, occurs in a few words (obs–olesco, os–tendo *for* obs–tendo).

***611.*—Per** undergoes assimilation only in *pel–licio*, and sometimes in *pel–lūceo*, with their derivatives: *r* is omitted in *pē–jero*.

***612.*—Sub** undergoes assimilation before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*, and often before *m* and *r* (suc–curro, suf–ficio, sug–gero, sum–mitto, sup–pōno, surripio); *b* is dropped before *sp* (su–spicio); *sus* (for *subs*) occurs in a few words (sus–pendo, sus–tulit).

***613.*—Trans** drops *s* before *s* (tran–silio), and is often shortened to *trā* before *d*, *j*, *n* (trā–do, trā–jicio, trā–no).

Inseparable Prepositions. (486):

***614.*—Amb.**—*B* is dropped before *p* (am–puto), *amb* becomes *an* before palatals (*c*, *qu*) and *f* (an–ceps, an–quīro, an–fractus), and sometimes takes *i* (ambi–viam).

***615.*—Dis**, **Dī.**—Dis is used before *c*, *p*, *q*, *t*, *s*, followed by a vowel, and with assimilation before *f* (dis–curro, dis–pōno, dis–quīro, dis–traho, dis–sero, dif–fero); *s* is changed to *r* in *dir–imo*, *dir–ibeo* (*habeo*).

Re, Red.—Red– is used before vowels and *h* (red–eo, red–itus, redhibeo); also in *red–do*.

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

616.—*Syntax* is that part of Grammar which treats of the proper arrangement and connection of words in a sentence (1384).

1. A ***sentence*** is such an assemblage of words as expresses a thought and makes complete sense; as, *Amā Deum*, "Love God." *Terra se gramine vestit*, "The earth clothes itself with grass."

2. A ***clause*** is a form of words having the attributes of a sentence, but used in another sentence to limit it, or some part of it; as, *Si quid in tē peccāvī*, ignosce,. "If I have done you any wrong, pardon me."

3. A ***phrase*** is two or more words together expressing an idea, but not making complete sense; as, *dignus laude*, "Worthy of praise."

4. A ***proposition*** is a logical statement or affirmation which is the basis of a sentence; as, *Vīta brĕvis est*, "Life is short." *Ille loquitur*, "He speaks." *Cæsar*, exercitū expositō, *ad hostes contendit* (967).

REMARK.—A *proposition* is properly the thing expressed; a *sentence* is the form of words expressing it. The term proposition is sometimes applied to a single sentence or a clause.

5. ***Sentences,*** according to the number of independent propositions they contain, are of two classes, *single* or *compound*.

6. A ***single sentence*** expresses only one independent proposition.

7. Single sentences may be distributed into three classes :—(1.) Those containing one subject, one verb, (if transitive) one object, (if attributive) one attribute, called ***Simple Sentences,*** as *Puella lēgit*, "The girl reads." *Nunquam est utile peccāre*, "To do wrong is never useful."—(2.) Those having two or more of any of these parts, said to be ***Compound in the part*** thus affected; as, *Furor īraque mentem præcipitant* (643). *Veniunt leve vulgus euntque* (648)—(3.) Those containing a limiting clause called ***Complex Sentences.*** *Sī tē videro, respiravero* (1066, 1099).

8. A single sentence or proposition consists of two parts, the *subject* and the *predicate* (See Prac. Eng. Gr., 600).

9. The ***subject*** is that of which the affirmation is made; as, *Puer qui legit* discit, "The boy, who reads, learns" (1400, 1403).

10. The ***predicate*** is that which is affirmed of the subject; as, Magister *puerum laudat*, "The master praises the boy" (1404).

11. A ***compound sentence*** consists of two or more single sentences connected together; as, *Amā Deum et reverēre parentēs,* "Love God and reverence your parents." *Cæsar beneficūs magnus hăbebătur, integritāte vitæ Cato* (1029).

NOTE.—The analysis of sentences is the same in Latin as in English. See pages 326 to 331. Also Practical English Grammar, page 162, etc.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

617.—In every ***sentence*** there must be a ***verb*** in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, with a ***subject*** in the nominative case, expressed or understood. The subject of the infinitive mood is commonly in the accusative case.

2. Every ***adjective,*** adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a ***substantive*** expressed or understood, with which it agrees. (651.)

3. Every ***relative*** must have an ***antecedent,*** or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees. (683.)

4. Every ***subject-nominative*** has its own ***verb*** expressed or understood. (634, 643.) The predicate-nominative or ***complement,*** is usually placed after the substantive verb. (667.)

5. Every ***finite verb,*** *i. e.*, every verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood, has its own ***nominative,*** expressed or understood (643), and when the infinitive has a subject, it is in the accusative. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition.

6. Every ***oblique case*** is governed by some word, expressed or understood in the sentence of which it forms a part; or is used, without government, to express certain circumstances.

PARTS OF SYNTAX.

618.—The Parts of Syntax are commonly reckoned two: ***Concord,*** or agreement, and ***Government.***

619.—Concord is the agreement of one word with another, in *gender*, *number*, *case*, or *person*.

620.—Government is that power which one word has in determining the *mood*, *tense*, or *case*, of another word.

I. CONCORD.

621.—Concord, or agreement, is fourfold; viz.:

1. Of a substantive with a substantive;
2. Of a verb with its nominative, or subject;
3. Of an adjective with a substantive;
4. Of a relative with its antecedent.

A SUBSTANTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

622.—RULE I. ***Apposition.***—Substantives denoting the ***same*** person, or thing, agree in ***case,*** and the adjunct is called an ***appositive;*** as—

Cicero ōrātor,	Cicero the orator.
Cicerōnis ōrātōris,	Of Cicero the orator, etc.
Urbs Athēnae,	The city Athens.
Urbis Athēnārum,	Of the city Athens.

623.—EXPLANATION.—Substantives thus used are said to be in ***apposition,*** The second substantive is added to express some *attribute* or *description* belonging to the first, and must always be in the same member of the sentence; *i. e.*, they must be both in the subject, or both in the predicate. A substantive predicated of another, though denoting the same thing, is not in apposition with it, and does not come under this rule. (666, 667.)

This rule applies to all substantive words, such as personal and relative pronouns, adjectives used substantively, etc. (710).

Nouns in apposition are often connected, in English, by such particles as *as*, *being*, *for*, *like*, etc.; as, *Pater mīsit mē comitem*, "My father sent me *as* a companion," "*for* a companion," etc.

OBSERVATIONS.

624.—*Obs.* 1. In ***gender*** an appositive agrees with the noun it limits, if it have distinct forms for the genders, *i. e.*, if it be a ***mobile*** noun (40); as, *Scelerum inventor Ulysses*, "Ulysses contriver of crimes;" *Oleae inventrīx Minerva*, "Minerva inventress of the olive."

625.—*Obs.* 2. In ***number*** an appositive generally agrees with its noun, but not always; as, *Omitto illās omnium doctrīnārum inventrīcēs Athēnās*, "I omit the great inventress of all sciences, Athens;" *Captivī praeda fuerant*, "The prisoners had been a prey."

626.*—*Obs*. 3. *Two or more nouns in the singular, have a noun in apposition in the plural; as, *M. Antōnius, C. Cassius, tribūnī plēbis*, "Marcus Antonius, Caius Cassius, tribunes of the people." Also if the singular nouns be of different genders, the plural in apposition will have the masculine rather than the feminine, if both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemaeum et Cleopatram rēgēs* (not *rēgīnās*), *lēgātī missī*.—Liv.

***627.*—*Obs*.** 4. The substantive pronoun, having a word in apposition, is frequently omitted; as, *Consul dixī* (scil. *ego*), "(I) the consul said."

628.*—*Obs*.** 5. The ***possessive pronoun, being equivalent to the genitive of the personal, has a noun in apposition with it in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum, hominis simplicis*, "The heart of you, a plain man," cf. 692.

629.*—*Obs*.** 6. Sometimes the former noun denotes a ***whole, of which the nouns in apposition express the ***parts;*** as, *Onerāriae, pars ad Ægimūrum,—aliae adversus urbem ipsam dēlātae sunt*, "*The ships of burden* were carried, *part* to Ægimurus,—*others* over against the city itself." So, *Quisque prō sē queruntur*, "*They* complain *each* for himself."

630.*—*Obs*.** 7. A ***sentence or clause may supply the place of one of the substantives; as, *Cōgitet ōrātōrem institui, rem arduam*, "Let him consider that an orator is training, a difficult matter."

EXCEPTIONS.

631.*—*Exc*.** 1. Rarely the latter substantive is put in the ***genitive; as, *virtūs continentiae*, "the virtue of self-restraint;" *amnis Ēridanī*, "the river Eridanus;" *arbor fīcī*, "the fig tree;" *nōmen Mercuriī est mihi*.

632.*—*Exc*.** 2. A ***proper name after the generic term *nōmen*, or *cognōmen*, sometimes elegantly takes the case of the person in the dative; as, *Nōmen Arctūrō est mihi*, "I have the name Arcturus."—Plaut. So, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlō additur*, "to whom the name Iulus is given."—Virg.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

633.*—The *subject* of a finite verb (264), must be in the *nominative case.

A substantive is in the nominative case when used:

1. To express the subject of a proposition; (616, 4.)

2. In apposition with another substantive in the nominative, or predicated of it; (622, 667.)

3. In exclamations; as, *O vir fortis atque amīcus!*

THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE.

634.—Rule II. A ***Verb*** agrees with its ***nominative*** in number and person; as,

Ego lego,	I read.	*Nōs legimus,*	We read.
Tū scrībis,	Thou writest.	*Vōs scrībitis,*	Ye write.
Ille loquitur,	He speaks.	*Illī loquuntur,*	They speak.

635.—Explanation.—The ***subject*** of a finite verb (258, 616, 8) being a noun, a pronoun, or an adjective used as a noun, is put in the ***nominative*** case. To all of these the rule applies, and requires that the verb be in the same number and person as the subject, or nominative. For person, see 31. The subject may also be an infinitive mood or part of a sentence.

OBSERVATIONS.

636.—*Obs.* 1. ***Subject Omitted.***—The ***nominatives*** *ego, nōs,* of the first person, and *tū, vōs,* of the second, are generally ***omitted,*** being obvious from the personal endings of the verb; also the nominative of the third person, when it is an indefinite word, or may be easily supplied from the context; as, *ferunt,* "they say;" etc.

637.—*Obs.* 2. The ***subject*** is also said to be ***omitted*** when the verb expresses the state of the weather, or an operation of nature; as, *fulgurat,* "it lightens;" *pluit,* "it rains;" *ningit,* "it snows." These are called ***impersonal*** verbs. (451, 456.)

638.—*Obs.* 3. Other ***impersonal*** verbs are usually considered as without a nominative. Still, they will generally be found to bear a relation to some circumstance, sentence, clause of a sentence, or infinitive mood, similar to that between a verb and its nominative; as, *dēlectat mē studēre,* "it delights me to study," *i. e.,* "to study delights me."

639.—*Obs.* 4. ***Verb Omitted.***—The verb is sometimes omitted when the nominative is expressed, and sometimes when it is understood; as, *nam ego Polydōrus* (sc. *sum*), "for I (am) Polydorus;"—*omnia praeclāra rāra* (sc. *sunt*), "all excellent things (are) rare;"—*tum ille* (sc. *respondit*), "then he (replied)."

640.—*Obs.* 5. ***Sentence as Subject.***—When the subject is an infinitive, or a clause of a sentence, the verb is in the third person singular; and if a compound tense (*i. e.,* in one of the tenses of the perfect passive (281), or of the periphrastic conjugation (328), the participle is put in the neuter gender; as, *incertum est quam longa nostrûm cūjusque vīta futūra sit,* "how long any of us shall live *is uncertain.*"

641.—*Obs.* 6. ***Nominative with Infinitive.***—The nominative is sometimes found with the infinitive, in which case *coepit,* or *coepērunt,* "began," or some other verb, according to the sense, is often said to be

understood; as, *omnēs invidēre mihi*, "*every one envied* me." The infinitive with the nominative before it, is so common in historical narrative, that it is called the ***historical infinitive.*** Thus used, it is translated as the imperfect, or the perfect indefinite, for which tenses it seems to be used, and with which it is sometimes connected. (1137.)

642.**—Obs.* 7. ***Videor, in the sense of "I seem," is used throughout as a personal verb, but is often rendered impersonally; as, *videor esse līber*, "*it seems that I* am free," literally, "*I seem* to be free."

SPECIAL RULES AND OBSERVATIONS.

Of Agreement in Number and Person.

643.**—*Rule III. ***Two or more Substantives singular, taken together, have a verb in the plural; taken separately, the verb is usually singular; as,

(Taken together.)

Furor īraque mentem praecipitant, Fury and rage hurry on my mind.

(Taken separately.)

Sī Sōcratēs aut Antisthenēs dīceret, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say.

644.**—Obs.* 1. Sometimes the verb agrees with the ***nominative nearest to it, and is understood with the rest, especially when each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, or when they denote things without life; as, *Mens enim. et ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, "For intellect, and reason, and wisdom, are (*lit.* is) in the aged."

645.**—Obs.* 2. A substantive in the nominative singular, connected with another in the ablative by *cum*, may be ***treated as a plural; as, *Remō cum frātre Quirīnus jūra dabunt*, "Romulus and (*lit.* with) his brother Remus will dispense justice," cf. 657.

646.**—Obs.* 3. When the ***nominatives are of ***different persons,*** the verb is commonly plural, and takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, *Sī tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valēmus*, "If you and Tullia (*i. e.* ye) *are well*, Cicero and I (*i. e.* we) *are well*."

But sometimes the verb agrees with the ***nearest nominative***, and is understood to the rest, and always so, when the verb has different modifications with each nominative; as, *Ego miserē, tū fēlīciter vīvis*, "I (live) unhappily, you live happily."

647.—*Obs.* 4. In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second. Thus, "My king and I" is in Latin, *Ego et rēx meus.*

648.—Rule IV. 1. A ***Collective Noun*** expressing ***many as one*** whole, generally has a verb in the singular; as,

Populus mē sībilat,	The people hiss at me.
Senātus in cūriam vēnit,	The Senate came into the Senate-house.

2. But when it expresses ***many as individuals***, the verb must be plural; as,

Pars epulīs onerant mensās,	Part load the tables with food.
Turba ruunt,	The crowd rush.
Veniunt leve vulgus euntque,	The fickle populace come and go.

649.—*Obs.* 5. Sometimes both singular and plural are joined with the same word; as, *Turba ex eō locō dīlābēbātur, refractūrōsque carcerem minābantur*, "The mob scattered from that place, and threatened to break open the prison."

AN ADJECTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

650.—Rule V. An ***Adjective*** agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

Bonus vir, a good man.	*Bonōs virōs*, good men.
Bona puella, a good girl.	*Bonārum lēgum*, of good laws.
Dulce pōmum, a sweet apple.	*Tuīs dōnīs*, with thy gifts.

651.—Explanation.—This rule applies to all adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles; and requires that they be in the same gender, number, and case, with their substantives. It applies, also, when the substantive is in the subject, and the adjective in the predicate. (666.) The word "substantive," in this rule, includes personal and relative pronouns, and all words or phrases used as substantives. (659).

OBSERVATIONS.

652.—*Obs.* 1. ***Two or more substantives singular,*** unless taken separately, have an adjective ***plural;*** as,

Vir et puer territī lupō,	A man and a boy terrified by a wolf.

653.—*Obs.* 2. If all the substantives be ***of the same gender,*** the adjectives will be of that gender, as in the example above. But if the substantives are ***of different genders,*** the adjective takes the masculine rather than the feminine, and the feminine rather than the neuter; as,

Pater mihi, et māter mortuī sunt,	My father and mother are dead.—Ter.

654.—*Obs.* 3. But if they denote things ***without life,*** the adjective is commonly ***neuter.*** And, if some of the substantives refer to things with life, and others to things without life, the adjective is either neuter, or takes the gender of the thing or things with life; as,

Labor voluptāsque sunt dissimilia nātūrā,	Toil and pleasure are unlike in nature.
Nāvēs et captīvī ad Chīum capta sunt,	The ships and captives were taken at Chios.
Numidae atque mīlitāria signa obscūrātī sunt,	The Numidians and their military standards were partially concealed.

655.—Also, the ***neuter*** is used frequently when the nouns denoting things are of the same gender; as, *Īra et avāritia imperiō potentiōra erant,* "Anger and avarice were too strong for control."—Liv.

656.—*Obs.* 4. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the ***nearest noun,*** and is understood with the rest; as, *Sociīs et rēge receptō,* Virg., "Our companions and king being recovered."

657.—*Note* 1.—Sometimes two nouns connected with each other by **cum**, are treated like a ***plural,*** and have a plural adj. agreeing with them (653); as, *Fīliam cum fīliō accītōs,* "The son and daughter being sent for."—Liv., cf. 645.

658.—*Obs.* 5. When the ***substantive,*** to which the adjective or adjective pronoun belongs, may be easily supplied, it is frequently ***omitted,*** and the adjective, assuming its gender, number, and case, is often used as a substantive, and may have an adjective agreeing with it; as—

Mortālis (*homo*), a mortal.	*Ille* (*homo*), he.
Superī (*diī*), the gods above.	*Illī* (*hominēs*), they.
Dextra (*manus*), the right hand.	*Hic* (*homo*), he.
Sinistra (*manus*), the left hand.	*Haec* (*mulier*), she.
Omnia alia, all other (things).	*Familiāris meus* (*amīcus*), my intimate friend.

659.—*Obs.* 6. The adjective, when used as a **predicate,** without a substantive or definite object, is used in the neuter gender; as,

Triste lupus stabulīs,	The wolf is a sorry thing to the folds. —VIRG.
Turpitūdo pējus est quam dolor,	Disgrace is a worse thing than pain. —CIC.

This case comes under 666.

660.—*Obs.* 7. Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such (35), when used **substantively,** take an adjective in the **neuter** gender; as,

Suprēmum vale dixit, OVID,	He pronounced a last farewell.
Crās istud quando venit, MART.,	When does that to-morrow come?
Exceptō quod nōn simul essēs, HOR.,	That you were not present being excepted.

661.—*Obs.* 8. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *populum lātē rēgem* (for *regnantem*), "a people of extensive sway;" *nēmo* (for *nullus*) *mīles Rōmānus*, "no Roman soldier."

662.—*Obs.* 9. Such adjectives as *prīmus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *īmus*, *summus*, *reliquus*, sometimes denote a **particular part** of an object; as, *media nox*, "the middle of the night;" *summus mons*, "the top of the mountain."

663.—*Obs.* 10. Some adjectives denoting the time or circumstances of an action, such as *libens*, glad; *sciens*, knowing; *imprūdens*, unwitting; etc.; are used in the sense of **adverbs;** as, *prior vēnit*, "he came *first of the two*."

664.—*Obs.* 11. **Alius**, though an adjective, is often used as a pronoun, and has this peculiarity of construction, that, when repeated with a different word in the **same clause,** it renders the one simple proposition to which it belongs equivalent to two, and it is to be so rendered; thus, *aliud aliīs vidētur optimum*, "*one thing* seems best *to some*, *another* seems best *to others*." Or the two simple sentences may be combined in a plural form; thus, "different things seem best to different persons;" etc. The same is true when a word derived from *alius*, such as *aliunde*, *aliter*, *aliō*, is put with it in the same clause; as, *aliīs aliunde perīculum est*, "there is danger *to one person from one source*, and *to another from another*;" or combined, "there is danger *to different persons* from *different sources*."

665.—*Obs.* 12. When alius is repeated in a ***different clause,*** but in the same construction, the first is to be rendered "one," the second, "another;" if plural, "some, "others;" as, *aliud est maledīcere, aliud accūsāre,* "it is *one thing* to rail at, *another* to accuse."—Cic. *Prōferēbant aliī purpuram, thūs aliī,* "*some* brought forth purple, *others* incense." Instead of *aliī—aliī*, etc., in the plural, we have sometimes *pars—aliī ; partim—aliī ;* sometimes *aliī—pars, aliī—partim,* "some," "others," etc.; and sometimes the first of the pair is omitted.

This remark is applicable to *alter ;* but *alius* signifies ONE OF MANY; *alter*, ONE OF TWO; as, *quōrum alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit,* "one of whom destroyed an army, the other sold one."

THE PREDICATE.

666.—RULE VI. The ***predicate substantive*** or ***adjective,*** after an attributive verb, is put in the same case as the subject before it, and is called an ***attribute*** or ***complement;*** as

Ego sum discipulus,	I am a scholar.
Tū vocāris Jōannēs,	Thou art called John.
Illa incēdit rēgīna,	She walks (as) a queen.

667.—EXPLANATION.—Some verbs take a predicate substantive or adjective when the verb by itself does not make a complete assertion, *e. g: Brutus is*— evidently requires a substantive or adjective with *is* to ***complete its meaning;*** thus, *Brutus is good; Brutus is consul.* The noun or adjective so added is called an ***attribute*** or ***complement,*** because it asserts and connects an attribute with the subject, and completes the assertion. Such verbs are *sum*, I am; *ēvādo*, I turn out; and passive verbs of *appointing, naming, regarding,* etc., such as *creor*, I am elected; *appellor*, I am called, etc. These are called ***attributive verbs*** (259), or copulas, because they act as a bond or connection between the noun in the subject and the complement.

OBSERVATIONS.

668.—*Obs.* 1. Any copulative verb between ***two nominatives of different numbers,*** commonly agrees in number with the former, or subject; as *Dōs est decem talenta,* "*Her dowry is* ten talents."—TER. *Omnia pontus erant,* "All was sea."—OVID. But sometimes with the latter, or predicate; as, *Amantium īrae amōris integrātio est,* "The quarrels of lovers *is a renewal* of love."

669.—(*a.*) So also, when the ***nouns*** are of ***different genders,*** an adjective, adjective pronoun, or a participle, in the predicate, commonly agrees with the subject of the verb; as, *Oppidum appellātum est Posīdōnia,*

"The town was called Posidonia;" but sometimes with the predicate; as, *Nōn omnis error stultitia dīcenda est*, "Not every sort of mistake should be called folly.—Cic.

670.—(*b.*) The verb *esse* sometimes takes an ***adverb in the predicate***, where, in English, an adjective is commonly used; as, *ea rēs frustrā fuit*, "that *was of no avail;*" *sī valēs bene est*, "if you are in good health it is well."

671.—*Obs.* 2. When the predicate is an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle without a substantive, it agrees with the subject before the verb according to Rule V. (650); except as noticed in 659. Sometimes the complement agrees with an appositive instead of with the subject. *Corinthum* (fem.) *patrēs vestrī, tōtius, Graeciae lūmen, exstinctum* (neut.) *esse voluerunt.*

672.—*Obs.* 3. When the subject is of the second person, and the vocative stands before the verb, the adjective or participle will usually be in the nominative, according to the rule; as, *esto tū, Caesar, amīcus*, "be thou, Cæsar, our friend;" but sometimes it is put in the vocative; as, *Quibus, Hector, ab ōrīs expectāte venīs*, "From what shores, Hector, dost thou come long waited for" (Virg.), for *expectātus*. Hence the phrase, *Macte virtūte esto*, "Be thou exalted for thy valor," for *mactus*.

673.—*Obs.* 4. The noun *opus*, commonly rendered "needful," is often used as a predicate after *sum;* as, *dux nōbīs opus est*, "a leader *is wanted* by us." (925.)

674.—*Obs.* 5. When the subject of the infinitive is the same with the subject of the preceding verb, it is often omitted, in which case the predicate after the infinitive is in the ***nominative*** agreeing with the preceding subject; as, *cupio dīcī doctus*, "I desire to be called learned." See Gr. Gram. 731. B. & K. Greek Gram., 1094.

675.—*Obs.* 6. The ***accusative*** or ***dative*** before the ***infinitive*** under this Rule, strictly requires the same case after it in the predicate; as,

Nōvimus tē esse fortem,	We know that thou art brave.
Mihi negligentī non esse licet,	I am not allowed to be negligent.

676.—*Obs.* 7. When the infinitive of such verbs has a dative before it, it may be followed either by a dative or an accusative; as, *licet mihi esse beātō;* or, *licet mihi esse beātum*, "I may be happy." In the first case, *beāto* agrees with *mihi;* in the second, *beātum* agrees with *mē*, to be supplied as the subject of *esse*. With *licet* the dative is more usual than the accusative. Other verbs which sometimes have the same construction are: *expedit*, "it is expedient;" *datur*, "it is granted;" *vacat*, "there is leisure;" *prōdest*, "it is profitable," etc. Sometimes, when the sentence is indefinite, the dative also is understood; as, *licet esse beātum* (sc. *alicuī*), "one may be happy." See B. Gr. Gram., 738. B. & K. Greek Gram. 1095, *Obs.* 5.

677.—*Obs.* 8. This variety of case after the infinitive, is admissible only with the *nominative, dative.* and *accusative.* The other cases before the infinitive have the accusative after it, agreeing with the subject of the infinitive understood; as, *interest omnium* (*sē*) *esse bonōs*, "it is the interest of all to be good."

EXCEPTIONS.

678.—Construction according to Sense (*ad synesim*).—*Exc.* 1. An adjective is often put in a ***different gender or number*** from its substantive, tacitly referring to its meaning rather than to its form; as,

Latium Capuaque agrō multātī, "Latium and Capua were deprived of their land," *i. e.*, the people of Latium, etc.; *Capita conjūrātiōnis virgīs caesī*, "the heads (*i. e.*, the leading men) of the conspiracy were beaten to death," etc.

679.—*Exc.* 2. A ***collective noun*** in the singular, if its verb is plural (648), has an adjective in the plural, and in the gender of the individuals which form the collection; as,

Pars in flūmen actī sunt, "*A part were forced* into the river." Rarely it takes the gender of the individuals in the singular; as, *pars arduus equīs furit*, "some rush furiously raised high on horses."—Virg.

680.—*Exc.* 3. A plural noun or pronoun, used to denote one person, in comic writers, sometimes has an adjective or participle in the singular; as, *Nōbīs praesente*, "I being present."

681.—*Exc.* 4. The adjective pronouns **uterque**, **quisque**, etc., in the singular, are often put with nouns in the plural, to intimate that the objects are spoken of individually and distributively; as, *Uterque eōrum ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcunt*, "They lead forth, *each* of them, his army from the camp;" *Prō sē quisque queruntur*, "They complain, *each one* for himself." *Quisque*, in the singular, not only distributes plural nouns, but is in the nominative when the plural to be distributed is in the ablative absolute; as, *Multīs sibi quisque imperium petentibus*, "Many seeking power each for himself," Sall., Jug., 18; or in the accusative, as the subject of the infinitive; as, *Affirmantēs sē .... quisque patriam .... relictūrōs*, "Asserting that they would leave each his country."

682.—*Exc.* 5. When **ipse** qualifies a substantive pronoun in a reflexive sense, in any oblique case governed by a verb or preposition, it commonly takes the case of the subject of the verb instead of the case of the word which it qualifies; as, *Sē ipse interfēcit*, "He slew *himself*;" *Mihi ipse faveo*, "I favor *myself*."

THE RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

683.—Rule VII. The ***relative*** *quī, quae, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

Ego quī scrībo,	I who write.
Tū quī legis,	Thou who readest.
Vir quī loquitur,	The man who speaks.
Virī quī loquuntur,	The men who speak.

684.—EXPLANATION.—The antecedent is the noun or pronoun going before the relative to which it refers. Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause are placed before the antecedent and its clause.

The infinitive mood or a part of a sentence is sometimes the antecedent, in which case the relative must be in the neuter gender.

OBSERVATIONS.

685.—*Obs.* 1. Strictly speaking, the relative does not agree with the *antecedent*, but with the same word expressed or understood *after* the relative, with which, like the adjective, it agrees in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, as well as person; thus, *diem dīcunt*, *quā* (*diē*), etc., "they appoint a day, on which (day)," etc. Hence, in connecting the antecedent and relative clause, the following variety of usage occurs, viz.:

686.—1st. The word to which the relative refers is commonly ***expressed*** in the ***antecedent*** clause, and not with the relative; as, *Vir sapit quī pauca loquitur*, "He is a wise *man*, *who* speaks little."

687.—2d. It is often elegantly ***omitted*** in the ***antecedent*** clause, and expressed with the relative, especially when the relative clause stands first; as, *In quem prīmum ēgressī sunt locum, Trōja vocātur*, i. e., *locus in quem*, etc., "The place on which they landed first is called Troy."

688.—3d. Sometimes, when greater precision is required, it is ***expressed in both;*** as, *Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus exīre possent*, "There were in all two roads, by which (roads) they could go out." Instead of the first substantive, the relative sometimes takes with it a substantive *explanatory* of the first; as, *Cum vēnissem ad Amānum, quī mons*—, "When I had come to Amanus, which mountain—."

689.—4th. When the reference is of a general nature, and there is no danger of obscurity, the word to which the relative refers is ***understood in both*** clauses; as, *sunt quōs juvat collēgisse*, i. e., *sunt* (*hominēs*) *quōs* (*hominēs*) *juvat*, etc., "There are (men) whose joy it is to gather, etc."

690.—*Note.*—The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a ***distinctive*** pronoun in the clause following; as, *de quā rē audīvi, eam tibi narrābo*, "I will tell you the matter about which I heard." The distinctive has sometimes the force of **tālis**, "such;" and the relative, that of the corresponding *quālis*, "as;"—the two implying a sort of comparison; as, *Itaque ego is sum in illum, quem tū mē esse vīs*, "Therefore I am towards him *such as* you wish me to be."—CIC.

691.—To this construction may be referred such expressions as *quī tuus est amor*, equivalent to, *prō eō amōre quī tuus est amor*, "such is your

love," literally, "in accordance with such love as yours is;" where the distinctive *is*, *ea*, *id*, in the sense of "such," is supplied with the antecedent understood.

692.—*Obs.* 2. *a.* The ***antecedent*** is sometimes ***implied*** in a preceding word; as, *omnēs laudāre fortūnās meās quī habērem*, etc., "all were praising *my* fortune *who* had," etc., *i. e.*, *fortūnās meī quī;* the possessive *meās* being equivalent to the genitive of *ego*. (cf. 628.) *Conjūrāvēre paucī contrā rempublicam, dē quā* (scil. *conjūrātiōne*, implied in *conjūrāvēre*) *quam brevissimē potero dīcam*, "A few entered into a conspiracy against the republic, concerning which I will speak as shortly as I can."

693.—*b.* The relative sometimes refers, not to a particular word, but to the whole antecedent proposition, or the idea expressed by it, in which case it takes the neuter gender; as, *Tū amās virtūtem, quod* (i. e., *quam rem*) *valdē laudo*, "You love virtue, and in this I highly praise you."

694.—*Obs.* 3. When a relative refers to one or two nouns denoting the same object, but of ***different genders,*** it may agree with either; as, *Flūmen est Arar quod*, etc. Here *quod* agrees with *flūmen*. *Ad flūmen Ossum perventum est, quī*, etc. Here *quī* agrees with *Ossum*.

695.—*Obs.* 4. The relative sometimes agrees with a ***complement*** (666) instead of its antecedent; as, *Thēbae ipsae quod Boeōtiae caput est*, "Thebes which is the capital of Boeotia."—Liv.

696.—*Obs.* 5. An ***adjective*** which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, agreeing with the relative. This is the case, especially, if the adjective be a numeral, a comparative, or a superlative; as, *inter jocōs, quōs inconditōs jaciunt*, for *jocōs inconditōs quōs*, etc., "amidst the rude jests which they utter;"—*nocte, quam in terrīs ultimam ēgit*, for *nocte ultimā, quam*, etc., "the last night which he spent upon earth."

697.—*Obs.* 6. When a relative refers to ***two or more antecedents*** taken together, it agrees with them in gender and number, in all respects as the adjective does with several substantives, as stated, 652–655. But,

If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative plural takes the first person rather than the second, and the second person rather than the third. (647.)

698.—*Exc.* 1. The relative, sometimes, takes the ***gender and number,*** not of the antecedent noun, but of some one synonymous with it or implied in it; as, *Daret ut catēnīs fātāle monstrum quae*, "That he might consign to bonds the fatal monster, who—." The antecedent is *monstrum*, but *quae* agrees with *Cleopatra*, the monster intended. This is a case of ***construction according to sense.*** (678.)

699.—*Obs.* 7. The relatives **quīcunque** and **quisquis** are sometimes used instead of *quī*, when a general or indefinite term is expressed or

understood with the antecedent; as, *quae sānārī poterunt, quācunque ratiōne sānābō*, equivalent to *omnī ratiōne quācunque* (*possum*), "what can be cured, I will cure by every means I can."

700.—This construction corresponds to that of the Greek ὅστις (Gr. Gram., § 135, 7), and, like it, these relatives often represent ***two cases;*** as, *Quidquid tetigerat aurum fīēbat*, "Whatever he touched turned to gold." Here *quidquid* stands both as the nominative to *fīēbat* and the accusative after *tetigerat*, and is equivalent to *omne quod tetigerat*, etc.

701.—*Obs.* 8. In the beginning of a sentence, or clause connected with what precedes, not by the relative itself, but by *quum* (*cum*), *sī*, *autem*, *quoniam*, or other conjunctive term expressed or understood, the relative assumes the character of a ***personal or demonstrative pronoun,*** and, as such, refers to some word, clause, or circumstance, already expressed; thus—

1st. When the relative thus used stands *instead* of its noun, it is equivalent to *et ille*, *et hic*, *et is*, *et illi*, etc., and may be rendered "and he," "and she," "and they," etc.; as, *quī quum admitteret*, "and when *he* admitted;"—*ad quem quum vēnissent*, "and when they had come to *him*."

2d. When the relative thus used stands *with* its substantive, it is to be translated, as a demonstrative, by *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, commonly preceded by *and;* as, *quī lēgātī quum missī essent*, "and *when these ambassadors* had been sent;"—*ad quārum initium silvārum quum Caesar pervēnisset*, "and when Caesar had come to the beginning of *these woods*."

702.—*Quod* ***progressive*** is often used at the beginning of a sentence introduced by *sī*, *nisi*, &c., or even *utinam*, to mark a transition or progression of thought. It may then be rendered "but," "nay," "and," *quod sī jam sint id adeptī* "nay, supposing they have already gained this." *Quod* thus used is perhaps governed by *propter* "on account of," or *ad*, "in regard to," understood.

CASE OF THE RELATIVE.

703.—*Obs.* 9. The ***relative,*** in respect of ***case,*** is always to be considered as a noun, and is subject to the rules which determine the case of nouns.

704.—*Exc.* 2. The relative, after the manner of the Greek, is sometimes ***attracted*** into the case of its antecedent; as, *Raptim quibus quisque poterat ēlātis*, for (*iīs*) QUAE *quisque*, etc., "*Those things which* each one could, being hastily snatched up."

705.—*Exc.* 3. The antecedent is sometimes inserted in agreement with the relative, and must be supplied in a ***different case*** in its own clause; as, *Urbem quam statuo vestra est*, for *urbs quam statuo*, etc., "*The city which* I am building is yours."

These are Greek constructions seldom used by Latin writers. See Greek Gr., 413, 414. B. & K. Greek Gr., 937, 938.

706.—*Obs.* 10. The relative adjectives **quot, quantus, quālis,** used in comparisons, and commonly rendered "as," are often construed in a manner similar to the relative (286), having their redditives, or corresponding adjectives, **tot, tantus, tālis,** expressed or understood in the antecedent clause; as, *Tantae multitūdinis quantam capit urbs*, "Of *as great* a multitude *as* the city contains;" *Faciēs* (*tālis*), *quālem decet esse sorōrum*, "The features, *such as* those of sisters ought to be."—Virg.

The noun, as well as the redditive, is very often omitted in the antecedent clause, and expressed in the relative clause; as, *Quantā potuit celeritāte cucurrit*, changed to the common form, is *Tantā celeritāte, quantā potuit, cucurrit*, "He ran with *as much* speed *as* he could." In this way, are to be explained such clauses as *Quantum importūnitātis habent*, "Such arrogance have they," in full form, *Prō tantō importūnitātis quantum habent.*

707.—*Note.*—Instead of the relative adjectives *quot*, *quantus*, *quālis*, the conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, and the relatives *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, in the sense of "as," are sometimes used in comparative expressions; as, *Honōs tālī populī Rōmānī voluntāte, paucīs est dēlātus ac mihi*, "Office has been conferred on few with such good will of the Roman people as on me."—Cic.

708.—*Exc.* 4. Instead of the ordinary construction, the relative adjective, with its noun, is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative pronoun understood, as in the following sentence: *Sī hominibus bonārum rērum tanta cūra esset, quantō studiō petunt*, "If men had as much care for good things as they have zeal in their search," Sall., Jug., instead of *quantum est studium quō aliēna petunt*:—unless this be a case of anacoluthon, the latter part of the sentence being expressed as if the former had been, *Sī hominēs bonās rēs peterent, quantō studiō*, etc., i. e., *tantō studiō quantō*, etc. (706.) Compare also 688.

GOVERNMENT.

709.—1. ***Government*** is the power which one word has over another depending upon it, requiring it to be put in a certain *case*, *mood*, or *tense*.

2. The words subject to government are ***nouns*** and ***verbs.***

3. The words governing or affecting these in their case, mood, or tense, are *nouns*, *adjectives*, *pronouns*, *verbs*, and *words indeclinable.*

4. To the Syntax of nouns belongs all that part of Syntax relating to the government of *case.* Every thing else in government belongs to the Syntax of the verb.

SYNTAX OF THE NOUN.

710.—In this part of Grammar, under the term *noun* or *substantive*, is comprehended every thing used as such; namely, nouns, personal pronouns, adjective pronouns used personally, adjectives without substantives, gerunds, together with infinitives, and substantive clauses used as nouns.

The construction of the oblique cases depends, in general, upon the particular ideas expressed by the cases themselves, as they are mentioned hereafter, under each case.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

711.—1. The accusative, in Latin, is used to express the ***immediate object*** of a transitive active verb—or, in other words, that on which its action is exerted.

2. It is used to express the object to which something tends or relates, in which sense it is often governed by a preposition, expressed or understood.

ACCUSATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

712.—Rule VIII. ***Direct object.***—A ***transitive*** verb, whether active or deponent, governs the accusative; as,

Amā Deum,	Love God.
Reverēre parentēs,	Reverence your parents.

Note.—The object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes the subject of the same verb used passively (263). Thus, *Deum amo*, "I love God," may become in the passive,

Deus amātur,	God is loved.

713.—Rule IX. ***Cognate accusative.***—An ***intransitive*** verb may govern a noun of ***kindred*** signification, in the accusative; as,

Pugnāre pugnam,	To fight a battle.

714.—Explanation.—These rules apply to all verbs which have an accusative as their immediate object; and that accusative may be any thing used substantively, whether it be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or *clause of a sentence.*

715.—*Obs.* 1. ***Accusative as complement.***—Verbs signifying to *name*, *choose*, *reckon*, *constitute*, and the like, besides the accusative of the object, take also the accusative of the *name*, *office*, *character*, etc., ascribed to it; as, *urbem Rōmam vocāvit*, "he called the city *Rome*." All such verbs, in the passive, have the same case after as before them. (667.)

716.—*Obs.* 2. Verbs commonly ***intransitive,*** are sometimes used in a ***transitive sense,*** and are therefore followed by an accusative under Rule VIII.; thus,

Intransitive.	Transitive.
Tremit, he trembles.	*Tremit Jūnōnem*, he trembles at Juno.
Sitio, I thirst.	*Sitio honōrēs*, I thirst for honors.
Rīdet, he laughs.	*Dolōrem rīdet*, he laughs at pain.
Redolet, he smells.	*Vīnum redolet*, he smells of wine.

717.—*Obs.* 3. The accusative, after some intransitive verbs, seems to depend on a ***preposition understood;*** as, *Stygiās jūrāvimus undās*, "We swore by the Stygian waves;" *Nāvigat aequor*, "He sails over the sea."—Virg.

The accusative with intransitive verbs is most common with the ***neuters*** *id*, *quid*, *aliquid*, *quicquid*, *nihil*, *idem*, *illud*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *hoc*, *multa*, *alia*, *pauca*, etc.; as, *idem glōriārī*, "to make the same boast" *utrumque laetor*, "I rejoice at both things;" *quaerēbat quid in bellō possent* "he inquired what power they had in war.

718.—*Obs.* 4. The accusative, after many verbs, depends on a ***preposition*** with which they are compounded. This is the case—

1st. With ***intransitive verbs;*** as, *Gentes quae mare illud adjacent*, "The nations which *border upon that sea*." So, *ineunt praelium*, "they enter the battle;" *transcurrere mare*, "to speed across the sea;" etc. Thus compounded, many verbs become transitive in sense, and so govern the accusative by Rule VIII.

2d. With ***transitive verbs,*** in which case two accusatives follow—one governed by the verb, and another by the preposition; as, *Omnem equitātum pontem transdūcit*, "*He leads* all the cavalry *over the bridge;*"—*Hellēspontum cōpiās trājecit*, "He threw his troops across the Hellespont."

719.—*Obs.* 5. Some ***intransitive*** verbs, compounded with **con**, **ex**, **prae**, become transitive and govern the ***accusative;*** as, *nēminem convēnī*, "I have met no one;" *modum excēdere*, "to exceed the limit;" *Gallī caeterōs mortālīs praestant*, "The Gauls surpass the rest of men."

720.—*Obs.* 6. *a.* The ***accusative*** after a transitive verb, especially if a reflexive pronoun, or something indefinite or easily supplied, is sometimes ***understood;*** as, *tum prōra āvertit*, scil. *sē*, "the prow turns aside;" *faciam vitulā*, scil. *sacra*, "I will offer (sacrifice) with a heifer."

b. Sometimes the ***verb*** which governs the accusative is ***omitted,*** especially in rapid or animated discourse; thus, the interrogative *quid* often stands alone for *quid ais? quid censēs?* or the like. So, also, *quid vērō? quid igitur? quid ergō? quid enim? Quid, quod*, commonly rendered "nay," "nay even," "but now," "moreover," may be resolved thus, *Quid dīcam de eō quod.* With *quid multa? quid plūra? nē multa, nē plura*, scil. *verba*, supply *dīcam;* as, *Quid dīcam multa (verba)?*

721.—*Obs.* 7. The ***infinitive mood,*** or part of a sentence, is often used as the object of a transitive verb (1119); as,

Dā mihi fallere,	Give me to escape notice.
Cupio mē esse clēmentem,	I desire to be gentle.
Statuērunt ut nāvēs conscenderent,	They determined that they would embark.

722.—*Note.*—***Prolepsis.***—In such constructions, the subject of the clause is sometimes, by a Greek idiom, put in the accusative as the object of the verb; as, *Nōstī Marcellum, quam tardus sit;* instead of *Nōstī quam tardus Marcellus sit*, "You know how slow Marcellus is." This is called *prolepsis* or *anticipation.* Gr. Gram., 571. B. & K. Gr. Gram. 1025, *Obs.* 4.

723.—*Obs.* 8. A few cases occur in which the accusative is put after a ***noun derived from a verb,*** or the verbal adjectives in **bundus;** as, *Quid tibi hūc receptio ad tē est meum virum?* "Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you?"—Plaut. *Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem*, "Why have you any care for this thing?"—Id. *Vītābundus castra*, "Avoiding the camp."—Liv.

724.—*Obs.* 9. Many verbs considered transitive in Latin, are intransitive in English, and must have a preposition supplied in translating; as, *Ut cavēret me*, "That he should beware of me." On the other hand, many intransitive verbs in Latin, *i. e.*, verbs which do not take an accusative after them, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Fortūna favet fortibus*, "Fortune favors the brave."

725.—Rule X. ***Accusative in Exclamations.***—The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection; as,

O vim maximam errōris,	O the enormous power of error!
Prō deōrum fidem,	In the name of the gods!
En quătuor ārăs,	Lo four altars!

726.—*Obs.* 1. But **ēn** and **ecce**, "lo," are quite often found with the ***nominative;*** as, *ecce tuae līterae* (sc. *sunt*) *dē Varrōne*, "lo your letter comes about Varro."—Cic.

727.—*Obs.* 2. **Hei** and **vae** are construed with the ***dative;*** as, *vae victīs*, "woe to the conquered."—Liv. *Hei miserō mihi*, "woe to wretched me."—Ter.

728.—Rule XI. ***Accusative of nearer definition.***—The accusative is used, especially by the poets, after verbs and adjectives to indicate the ***part*** of the subject specially ***affected;*** as,

Equus tremit artūs,	The horse trembles in its limbs.
Hannibal adversum femur ictus,	H. wounded in the front of the thigh.

729.—Explanation.—The verbs and adjectives referred to in the Rule are all ***static*** words, *i. e.*, they describe a state, and the accusative tells the part of the subject which is chiefly in the state described. This is a construction imitated from the Greek, and is often called the ***Greek accusative.***

730.—*Obs.* 1. In prose the ablative is the case generally used for such nearer definition: *pedibus aeger*, "diseased in the feet." See 889.

731.—*Obs.* 2. Under this Rule may be placed the so-called ***adverbial accusative*** of such words as *partem*, *vicem*, *secus*, etc.; as *maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt*, "they live for the most part on milk and their cattle;" *tuam vicem saepe doleo*, "I often grieve on your account;" *līberōrum capitum virīle secus ad decem millia capta*, "ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken." So, *id aetatem*, of that age," *id genus*, "of that kind," for *ējus aetātis*, *ējus generis*.

732.—Rule XII. ***Reflective Accusative.***—Sometimes passive verbs are used in a ***middle***

(or reflective) sense, and govern the accusative; as,

Inūtile ferrum cingitur, He girds on (himself) his useless sword.

733.—EXPLANATION.—This construction occurs with verbs of *clothing*, *unclothing*, etc.; such as, *induo*, *exuo*, etc. In the passive they are sometimes used to imply that a person *clothes* or *unclothes himself;* and when used in this reflective sense they may take an accusative of the thing put on or off: *Androgeī geleam induitur*, "He puts on the helmet of Androgeos;" but also the ablative, *Spoliīs raptīs induitur*, "He is clad in plundered spoils."—VIRG.

VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES.

734.—RULE XIII. *Accusative of Person and Thing.*—Verbs of ***asking, teaching,*** and ***concealing,*** govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus tē pācem,	We beg peace of thee.
Docuit mē grammaticam,	He taught me grammar.
Iter omnēs cēlat,	He conceals his road from all.

735.—EXPLANATION.—The reason of this Rule is, that most verbs under it, admit either of the nouns after them, as their immediate object. In the ***passive construction*** the accusative of the person becomes the nominative: *Prīmus rogātus est sententiam*, "He was first asked his opinion."

OBSERVATIONS.

736.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are *rogo*, *ōro*, *exōro*, *obsecro*, *precor*, *posco*, *reposco*, *flāgito*, etc.; of teaching: *doceo*, *ēdoceo*, *dēdoceo*, and rarely *ērudio*. For two accusatives after verbs of naming, choosing, etc., see 715.

737.—*Obs.* 2. Verbs of asking, instead of the accusative of the person, often take the ***ablative*** with ab or ex; as, *Veniam ōrēmus ab ipsō*, "Let us beg favor of himself." So, also, instead of the accusative of the thing, many verbs, both of asking and teaching, sometimes take the ablative with dē; as, *Dē itinere hostium Senātum ēdocet*, "He informs the Senate of the march of the enemy."—SALL.

738.—*Obs.* 3. Some verbs of asking and teaching are never followed by two accusatives, but by the ablative of the person, with a preposition; such as, *exigo*, *peto*, *quaero*: *pācem ā tē petimus*, "we beg peace of you;" and the

following verbs of teaching, viz.: *imbuo*, *instituo*, *instruo*, and some others, are followed by the ablative of the thing, sometimes with, and sometimes without, a preposition; and sometimes they are otherwise construed.

739.—*Obs.* 4. Many other transitive active verbs, frequently, besides the accusative of a person, take also an accusative of *nihil*, or of the neuter pronouns, *hoc*, *id*, *quid*, or of adjectives of quantity; as, *Fabius ea mē monuit*, Cic.; *Nec tē id consulo*, Id. See 717.

Accusative of ***Extent of Time and Space,*** see 950, 958.

Accusative of ***Motion Towards,*** see 938, 943, 947.

Accusative after ***Prepositions,*** see 981, 987.

Accusative as ***Subject of an Infinitive,*** see 1135.

ACCUSATIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS.

740.—Rule XIV. **Decet, dēlectat, juvat,** and **oportet,** govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

Dēlectat mē studēre,	It delights me to study.
Nōn decet tē rixārī,	It does not become you to scold.

741.—*Obs.* 1. These verbs are sometimes used ***personally***; as, *Parvum parva decent*, "Small things become a small man."—Hor. *Decet* sometimes governs the dative; as, *Ita nōbīs decet.*—Ter.

742.—*Obs.* 2. **Oportet,** instead of the infinitive, elegantly takes the ***subjunctive*** with *ut*, "that," understood; as, *Sibi* (*ut*) *quisque consulat oportet*, "It is proper that each should take thought for himself."—Cic.

743.—*Obs.* 3. **Fallit, fugit, praeterit, latet,** when used impersonally, are construed with the accusative and infinitive; as, *Fūgit mē ad tē scrībere*, "It escaped me to write to you."—Cic.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE GENITIVE.

744.—The ***Genitive,*** as its name imports, with the meaning of the word, connects the idea of ***origin,*** and hence that of ***property or possession.*** It is used, in general, to ***limit the signification*** of another word with which it is joined, and receives various names descriptive of the mode in which the limitation is effected. Thus:

745.—(1.) The ***subjective*** genitive (like the subject of a verb) tells the source from which the limited noun comes: *jussū rēgis* (like *rēx jubet*), "by order of the king."

746.—(2.) The ***objective*** genitive (like the object of a verb) tells that towards which the limited noun is directed: *amor Deī* (like *amo Deum*) "love of God."

747.—(3.) The ***possessive*** genitive tells that to which the limited noun belongs; *domus Caesaris*, "Caesar's house."

748.—(4.) The ***partitive*** genitive tells the whole of which the limited noun is a part: *modius trīticī*, "a peck of wheat."

749.—(5.) The ***descriptive*** genitive tells the character, quality, or quantity of the limited noun: *vir maximī corporis*, "a man of very great stature."

750.—The Genitive is said to be *governed* by the word so limited, *i. e.*, the word limited requires the word limiting it to be put in the Genitive case.

The Genitive is governed by *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbs;* and also is used to express circumstances of *quantity* or *degree.*

THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY NOUNS.

751. Rule XV.—A substantive that ***limits the signification*** of another, must be put in the ***genitive*** case; as,

Amor glōriae,	The love of glory.	***(Objective.)***
Lēx nātūrae,	The law of nature.	***(Subjective.)***

752.—Explanation.—Under this rule, the two substantives must be of ***different signification,*** and the one used to limit the meaning of the other. Thus, in the first example, *amor*, alone, means "love," in general, but the term *glōriae*, joined with it, restricts its meaning here to a particular object, "glory," and so of other examples.

N. B.—When a noun is limited by another of the *same signification*, it is put in the same case by Rule I., except in the rare instances mentioned in 631.

OBSERVATIONS.

753.—*Obs.* 1. Sometimes the meaning of the limited and the limiting noun is such, that the genitive may be either ***subjective or objective;*** thus, when the expression *amor Deī* means the love which God has to us, *Deī* is *subjective;* but when it means the love which we have to God, *Deī* is *objective*. In such cases, the sense in which the genitive is used must be determined by the context.

754.—*Obs.* 2. Hence it often happens that a noun governs two substantives, one of which limits it ***subjectively,*** and the other ***objectively;*** as, *Agamemnonis bellī glōria*, "Agamemnon's glory in war." —Nep. Here, *Agamemnonis* limits *glōria* subjectively, and *bellī* limits it objectively. So, *Helvētiōrum injūriae populī Rōmānī*, "The wrongs done by the Helvetians to the Roman people."—Caes.

755.—*Obs.* 3. The governing noun is often ***omitted,*** but only, however, when the expression itself readily suggests the noun to be supplied; as, *Ad Diānae*, sc. *aedem*, "To Diana's (temple)."

756.—*Obs.* 4. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun governed by the noun, it is more common to use the possessive adjective pronoun agreeing with it; as, *meus pater*, rather than *pater meī*. So, also, instead of the genitive of a noun, a possessive adjective is sometimes used; as, *causa rēgia*, for *rēgis causa*, "the king's cause;" *herīlis fīlius*, for *fīlius herī*, "the master's son."

757.—Rule XVI. A substantive added to another, to express a property or quality belonging to it, is put in the genitive or ablative (***Descriptive***); as,

Vir summae prūdentiae, or *summā prūdentiā*,	A man of great wisdom.
Puer probae indolis, or *probā indole*,	A boy of a good disposition.

758.—Explanation.—The limiting substantive, also, has ***always an adjective*** joined with it, as in the preceding examples, except in a few special expressions; such as, *homo nihilī*, "a man of no worth;" and other words of indefinite value: *via triduī*, "a journey of three days." To express "a man of talent," we must not say *homo ingeniī*, but *homo ingeniōsus;* though we might say *homo magnī ingeniī*.

759.—*Obs.* 5. The ***descriptive genitive*** is said to express *a more inherent and abiding* quality than the descriptive ablative. But the distinction is not clearly marked. In some phrases the genitive only is used; as, *vir īmī subselliī*, "a man of the lowest station."

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

760.—RULE XVII. An adjective in the neuter gender, without a substantive, governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecūniae,	Much money.	***(Partitive.)***
Id negōtii,	That business.	***(Partitive.)***

761.—EXPLANATION.—Under this Rule, the adjective, without a substantive expressed, is regarded as a substantive, and so, capable of being limited by the genitive, as under Rule XV. (751.)

762.—*Obs.* 6. The adjectives thus used have a partitive character, and are generally such as signify quantity: *multum, plūs, plūrimum, tantum, quantum*; as, *tantum speī*, "so much (of) hope;"—the pronouns *hoc, id, illud, istud, quod, quid*, with its compounds; as, *id temporis*, "that (of) time;" *quid mulieris*, "what kind of woman;"—also, *summum, ultimum, extrēmum, dīmidium, medium, aliud*, etc. To these may be added *nihil*, "nothing," which is always a substantive; and the adverbs *satis, parum, abunde, affatim*, and sometimes *largiter*, in a substantive sense; as, *satis ēloquentiae*, "enough (of) eloquence;" *sapientiae parum*, "little (of) wisdom." (771 and 1008.)

This Rule applies also to several neuter adjectives in the ***plural,*** used in a partitive sense; as, *angusta viārum*, "the narrow parts of the road;" *opāca locōrum*, "dark places," etc.

Note.—Such adjectives, followed by a genitive, are always either in the nominative or accusative; and, when in the accusative, are not dependent on a preposition.

763.—*Obs.* 7. **Quod** and **quicquid**, followed by a genitive, include the idea of universality; as, *quod agri*, "what of land," *i. e.*, "all the land;" *quicquid cīvium*, "whatever of citizens," *i. e.*, "all the citizens;" *quicquid deōrum*, "all the gods."

764.—*Obs.* 8. **Opus** and **usus**, signifying "need," sometimes govern the genitive; as, *Argentī opus fuit*, "There was need of money."—LIV. *Procēmiī non semper ūsus est*, "There is not always need of an introduction."—QUINCT. In general, these words govern the ablative. (923.)

GENITIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

765.—RULE XVIII. ***Verbal adjectives,*** or such as imply an operation of mind, govern the genitive; as—

Avidus glōriae,	Desirous of glory.	(*Objective.*)
Ignārus fraudis,	Ignorant of fraud.	(*Objective.*)
Memor beneficiōrum,	Mindful of favors.	(*Objective.*)

766.—EXPLANATION.—The genitive, in this construction, as in 751, is used to limit the application of the general term, or adjective, by which it is governed, and may be rendered by *of*, or, *in respect of*, prefixed; thus, in the first example, *avidus* expresses the possession of *desire* generally; the genitive *glōriae* limits it to a certain object, "glory;" and so of the other examples.

OBSERVATIONS.

767.—*Obs.* 1. Adjectives governing the genitive under this Rule, are:

1st. ***Verbals in AX***; as, *capāx*, *edāx*, *tenāx*, etc.; as, *capāx magnae urbis*, "able to contain a large city."

2d. ***Participles in* NS and TUS**; as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *patiens*, *impatiens*, *sitiens*, *colens*, *fugiens*, *intelligens*, *metuens*, *temperans*; as, *amans patriae*, "loving (fond of) his country;" *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *insuētus*, *insolitus*; as, *insuētus labōris*, "unused to labor," etc.

3d. Adjectives denoting various affections of the mind; such as, 1. ***Desire*** and ***Disgust***; as, *avārus*, *avidus*, *cupidus*, *studiōsus*, etc., with many other verbals in *idus* and *ōsus*; as, *avidus laudis*, "greedy of praise." 2. ***Knowledge*** and ***Ignorance***; as, *callidus*, *certus*, *conscius*, *gnārus*, *perītus*, *prūdens*, etc.—*ignārus*, *incertus*, *inscius*, *imprūdens*, *imperītus*, *rudis*; as, *perītus bellī*, "skilled in war," etc. 3. ***Memory*** or ***Forgetfulness***; as, *memor*, *immemor*; as, *memor beneficiī*, "mindful of kindness," etc. 4. ***Care*** and ***Negligence***; as, *anxius*, *cūriōsus*, *sollicitus*, *prōvidus*, *diligens*;—*incūriōsus*, *sēcūrus*, *negligens*; as, *sēcūrus salūtis*, "careless of safety," etc. 5. ***Fear*** and ***Confidence***; as, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trepidus*;—*impavidus*, *interritus*; as, *pavidus maris*, "fearful of the sea," etc. 6. ***Guilt*** and ***Innocence***; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*;—*innoxius*, *innocens*, *insons*; as, *noxius conjūrātiōnis*, "guilty of conspiracy," etc.

768.—*Obs.* 2. Verbals in **NS** are used both as adjectives and participles, but usually with some difference of meaning; as, *patiens algōris*, "capable of bearing cold;" *patiens algōrem*, "actually bearing cold;" *amans virtūtis*, "loving virtue,"—spoken of the disposition; *amans virtūtem*, "loving virtue,"—spoken of the act. So, also, *doctus grammaticae*, "skilled in grammar;" *doctus grammaticam*, "one who has studied grammar."

769.—*Obs.* 3. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; so that, instead of the genitive, they sometimes take after them—

1st. An ***infinitive*** clause; as, *Certus īre*, "determined to go."—Ovid.

2d. An ***accusative*** with a preposition; as, *ad fraudem callidus*, "cunning in fraud;" *potens in rēs bellicōsās*, "powerful in war," etc.

3d. An ***ablative*** with a preposition; as, *anxius dē fāmā*, "anxious about reputation;" *super scelere suspectus*, "suspected of crime," etc.

4th. An ***ablative*** without a preposition; as, *arte rudis*, "rude in art." (889.)

770.—*Obs.* 4. Some adjectives usually governing the dative, sometimes govern the genitive; such as, *similis*, *dissimilis*, etc. See 863.

771.—Rule XIX. ***Partitives*** and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive (***Partitive***); as,

Aliquis philosophōrum,	Some one of the philosophers.
Senior frātrum,	The elder of the brothers.
Doctissimus Rōmānōrum,	The most learned of the Romans.
Quis nostrûm?	Which of us?
Ūna mūsārum,	One of the muses.
Octāvus sapientium,	The eighth of the wise men.

772.—Explanation.—A ***partitive*** is a word which signifies a part of any number of persons or things, in contradistinction to the whole. A ***word placed partitively*** is one which, though it does not signify a *part*, yet is sometimes used to *distinguish* a part from the whole; as, *expedītī mīlitum*, "the light armed (of the) soldiers." The partitive, when an adjective, takes the gender of the whole, and governs it in the genitive plural; or, if a collective noun, in the genitive singular; and in this case, the partitive takes the gender of the noun understood: as, *doctissimus suae aetātis*, "the most learned man of his age."

773.—*Obs.* 5. The ***comparative*** with the genitive denotes one of two; the ***superlative*** denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *mājor frātrum*, "the older of two brothers:" *maximus frātrum*, "the eldest of (three or more) brothers." So also, *uter*, *alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis*, *alius*, and *nullus*, to more than two; as, *uter nostrûm?* "which of us (two)?" *quis nostrûm?* "which of us (three or more)?" *Nostrûm* and *vestrûm* are used after partitives, not *nostrī* and *vestrī*.

774.—*Obs.* 6. The partitive is sometimes ***understood;*** as, *Fīēs nōbilium tū quoque fontium* (sc. *ūnus*), "Thou shalt be one of the famous fountains."—Hor.

775.—*Obs.* 7. Instead of the genitive after the partitives, the ablative is often found governed by **dē, ē, ex,** or **in**; or the accusative with **inter** or **ante**; as, *ūnus ē Stoicīs*, "one of the Stoics;" *ante omnēs pulcherrimus*, "fairest before (of) all;" *inter rēgēs opulentissimus*, "richest among kings."

776.—Rule XX.—Adjectives of ***plenty*** or ***want*** govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plēnus irae, or *irā*,	Full of anger (***objective***).
Inops ratiōnis, or *ratiōne*,	Void of reason (***objective***).

Explanation.—As in Rule XV., the adjective here is a general term, but limited in its application by the genitive following it. For the ablative, see (907).

777.—*Obs.* 8. Among adjectives denoting ***plenty*** or ***want***, a considerable variety of construction is found.

a. Some govern the ***genitive only;*** as, *exsors*, *impos*, *impotens*, *irritus*, *līberālis*, etc.

b. Some govern the ***ablative only;*** as, *beātus*, *mutilus*, *turgidus*.

c. Some govern the ***genitive more frequently;*** as, *compos*, *consors*, *egēnus*, *exhaeres*, *expers*, *fertilis*, *indigus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *prōdigus*, *sterilis*, *prosper*, *insatiātus*, *insatiābilis*.

d. Some govern the ***ablative more frequently;*** as, *abundans*, *aliēnus*, *cassus*, *extorris*, *firmus*, *foetus*, *frequens*, *gravis*, *gravidus*, *jējūnus*, *infirmus*, *līber*, *locuplēs*, *laetus*, *mactus*, *nūdus*, *onustus*, *orbus*, *pollens*, *satiātus*, *tenuis*, *truncus*, *viduus*.

e. Some govern the ***genitive*** or ***ablative*** indifferently; as, *cōpiōsus*, *dīves*, *fēcundus*, *ferax*, *immūnis*, *inānis*, *inops*, *largus*, *modicus*, *immodicus*, *nimius*, *opulentus*, *plēnus*, *potens*, *pūrus*, *refertus*, *satur*, *vacuus*, *über*.

778.—*Obs.* 9. Many of these adjectives are sometimes limited by a ***preposition*** and its case; as, *Locus cōpiōsus ā frūmentō*, "A place well stored with corn."—Cic. *Ab omnī rē parātus*, "Prepared with every thing."—Id. *Parcus in victū*, "Frugal in life."—Plin.

779.—*Obs.* 10. In such expressions as *anxius animī*, *aeger animī*, anxious, worn out, in mind, *integer aevī*, sound (in respect) of age, etc., which occur in the poets and some prose writers, it is probable that the so-called genitives are really ***locatives.*** (See 934.)

THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

780.—Rule XXI. Sum governs the genitive of a person or thing to which its subject belongs as a *possession, property,* or *duty;* as,

Est rēgis,	It belongs to the king (*possessive*).
Hominis est errāre,	It belongs to a man to err (*possessive*).

Explanation.—The genitive in this construction may be supposed to be governed by the adjective *proprius*, or the substantive *officium*, *mūnus*, *rēs*, *opus*, etc., understood. (When it is expressed, the genitive is governed by it according to Rule XV., 751.) The verb is in the third person,—often has an infinitive or clause for its nominative, and may be rendered in any way by which the sense is expressed; such as, *it belongs to;*—*it is the property—the part—the duty—the peculiarity—the character of*, etc. The following are examples:

Insipientis est dīcere, nōn putārem,	It is the part of a fool to say, "I did not think."
Mīlitum est suō ducī pārēre,	It is the duty of soldiers to obey their leader.
Laudāre sē vānī est,	It is the mark of a vain man to praise himself.

781.—*Obs.* 1. Sometimes the genitive, in the predicate of a sentence, is governed by the preceding word repeated after the verb; as, *Hic liber est* (*liber*) *frātris*, "This book is the boy's (book)." Sometimes the genitive depends on some general word understood, but easily supplied in the mind. The same construction is sometimes used after *fīo*, and some other verbs; as, *Asia Rōmānōrum facta est*, sc. *prōvincia*, "Asia became (a possession or province) of the Romans."

782.—*Obs.* 2. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the nominative ***neuter of the possessive*** is commonly used, agreeing with *officium*, *mūnus*, etc., understood; as, *tuum est*, "it is your duty," instead of *tuī*; *meum est*, "it is my part," instead of *meī*. So, also, instead of a genitive of a noun, an adjective derived from it may be used; as, *hūmānum est*, "it belongs to man, it is human;" *rēgium est*, "it is the part of a king." But with adjectives with consonant stems (193) the genitive is regularly used: *sapientis est* (not *sapiens est*), "it is (a mark) of a wise man."

783.—Rule XXII. Misereor, miseresco, and satago, govern the genitive; as,

Miserēre cīvium tuōrum,	Pity your countrymen (***objective***).
Satagit rērum,	He is busy with affairs (***partitive***).

784.—Explanation.—The genitive, after verbs of "pity," is governed directly by the verb, and expresses, as in Greek, the cause or object of the feeling which the verb denotes. See Gr. Gram. 499. B. & K. Gr. Gram. 1001. The genitive after *satago* (lit. "do enough"), is governed partitively by *sat.* (771.)

785.—*Obs.* 3. Many other verbs denoting some affection of the mind are sometimes followed by a genitive, denoting that with regard to which or on account of which, the affection exists. These are *ango, dēcipior, discrucior, fastīdio, mīror, pendeo, vereor*, etc. Thus, *Absurdē facis quī angās tē animī*, "You act absurdly in distressing yourself in mind."—Plaut. They follow the analogy of corresponding adjectives. (779.) But they have commonly a different construction. (889.)

786.—*Obs.* 4. Several verbs, especially among the poets, are found with the genitive, in imitation of the Greek construction (Gr. Gram., 507. B. & K. Gr. Gr. 1005, 1007.) These are *abstineo, dēsino, dēsisto, quiesco, regno potior;* also, *adipiscor, frustror, laudo, lībero, levo, participo, prohibeo;* thus, *Abstinēto īrārum*, "Abstain from anger."—Hor. *Dēsine querēlārum*, "Cease from complaints."—Id. *Regnāvit populōrum*, "He reigned over tribes."—Id.

Note.—All these verbs, however, in Obs. 3 and 4, have, for the most part, a different construction, being followed sometimes, as active transitive verbs, by the accusative, and more frequently by the accusative or ablative with a preposition.

787.—*Obs.* 5. Some verbs of plenty and want take the genitive, like adjectives (776) *virtūs exercitātiōnis indiget*, "virtue needs exercise."

788.—Rule XXIII. *Verbs of memory.—Recordor, meminī, reminiscor,* and *oblīviscor*, may govern the genitive; as,

Reminiscor incommodī,	I remember the defeat.
Oblīviscor injūriae,	I forget an injury.

789.—*Note.*—*Meminī* and *recordor*, however, usually, and *reminiscor* and *oblīviscor* sometimes, govern the ***accusative,*** as transitive verbs. If the genitive is used, it is ***objective.***

790.—*Obs.* 4. These verbs are often construed with an ***infinitive*** or some part of a sentence, instead of the genitive or accusative; as, *Meminī vidēre virginem*, "I remember seeing the girl."—Ter.

791.—*Obs.* 5. *Recordor* and *meminī*, signifying "to remember," are sometimes followed by an ***ablative*** with **dē**. *Eī venit in mentem*, "It occurs to him," being equivalent to *recordātur*, sometimes has a genitive after it; as, *Eī venit in mentem potestātis tuae*, "Your power occurs to him." But the nominative is also used.

VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

792.—Many transitive verbs, with the accusative of the direct object, govern also another word, with which the notion of the action is involved, in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, or *ablative*, as the nature of that reference may require.

793.—Rule XXIV. ***Crime, punishment, warning.***—Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, and *admonishing*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit mē furtī,	He accuses me of theft (***objective***).
Mēipsum inertiae condemno,	I condemn myself of laziness.
Illum homicīdiī absolvunt,	They acquit him of manslaughter.
Monet mē officiī,	He admonishes me of my duty.

794.—To this rule belong verbs of—

1. ***Accusing;*** as, *accūso*, *appello*, *arcesso*, *anquīro*, *arguo*, *coarguo*, *increpo*, *incūso*, *insimulo*, *postulo*.

2. ***Condemning;*** as, *damno*, *condemno*, *convinco*, *dēprehendo*, *jūdico*.

3. ***Acquitting;*** as, *absolvo*, *lībero*, *purgo*.

4. ***Admonishing;*** as, *moneo*, *admoneo*, *commoneo*, *commonefacio*.

795.—*Obs.* 1. With many of these verbs, instead of the genitive of the crime or punishment, the ***ablative*** is used with, or without, a preposition; as, *Accusāre dē negligentiā*, Cic.; *Līberāre culpā*, Id. The ablatives *crīmine* and *nōmine* are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessere aliquem crīmine ambitūs*, "To charge one with bribery."—Liv. Sometimes the punishment is put in the accusative after *ad* or *in;* as, *Damnāre ad bestiās*, "To condemn to the wild beasts;" often in the ablative, *Quindecim millibus damnātur*, "He is condemned to pay fifteen thousand." *Multo* has always the ablative; as, *Multāre pecūniā*, "To fine a sum of money."

796.—*Obs.* 2. *Accūso, incūso, insimulo*, together with verbs of admonishing, instead of the genitive, are sometimes followed by the ***accusative***, especially of the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, illud, quod*, etc., and their plurals; as, *Sī id mē nōn accūsās*, "If you do not accuse me of that." —Plaut. *Eōs hoc moneo*, "I give them this warning."—Cic.

797.—*Obs.* 3. Many verbs signifying to accuse, and among them some of the verbs enumerated under this rule, do not govern the genitive of the crime, but, as transitive active verbs, govern it in the ***accusative*** by Rule VIII.; as, *ējus avāritiam perfidiamque accusārat*, "he had accused his avarice and treachery."

798.—*Obs.* 4. Verbs of admonishing, instead of the genitive, are sometimes followed by the ***ablative*** with a preposition; as, *ōro ut Terentiam moneātis dē testāmento*, "I beg you to remind Terentia of the will;" sometimes by an infinitive or clause; as, *Monet succurrere Lausō Turnum*, "She advises Turnus to aid Lausus."—Virg. *Monet ut suspiciōnēs vītet*, "He warns him to avoid suspicions."

799.—Rule XXV. ***Verbs of valuing***, with their own case, and sometimes without a case, govern such genitives of ***indefinite degree*** as *magnī, parvī, nihilī;* as,

Æstimo tē magnī,	I value you much.	(***Descriptive.***)
Mihi stetit plūris,	It cost me more.	
Est parvī,	It is of little value.	

800.—Explanation,—By its own case is meant the case which the verb usually governs. Verbs without case, as *sum, fīo, existo*, etc., have the genitive only. The adjectives *magnī, parvī*, etc., may agree with *pretiī*, or the like, understood, and the construction comes under Rule XVI. The genitive is only used when the expression of value is ***indefinite.*** A definite price is put in the ablative. (884.)

801.—Verbs of valuing are such as *aestimo, dūco, facio, habeo, pendo, taxo, sum, fīo, consto*, etc.

802.—Among the genitives of degree governed by such verbs, are the adjectives *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, *magnī*, *plūrimī*, *minimī*, *parvī*, etc., and the substantives *floccī*, *naucī*, *pilī*, *hūjus*, etc., which last all imply something valueless: *nōn hūjus tē facio*, "I don't care that for you."

803.—*Obs.* 5. The ablatives *magnō*, *parvō*, *plūrimō*, *minimō*, are sometimes found, particularly with *aestimo;* as, *āreās magnō aestimant*, "They set a high price upon the lots."—Cic.

804.—*Obs.* 6. *Æquī* and *bonī* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo;* as, *Æquī bonīque facio*, "I take this in good part."

805.—Rule XXVI. ***Impersonals of Feeling.***—These five, *Miseret*, *poenitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of the person who feels, with the genitive of the object exciting the feeling; as,

Miseret me tuī,	I pity you.	(***Objective.***)
Paenitet mē peccātī,	I repent of my sin.	
Taedet mē vītae,	I am weary of life.	
Pudet mē culpae,	I am ashamed of my fault.	

806.—Explanation.—These examples may be rendered literally thus: "It grieves me (on account) of you;"—"It repents me of my sin;"—"It wearies me of life;"—"It shames me of my fault."

807.—*Obs.* 7. The ***infinitive mood*** or a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *poenitet mē peccāsse*, or *quod peccāvĕrim*, "I repent that I have sinned;" *nōn poenitet mē quantum profĕcerim*, "I do not repent of the advance I have made."

808.—*Obs.* 8. The preterites of these verbs, in the passive form, govern the same cases as the active; as, *Miseritum est mē tuārum fortūnārum*, "I pitied your fortunes."—Ter. *Miserescit* and *miserētur* are sometimes used impersonally; as, *Miserescit mē tuī*, "I pity you."—Ter. *Miserēātur tē frātrum*, "You should pity your brothers."—Cic.

809.—Rule XXVII. ***Impersonals of Interest.***—*Rēfert* and *Interest* govern the genitive; as,

Rēfert patris,	It concerns my father.	(***Possessive.***)
Interest omnium,	It is the interest of all.	

But, instead of the genitives *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, etc., the possessives *meā*, *tuā*, *suā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, are used; as,

Nōn meā rēfert, It does not concern me.

810.—Epxplanation.—It is uncertain how the forms *meā*, etc., and the *rē* in *rēfert* arose. There is reason to believe that they are mutilated forms of the datives *meae*, etc., and *reī*. (See Donaldson, Varron., pp. 310, 317.) So that *nōn meā rēfert* would be for *nōn meae reī* (*quidquam*) *fert*, "It does not bring (any thing) for my interest."

811.—*Obs.* 9. The ***matter of interest*** is expressed by an *infinitive*, a *neuter pronoun*, or a subordinate sentence; as, *Vestrā interest, nē imperātōrem pessimī faciant*, "It is of importance to you that the worst men should not choose the Emperor."

812.—*Obs.* 10. The ***degree of interest*** is expressed by *an adverb* or an adverbial expression, or by a *genitive* of indefinite value (799); as, *Magnī tuā rēfert, hic quid velit*, "It is of great importance to you, what this man means."

813.—*Obs.* 11. The ***end for which*** the matter is important is expressed by *ad* with accusative; as, *Magnī ad honōrem nostrum interest, quam prīmum ad urbem mē venīre*, "It is of great importance for my honor, that I should come as soon as possible to the city."

Genitive of Place. The so-called genitive of place is treated of in 932, 934.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE DATIVE.

814.—The ***Dative Case*** is believed to have originally implied *nearness to*, or ***proximity.*** But this sense of the case is only found distinctly in one construction (934). Since, however, those things which are near to us *affect us*, and are ***of interest*** to us, the Dative came to be used to express this more general idea, which is, in English, denoted commonly by the prepositions **to** or **for**, and these are consequently called the ***signs*** of the Dative.

815.—*Note.*—**To** and **for** are not *always* signs of the dative. When ***to*** implies *motion*, or *direction towards*, it is a sign of the accusative case, and generally requires a preposition (*ad*, *in*, etc.); as, *Rōmam vēnit*, "He came *to* Rome" (938); *Ad oppidum contendit*, "He hastens to the town" (947). So, again, ***for,*** when it means *in behalf of*, is expressed by *prō*, with the ablative: *Decōrum est prō patriā morī*, "Comely is it to die for one's country."

816.—The ***person or thing interested*** in an action is generally called in Grammar the ***remote object.*** Thus, in the sentence, *Aesōpō quīdam lapidem impēgerat*, "A man had cast a stone at Aesop," *lapidem* is called the ***direct object,*** as being essentially involved in the action, and *Aesōpō* is called the ***remote object,*** as being the person to whom the action was of importance or interest.

817.—The Dative is governed by verbs, adjectives, or by substantives or adverbs derived from them; and it is convenient to state the use of the case under these heads. But it may nearly always be seen that the meaning given above is the fundamental one, and that the ***Dative*** is the ***case of interest;*** and as interest may be either agreeable or the reverse, the common expression, ***Dative of advantage or disadvantage*** (*Datīvus commodī aut incommodī*), will be found to be generally applicable.

THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

818.—Rule XXVIII. All verbs govern the dative of the object or end, to which the action or state expressed by them is directed as ***matter of interest;*** as,

Fīnis vēnit imperiō,	An end has come to the empire.
Animus redit hostibus,	Courage returns to the enemy.
Tibi seris, tibi metis,	You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.

819.—Explanation.—This rule may be considered as general, applying to all cases in which a verb is followed by a dative. When the verb is transitive active, it governs also its immediate object in the accusative (712). If intransitive, it will be followed by a dative only.

This rule, being applicable to all cases in which a dative follows a verb, is too general to be useful, as it could not be applied correctly without much discrimination. It will, therefore, be of more advantage, when it can be done, to apply the special rules comprehended under it as follows:

SPECIAL RULES.

820.—Rule XXIX. **Sum,** and its ***compounds*** (except *possum*), govern the dative; as,

Praefuit exercituī,	He commanded the army.
Dēbēmus omnibus prōdesse,	We ought to do good to all.

821.—Rule XXX. The verb **Sum**, signifying *to be*, or *to belong to*, governs the dative of the ***possessor***; as,

Est mihi liber,	A book is to me, *i. e.*, I have a book.
Sunt mihi librī,	Books are to me, *i. e.*, I have books.
Scio librōs esse mihi,	I know that books are to me, *i. e.*—that I have, etc.

822.—Explanation.—In this construction, the dative expresses the person or thing, *to* or *for* which the subject spoken of is, or exists. The verb will always be in the third person singular or plural, in any tense, or in the infinitive.

823.—*Obs.* 1. An adjective, or participle, denoting willingness or unwillingness, agreeing with the dative after *est*, is sometimes put for a verb of like signification, having the word in the dative for its subject; thus, *Mihi volentī est* = *volo*, "It is to me wishing = I wish;" *Tibi invītō fuit* = *nōluistī*, "It was to you unwilling = you were unwilling," etc. So, *Quibus bellum volentibus erat*, "Who wished for war," Tac., Agr., 18;—*Neque plēbī mīlitia volentī esse putābātur*, "It was thought that the common people did not wish for war," *or*, "That war would not be agreeable to the common people."—This is a Greek construction for which see Greek Grammar, 539, B. & K. 1017, *Obs.* 3.

824.—Rule XXXI. Verbs compounded of **satis**, **bene**, and **male**, govern the dative; as,

Lēgibus satisfēcit,	He satisfied the laws.
Benefacere reipublicae,	To benefit the state.

825.—*Obs.* 2. These compounds are often written separately, and the dative is governed by the combined force of the two words.

826.—Rule XXXII. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, **ad, ante, con,—in, inter, ob,—post, prae, sub,** and **super,** govern the dative; as,

Annue coeptīs,	Favor our undertakings.

827.—Explanation—The dative follows these verbs because it is the case expressing *proximity to* (814); and the prepositions all express *near-*

next to in some relation. Thus, *Cui canis cognōmen adhaeret*, "To whom the name of 'dog' sticks fast."—Hor. So, *Homērō Virgilium compāro*, *lit.*, "I put Virgil along side of Homer, I compare V. with H."

828.—Verbs governing the dative under this Rule are such as the following, viz.:

1. *Accēdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnāto, adequito, adhaereo, adsto, adstipulor, advolvor, affulgeo, allābor, allabōro, annuo, appāreo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrīdeo, aspīro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto.*

3. *Collūdo, concino, consono, convīvo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubito, inhio, ingemisco, inhaereo, insideo, insidior, insto, insisto, insūdo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illūdo, immineo, immorior, immoror, impendeo.*

5. *Intervenio, intercēdo, intercido, interjaceo.*

6. *Obrēpo, obluctor, obtrecto, obstrepo, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio.*

7. *Postfero, posthabeo, postpōno, postscrībo*, along with an accusative.

8. *Praecēdo, praecurro, praeeo, praesideo, praelūceo, praeniteo, praesto, praeverto.*

9. *Succēdo, succumbo, sufficio, suffrāgor, subcresco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrēpo.*

10. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with SUPER govern the accusative.

829.—*Obs.* 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, dē, ex, circum*, and *contrā*; also, compounds of *dī* and *dis*, meaning generally "to differ," are sometimes followed by the dative; as, *Sibi dissentit*, "He dissents from himself."

830.—*Obs.* 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, instead of the dative, take the ***case of the preposition***, which is sometimes repeated. Some intransitive verbs so compounded, either take the dative, or, acquiring a transitive signification by the force of the preposition, govern the ***accusative*** by 718, 719; as, *Helvētii reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt*, "The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in bravery."

831.—Rule XXXIII. Verbs govern the dative which signify to ***profit or hurt***;—to favor or assist, and the contrary;—to ***command and***

obey, to serve and resist;—to threaten and to be angry; to trust; as,

Nē alterī noceās,	You should not hurt another.
Ego tibi favēbo,	I will favor you.
Pārēto rēgī,	You must obey the king.
Glōriae servit,	He is a slave to glory.
Puerō īrascitur,	He is angry with the boy.
Mihi crēde,	Trust me.

832.—Explanation.—It is clear that with verbs of these meanings the dative expresses the person or thing ***interested*** in the good or harm done or intended.

833.—*Obs.* 5. The verbs under this Rule are such as the following:

1st. To profit or hurt; as,

Prōficio, prōsum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo. Likewise, *noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo,* etc.

2d. To favor or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, grātulor, grātificor, grātor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adūlor, plaudo, blandior, lēnōcinor, palpor, assentor, auxilior, subvenio, succurro, patrōcinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor, dērogo, dētraho, invideo, aemulor.

3d. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impero, praecipio, mando; moderor, for *modum adhibeo; pāreo, ausculto, obēdio, obsequor, obtempero, mōrem gero, mōrigeror, obsecundo; famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor; repugno, obsto, reluctor, renītor, resisto, refrāgor, adversor.*

4th. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Minor, comminor, īrascor, succenseo.

5th. To trust; as,

Fīdo, confīdo, crēdo, diffīdo.

Note.—*Fīdo* sometimes and *confīdo* often have the ablative: *aliō duce confīdere,* "to trust in another leader."

To these, add *nūbo,* "to veil oneself for, to marry (used of the bride); *excello, haereo, supplico, cēdo, despēro, operor, praestōlor, praevāricor; recipio,* "to promise;" *renuncio; respondeo,* "to answer," or "satisfy;" *suādeo, persuādeo,* "to persuade;" *tempero, studeo; vaco,* "to be at leisure for."

834.—*Obs.* 6. *Juvo,* "to assist;" *jubeo,* "to bid;" *rego* and *guberno,* "to rule;" *laedo,* "to hurt;" *offendo,* "to offend;" govern the accusative: *Multum nōs apud Plancum juvāre potes,* "You can help me much with Plancus."

835.—*Obs.* 7. A few of these verbs, besides those which are regularly transitive, and govern the accusative along with the dative, take an ***accusative*** instead of the dative: *Mare et terrās temperat*, "He governs earth and sea;" *Dūritiam lēgum moderātus est*, "He moderated the severity of the laws." Others, sometimes, have a preposition with the accusative or ablative. Thus, *congruo*, "to agree," is used with the prepositions *ad*, *in*, *inter*, and *cum*, with slightly different meanings.

836.—*Obs.* 8. Some verbs have ***different meanings,*** according as they govern the accusative or dative. Thus:

Haec nōbīs conveniunt,	These things agree with us.
Caesarem convēnit,	He had an interview with Caesar.
Timeo tē,	I fear you.
Timeo tibi,	I am apprehensive for you.
Consulo tē,	I consult you.
Consulo tibi,	I consult for your interests.
Caveo tē, or *ā tē*,	I am on my guard against you.
Caveo tibi,	I am concerned for your safety.

837.—*Obs.* 9. Very rarely in the poets the dative is used to express the ***object of motion:*** *It clāmor coelō*, "The shout goes to the sky," Virg., which seems to be used in the sense of *ad coelum*. Most of the cases, however, quoted to show that this can be so, may be explained on other and more regular principles; generally as being *datives of interest*.

838.—Rule XXXIV. ***Ethical Dative.***—The datives of personal pronouns are often used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with interest (ἦθος) by some one; as,

Quid mihi Celsus agit?	How does my friend Celsus do?
Tongilium mihi eduxit,	He obliged me by taking Tongilius with him (ironical).

839.—Explanation.—The Ethical Dative is only a more delicate shade of the ***dative of interest.*** In the latter, the dative denotes that a person is interested in an action done with reference to him; the Ethical Dative, on the contrary, denotes an interest in an action which has no direct or intentional reference to the person interested.

840.—Rule XXXV. ***Dative with Impersonals.***—The impersonal verbs **licet**, "it is law-

ful," **libet**, "it is pleasing," **expedit**, "it is expedient," govern the dative; as,

Licet nēminī patrem verberāre,	It is not lawful for any one to smite his father.
Eī libēbit, quod nōn licet (eī),	It will please him to do that which is unlawful for him.

841.—*Obs.* 1. Those intransitive verbs which govern a dative, if used in the passive impersonally (453), govern the dative still. Thus, *favet mihi*, "he favors me," is, in the passive, *mihi favētur ab eō*. See 457.

842.—*Obs.* 2. Some verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *doleo*, "I grieve;" *dolet mihi*, "it grieves me," *i. e.*, "I grieve." So, also, verbs commonly used impersonally sometimes have a subject in the nominative, and are, of course, used personally. This is the case especially with such nominatives as these: *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, *quid*, *quod*, *nihil*, etc.; as, *Nōnne haec tē pudent?* "Are you not ashamed of these things?"

843.—*Obs.* 3. An infinitive mood or part of a sentence is commonly joined to an impersonal verb, which is to be regarded as its subject; as, *dēlectat mē studēre*, "it delights me to study," *i. e.*, "to study delights me."

844.—RULE XXXVI. ***Dative of the Agent.***—The dative is often used with the ***perfect tenses*** of passive verbs, to denote the agent, instead of the ablative with *ā* or *ab*; as,

Mihi consilium captum jamdiū est,	A plan has been long formed by me.

845.—EXPLANATION.—This use of the dative is still only an extension of the notion of interest, the apparent agent being the ***possessor*** or ***person interested.*** Thus, in the above example: "I have a plan long formed." So, *Cuī nōn sunt audītae Dēmosthenis vigiliae*, "Who is there to whom the night-watchings of Demosthenes are a thing unheard of."

846.—*Obs.* The dative of the agent is used also with ***imperfect tenses*** by the poets, rarely by prose writers: *neque cernitur ullī*, "nor is seen by (is visible to) any."—VIRG. *Honesta bonīs virīs, nōn occulta quaeruntur*, "Honorable things, not secret ones, are sought by good men (for themselves)."—CIC.

847.—RULE XXXVII. The ***dative*** is used after the ***gerundive*** with *esse* to denote the agent, or the person on whom an obligation rests (see 1305, 1306); as,

Caesarī ūnō tempore omnia erant agenda,	Caesar had to do all things at one time.
Omnibus calcanda est via lētī,	The path of death is to be trodden by all.

VERBS GOVERNING TWO DATIVES.

848.—RULE XXXVIII. ***Dative of end.***—Some verbs, along with the dative of interest (*remote object*), govern also the dative of the ***end,*** or ***design;*** as,

1. *Est mihi voluptātī,*	It is to me a pleasure, *i. e.*, It is, *or* brings, a pleasure to me.
2. *Hōc mīsit mihi mūnerī,*	This he sent as a present to me.
3. *Dūcitur honōrī tibi,*	It is reckoned to you for an honor, *i. e.*, It is reckoned an honor to you.
4. *Cuī bonō fuit?*	To whom was it for an advantage? *i. e.*, For whose advantage was it?

849.—EXPLANATION.—In these examples, it is manifest that the words *voluptātī*, *honōrī*, *mūnerī*, and *bonō*, each express the ***end*** or ***design*** for which the thing spoken of, or referred to, *is*, *is reckoned*, *is sent*, to the *object* expressed by the other datives, *mihi* and *tibi*, *cuī*. See also 851.

The verb *sum*, with the dative of the *end*, may be variously rendered, according to the sense, by such words as, *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, etc. *For*, the sign of the dative, is often omitted, especially after *sum*.

OBSERVATIONS.

850.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs governing two datives under this Rule, are chiefly, *sum*, *fīo*, *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *dūco*, and a few others.

851.—*Obs.* 2. Instead of the *dative* of the *end*, a ***complement*** is often used in agreement with the subject; as, *Amor est exitium pecorī*, for *exitiō*, "Love is a ruin to cattle." In this example, *exitium* is the nominative after *est*, by Rule VI., 666.

852.—*Obs.* 3. Of course, transitive verbs may have their object in the accusative as well as these two datives, as in the second example.

853.—*Obs.* 4. The dative of interest (commonly a person) is often to be supplied; as, *est exemplō, indiciō, praesidiō, ūsuī*, etc., scil. *mihi, alicuī, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *pōnere, oppōnere, pignorī*, scil. *alicuī*, "to pledge;" *canere receptuī*, scil. *suīs mīlitibus*, "to sound a retreat;" *habēre cūrae, quaestuī, odiō, voluptātī, studiō*, etc., scil. *sibi*.

854.—*Obs.* 5. The expression *dictō audiens*, "obedient to word," is sometimes accompanied with a dative of the person obeyed: *Caesarī dictō audiens est*, "He is obedient to Caesar."

VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

855.—Rule XXXIX. Verbs of ***comparing, giving, declaring,*** and ***taking away,*** govern the accusative and dative; as,

Comparo Virgilium Homērō,	I compare Virgil to Homer.
Suum cuīque tribuito,	Give every man his own.
Narrās fābulam surdō,	You tell a story to a deaf man.
Ēripuit mē mortī,	He rescued me from death.

856.—Explanation.—This is a rule of very extensive application. When, together with the *thing done* (expressed by the transitive active verb and its accusative), we express also the remote object *to which* it is done, that object will be put in the dative; thus, in the above examples, the verb and the accusative following it, express the *whole* of that which is represented as done *to*, or *with reference to*, the object expressed in the dative. *Narrās fābulam* expresses all here said to be done (*surdō*) to the deaf man, "you tell a story to him;" and so *ēripuit mē*, together, express what is here done (*mortī*) to death, "he rescued me from it;" and so of other examples. See this more fully illustrated, Gr. Gram., § 153, Obs. 3.

OBSERVATIONS.

857.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, and some others, instead of the dative, often take a **preposition** and its case; as, *Comparāre ūnam rem cum aliā,—ad aliam,—rēs inter sē: ēripuit mē mortī,—morte,—ā*, or *ex morte*, etc.

858.—*Obs.* 2. Instead of the accusative, these verbs have frequently an infinitive mood or a part of a sentence; as, *Dā mihi fallere*, etc., "Grant me to escape notice."—Hor.; *Perfacile factū esse illīs probat*, "He proves to them that it is perfectly easy to do."—Caes. This construction is especially common with such verbs as *āio*, *dīco*, *inquam*, *persuādeo*, *respondeo*, etc., when the thing *said*, *replied*, etc., though a sentence or a paragraph, is to be regarded as the accusative, and the word denoting the person or persons to whom said, is put in the dative.

859.—*Obs.* 3. Several verbs governing the accusative and dative are often construed differently; as, *circumdare moenia oppidō*, or *oppidum moenibus*, "to surround a city with walls;" *interclūdere commeātum alicuī*, or *aliquem commeātū*, "to intercept one's provisions;" *induere*, *exuere vestem sibi*, or *sē veste*. So the following, *Universōs frūmentō dōnāvit*, "He presented all with corn," Nep.; and *Praedam mīlitibus dōnat*, "He gives the prey to the soldiers," Caes.; *Aspergere sale carnēs*, or *aspergere salem carnibus*, "To sprinkle salt on the flesh."—Plin.

THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

860.—Rule XL. Adjectives signifying ***profit*** or ***disprofit, likeness*** or ***unlikeness,*** govern the dative; as,

Ūtilis bellō,	Useful for war.
Similis patrī,	Like his father.

861.—Explanation.—The dative under this Rule is used to limit the meaning of the adjective to a particular *object* or *end*, to which the quality expressed by it is directed. Thus, in the first example, *ūtilis* means "useful" in a general sense; *bellō* limits the usefulness intended to a particular object, "war." The dative, thus used, is rendered by its ordinary signs *to* or *for*, but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition, as in the last example.

OBSERVATIONS.

862.—*Obs.* 1. To this rule belong adjectives signifying:

1st. ***Profit,*** or ***disprofit;*** as, *benignus*, *bonus*, *commodus*, *fēlīx*;—*damnōsus*, *dīrus*, *exitiōsus*, *fūnestus*, etc.

2d. ***Pleasure,*** or ***pain;*** as, *acceptus*, *dulcis*, *grātus*, *jūcundus*, *laetus*, *suāvis*;—*acerbus*, *amārus*, *ingrātus*, *molestus*, etc.

3d. ***Friendship,*** or ***hatred;*** as, *aequus*, *amīcus*, *blandus*, *cārus*, *dēditus*, *fīdus*;—*adversus*, *asper*, *crūdēlis*, *infestus*, etc.

4th. ***Perspicuity,*** or ***obscurity;*** as, *apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, nōtus ;—ambiguus, dubius, ignōtus, obscūrus,* etc.

5th. ***Propinquity;*** as, *fīnitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vīcīnus, affīnis,* etc.

6th. ***Fitness,*** or ***unfitness;*** as, *aptus, appositus, habilis, idōneus, opportūnus ;—ineptus, inhabilis, importūnus,* etc.

7th. ***Ease,*** or ***difficulty;*** as, *facilis, levis, obvius, pervius ;—difficilis, arduus gravis.* Also those denoting propensity or readiness ; as, *prōnus, prōclīvis, prōpensus,* etc.

8th. ***Equality,*** or ***inequality;*** likeness, or unlikeness; as, *aequālis, aequaevus, par, compar ;—inaequālis, impar, dispar, discors ;—similis, aemulus ;—dissimilis, aliēnus,* etc.

9th. Several ***adjectives compounded*** with CON; as, *cognātus, congruus, consonus, conveniens, continens,* etc.

10th. ***Verbal adjectives*** in BILIS; as, *amābilis, terribilis, optābilis,* and the like.

863.—*Obs.* 2.—*Exc.* The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the ***genitive;*** viz.: *affīnis, similis, commūnis, par, proprius, fīnitimus, fīdus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, aequālis, contrārius,* and *adversus.* When the genitive is used, they are regarded as nouns. Thus, *similis tibi,* "like (to) you;" *similis tuī,* "a likeness of you." It is said that with *similis, dissimilis,* the genitive is used of *resemblance in character.*

864.—Conscius and some other adjectives govern the dative according to this rule, and, at the same time, a genitive by Rule XVIII.; as, *Mens sibi conscia rectī,* "A mind conscious to itself of rectitude."—Virg.

865.—*Obs.* 3. Adjectives signifying *motion* or *tendency* to a thing, take after them the ***accusative*** with ad, rather than the dative; as, *prōclīvis, prōnus, prōpensus, vēlōx, celer, tardus, piger,* etc.; thus, *ad vitium prōclīvis,* "prone to vice."—Ovid.

866.—*Obs.* 4. Adjectives signifying *usefulness* or *fitness,* and the contrary, often take the ***accusative*** with ad, as well as the dative; as, *multās ad rēs perūtilēs (nōbīs) sunt Xenophōntis librī,* "Xenophon's writings are very useful to us for many purposes."

867.—*Obs.* 5. *Propior* and *proximus* take after them sometimes the ***genitive,*** sometimes the ***dative,*** or the ***accusative*** following the construction of the preposition *prope;* as, *propior cālīginis āēr; propius vērō; proximus Pompēium.*

868.—*Obs.* 6. Some adjectives that govern the dative sometimes, instead of the dative, have an ***ablative*** with a preposition expressed or understood; as, *discors sēcum; aliēnum nostrā amicitiā.*

869.—*Obs.* 7. **Idem** is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum quī servat, idem facit occidentī*, "He who preserves a man against his will, does the same as one who kills him." In prose, *idem* is followed commonly by *quī*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*.

THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY SUBSTANTIVES AND ADVERBS.

870.—RULE XLI. Some ***Substantives*** and ***Adverbs,*** derived from verbs or adjectives, govern a dative in the same sense as those verbs or adjectives.

Obtemperātio lēgibus,	Obedience to the laws.
Sibi ipsī responsio,	A reply to oneself.
Congruenter nātūrae vīvere,	To live in harmony with nature.

871.—*Obs.* In such expressions as *voluptās est hostis virtūtibus* (pleasure is a foe to manly qualities), *amor est exitium pecorī* (love is ruin to cattle), the dative is not governed by the noun, but is connected directly with the verb by Rule XXIX. So in *eī vēnit in mentem* (it came into his mind), *cuī corpus porrigitur* (whose body is extended), the datives *eī* and *cuī* are simple datives of ***interest.*** Compare the remarks in 856.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE ABLATIVE.

872.—The ***ablative case*** is used in senses very different from each other. Thus, in the sentences "he lived in a cave," "he came out of a cave," the word *cave* would in Latin be in both in the ablative case, In the latter, it would be a *true ablative* (or *removal*-case), expressing *separation from ;* but in the former its meaning is much more like that of the dative, if the dative was (814) correctly explained as originally implying *nearness to.* The best authorities, therefore, believe that the ablative, as we find it, is the result of a confusion between the dative and a true ablative, ending in *d*, which existed in the oldest period of the language. See Donaldson, Varron., pp. 274, 275, 284.

The ablative case has two leading uses; it denotes—

I. ***Various conditions*** of an action, as manner, cause, instrument, time, place, and attendant circumstances.

II. ***Separation from.***

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, ETC.

873.—RULE XLII. The ***cause, manner, means,*** and ***instrument,*** are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metū,	I am pale for fear.
Fēcit suō mōre,	He did it after his own way.
Aurō ostrōque decōrī,	Decked with gold and purple.
Scrībo calamō,	I write with a pen.

EXPLANATION.—The *cause* will be known by putting the question, "Why?" or "Wherefore?" the *manner*, by "How?" the *means*, by "By what means?" the *instrument*, by "Wherewith?"

874.—*Obs.* 1. The ***accompaniment*** of an action usually has *cum;* but this is usually omitted with terms denoting military forces, if these have an adjective: *decem nāvībus vēnit,* "he came with ten ships."

875.—*Obs.* 2. The ***cause*** sometimes takes the prepositions *per, propter, ob,* with the accusative; or *dē, ē, ex, prae,* with the ablative; as *dēpulsus per invidiam,* "rejected through envy;" *fessus dē viā,* "weary with travel."

876.—*Obs.* 3. The ***manner*** is sometimes expressed by *ā, ab, cum, dē, ex, per;* as. *dē mōre suō,* particularly if the *manner* is expressed by a substantive without an adjective; as, *lēgatī cum silentiō audītī sunt,* "the envoys were listened to in silence;"—the ***means*** frequented by *per* and *cum;* as, *cum meīs cōpiīs omnibus vexāvia hostēs,* "with all my forces I harassed the enemy."

877.—*Obs.* 4. The ***instrument*** properly so called, seldom admits a preposition, though, among the poets, *ā, ab, dē, sub,* are sometimes used; as, *pectora trājectus ab ense,* "having his breast pierced by a sword;" *exercēre solum sub vōmere,* "to work the ground beneath a ploughshare."

878.—RULE XLIII. ***Ablative of agent.***—When an active transitive verb is used in the passive construction, its subject, if a ***living agent,*** is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab.**

Active:	*Magister puerum laudat,*	The master praises the boy.
Passive:	*Puer ā magistrō laudātur,*	The boy is praised by the master.

879.—Obs. 4. By the poets the ablative of the agent is sometimes used without the preposition; as, *scrīberis Variō*, "thou shalt be written of by Varius."—Hor. See also the *dative*, 844–846.

880.—Rule XLIV. **Ūtor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, nītor, potior, vescor,** govern the ablative; as,

Ūtitur fraude,	He uses deceit.
Abūtitur librīs,	He abuses books.

881.—Explanation.—These verbs are all originally ***reflective*** (or middle) in sense. Thus, *ūtor* means "I help myself;" *fruor*, "I enjoy myself," etc.; and therefore the ablative is really an ablative of means. Thus, *vescitur carne*, "he lives on flesh," *lit.*, "he supports himself by means of flesh."

882.—Obs. 1. **Potior** often governs the ***genitive;*** as, *Potīrī urbis*, "To get possession of the city;" *Potīrī rērum*, "To possess the chief command."

883.—Obs. 2. *Potior*, *fungor*, *vescor*, *epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes govern the ***accusative;*** as, *Potīrī urbem*, Cic.; *Officia fungī*, etc.; and also, in ancient writers, *ūtor*, *abūtor*, and *fruor*. *Dēpasco* and *dēpascor* have the accusative always.

884.—Rule XLV. ***Ablative of Price.***—The *price* of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Constitit talentō,	It cost a talent.
Vendidit hic aurō patriam,	This man sold his country for gold.

885.—Explanation.—The ablative is used because the price is the ***means*** by which an exchange is effected.

For the genitive of *indefinite* price, see 799–802.

886.—Obs. 1. The ablative of price is often an adjective without a noun; as, *magnō*, *permagnō*, *parvō*, *paululō*, *minimō*, *plurimō*, *vīlī*, *nimiō*. These refer, however, to some such noun as *pretiō*, *aere*, etc., understood; *nōn potest parvō rēs magna constāre*, "a great thing cannot cost little."

887.—Obs. 2. The ***verbs of exchanging,*** *mūto*, *commūto*, *permūto*,, are treated like verbs of buying and selling; but sometimes the thing *given* and sometimes the thing *taken*, is regarded as the price, and

put in the ablative: thus, *cūr valle permūtem Sabīnā dīvitias*, "why should I change my Sabine valley for riches?"—Hor., *i. e.*, "why should I **buy** riches at the price of my Sabine valley?" *glandem mūtāvit aristā*, "he exchanged acorns for grain."—Virg., *i. e.*, he **sold** acorns, and received grain as the price.

888.—Rule XLVI. ***Ablative of Description.*** —The ablative of a noun accompanied by an adjective is used to describe a person or thing; as,

Caesar fuit excelsā statūrā,	Caesar was of tall stature.

See Rule XVI. (757–759) for the descriptive genitive.

889.—Rule XLVII. ***Ablative of Limitation.*** —*Respect wherein*, and the *part affected*, are expressed in the ablative; as,

Pietāte fīlius,	In affection a son.
Jūre perītus,	Skilled in law.
Pedibus aeger,	Lame in his feet.

890.—Explanation.—The ablative, under this rule, is used to limit the signification of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, and may be variously rendered to express the nature of the limitation intended; as, *in*, *in respect of*, *with respect to*, *with regard to*, etc.

891.—*Exc.* 1. The part affected, in imitation of a **Greek** construction, is sometimes expressed in the **accusative**; as, *Nūdus membra*, "Bare as to his limbs."—Virg. See accusative, Rule XI., 728.

892.—*Exc.* 2. In like manner, a noun or pronoun, denoting that *in regard to* which, or *with respect to* which, any thing is, is said, or is done, is sometimes put in the accusative; as, *Nunc illōs quī in urbe remansērunt*, "Now, in regard to those who remained in the city;" *Quod reliquum est*, "As to that which remains." See 731.

893.—*Exc.* 3. For such phrases as *integer vītae; discrucior animī; animī pendeo; recreābar animī;* see 779, 785.

894.—Rem. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, such as *quam*, *ac*, *atque*, etc., signifying

"than," is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted. In the first, the construction of the case falls under other rules; in the second, it falls under the following, viz.:

895.—Rule XLVIII. *Ablative of Comparison.*—The comparative degree, without a conjunction, governs the ablative; as,

Dulcior melle,	Sweeter than honey.
Praestantior aurō,	More precious than gold.
Perennius aere,	More durable than brass.

896.—Explanation.—The ablative under this Rule is supposed to be a particular application of the last rule: *Sōl mājor est terrā,* "The sun is larger than—*i. e.*, in respect to or comparison with—the earth." When *prae* is used with the ablative, the same notion is apparent: *Prae caeteris fortior,* "Braver before (in presence of) others."

OBSERVATIONS.

897.—*Obs.* 1. Of these two modes of comparison, the ablative without a conjunction is commonly used when the thing is compared with the ***subject*** of a preposition; as, *Quid magis est dūrum saxō, quid mollius undā?* "What is harder than a rock, what softer than water?" But when, in such a comparison, *quam* is used, the second substantive will be in the same case with the first, because in the same construction; as, *Melior est certa pāx, quam spērāta victōria* (*est*), "Better is a sure peace than an expected victory."

898.—*Note* 1. The construction of the ablative without *quam* is sometimes used, especially by the poets, when the first substantive is the ***object*** of a verb; as, *Exēgī monumentum aere perennius,* "I have finished a monument more lasting than bronze."—Hor. *Cūr olivum sanguine vīperīnō cautius vītat?* "Why shuns he olive oil with more care than viper's blood?"—Hor. This is always so when the second object of comparison is expressed by a relative; as, *Hic Attalō, quō graviōrem inimīcum nōn habuī, sorōrem in mātrimōnium dedit,* "He gave his sister in marriage to Attalus, than whom I had not a more dangerous enemy."

899.—*Obs.* 2. But usually, if the thing is ***not*** compared with a ***subject,*** *quam* is used; and then there are two cases:

1st. If the ***verb*** after quam is not expressed, but may easily be ***supplied*** from the preceding clause, and if the first substantive is in the accusative, the second may be put by attraction in the accusative also; as, *Hominem callidiōrem vīdī nēminem quam Phormiōnem,* "I never saw a more cunning fellow than Phormio," instead of *quam Phormio est.*

2d. But if the **verb** after quam **cannot be supplied** from the preceding clause, the substantive must be in the nominative with *est*, *fuit*, etc., expressed; as, *Haec sunt verba M. Varrōnis, quam fuit Clodius, doctiōris*, "These are the words of M. Varro, a more learned man than Clodius;" *Argentum reddidistī L. Cūridiō, hominī nōn grātiōsiōrī quam Cn. Calidius est*, "You gave back the silver to L. Curidius, a man no more influential than Cn. Calidius."—CIC.

900.—*Obs.* 3. **Quam** is frequently **understood** after *plūs*, *minus*, and *amplius*, and sometimes after *mājor*, *minor*, and some other comparatives, without a change of case; as, *Capta plūs* (*quam*) *quinque millia hominum*, "More than five thousand men were taken."

Note.—These words are also followed by the ablative without *quam*, according to the rule.

901.—*Obs.* 4. When the second member of a comparison is an **infinitive mood,** or a part of a sentence, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil turpius est quam mentīrī*, "Nothing is baser than to lie."

902.—*Obs.* 5. The comparative is often followed by the ablative of the following nouns, adjectives, and participles, viz.: *opīniōne*, *spē*, *expectātiōne*, *fidē*,—*dictō*, *solitō*,—*aequō*, *crēdibilī*, *justō*; as, *Citius dictō, tumida aequora plācat*, "Quicker than the word he calms the swelling seas,"—VIRG. These ablatives often supply the place of a clause; as, *Gravius aequō*, equivalent to *gravius quam aequum est*, "More severe than is just."

These ablatives are sometimes omitted; as, *Līberius vīvēbat*, sc. *aequō*, "He lived more freely than was proper;" *i. e.*, "He lived too freely," or "rather freely."

903.—*Obs.* 6. When **one quality** is compared **with another,** in the same subject, the adjectives expressing them are both put in the positive degree with *magis quam*, or in the comparative connected by *quam*; as, *Ars magis magna quam difficilis*, "An art rather great than difficult." *Triumphus clārior quam grātior*, "A triumph more famous than acceptable." Gr. Gr., 393, 3. B. & K. Gr. Gr. (879).

904.—*Obs.* 7. *Prō* is used after *quam* to express **proportion;** as, *Praelium atrōcius quam prō numerō pugnantium*, "A battle fiercer than was porportionate to the number of the combatants."

905.—*Obs.* 8. **Alius** is sometimes construed like comparatives, and sometimes, though rarely, is followed by the ablative; as, *Nē putēs alium sapiente bonōque beātum*, "Think not that any other man is happy except (*lit.* than) the wise and good."

906.—*Obs.* 9. The conjunction **ac**, or **atque**, in the sense of *than*, is sometimes used after the comparative degree instead of *quam*; as, *Arctius atque hederā procēra adstringitur īlex*, "More closely than the tall oak is bound with the ivy."

907.—RULE XLIX. Verbs of ***plenty*** and ***scarceness,*** for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat dīvitiīs,	He abounds in riches.
Caret omnī culpā,	He is free from every fault.

908.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative after verbs of *plenty* may be explained as an ablative of ***means*** (873), or of ***limitation*** (889); after verbs of *scarceness*, as an ablative of ***separation*** (916).

909.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs of plenty are such as *Abundo, affluo, exūbero, redundo, suppedito, scateo,* etc.; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, destituor,* etc.

910.—*Obs.* 2. *Egeo* and *indigeo* sometimes govern the ***genitive*** after the analogy of adjectives (776); as, *Eget aeris,* "He needs money."—HOR. *Non tam artis indigent, quam labōris,* "They do not require art so much as labor."—CIC. *So implentur Bacchī.*—VIRG.

911.—RULE L. Verbs of ***loading, binding, clothing, depriving,*** and their contraries, govern the accusative and ablative; as,

Onerat nāvēs aurō,	He loads the ships with gold.

912.—EXPLANATION.—The accusative under this Rule belongs to Rule VIII. The ablative is either an ablative of ***means*** (873), or an ablative of ***separation*** (916).

OBSERVATIONS.

913.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs of loading are *onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo, impleo, expleo, compleo;* of unloading, *levo, exonero,* etc.; of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo,* etc.; of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio,* etc.; of depriving, *privo, nūdo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, ēmungo;* of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corono;* of unclothing, *exuo, discingo,* etc.

914.—*Obs.* 2. These verbs are sometimes followed by the ablative with a ***preposition*** expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catēnis,* "To loose one from chains."—CIC. The ablative is sometimes understood; as, *complet naves,* sc. *viris.*—VIRG.

915.—*Obs.* 3. Several of these verbs denoting to fill, likewise govern the ***genitive;*** as, *Adolescentem suae temeritātis implet*, "He fills the youth with his own rashness." Some of them also vary their construction; as, *induit sē vestibus*, or *vestēs sibi; Abdicāre magistrātum*, SALL.; *Abdicāre sē magistrātū*, CIC. Compare 859.

916.—RULE LI. ***Ablative of Separation.***—Separation from a person or thing is expressed by the ablative case; as,

Nōdōsā corpus prohibēre cheragrā, To save the body from knotty gout.

917.—EXPLANATION.—Though this is the fundamental meaning of the ablative case (872), it is for the most part in prose accompanied by a preposition.

918.—RULE LII. ***Ablative of Origin.***—The participles **nātus, satus, ortus, ēditus,** and the like, govern the ablative of the source; as,

Mercurius Jove nātus, Mercury born of Jupiter.

Obs.—Sometimes also with these words a preposition is expressed; as *ortus ā Germānīs*, "sprung from the Germans," CAES.; *oriundī ā Syrācūsīs*, "having their origin from Syracuse," LIV.

919.—RULE LIII. These adjectives, **dignus, indignus, contentus, praeditus, captus,** and **frētus,** govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honōre,	Worthy of honor.
Contentus parvō,	Content with little.
Praeditus virtūte,	Endued with virtue.
Captus oculīs,	Blind (injured in his eyes).
Frētus vīribus,	Trusting in his strength.

920.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative with *captus* is to be explained as an ablative of ***limitation*** (889), with the rest of these adjectives, as an ablative of ***means*** (873).

921.—Obs. 1. Instead of the ablative, *dignus*, *indignus* often take a ***subjunctive*** clause with *quī*; as, *Dignus quī imperet*, "Worthy to rule;" and sometimes in the poets an infinitive; as, *Dignus amārī*, "Worthy to be loved."—Cic.

922.—Obs. 2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, are sometimes followed by the ***genitive***; as, *Haud indignus avōrum*, "Not unworthy of his ancestors."—Virg.

923.—Rule LIV. **Opus** and **ūsus**, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecūniā,	There is need of money.
Nunc ūsus vīribus,	Now, there is need of strength.

924.—Explanation.—The ablative after these nouns is probably used after the analogy of verbs of ***scarceness*** (908). In this sense, they are used only with the verb **sum**, of which **opus** is sometimes the subject, and sometimes the predicate; **ūsus**, the subject only.

OBSERVATIONS.

925.—Obs. 1. *Opus*, in the ***predicate,*** is commonly used as an indeclinable adjective, in which case it rarely has the ablative; as, *Dux nōbīs opus est*, "We need a general."—Cic. So, *Nōbīs exempla opus sunt*, "Examples are needful for us."—Cic. In these examples, *opus*, as an indeclinable adjective, agrees with *dux* and *exempla*. This construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns, and is always used with those denoting quantity; as, *Quod nōn opus est, asse cārum est*, "What one does not want is dear at any price."—Cato apud Sen.

926.—Obs. 2. *Opus* and *ūsus* are often joined with the ***perfect participle;*** as, *opus mātūrātō*, "need of haste;" *opus consultō*, "need of deliberation;" *ūsus factō*, "need of action." The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it after *opus*; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtiō conventō*, "It behoved me to meet with Hirtius."—Cic. Sometimes the supine is joined with it; as, *Ita dictū opus est*.—Ter.

927.—Obs. 3. *Opus* is often followed by the ***infinitive,*** or by the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Sīquid forte, quod opus sit scīrī*, "If perhaps there is something which needs to be known."—Cic. *Opus est ut lavem*, "I must bathe." Sometimes it is used absolutely without a case, or with a case understood; as, *Sic opus est; Sī opus est.*

928.—Exc. *Opus* and *ūsus* are sometimes followed by the ***genitive;*** as, *Argentī opus fuit*, "There was need of money;" sometimes by an ***accusative,*** in which case an infinitive is probably understood; as, *Puerō opus est cibum; scil. habēre*, "The boy has need of (to have) food." —Plaut.

929.—RULE LV. ***Ablative of Measure.***—The measure of *excess* or *deficiency* is put in the ablative; as,

Sesquipede longior,	Taller by a foot and a half.
Novem pedibus minor,	Less by nine feet.
Quantō doctior, tantō submissior,	The more learned the more humble.

930.—To this Rule are to be referred the ablatives *tantō, quantō, quō, eō, hōc, aliquantō, multō, paulō, nihilō,* etc., frequently joined to comparatives, and sometimes to superlatives.

CIRCUMSTANCES OF PLACE.

931.—The circumstances of place may be reduced to three particulars: 1. The place *where*, or *in which* ;—2. The place *whither*, or *to which* ;—3. The place *whence*, or *from which.*

N. B.—The following rules respecting place, refer chiefly to the ***names of towns.*** Sometimes, though very seldom, the names of countries, provinces, islands, etc., are construed in the same way. With these, however, the preposition is commonly added.

1. *The place* WHERE, *or* IN WHICH.

932.—RULE LVI. The name of a ***town,*** denoting the place ***where,*** or ***in which,*** is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Rōmae,	He lived at Rome.
Mortuus est Mīlētī.	He died at Miletus.

933.—EXC. But if the name of the ***town where,*** or ***in which,*** is of the third declension, or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

Habitat Carthāgine,	He dwells at Carthage.
Studuit Athēnīs,	He studied at Athens.

934.—EXPLANATION.—It is probable that these cases were originally ***Locatives:*** a case with the termination **I** in the singular. This accounts for the form **ae** in the 1st Declension, which was originally **āī** (55); for the

form ī (for oi) in the 2d Declension; and for such forms as *Carthāginī*, *Tīburī*, *rūrī*, in the 3d Declension, which frequently occur in MSS. instead of the ablative in **e**. The Locative case was mostly lost in the ***Dative,*** and the regular Dative occurs frequently for the Locative; as, *domuī*, for *domī*, "at home," in Cicero.

935.—*Obs.* 1. When the name of a town is joined with an adjective, or common noun in apposition, a preposition is commonly added; as, *Rōmae in celebrī urbe;* or, *in celebrī urbe Rōmā;* or, very rarely, *Rōmae celebrī urbe.*

Note.—In this construction, the name of a town, in the third declension, frequently has the ablative singular in *ī: Habitat Carthāginī*, "He lives at Carthage;" *Tīburī genitus*, "Born at Tibur."—Suet. See 934.

936.—*Obs.* 2. The name of the town *where*, or *in which*, is sometimes, though rarely, put in the ***ablative*** when it is of the first or second declension; as, *Tyrō rēx dēcessit*, for *Tyrī*, "The king died at Tyre."—Just.

Obs. 3. The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed before the ablative; as, *In Philippīs quīdam nunciāvit*, "A certain man reported at Philippi." —Suet. *At*, or *near* a place is expressed by *ad*, or *apud*, with the accusative; as, *ad*, or *apud Trōjam*, "at, *or* near Troy."

937.—For ***nouns in general, Locality*** is commonly expressed by the ***ablative*** with a preposition (*in*, *sub*). But the following ablatives are used ***without a preposition:***

1. *Dextrā*, *laevā*, or *sinistrā*, "on the right (left) hand;" *terrā marīque*, "on land and sea;" *bellō*, "in the field."
2. The ablatives of *locus*, *terra*, *regio*, *via*, *iter*, if an attributive is joined with them; as, *locō idōneō*, "in a suitable place."
3. The ablative of any noun with the adjective *tōtus;* as, *tōtā Asiā*, "in the whole of Asia."

2. *The place* WHITHER, *or* TO WHICH.

938.—Rule LVII. The name of a ***town,*** denoting the place ***whither,*** or ***to which,*** is put in the accusative; as,

Vēnit Rōmam,	He came to Rome.
Profectus est Athēnās,	He went to Athens.

Obs. 4. Among the poets, the town *to which* is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Carthāginī nunciōs mittam*, "I will send messengers to Carthage." —Hor. But this is probably better explained as Dative of interest. See 818.

939.—*Obs.* 5. After verbs of *telling*, and *giving*, when motion *to* is implied, the name of a town is sometimes put in the accusative; as, *Rōmam erat nunciātum*, "The report was carried to Rome;" *Messānam literās dedit*, "He sent a letter to Messana."

940.—For ***nouns in general***, *motion to* is commonly expressed by the ***accusative*** with a preposition (*ad*, *in*, etc.); *dūcitur in carcerem*, "He is led into prison."

3. *The place* WHENCE, *or* FROM WHICH.

941.—Rule LVIII. The name of a ***town whence*** or *from which*, *by* or *through which*, is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corinthō,	He departed from Corinth.
Lāodicēā iter fēcit,	He went through Laodicea.

942.—*Obs.* 6. The place by or through which, however, is commonly put in the accusative with *per*; as, *Per Thēbās iter fēcit.*—Nep.

4. *Domus* and *rus.*

943.—Rule LIX. **Domus** and **rūs** are construed in the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet domī (934),	He stays at home.
Domum revertitur (938),	He returns home.
Domō arcessītus sum (941),	I am called from home.

So also,

Vīvit rūre or *rūrī* (934),	He lives in the country.
Abiit rūs (938),	He is gone to the country.
Rediit rūre (941),	He has returned from the country.

944.—*Obs.* 7. **Humī, mīlitiae**, and **bellī**, are likewise construed in the genitive like names of towns; as, *jacet humī*, "he lies on the ground;" *domī et mīlitiae* (or *bellī*), "at home or abroad."

945.—*Obs.* 8. When *domus* is joined with an ***adjective,*** the preposition is commonly used; as, *in domō paternā.* So, *ad domum paternam, ex domō paternā.* Except with *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, rēgius,* and *aliēnus;* then it follows the rule. When *domus* has another substantive after it in the genitive, it may be used with or without a preposition; as, *dēprehensus est domī, domō,* or *in domō Caesaris.*

946.—*Obs.* 9. *Rūs,* and *rūre,* in the singular, joined with an adjective, are used with, or without, a preposition. But *rūra,* in the plural, is never without it.

947.—*Obs.* 10. The names of countries, provinces, and ***all other places*** except towns, are commonly construed with a preposition; as, *nātus in Italiā; abiit in Italiam; rediit ex Italiā; transit per Italiam,* etc. A few cases occur, however, in which names of countries, provinces, etc., are construed like the names of towns, without a preposition; as, *Pompeius Cyprī vīsus est,* etc., "Pompey was seen at Cyprus."—Caes.

948.—*Obs.* 11. The word containing an answer to the question *whither?* is often put by the poets in the ***accusative*** without a preposition; as, *Spēluncam Dīdō dux et Trōjānus eandem dēveniunt,* "Dido and the Trojan leader come to the same cave."—Virg. Likewise, the answer to the question *where?* or *whence?* in the ablative, without a preposition; as, *Silvīs corpora foeda jacent,* "Foul corpses lie in the woods." So, *cadere nūbibus,* "to fall from the clouds;" *descendere coelō,* "to descend from the sky."

CIRCUMSTANCES OF TIME.

949.—Rule LX. Time ***when,*** is put in the ablative; as,

Vēnit hōrā tertiā,	He came at the third hour.

950.—Rule LXI. Time ***how long,*** is put in the accusative, rarely in ablative; as,

Mansit paucōs diēs,	He stayed a few days.
Sex mensibus abfuit,	He was absent six months.

951.—Explanation.—A ***precise period,*** or point of time, is usually put in the ablative,—***continuance of*** time, not marked with precision, for the most part, in the accusative,—***time within which,*** by the ablative alone, or with a preposition: *vix decem annīs ūnam cēpit urbem,* "in ten years he hardly took one city."

952.**—Note.*—A point of ***future time for which an arrangement is now made, is expressed by *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *ad prandium mē invītāvit in posterum diem*, "he invited me to dine with him next day;" *ad Īdūs Aprīlis revertiminī*, "come back by the 13th of April."

OBSERVATIONS.

953.**—Obs.* 1. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a ***preposition; such as, *in*, *dē*, *ad*, *ante*, *circā*, *per*, etc. Sometimes *ad*, or *circā*, is understood before *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *isthūc*, with *aetātis temporis*, *hōrae*, etc., following in the genitive; as (*ad*) *id temporis*, for *eō tempore*, etc.

954.**—Obs.* 2. ***Precise time, before or after another fixed time, is expressed by **ante**, or **post**, regarded as adverbs, either with the accusative or ablative; as, *aliquot ante annōs*, "a few years before;" *paucīs ante diēbus*, "a few days before;" *paucōs post diēs*, "a few days after," etc.; *ante* or *post* preceding the accusative or usually following the ablative.

So, to express *three years before* or *after*, we may have any of these expressions:

Accusative.	Ablative.
Ante, or *post trēs annōs.*	*Tribus annīs ante*, or *post.*
Ante, or *post tertium annum.*	*Tertiō annō ante*, or *post.*
Trēs ante, or *post annōs.*	*Tribus ante*, or *post annīs.*
Tertium ante, or *post annum.*	*Tertiō ante*, or *post annō.*

955.—Frequently **quam**, with a verb, is added to *ante*, or *post;* as, *Paucīs post diēbus quam Lūcā discesserat*, "A few days after he had departed from Luca." Sometimes *post* is omitted before *quam;* as, *Diē vīgēsimā quam creātus erat*, "The twentieth day after he was appointed."

***956.**—Obs.* 3. Instead of *postquam*, we sometimes find **ex quō**, or *quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Octo diēbus quibus hās līterās dabam*, "Eight days after I gave these letters," *i. e.*, the same eight days, at the beginning of which I sent this letter.

***957.**—Obs.* 4. The adverb **abhinc** is used to express time since an event, joined with the accusative or ablative, without a preposition; as, *Factum est abhinc bienniō*, or *biennium*, "It was done two years ago."

CIRCUMSTANCES OF MEASURE.

958.—Rule LXII. ***Measure*** or ***distance*** is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Mūrus est decem pedēs altus,	The wall is ten feet high.
Urbs distat trīgintā millia, or *trīgintā millibus passuum,*	The city is distant thirty miles.
Iter, or *itinere ūnīus diēī,*	One day's journey.

OBSERVATIONS.

959.—*Obs.* 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after such adjectives and verbs of dimension as *longus*, *lātus*, *crassus*, *profundus*, *altus; Patet*, *porrigitur*, *ēminet*, etc. The names of measure are *pēs*, *cubitus*, *ulnus*, *digitus*, *palmus*, *mille passuum*, "a mile," etc.

960.—*Obs.* 2. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *eo*, *curro*, *dūco*, *absum*, *disto*, etc. The accusative, under this rule, may be governed by *ad* or *per*, understood, and the ablative by *ā*, or *ab*.

961.—*Obs.* 3. When the measure of more things than one is expressed, the ***distributive numeral*** is commonly used; as, *Mūrī sunt dēnōs pedēs altī*, "The walls are each ten feet high." Sometimes *dēnum pedum*, for *dēnōrum*, is used in the genitive, governed by *ad mensūram*, understood. But the genitive is used in the plural only to express the measure of things.

962.—*Obs.* 4. The distance of the place where any thing is said to be done, is usually expressed in the ablative or in the accusative with a preposition; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe consedit;* or, *ad sex millia passuum*, "He encamped six miles from the city."—Caes.

963.—*Obs.* 5. Sometimes the place from which distance is estimated is not expressed, though the preposition governing it is, and may be rendered *off*, *distant* etc.; as, *Ab sex millibus passuum abfuit*, "He was six miles off, *or* distant" (scil. *Rōmā*, from Rome).

For the measure of difference (excess or deficiency), see 929.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

964.—When a noun or a pronoun, together with a participle or an adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not grammatically connected with the rest of the sentence, they are said to be ***absolute*** (loosed from the other words of the sentence).

965.—Rule LXIII. ***Ablative Absolute.***—Words used absolutely are put in the ablative case, called the ablative absolute; as,

Tarquiniō regnante, Pythagorās vēnit,	While Tarquin was king (*lit.* T. reigning), Pythagoras came.
Tēlis conjectīs, aciem perfrēgērunt,	By pouring in darts (*lit.* darts having been poured in), they broke through the line.
Nātūrā duce, errārī nōn potest,	If nature is our guide (*lit.* nature (being) guide), no mistake can be made.

966.—Explanation.—It is clear that the absolute clause in the first of these examples tells the ***time*** of the action; in the second, tells the ***means;*** in the third, tells the ***condition*** or ***circumstances*** under which the principal assertion holds true; and the ablative was doubtless used in Latin for the case absolute, because that case by itself expresses ***Time, Means,*** or ***Attendant Circumstances.***

967.—*Obs.* 1. As there is no ***Perfect Participle Active*** in Latin (except in the case of deponent verbs), this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the ablative absolute, agreeing with what was before its own object; thus, "Caesar, having landed his army, hastens against the enemy," cannot be rendered exactly in Latin, since there is no word precisely answering to "having landed;" but it may be translated by a slight change: "Caesar, his army having been landed, etc.," *Caesar, exercitū expositō, ad hostēs contendit.*

968.—*Obs.* 2. But ***Deponent verbs,*** having the perfect participle (of passive form) with active meaning, admit of a literal rendering of the English; thus, "Caesar, having said these things, dismissed the council," *Caesar, haec locūtus, concilium dīmīsit.* Sometimes both forms are combined: *Caesar, equīs omnium remōtīs, cohortātus suōs, proelium commīsit,* "Caesar, having removed the horses of all, having exhorted his men, joined battle."

969.—*Obs.* 3. Very rarely the ablative absolute is used when the participle might more naturally ***agree with a noun*** in the main sentence: *Legio ex castrīs Varrōnis, adstante ipsō,* "A legion from the camp of Varro, while V. himself was standing by,"—where we should expect *adstantis ipsīus* to agree with *Varrōnis.*

970.—*Obs.* 4. The force of the participle, as representing a clause, is enhanced by the addition of *nisi* (later, also, *quanquam, quasi, velut,* etc.), *nisi tē in ista sententia manente,* "unless you remain firm in that mind."

971.—*Obs.* 5. Some word, phrase, or clause of a sentence, sometimes supplies the place of the substantive, and has a participle with it in the ablative; as, *Nōndum compertō quam regiōnem hostīs petīssent,* "It being not yet ascertained what country the enemy had gone to;" *Audītō Dārīum appropinquāre,* "It being heard that Darius was drawing near."

972.—*Obs.* 6. The verb sum having no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and adjective, are used in the case absolute without a participle, which is supplied in English by the word *being*; thus, *sē duce*, "he (being) leader;" *sē consule*, "he (being) consul," or, "in his consulship;" so, *C. Duilliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā consulibus.*

CONSTRUCTION OF THE VOCATIVE.

973.—The vocative is used to designate the person or thing addressed, but forms no part of the proposition with which it stands; and it is used either with or without an interjection.

974.—RULE LXIV. The vocative case indicates the object spoken to; as,

Rectē tē, Cȳre, beātum ferunt,	With reason, Cyrus, do they proclaim thee happy.

975.—RULE LXV. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the vocative; as,

O formōse puer!	O fair boy!

976.—To these may be added other interjections of calling or addressing; as, *ah*, *au*, *ehem*, *eheu*, *eho*, *ēja*, *hem*, *heus*, *huī*, *iō*, *ohē*, and *vah*, which are often followed by the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, *Ohē libelle.*

977.—*Obs.* 1. In exclamations, the person or thing wondered at, is put in the accusative, either with or without an interjection. See 725.

978.—*Obs.* 2. A substantive in apposition with a vocative is sometimes in the nominative; as, *Audī tū, populus Albānus*, "Hear, O thou people of Alba." Sometimes even without apposition: *Praeī verba, pontifex maximus*, "Repeat before me the words, O chief pontiff."

979.—*Obs.* 3. The interjections *Heī* and *Vae* govern the dative. See 727.

980.—*Obs.* 4. *Ecce* and *ēn* usually take the nominative; as, *Ecce nova turba atque rixa.* *Ēn ego.* See 726.

CASES GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

981.—Rule LXVI. ***Twenty-eight*** prepositions, *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, etc., govern the accusative; as,

Ad patrem,	To the father.

982.—Rule LXVII. ***Fifteen*** prepositions, *ā*, *ab*, *abs*, etc., govern the ablative; as,

Ā patre,	From the father.

Explanation.—The twenty-eight prepositions which govern the accusative are those contained in the list 469, and the fifteen governing the ablative are those in 470.

983.—*Note.*—**Ab** is used before vowels and *h*; *ā*, or *ab* before consonants. **Abs** is very seldom used except in the phrase, *abs tē.*

OBSERVATIONS.

984.—*Obs.* 1. **Clam**, one of these fifteen, is sometimes followed by the accusative; as, *clam vōs*, "without your knowledge." When followed by a genitive or dative, a substantive may be understood, or it may be regarded as an adverb; as, *Clam patris*, Ter.; *Mihi clam est*, Plaut.

985.—*Obs.* 2. **Tenus**, after a plural noun, commonly governs it in the genitive; as, *labrōrum tenus*, "up to the lips;" and always follows its case. It is properly an indeclinable noun, "the direction."

986.—*Obs.* 3. **Cum** is appended to the ablative of personal pronouns, and often to the relative (245): *mēcum*, *nōbīscum*, *quibuscum* or *cum quibus.*

987.—Rule LXVIII. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, denoting ***motion to***, or ***tendency towards***, govern the accusative; as,

Vēnit in Urbem,	He came into the city.
Amor in tē,	Love towards thee.
Sub jugum missus est,	He was sent under the yoke.
Incidit super agmina,	It fell upon the troops.

988.—RULE LXIX. The prepositions *in* and *sub*, denoting ***situation,*** govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* the accusative, or, sometimes, the ablative; as,

Jacet in terrā,	He lies upon the ground.
Mediā in urbe,	In the middle of the city.
In poētīs,	Among the poets.
Sub moenibus,	Under the walls.

989.—*Obs.* 4. The few apparent exceptions to these rules are either corrected in the best editions, or are instances of what is called "locūtio praegnans," where a preposition of *rest* is connected with a verb of *motion*, or *v. v.* This is very common in Greek.

990.—*Obs.* 5. **Super,** in the sense of "concerning," governs the ablative: *Rogitans super Hectore multa,* "Asking much about Hector."

991.—*Obs.* 6. The preposition **in,** with the accusative, usually signifies *into, towards, until, for, against;* with the ablative *in, upon, among.* With both cases, however, considerable variety of translation is necessary to convey correctly the idea of the original. The following are instances: "In the case of," *tālis in hoste fuit Priamō.*—VIRG. "On account of," *in quō factō domum revocātus;*—*In sex mensibus,* "within six months;" *in diēs,* "from day to day;" where there is progressive increase or decrease. So, *in hōrās,* "from hour to hour;" *in capita,* "per head;" *in pueritiā,* "during boyhood;" *in hōc tempore,* "at this time," etc.

992.—*Obs.* 7. The ***preposition*** is frequently ***understood*** before its cases; as, *Dēvēnēre locōs,* VIRG.; *Homo id aetātis,* CIC.; *Propior montem,* SALL.; in which *ad* is perhaps understood. So, *Nunc id prōdeo,* sc. *ob.*—TER. *Maria aspera jūro,* sc. *per.* *Sē locō movēre,* sc. *ē,* or *dē.* *Quid illō faciās?* sc. *in* or *dē,* "What can you do in this case?"

993.—RULE LXX. A preposition in ***composition*** often governs its own case; as,

Adeāmus urbem,	Let us go to the city.
Exeāmus urbe,	Let us go out of the city.

EXPLANATION.—By "its own case" is meant the case it governs when not in composition. This rule only takes place when the preposition may be separated from the verb, and placed before the case without altering the sense. Thus, *adeāmus urbem* and *eāmus ad urbem* express the same thing.

994.—*Obs.* 8. The ***preposition*** is often ***repeated*** after the compound word; the case is then governed by the preposition repeated; as, *ex nāvibus expositi*, "being landed from the ships."—CAES.

Note.—Some verbs never have the preposition repeated after them; such as, *Affāris*, *alloquor*, *allatro*, *alluo*, *accolo*; *circum* with *venio*, *eo*, *sto*, *sedeo*, *volo*; *obeo*, *praetereo*, *abdico*, *effero*, *ēverto*, etc. Some compounds with *inter* and *praeter*, commonly omit the preposition. The compounds f *in*, *ob*, and *sub*, generally take the dative (826); those of *super* generally the accusative.

995.—*Obs.* 9. Some verbs compounded with ē or ex are followed by an accusative or ablative; as, *Exīre līmen*, "To pass the threshold," TER.; *Exīre septīs*, "To get out of the enclosure," VIRG. Some words compounded with *prae* take an accusative; as, *Tibur aquae praefluunt*, "Streams flow past Tibur," HOR. When the accusative is used, the verb has become a transitive one. (712.)

CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

996.—RULE LXXI. ***Adverbs*** modify ***verbs***, ***adjectives***, and other ***adverbs***.

Bene scrībit,	He writes well.
Fortiter pugnans,	Fighting bravely.
Ēgregiē fidēlis,	Remarkably faithful.
Satis bene,	Well enough.

OBSERVATIONS.

997.—*Obs.* 1. Adverbs are sometimes joined with nouns, when used ***adjectively***; as, *Homērus plānē ōrātor*, "Homer evidently an orator."

Obs. 2. The adverb is usually placed near the word modified or limited by it.

Negatives.

998.—*Obs.* 3. ***Two negatives*** in Latin, as well as in English, destroy each other, or are equivalent to an affirmative; as, *Nec nōn sensērunt*, "Nor did they not perceive;" *i. e.*, *et sensērunt*, "and they did perceive." So, *Nōn poteram nōn exanimārī metū*, "I could not but be overcome with fear."—CIC. *Nōn sum nescius*, i. e., *scio*; *haud nihil est*, "it is not nothing," *i. e.*, "it is something;" *nōnnullī*, "not none," *i. e.*, "some;" *nōnnunquam*, "not never," *i. e.*, sometimes;" *nōn nēmo*, "not nobody," *i. e.*, "somebody," etc.

999.—*Obs.* 4. *Exc.* In imitation of the Greek, however, two negatives in Latin, as well as in English, sometimes make a stronger negative; as, *Neque ille haud objiciet mihi*, "He will not by any means object to me." *Dēbēbat Epicūrus nullum nummum nēminī*, "Epicurus owed not a penny to anybody." *Neque*, and *nec*, and sometimes *nōn*, are especially thus used after a negative; as, *Nōn mē carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Linus.*

1000.—*Obs.* 5. *Nōn* sometimes seems to be omitted after **nōn modo**, or *nōn sōlum*, when followed in a subsequent clause by **nē quidem**; as, *Mihi nōn modo īrascī* (i. e. *nōn īrascī*), *sed nē dolēre quidem impūne licet.* But in these cases the verb in the second clause is negatived by *nē*, and belongs to both clauses.

1001.—*Obs.* 6. Certain ***adverbs*** are joined to ***adjectives***, and also to adverbs, in all the degrees of comparison, for the purpose of imparting greater force to their signification; as,

1st. To the ***positive*** are joined such adverbs as, *apprīmē, admodum, vehementer, maximē, perquam, valdē, oppidō*, and *per*, in composition; as, *grātum admodum*, "very agreeable;" *perquam puerīle*, "very childish;" etc. In like manner, *parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum;* as, *parum firmus; multum bonus.*

1002.—2d. To the ***comparative*** are joined, *paulō, nimiō, aliquantō, eō, quō, hōc, impendiō, nihilō;* as, *Eō gravior est dolor quō culpa mājor*, "Grief is more severe in proportion as the fault is greater."—Cic. Sometimes, also, *parum, multum*, etc., as with the positive.

1003.—3d. To the ***superlative*** are joined *longē, quam, facile*, meaning "certainly," "undoubtedly;" also, *tantō, quantō, multō*, etc.; as, *facile doctissimus*, "certainly the most learned;" *longē bellicōsissima* (sc. *gens*), "by far the most warlike;" *quam maximās potest cōpiās armat*, "he arms as great forces as possible."

1004.—4th. **Quam** (and also **ut**) is also used as an intensive word with the ***positive***, but in a sense somewhat different, resembling an exclamation; as, *quam difficile est!* "how difficult it is!" *quam*, or *ut crūdēlis?* "how cruel!" *flens quam familiāriter*, "weeping how affectionately," *i. e.*, very affectionately; *quam sevērē*, "how severely," *i. e.*, very severely.

CASES GOVERNED BY ADVERBS.

1005.—Rule LXXII. Some adverbs of ***time***, ***place***, and ***quantity***, govern the genitive; as,

Prīdiē ējus diēī,	The day before that day.
Ubīque gentium,	Everywhere.
Satis est verbōrum,	There is enough of words.

1006.—1. Adverbs of ***time*** governing the genitive are, *intereā, posteā, inde, tunc;* as, *intereā locī,* "in the meantime;" *posteā locī,* "afterwards;" *inde locī,* "then;" *tunc temporis,* "at that time." (771.)

1007.—2. Of **place,** *ubi* and *quō,* with their compounds, *ubīque, ubicunque, ubiubi, quōvīs,* etc. Also, *eō, hūc, hūccine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longē, ibīdem,* etc.; as, *unde terrārum,* or *gentium; longē gentium; ibidem locī.* Also *hūc, eō,* and *quō,* expressing degree; as, *Eō audāciae—vēcordiae—miseriārum,* etc., "To that pitch of boldness—madness—misery," etc.

1008.—3. Of ***quantity,*** *abundē, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minimē;* as, *abundē glōriae; affatim divitiārum; largiter aurī; satis ēloquentiae sapientiae parum est illī,* or *habet,* "he has enough of glory, riches," etc.; *minimē gentium,* "by no means." (762, 771.)

1009.—*Obs.* 1. **Ergō** (for the sake of), **instar,** and *partim,* also govern the genitive; as, *dōnārī virtūtis ergō,* "to be presented on account of virtue." *Instar* is properly a neuter noun, meaning "an image;" *equum instar montis,* "a horse like (an image of) a mountain."

1010.—*Obs.* 2. *Prīdiē* and *postrīdiē* govern the genitive or accusative; as, *Prīdiē Kalendārum,* or *prīdiē Kalendās,* sup. *ante; Postrīdiē Kalendārum,* or *Kalendās,* sup. *post.*

1011.—*Obs.* 3. *Ēn* and *Ecce* govern the nominative or accusative; as, *En causa; Ecce homo,* or *hominem;* sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce duās ārās tibi.*—Virg. In such constructions, a verb may be understood.

1012.—*Obs,* 4. Certain prepositions used adverbially by the poets, are followed by the dative; as, *Mihi clam est,* "It is unknown to me." *Contrā nōbīs.*

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

I. Personal Pronouns.

1013.—The ***nominative*** cases of the Personal Pronouns are not expressed except when necessary for emphasis, being sufficiently indicated by the person-endings of the verb:—

Sentīmus calēre ignem,	We feel that fire is hot.
Nōs consulēs dēsumus,	We, the consuls, fail in our duty.

1014.—*Obs.* 1. There is, properly speaking, no personal pronoun of the ***third*** person. The place of it is commonly supplied by the distinctive pronoun **is**, and sometimes by the demonstrative **ille**. See 239.

1015.—*Obs.* 2. The ***plural*** of the first person is often used for the singular: *nōs* for *ego*, *nōbīs* for *mihi;* and so also the possessive *noster* for *meus*. But the plural of the second person is not, as in English, used for the singular.

1016.—*Obs.* 3. In the ***genitive plural*** the forms *nostrum*, *vestrum*, are used as partitive genitives (771), and in connection with *omnium:* *ūnus nostrum*, "one of us" (not *nostrī*); *omnium vestrum voluntās*, "the wish of you all."

1017.—*Obs.* 4. The forms **nostrī**, **vestrī** (and so also the genitives, *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*), are not true plurals, but are really Genitives sing. neuter of the Possessives *noster*, *vester* (*meus*, *tuus*, *suus*); and thus a gerundive is used in the gen. sing. neut. to agree with them, without regard to their reference: *memor nostrī*, "mindful of (our interest) us;" *cōpia plācandī tuī*, "an opportunity of pacifying (your mind) you (of a woman);" *vestrī adhortandī causā*, "for the sake of stimulating (your courage) you."

II. Reflective Pronouns.

1018.—A ***Reflective Pronoun*** is one which implies that the subject acts upon himself; and, consequently, such pronouns have no nominative case, since the subject of the sentence is their nominative for the time being: *mē consōlor*, "I console myself;" *tibi nocēs*, "you harm yourself;" *Balbus sē dīligit*, "Balbus loves himself." In the last instance, *Balbus* being the subject, and the person to whom *sē* refers, shows that *sē* is singular and masculine; but in *puellae sē admīrantur*, "girls admire themselves," the subject, *puellae*, makes *sē* feminine and plural.

1019.—The ***oblique cases*** of the First and Second Personal Pronouns are used sometimes in a reflective, and sometimes in a reciprocal sense:

Omnēs nōs amāmus,	We all love ourselves. (Reflective.)
Inter nōs colloquimur,	We converse with each other. (Reciprocal.)

1020.—In ***simple sentences*** the Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person, **sē**, and its Possessive, **suus**, are used chiefly in reference to the ***subject:***

Nīciās tuā suī memoriā dēlectātur,	Nicias is pleased at your recollection of him.
Bestiīs hominēs ūtuntur ad suam ūtilitātem,	Men use animals for their own advantage.

1021.—*Obs.* 1. The Possessive *suus* sometimes refers to the ***object,*** or to another word: *Caesarem sua nātūra mitiōrem facit,* "His own nature makes Caesar more gentle;" and sometimes this leads to an ambiguity which the context only can clear up: *Scīpio suās rēs Syrācūsānīs restituit,* "Scipio restored their own (not *his*) property to the Syracusans;" *Justitia suum cuīque tribuit,* "Justice assigns to each his own (not *her own*)."

1022.—*Obs.* 2. When the subject is the First or Second Person, to which, of course, *sē, suus* could not refer, they are used freely in reference to another word: *Dicaearchum cum Aristoxenō, aequālī et condiscipulō suō, omittāmus,* "Let us omit D. with A., his contemporary and fellow disciple."

1023.—*Obs.* 3. But generally, unless there is such close connection between the words as is seen in the above examples, the distinctive pronoun is is used in reference to any other noun than the subject: *Deum agnoscis ex operibus ējus* (not *suīs*), "You recognize God from his works."

1024.—In ***complex sentences,*** when *sē* or *suus* occurs in the subordinate clause, the reference is regularly to the subject of the ***principal*** sentence:

Caesar omnibus, quī contrā sē armā tulerant, ignōvit,	Ceasar forgave all, who had taken up arms against him.

1025.—*Obs.* 4. But sometimes *sē* (*suus*) refers to the subject of the ***subordinate*** clause; and sometimes occurs twice, referring once to the principal, and once to the subordinate object: *Incusāvit eōs quod sibi quaerendum putārent,* "He found fault with them because they thought it was their business to inquire." *Ariovistus dixit nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse,* "A. said that no one had contended with him without his own ruin."

1026.—*Obs.* 5. The reference of *sē* to a subordinate subject is not allowed if ambiguity is caused by it; and occurs most frequently in such idiomatic expressions as, *quid sibi vellet,* where the verb and the pronoun form but one notion. The oblique cases of the distinctive pronoun **ipse** are often used in reference to a subordinate subject if expressed with emphasis: *Senātus dixit nōn suā negligentiā, sed ipsīus subitō adventū factum,* "The Senate said that it happened not through any negligence on their part, but owing to his (Pompey's) sudden arrival."

III. Possessive Pronouns.

1027.—***Possessive Pronouns*** are seldom expressed, unless they are emphatic, or the reference is obscure:

Apud mātrem rectē est,	All is well with (your) mother.

Obs. Possessive pronouns, being equivalent to the genitive of the corresponding Personal, often have a genitive in apposition to the person implied in them. See 628.

IV. Demonstrative Pronouns.

1028.—

Hic is the demonstrative of the ***First*** Person: *this near me.*
Iste is the demonstrative of the ***Second*** Person: *that near you.*
Ille is the demonstrative of the ***Third*** Person: *that yonder.*

Jūdex hic noster,	This judge of ours.
Mūtā istam mentem,	Change that purpose of yours.
Jacet ille nunc prōstrātus,	Yonder he lies now prostrate.

1029.—*Obs.* 1. When two things have been mentioned, **hic** commonly, but not always, refers to the ***latter,*** as being conceived to be nearer to the speaker, and **ille** to the ***former.*** Compare the French *celui-ci* and *celui-là. Caesar beneficiīs magnus habēbātur, integritāte vītae Cato. Ille mansuētūdine clārus factus, huic sevēritās dignitātem addiderat,* "Ceasar was counted great for his generosity, Cato for the purity of his life. The former had gained renown by his gentleness; on the latter, sternness had conferred distinction."

1030.—*Obs.* 2. **Ille** often denotes "that ***well-known:***" *Epamīnōndās ille moriens apud Mantinēam,* "That famous E. dying near Mantinea."

1031.—*Obs.* 3. From being the pronoun of the second person **iste** came to be applied to that which is opposite to the speaker, particularly in courts of law; and in this way it gained the notion of ***depreciation*** or contempt which often attaches to it: *Ex quibus generibus hominum istae cōpiae comparantur,* "From what sorts of men those (vile) forces are got together."

V. Distinctive Pronouns.

1032.—The ***Distinctive Pronouns*** are **is, idem,** and **ipse,** which are all derived from the same root, and correspond in use exactly to the Greek Αὐτός. They all refer to objects as distinguished from others by the ***words of the sentence,*** and not, as do the Demonstratives, by their existing in this or that part of space. See Donaldson, Lat. Gr. p. 74.

1033.—**Is** refers to some person or thing distinguished by the context:

Asinius mortuus est. Is quum habēret fīliam ūnicam, eam haerēdem bonīs suīs instituit,	Asinius died. This man having an only daughter, left her heir to his property.

1034.—**Īdem** (*the same*) generally refers an additional predicate to a subject already mentioned:

Cicero ōrātor erat, īdemque philosophus,	Cicero was an orator and also (*lit.* the same) a philosopher.

1035.—**Ipse** (*self, very,*) gives emphasis to a word with which it agrees:

Quaeram ex ipsā muliere,	I will ask the woman herself.
Tulliola fuit praestō nātālī suō ipsō diē,	Tullia was there, just on her birth day.

1036.—*Obs.* 1. In use **is** corresponds to the oblique cases of Αὐτός, used without a noun; **Idem** answers to ὁ Αὐτός; and **ipse** to Αὐτός, used in agreement with a noun or pronoun.

1037.—*Obs.* 2. **Is** is often joined to a ***conjunction,*** in the sense of our "and that too:" *Vincula vērō, et ea sempiterna,* "Bonds indeed, and that too lasting for ever."

1038.—*Obs.* 3. **Is** and **Idem** are constantly used as ***antecedents*** to the relative pronoun; and then *is—quī* sometimes means "such—as," and *īdem—quī,* "the same—as" (690): *Neque tū is es, quī quid sīs nesciās,* "Nor are you such a one as not to know what you are;" *Eōdem modō mē dēcēpit quō tē,* "He has deceived me in the same way as (he has) you."

Note.—After **īdem**, instead of *quī,* we sometimes have **ac, atque, ut:** *Eīsdem ferē verbīs expōnimus ut disputātum est,* "We set the matter forth in nearly the same words as those it was discussed with."

1039.—*Obs.* 4. **Ipse,** when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the ***subject*** or ***object,*** according to the degree of emphasis: *Cato sē ipse interēmit,* "Cato slew himself;" *Frātrem suum, dein sē ipsum interfēcit,* "He slew his brother, and afterwards himself."

VI. Relative Pronouns.

The construction of the Relative Pronoun is sufficiently explained in 683–708.

VII. Interrogative Pronouns.

1040.—Questions are of two kinds:

(1.) ***Fact-questions,*** which inquire about a ***fact:*** *i. e.*, whether a statement is true or not. These expect for their answer "yes" or "no." Such is, "Did Brutus kill Caesar?"

(2.) ***Word-questions,*** which inquire about the ***words*** which would correctly state a fact, assuming the fact itself to be real.

These expect for their answer some noun, verb, or adverb. Such are, "Who killed Caesar?" "When did Brutus kill Caesar?" "How did Brutus kill Caesar?"

Note.—It is to be observed that we naturally ask Fact-questions with the rising inflection, and Word-questions with the falling inflection.

1041.—Interrogative Pronouns and interrogative adverbs are used in asking ***word-questions.***

The interrogatives **quis** and **quid** are regularly used as ***substantives,*** *i. e.*, without nouns; and **quī** and **quod** as ***adjectives,*** *i. e.*, in agreement with nouns.

Quis mē vocat?	Who calls me?
Quod nefārium stuprum nōn per illum?	What monstrous wickedness has not come about through him?

1042.—*Obs.* 1. Sometimes **quis** appears to be used adjectively: *quis eum senātor appellāvit*, "what senator accosted him?" but in such cases the noun is rather to be regarded as an appositive. (622.)

1043.—*Obs.* 2. Sometimes **quī** is used without a noun: then it rather means "what sort of—": *quī sīs, nōn unde nātus sīs, reputā*, "consider who you are, not whence you were born."

1044.—*Obs.* 3. Sometimes **quis** and **quem** are used in reference to females.

1045.—*Obs.* 4. If only two persons or things are spoken about, **uter** is used, and not **quis**: *quaeritur ex duōbus uter dignior, ex plūribus quis dignissimus*, "we ask, of two which is the worthier, of several which is the worthiest."

1046.—*Note.*—Uter is sometimes found as a relative: *haec eī molesta erunt, in utrō culpa erit*, "these things will be vexatious to that one of the two in whom the fault shalt be."—Cic.

VIII. Indefinite Pronouns.

1047.—When a speaker refers to some member or members of a class, which he is either unable or unwilling to specify distinctly, he makes use of an ***indefinite pronoun.*** "Some men say"—"a certain man went"—"any one can say." But he may suggest that the individuals referred to are more or less definitely selected and contemplated in his mind. The several indefinite pronouns in Latin, accordingly, differ from each other in regard to the range or latitude of choice which the speaker has in his thoughts. They may be arranged in the following order:

Quis means "any one," "a man," without any further suggestion.

Quisque means "each one" of the class, referred to separately.

Quīlibet (*quīvīs*) means "any one" of the class, selected at pleasure.

Quīdam means "some one" in particular, known to the speaker.

Aliquis (*quispiam*) means "some one" in particular, not necessarily known.

Quisquam (*ullus*) means "any at all," hardly any, perhaps none to be found.

1048.—**Quis,** "any one," is always ***enclitic:*** *i. e.*, attached in sound to a preceding word, very often to the *relative*, *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, *num*, and the inseparable *ec-*, which makes it interrogative.

Proprium est quod quis aere mercātus est,	What a man has bought with money is his own.
Ecquid attendis?	Do you mark at all?

1049.—*Obs.* 1. **Quī** and **quod** are used ***adjectively:*** *sī quī etiam inferīs sensus est*, "if there is any feeling to the shades."

1050.—**Quisque,** "each," regards all the members of a class separately. It has four chief uses:

(1.) In connection with the ***reflective*** pronoun, after which it generally stands.

Suum quisque noscat ingenium,	Let each man learn his own capacity.

1051.—(2.) In connection with the ***relative*** pronoun. It then stands in the relative clause, though "each" stands in English in the antecedent clause—

Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat,	Let each man exercise himself in the art which he has learned.

1052.—(3.) In connection with ***superlatives*** (often two), it implies that the assertion in the predicate is regulated in its intensity by the degree of the quality attributed by the adjective:

Altissima quaeque flūmina minimō sonō lābuntur,	The deepest rivers slip along with least sound.

1053.—*Obs.* 2. Often the two superlatives belong to different clauses, and then *ut quisque* begins the first, and *ita* the second: *Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillimē esse aliōs improbōs suspicātur*, "The better a man is, the more hard does he find it to suspect others to be scoundrels."

1054.—(4.) In connection with **ordinal** numerals, to give them the notion of exactness or of regular recurrence:

Decimus quisque fustī necātur,	Every tenth man is beaten to death.
Prīmō quōque tempore ad senātum refertur,	At the earliest possible moment a motion is made to the Senate.

1055.—**Quilibet** and **quivis**, *any you please*, give the widest range of selection. If the class consists of two only, *utervīs*, *uterlibet*, are employed.

Quīvīs homo potest quemvīs turpem dē quōlibet rūmōrem prōferre,	Any man can put forth any disgraceful report about anybody.

1056.—**Quidam**, *a certain one*, refers to some particular one, known to the speaker.

Nōn pugnās narrat, quod quīdam facit,	He does not talk of his battles as a certain person (I could name) does.

1057.—*Obs.* 3. *Quīdam* is often used to modify some strong epithet or metaphor: often with *quasi*, "as it were:" *Omnēs bonae artēs quasi cognātiōne quādam inter sē continentur*, "All good arts are bound together as it were by a kind of kinship."

1058.—**Aliquis**, *some one*, refers to some particular one, though it may not be known which.

Feret haec aliquam tibi fāma salūtem,	This fame will bring you some safety.

1059.—*Obs.* 4. The indefinite pronouns and adverbs (*aliquandō*, *aliquamdiū*, etc.), compounded with the inseparable prefix **ali–**, require for the most part the English **some** (emphatically opposed to *much*, *all*, etc.), in their translation: *est hoc aliquid, tametsī nōn est satis*, "this is something, yet it is not enough;" *vult dījūdicārī; sērō, vērum aliquandō tamen*, "he wants to have the matter settled: late, but still at some time."

1060.—*Obs.* 5. **Quispiam** is used nearly in the same way as *aliquis*, but without quite so much emphasis. *O stultum hominem, dixerit quispiam*, "O fool, some one may say." *Quispiam* is, however, used also after negatives, and then has nearly the force of *quisquam* (1061), with which it is sometimes confounded in MSS.

1061.—**Quisquam**, *any at all*, *any single*, always implies that the speaker conceives that hardly any one member of the class will answer. It is, therefore, used in sentences which are negative, or virtually negative.

Quamdiū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vīvēs,	As long as a single man shall be found bold enough to defend you, you shall live.
Sine sociīs nēmo quidquam tāle cōnātur,	Without companions no one attempts any thing at all of the kind.
Quid est, quod quisquam afferre possit,	What is there which any one can advance?

1062.—*Obs.* 6. *Quisquam* is always used ***substantively,*** and has for its adjective **ullus;** ***num censēs ullum animal sine corde esse posse,*** "do you think that any animal can be without a heart?"

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

GENERAL REMARKS ON SENTENCES AND THEIR COMBINATIONS.

1063.—Simple Sentences (616) may be of three kinds. They may contain the statement of—

(1.) An ***Assertion:*** "The soldier fights bravely."
(2.) A ***Question:*** "Does the soldier fight bravely?"
(3.) A ***Command:*** "Fight bravely, O soldier."

When used in this ***independent*** way they may be called ***Principal*** sentences.

1064.—But it is possible to use them, or at least their matter or substance, in a ***dependent*** way, by making them the ***object*** or ***subject of a verb.*** Thus:

(*a.*) "Caesar says—that the soldier fights bravely."
(*b.*) "Caesar asks—whether the soldier fights bravely."
(*c.*) "Caesar orders—that the soldier fight bravely."

In each of these last sentences it is clear that the matter or substance of the previous assertion, question, command, is used as the object of the verbs *says*, *asks*, *orders*, respectively. Those simple sentences are, therefore, so far used just as ***nouns substantive*** might be used; and, therefore, they may be said to be used ***substantively*** or ***nominally.***

1065.—We may say, therefore, that what is in—

1063. (1.) A ***Principal*** assertion becomes in 1064 (*a.*) a ***Nominal*** assertion.

1063. (2.) A ***Principal*** question becomes in 1064 (*b.*) a ***Nominal*** question.

1063. (3.) A ***Principal*** command becomes in 1064 (*c.*) a ***Nominal*** command.

1066.—Complex Sentences (616) consist of ***two parts,*** one of which is dependent upon the other in such a way that it is only used for the purpose of making more clear some point about the other. Thus, "Caesar marched towards Rome, when he had crossed the Rubicon," is a complex sentence. The first part of it is an assertion, independent, and capable of standing by itself. The second part is an assertion too; but it contains the word "when," which makes it incapable of standing by itself, and shows that it is here given, not for its own sake, but only to tell us the *time* of the action asserted in the first part. (Prac. Eng. Gram., 599, 3.

1067.—We may say, therefore, that in a ***Complex*** sentence—

The part capable of standing alone is a ***Primary*** sentence.

The part incapable of standing alone is a ***Secondary*** sentence or clause.

1068.—Further, the ***Complex Sentence*** given in 1066, since it contains an assertion, is capable of being used as the ***object*** of a verb. Thus we can say, "The historian relates—that Caesar marched towards Rome, when he had crossed the Rubicon." Here the words, *Caesar marched towards Rome*, are used as the object of the verb *relates*, and they make, therefore, a ***Nominal*** assertion; whereas in 1066 they formed a ***Principal*** assertion.

1069.—We see, therefore, that Primary sentences (1067), *i. e.*, such as *can* stand alone, may be used either as Principal sentences or as Nominal sentences; and that Secondary sentences (1067), *i. e.*, such as *cannot* stand alone, may be attached to Primary sentences, whether used principally or nominally.

1070.—Lastly, we may attach one ***Secondary*** sentence to ***another,*** to make some point about it clear. Thus, "Caesar marched towards Rome, when he had crossed the Rubicon, which was the limit of his province." The words, *which was the limit of his province*, form a secondary sentence (for they are incapable of standing by themselves), but they are attached to the previous secondary sentence, in order to tell us something about the Rubicon.

The following Table presents the above remarks in one view, and contains, besides, the names of the moods of the verb proper to be employed in each case, where the rules are sufficiently general to be of service:

1071.—

All sentences are				
Primary (1067) used as	***Principal*** (1063).	Assertions,	***Indicative***	(1079).
		Questions,	***Indicative***	(1101).
		Commands,	***Imperative***	(1110).
	Nominal (1064).	Assertions,	***Infinitive***	(1185).
		Questions,	***Subjunctive***	(1182).
		Commands,	***Subjunctive***	(1200).
Secondary (1067), attached to		Principal sentences, Nominal sentences, Secondary sentences,	***Subjunctive***	(1291).

1072.—*Note* 1. There is a further subdivision of secondary sentences, which, though important, is omitted in the above table, since no distinction of mood is based upon it. This division is as follows:

Secondary Sentences are—

(A.) ***Adjectival,*** *i. e.*, qualifying a ***noun*** in the Primary sentence just as an ***adjective*** might do. These are introduced by the ***Relative*** Pronoun, and the noun qualified is its antecedent. For example: "The man is wise—who speaks little." Here the secondary sentence, "who speaks little," describes the antecedent, *man*, in precisely the same way as the adjective, "taciturn," might do.

(B.) ***Adverbial,*** *i. e.*, qualifying the ***verb*** (or the ***action***) in the Primary sentence just as an ***adverb*** might do. These are introduced by the various subordinating conjunctions (495), which may be called for shortness, ***subjunctions.*** For example: "He lies still—where he died." Here the secondary sentence, "where he died," limits the verb *lies*, just as the adverb, "yonder," might do.

Note 2. In the above table (1071) no mood is assigned to two of the heads, because in those cases several rules operate. In the other cases, too, there are certain exceptions and limitations which will be mentioned in their proper places.

For the agreement of a verb with its subject in ***Person*** and ***Number,*** see 634, 649.

VOICES.

1073.—The ***Active Voice*** of a transitive verb represents the action as proceeding from the subject (263), and affecting an object: *Brūtus Caesarem occīdit*, "Brutus killed Caesar."

The ***Passive Voice*** represents the action as directed towards the subject (263): *Caesar ā Brūtō occīsus est*, "Caesar was killed by Brutus."

Therefore in changing from the Active to the Passive construction—

1074.—Rule LXXIII. The ***object*** of an Active verb becomes the ***subject*** of the Passive;

and the ***subject*** of the Active becomes the ***ablative*** of the agent (878), or of the means (873); as,

(Act.) *Fīlius rem paternam absūmit,*	The son wastes his father's substance.
(Pass.) *Rēs paterna ā fīliō* (878) *absūmitur,*	His father's substance is wasted by the son.
(Act.) *Bellum opēs urbis absumpsit,*	War wasted the resources of the city.
(Pass.) *Opēs urbis bellō* (873) *absumptae sunt,*	The resources of the city were wasted by war.

1075.—Rule LXXIV. Verbs which govern ***another case*** besides their direct object in the Active, may retain that case in the Passive; as,

Accūsor furtī,	I am accused of theft.
Virgilius comparātur Homērō,	Virgil is compared to Homer.
Doceor grammaticam,	I am taught grammar.
Nāvis onerātur aurō,	The ship is loaded with gold.

This Rule may be subdivided into the five following:

I. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, and *admonishing*, in the Passive, govern the Genitive. See 793.

II. Verbs of *valuing*, in the Passive, govern such genitives as *magnī*, *parvī*, *nihilī*, etc. See 799.

III. Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, in the Passive, govern the Dative. See 855.

IV. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, in the Passive, govern the Accusative. See 784.

V. Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and their contraries, in the Passive, govern the Ablative. See 907, 911.

Obs. 1. The ***remote object*** of the active voice is never, in Latin, converted into the subject of the passive, except in a few instances, which are manifest Graecisms. See Gr. Gram. 610. B. & K. Gr. Gram. 1039. In English, however, there are some expressions in which this is allowed. See An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., 814.

Hence, where, in some cases, the Greek and the English idioms admit of two forms of expression, the Latin admits of only one, *e. g.*, "This was told to me," *or*, "I was told this," is rendered into Latin by the first form; thus, *Hoc mihi dictum est.* But we cannot say, according to the second form, *Hoc dictus sum.*

1076.**—Obs.* 2. ***Intransitive verbs, having no object (263), can have no true passive. They are, however, used with the passive form as impersonals. See 453.

Obs. 3. ***Deponent*** verbs with a passive form, have an active meaning, transitive or intransitive. See 304, 305.

USE OF THE MOODS.

1077.**—The **Finite Moods, with endings distinctive of Time, Number, and Person, are the Indicative, the Imperative, and the Subjunctive. The ***Infinitive Mood*** has forms only to discriminate actions or states as unfinished, finished, or to be expected.

***1078.**—The three Finite Moods may be thus characterized:

The ***Indicative Mood*** represents a fact as ***real.***

The ***Imperative Mood*** represents a fact as ***commanded.***

The ***Subjunctive Mood*** represents a fact as ***conceived.***

Note.—The difference between the Indicative (the ***mood of Reality***), and the Subjunctive (the ***mood of Conception***), will be felt, if such a sentence as the following be considered: *Aliis nocent, ut in aliōs līberālēs sint,* "They injure some, that they may be generous to others." Here, *aliis nocent* is represented as a fact actually ***realized*** and existing. But the latter clause only states something which is ***conceived*** in the mind; and may or may not be realised.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1079.**—Rule LXXV. The ***Indicative Mood is used in making ***assertions*** of facts; as,

Sōl occidit, The sun sets, or is setting.

Note.—In this Rule only principal assertions are meant. (1063.)

USE OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

The Present (***Present Imperfect***) Tense is used to express:—

1080.**—1. ***Acts or states ***continuing*** (imperfect) at the ***present*** time: *Nunc scio quid sit amor,* "Now I know what love is."—Virg.

1081.—2. ***Facts*** which are ***generally true;*** true now and always: *Voluptās sensibus nostrīs blanditur*, "Pleasure coaxes our senses."—Cic.

1082.—3. ***Facts*** really ***past,*** which are vividly stated as ***present*** (***Historical Present***): *Dictō pāruēre, desiliunt ex equīs, prōvolant in prīmum*, "They obeyed orders: they leap from their horses, they fly forward to the front."—Liv.

1083.—4. ***Facts*** existing at the ***present,*** and also in the ***time*** immediately ***preceding.*** In this use, the temporal adverbs *jam, jamdiū, jamdūdum*, are generally employed; and, in English, *have* is used: *Pestem in nōs omnēs jamdiū māchināris*, "You have been this long while plotting ruin for us all."—Cic.

1084.—4. ***Facts*** really ***future,*** in secondary sentences, if the primary contain a future: *Sī urgēmus obsessōs, perficiētur bellum*, "If we (shall) press the besieged hard, the war will be finished."

1085.—*Obs.* 1. In the passive voice, the present tense represents its subject as at present acted upon, or as the object of an action present and continuing, and is usually rendered into English by the verb *to be*, and the perfect participle, as *amātur*, "he is loved," and this rendering will always be correct when the English verb in the present passive expresses *continuance;* as, *he is loved*, *feared*, *hated*, *respected*, etc.

1086.—*Obs.* 2. But there are many verbs in which this rendering of the present would be incorrect, as it does not express the present receiving of an action, but rather the present and continuing *effect* of an act, which act itself is now past. In all such cases, it is more properly the rendering of the *perfect* than of the *present*, and it is often so used. Thus, *domus aedificāta est; opus peractum est; epistola scripta est*, may be properly rendered, "the house is built;" "the work is finished;" "the letter is written;" because in the English, as well as in Latin, the building of the house, the finishing of the work, and the writing of the letter, are represented as acts now past, and which are present only in their effects. The proper rendering of such verbs in the present passive, in English, is by the verb *to be*, and the verbal substantive in *ing* in the passive sense; thus, *domus aedificātur*, "the house is building;" *opus peragitur*, "the work is finishing;" *epistola scrībitur*, "the letter is writing." When this mode of expression is not authorized, and when the other would be improper, it will be necessary to express the precise idea of the present by some other form of expression. See An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., App. V., I., and II., p. 235.—Practical English Grammar, App. IX. p. 324. These same remarks are also applicable to the next tense.

The Imperfect (***Past-Imperfect***) Tense is used to express—

1087.—1. A ***fact continuing*** (imperfect) in ***past*** time: *Anus subtēmen nēbat; ea texēbat*, "An old woman was spinning a woof; she (the girl) was weaving."—Ter.

Obs. This tense, strictly speaking, corresponds to the past-progressive in English (An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., 474, 2.—Principles of Eng. Gr., 199, 2).

It is often rendered, however, by the past tense in its ordinary form, and should always be so, when the verb expresses a *continued* act or state; as, *amābat*, "he loved;" *timēbat*, "he feared."

1088.—2. A ***fact customary*** at past time: *Mājōrēs nostrī lībertīs nōn multō secus ac servīs imperābant*, "Our ancestors used to govern their freedmen pretty nearly as they did their slaves."—Cic.

1089.—3. A ***fact attempted***, but not accomplished: *Porsena eum terrēbat*, "Porsena tried to frighten him."

The ***Future*** Tense is used to express—

1090.—Facts which will occur in ***Future time:*** *Crās ingens iterābimus aequor*, "To-morrow we shall again be traversing the vast ocean."—Hor.

1091.—*Obs.* The Future is sometimes an ***imperative*** in force (1116): *Haec tibi erunt curae*, "Let these things your care" (*lit.* shall be for a care to you).—Cic.

The ***Perfect*** Tense is used—

1092.—1. As a ***present-perfect,*** to express a fact as completed (***perfect***) at the ***present*** time: *Vēnī, ut pecūniam tibi solvam*, "I have come to pay you the money."

1093.—2. As a Perfect-Indefinite (***Aorist***), to represent a fact as ***simply past:*** *Livius fābulam dedit annō ante nātum Ennium*, "Livius exhibited a play the year before the birth of Ennius."

Obs. 1. The first use corresponds to the English present-perfect (An. and Pr. Gr., 407); the second, or *Perfect-Indefinite*, corresponds to the English past tense (An. and Pr. Gr., 415). In this sense it is commonly used in historical narratives, like the Greek aorist; thus, *Caesar exercitum fīnibus Italiae admōvit, Rubicōnem transiit, Rōmam occupāvit*, "Caesar marched his army," etc.

1094.—*Obs.* 2. The Perfect Tense is used after **postquam, ut primum**. **simul ac**, etc., where, in English, we use the Past-Perfect: *Caesar, postquam cōpiās vīdit mātūrāvit*, "Caesar, as soon as he had seen the forces, made haste." (1249.)

1095.—*Obs.* 3. The Perfect sometimes expresses the completeness of a fact with so much force as to imply that it does ***not exist*** in the Present: *Fuit ingens glōria Teucrûm*, "The great glory of the Trojans was (and is no more), *i. e.*, has had its day."—Virg.

The Pluperfect (***Past-Perfect***) Tense is used to express—

1096.—A ***fact*** as ***completed*** (Perfect) at a point of ***past*** time: *Pausaniās eōdem locō sepultus est, ubi vītam posuerat*, "Pausanias was buried in the same place where he had laid down his life.

1097.—*Obs.* 1. The Aorist and the Past-Perfect are often used in connection with the Past-Imperfect, when the last represents a fact as *continued*, in contrast with *completed* facts: *Conticuēre omnēs, intentīque ōra tenēbant*, "All were still, and with eager attention were keeping their eyes fixed upon him." *Irruerant Danaī et tectum omne tenēbant*, "The Danaans had rushed in, and were occupying the whole dwelling."—Virg.

The ***Future-Perfect*** Tense is used to express—

1098.—A ***fact*** as ***completed*** (Perfect) at a point of ***future*** time: *Ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs*, "As you shall have sowed, so shall you reap."

1099.—*Obs.* 1. The Future-Perfect is often used to indicate the ***certainty*** or ***rapidity*** of the result; and often then it occurs in two connected clauses: *Sī tē vīdero, respīrāvero*, "If I shall have seen you, I shall at once breathe again."

TENSES IN EPISTOLARY STYLE.

1100.—As ***letters*** often did not reach the person addressed till long after they were written, the Romans frequently made allowance for this interval, and adapted the tenses they used to the time at which the letter would be read; *i. e.*, they often used the ***past***-imperfect for the ***present***-imperfect, and the ***past***-perfect for the ***present***-perfect:

Etsī nihil habēbam *novī, quod post* accidisset *quam* dedissem *ad tē Philogenī līterās, tamen quum Philotīmum Rōmam* remitterem, *scrībendum aliquid ad tē* fuit.—Cic., Att. vi. 2.	Though I *have* nothing new that *has occurred*, at least since I *put* my last into the hands of Philogenes for you, yet as I *am sending* Philotimus back to Rome, I *am* bound to write something to you.

Obs. 1. The terms *yesterday*, *to-day*, *to-morrow*, and often the word *here*, are avoided for the same reason.

Obs. 2. This change of the tenses occurs chiefly at the beginning and end of letters, where the writer has it most forcibly impressed on his mind that he is not in conversation.

1101.—Rule LXXVI. The *Indicative Mood* is used in asking *Questions* about Facts.

Quotā hōrā sōl occidet?	At what o'clock will the sun set?
Num negāre audēs?	Do you venture to deny it?

Note.—Of course, this Rule refers only to Principal Questions. See the table in 1071.

1102.—*Obs.* 1. In the first example above, the words *sōl occidet*, by themselves, express an assertion, "The sun will set." It is only the presence of the ***interrogative pronoun*** *quotā*, and not (as in English) a change in the order of the words, which shows that a question is asked. Such questions are ***Word-questions.*** See 1040, 1041.

Obs. 2. In the second example, the particle **num** shows that a question is asked: but this is a ***Fact-question*** (1040), since the answer "no" is expected.

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.

1103.—The ***interrogative*** particles **ne** (enclitic) and **num** are used in asking ***Fact-questions*** (1040).

Pergisne eam artem illūdere?	Do you go about to scorn that art?
Num locuplētiōrēs quaeris testēs?	Do you require more trustworthy witnesses?

1104.—*Obs.* 3 The particle **ne** is ***enclitic,*** and is always appended to the first word of the question, except sometimes when united with *nōn*, as in *canis nōnne similis lupō*, "is not a dog like a wolf?"

1105.—*Obs.* 4. When *ne* is the particle used, it is not indicated what answer the speaker anticipates. But if **num** is employed, the answer ***no*** is expected. See examples above.

1106.—*Obs.* 5. When *ne* is appended to *nōn* (**nōnne**), the answer ***yes*** is expected: *nōnne animadvertis*, "do you not observe?"

1107.—***Double questions*** are those fact-questions which present an alternative. The first member commonly has **utrum, num**. or **ne,** and the second almost always **an,** rarely *ne*. Sometimes the particle is omitted in the first member.

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est,	Is that your fault or ours?
Isne est quem quaero, annōn,	Is that the man I am seeking or not?
Sunt haec tua verba, necne,	Are these your words or not?

Obs. 6. *Annōn* and *necne*, "or not," are written as single words.

1108.—*Obs.* 7. **An** is sometimes apparently used before ***single*** questions; but there is always an alternative implied, though not expressed: *An Pamphilus vēnit?* ("Have you any thing else to say,) or is Pamphilus really come?"

1109.—*Obs.* 8. The following table gives the ***sequence*** of the Interrogative Particles, when there are two or three alternatives:

First alternative.	*Second.*	*Third.*
Utrum	**An**	**An**
-Ne	**An**	**An**
(Omitted)	**An**	**An**
(Omitted)	**-Ne**	

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1110.—Rule LXXVII. The ***Imperative Mood*** is used in giving commands, directions, advice, entreaties.

Dissolve frīgus,	Thaw away the cold.
Sī quid in tē peccāvī, ignosce,	If I have done you any wrong, pardon me.

TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

1111.—The ***Present*** gives directions with reference to the ***immediate present,*** or without reference to any definite time. It is also used in salutations.

Recognosce mēcum noctem illam,	Review with me that night.
Carpe diem,	Seize the (present) day.
Salvē! Avē!	Hail to thee! farewell!

1112.—The ***Future*** gives directions with reference to the future, and is particularly used in ***laws, wills,*** etc.

Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelīto, nēve ūrito,	Thou shalt not bury nor burn a corpse in the city.
Servus meus līber esto,	My slave shall be free.

1113.—*Obs.* 1. In negative commands (***prohibitions***), *not* is expressed by **nē** (very rarely by *nōn*), and where there are two or more consecutive prohibitions by **nē — nēve** (*neu*), or *nēve — nēve* (rarely *nec*).

1114.—*Obs.* 2. The ***present*** imperative is rarely used in prohibitions. Instead of this, very often the imperative *nōlī* (418) with the infinitive was used: *nōlī tē oblīviscī Cicerōnem esse,* "do not forget that you are Cicero." So, also, *cave,* "beware;" *cave faciās,* "see you do it not." Also, the Present Imperfect or Present Perfect of the subjunctive: *tū nē quaesieris,* "do not you inquire"—the latter especially in the second singular.

12*

1115.—*Obs.* 3. The ***affirmative*** imperative is often expressed by various circumlocutions: *cūrā ut valeās*, "look after your health;" *fac bonam spem habeās*, "take heed that you have a good hope;" and often by the subjunctive alone. See 1198.

1116.—*Obs.* 4. The Future Indicative is sometimes used for the Imperative: *in dextram partem tacitī transibitis*, "pass quietly to the right." —Liv. See 1091.

1117.—*Obs.* 5. In a few cases the forms of the future imperative were used in place of those of the present: *scīto*, *scītōte*, "know ye;" *sic habēto*, "be sure."

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

1118.—Rule LXXVIII. The ***Infinitive Mood*** is an indeclinable verbal substantive, which is used in the nominative or accusative case, in connection with a verb; as,

Mentīrī turpe est,	To lie is base.
Cupio discere,	I desire to learn.

1119.—Explanation.—In the first of these examples it is clear that *mentīrī*, "to lie," *or* "lying," is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the ***nominative;*** and that *turpe* is the complement of *est* in the neuter, because *mentīrī* (being indeclinable, 35) is neuter. In the second example, *discere*, "to learn," *or* "learning," is used as the object of the transitive verb *cupio*, and is therefore in the ***accusative*** case.

1120.—*Obs.* 1. There are some passages, particularly in the poets, in which the infinitive seems to be used for ***other cases*** than the nominative or accusative. But many of these may be explained by the consideration that a phrase may have the construction of a simple verb. Thus: *Parātus sum frūmentum dare*, "I am prepared to give (*for giving*) corn," Cic., is equivalent to *volo dare*. So again, *Quibus in ōtiō vīvere cōpia erat*, "Who had an opportunity to live (*of living*) at ease," Sall., is equivalent to *Quibus licēbat vīvere*.

1121.—*Obs.* 2. The poets, however, use the infinitive freely after adjectives, which in prose would require a ***Genitive*** (755): *cēdere nescius*, for *cēdendī*, "not knowing how to yield;" *cantāre perītī*, for *cantandī*, "skilled in singing."

1122.—*Obs.* 3. The Infinitive is rarely joined with *aptus*, *ūtilis*, *idōneus*, *nātus*, where we should expect the ***Dative*** (860), or *ad* with the

accusative: *frūgēs consūmere nātī*, "born to eat up fruits;" *apta veterēs mūtāre figūrās*, "capable of changing old shapes."

1123.—*Obs.* 4. The Infinitive appears to be used as the ***ablative*** after *dignus, indignus: dignus laudārī*, "worthy to be praised" (921); and also in connection with the ablative of a participle in the absolute construction. (971.)

1124.—*Obs.* 5. The Infinitive is very rarely found governed by ***prepositions:*** *Nīl sibi lēgātum praeter plōrāre*, "Nothing bequeathed to him except mourning."—Hor. *Inter optimē valēre et gravissimē aegrōtāre nihil interest*, "Between the soundest health and the severest sickness there is no difference."—Cic.

1125.—*Obs.* 6. The Infinitive sometimes has *ipsum* agreeing with it, and, rarely, other adjective pronouns: *Cum vīvere ipsum turpe sit nōbīs*, "Since life itself is dishonorable to me."—Cic. *Meum intelligere nullā pecūniā vendo*, "I sell my intelligence at no price."—Petron.

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

1126.—The Infinitive has ***three tenses:*** the Present (better called the ***Imperfect***), the ***Perfect,*** and the ***Future.*** They represent, respectively, their action as unfinished, finished, or to be expected, at the time denoted by the principal verb.

1127.—The Present (***Imperfect***) Infinitive describes an action as ***going on*** at the time of the principal verb:

Intelligis mē vigilāre,	You know that I am watching.
Intellexistī mē vigilāre,	You knew that I was watching.
Intelligēs mē vigilāre,	You will know that I am watching.

1128.—The ***Perfect*** Infinitive describes an action as ***finished*** at the time of the principal verb:

Dīco tē vēnisse,	I assert that you came.
Dixī tē vēnisse,	I asserted that you had come.
Dicam tē vēnisse,	I shall assert that you came.

1129.—The ***Future*** Infinitive describes an action as future, or ***to be expected,*** at the time of the principal verb:

Crēdo tē ventūrum esse,	I believe that you will come.
Crēdidī tē ventūrum esse,	I believed that you would come.
Crēdam tē ventūrum esse,	I shall believe that you will come.

1130.—*Obs.* 1. It can be seen that the time (tense) of the principal verb has nothing to do with the tense of the dependent infinitive, though it sometimes causes a change in the English translation of it.

1131.—*Obs.* 2. The verb **meminī**, "I remember," in a narrative of events, at which the speaker was present, is joined with the Present (***Imperfect***) Infinitive, though the action remembered is finished: *Meminī Catōnem mēcum disserere*, "I remember that Cato discussed (Cato's discussing) with me." But if the sentence is not a narrative, but a statement of a result, the perfect infinitive is used: *Meministis mē distribuisse*, "You remember that I divided (in a former part of the speech)."—Cic.

1132.—*Obs.* 3. With verbs expressing ***duty, possibility*** (expressed in English by *ought*, *might*, etc.), the existence of the duty or possibility in *past* time, is in Latin properly expressed by putting those verbs in *past* tenses, with the ***Imperfect*** Infinitive dependent on them; whereas, in English, the Perfect Infinitive is employed, in consequence of the insufficient distinctions of tense in such verbs: *possum* (*dēbeo*) *īre*, "I am able (I ought) to go;" *potuī* (*dēbuī*) *īre*, "I might (I ought to) have gone," *lit.* "I was able (I was bound) to go."

1133.—*Obs.* 4. Those verbs which have ***no third stem*** (no supine) can have no Future Infinitive. The want of it is supplied by **futūrum esse**, or **fore**, with *ut* and the subjunctive: *Spēro fore ut medeāris*, "I hope that you will cure." The same circumlocution is also sometimes employed in cases where the regular Future Infinitive might be formed: *Nunquam putāvī fore ut supplex ad tē venīrem*, "I never thought it would happen that I should come to you as a suppliant" (for *mē supplicem ventūrum esse*). (1362.)

1134.—*Obs.* 5. **Fore** is sometimes used in connection with the perfect participle (passive or deponent) making a ***Future Perfect*** Infinitive: *Dīco mē satis adeptum fore*, "I say that I shall have obtained enough."—Cic.

SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE.

1135.—When a sentence containing an assertion is to be used as the object or subject of a verb (*i. e.*, ***nominally***, 1064), the verb in the assertion is changed into the infinitive mood, and its subject into the accusative case. Thus, *tū nōn ista audīvistī*, "you have not heard those things," is an assertion (Principal, 1063). If I wish to make that assertion either the subject of *mīrum est*, "it is wonderful," or the object of *mīror*, "I wonder," I must change its subject, *tū*, to *tē*, and its verb, *audīvistī*, to *audīvisse*: *tē nōn ista audīvisse mīrum est*, or *mīror*, "it is wonderful (*or* I wonder) that you have not heard those things." *Tē nōn ista audīvisse* form a ***nominal assertion***.

1136.—Rule LXXIX. The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; as,

Gaudeo tē valēre, I am glad that you are well.

Explanation.—Under this Rule, the infinitive with its subject forms a distinct proposition, and is equivalent to the indicative or subjunctive mood in English, together with the connective "*that.*" Thus, in the example, *tē valēre* contains the simple proposition, "You are well." The equivalent of the English "that," connecting it as a subordinate clause with the preceding verb, is implied in the infinitive form. The English particle "*that,*" may therefore be called the ***sign*** of the accusative before the infinitive, being used to connect the infinitive clause with the preceding. It may often be omitted, however, in translating, as it frequently is in English; thus, *āiunt rēgem adventāre,* "they say the king is coming," *or,* "that the king is coming."

EXCEPTION.

1137.—Historical Infinitive.—The verb governing the infinitive is sometimes omitted. Especially is this the case in historical narration, when the infinitive follows a ***nominative*** case in the sense of the Imperfect Indicative, or the aorist; as, *Catilīna cum expeditīs in prīmā aciē versārī,* "Catiline with the light troops keep moving in the foremost rank." See 641. When thus used, it is sometimes said to be governed by *coepit* or *coepērunt* understood. Cases occur, however, in which this supplement cannot be made; as, *Vērum ingenium ējus haud absurdum; posse facere versūs, jocum movēre,* etc., "However, her talent was by no means contemptible; she could make verses, get off a joke, etc."

1138.—Rule LXXX. ***Omission of the Subject.***—Verbs signifying *willingness, determination, ability, lawfulness, duty, beginning,* with their contraries, govern the infinitive without a subject-accusative; as,

Studeo ex tē audīre quid sentiās, I desire to hear from you what you think.

1139.—*Obs.* 1. The infinitive without a subject is used after such verbs as *cupio, opto, volo, nōlo, mālo;—possum, queo, nequeo, valeo, cōgito, cōnor, tendo, disco, doceo, dēbeo,* etc. By the poets it is used after *fuge, parce* for *nōli,* and sometimes after *caveo, fugio, gaudeo,* etc. In all such

cases it expresses an act or state of the subject of the ***governing verb,*** which is therefore to be regarded as also the subject of the infinitive.

1140.—*Obs.* 2. The verbs *volo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, *cupio*, etc., admit also the ***accusative*** with the infinitive. Thus, "I desire to be merciful," may be either *cupio esse clēmens*, or *cupio mē esse clementem.* For the nominative, *clēmens*, when the subject of the infinitive is omitted, see 1145.

1141.—*Obs.* 3. If the subject is ***indefinite*** and ***general*** it is not expressed: *Facinus est vincire cīvem Rōmānum*, "To bind (*i. e.*, for any one to bind) a Roman citizen is a crime."

COMPLEMENT OF THE INFINITIVE.

1142.—Rule LXXXI. The ***Complement*** (Predicate noun or adjective), with the infinitive, agrees with its subject, or with the word of its reference; as,

Volo mē ērudītum esse, *Volo ērudītus esse,*	I desire to be learned.
Mihi negligentī esse nōn licuit,	It was not permitted me to be careless.

1143.—Explanation.—In the first of these examples, *ērudītum* is in the accusative to agree with *mē*, the expressed subject of the infinitive. In the second, *ērudītus* agrees with *ego*, the understood subject of *volo.* In the third, it agrees with *mihi*, which is the word of its reference, though *mihi* cannot be regarded as the subject of *esse.* *Esse* is often understood.

1144.—*Obs.* 1. This is the usual construction with **licet**: *vōbīs jam licet esse fortūnātissimīs*, "you may now be most fortunate." (For other verbs so used see 676.) But sometimes the accusative is used, agreeing with the understood subject of *esse: Cīvī Rōmānō licet esse Gādītānum*, "A citizen of Rome may become a man of Gades."

1145.—*Obs.* 2. Of course, when the subject of the infinitive is omitted (1138), a complementary noun will be in the ***nominative*** to agree with the principal subject. Besides the verbs mentioned (1139), many passive verbs, of *saying*, *showing*, *believing*, etc., are used in the same way: *Aristaeus oleae inventor fuisse dīcitur*, "Aristaeus is said to have been the discoverer of the olive;" for which we might have had, *Aristaeum inventōrem fuisse dīcitur*, "It is said that Aristaeus, etc."

1146.—*Obs.* 3. The passive personal construction is quite common with *video: Videor dēceptus esse*, "I seem to have been deceived," instead of *Vidētur mē esse dēceptum*, "It seems that I, etc."

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OR OBJECT.

1147.—Rule LXXXII. One verb being the ***subject*** of another, is put in the infinitive; as,

Facile est querī,	To complain is easy.
Mentīrī turpe est,	To lie is base.

1148.—Rule LXXXIII. One verb governs another, as its ***object,*** in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discere,	I desire to learn.

1149.—Explanation.—It does not matter whether the Infinitive have or have not a subject. In either case, the Infinitive with its connected words (*subject*, *object*, *adverb*, *complement*, etc.), may by these rules be made the subject or the object of another verb, in the Nominative or the Accusative case. (See 1118.)

1150.—*Obs.* 1. The Infinitive as a ***subject*** is used—

(*a*) With **est** and its complement: *dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī*, "sweet and comely is it to die in our country's cause;" *tē venīre pergrātum est*, "your coming (*lit.*, that you should come) is very delightful."

1151.—(*b*) With an ***impersonal*** verb, or a verb used impersonally: *peccāre nēminī licet*, "sinning (to sin) is allowed to no man;" *senātuī placuit Crassum Syriam obtinēre*, "Crassus's holding Syria pleased the Senate (it pleased the Senate that Crassus should hold Syria)."

1152.—*Obs.* 2. The Infinitive as an ***object,*** is used with such verbs as naturally have a ***thing*** or a ***fact,*** not a person, for their object. These are verbs expressing—

(*a*) ***Knowledge, opinion, declaration*** (*verba sentiendī et dēclārandī:*) *scīmus tē vēnisse*, "we know that you have come;" *sentīmus calēre ignem*, "we feel that fire is hot;" *prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse*, "he promised that he would come."

1153.—(*b*) ***Wish, desire, command,*** etc.: *sapientem cīvem mē et esse et numerārī volo*, "I wish myself both to be and to be accounted a wise citizen;" *optat arāre caballus*, "the nag would like to draw the plough;" *Caesar castra vallō mūnīrī vetuit*, "Caesar forbade the camp to be fortified with a rampart."

1154.—(*c*) ***Satisfaction, surprise,*** etc.: *gaudeo tē valēre*, "I am glad that you are well;" *mīror tē ad mē nihil scrībere*, "I wonder at your not writing to me."

1155.—*Obs.* 3. If the verbs mentioned in Obs. 2 (1152, *a*) are used in the ***passive,*** the Infinitive is retained, and the subject accusative often becomes the nominative to the passive, instead of being retained in an impersonal construction (1151). Thus: *dīcunt Caesarem mortuum esse*, "they say that Caesar is dead," may become *dīcitur Caesar mortuus* (1145) *esse*, instead of *dīcitur Caesarem mortuum esse.*

1156—*Obs.* 4. It is clear that it is only the verbs in 1152 (Obs. 2. *a*) which have in a strict sense an ***assertion*** for their object, and therefore that it is only with them that what were called (1064) ***nominal assertions*** can be used. But since all the verbs referred to in 1150–1154 may have for their subject or object an Infinitive mood with an accusative case for its subject, and this is the form of a nominal assertion (1135), it will be found convenient to give the name ***nominal assertion*** to all such combinations of an ***accusative with an infinitive,*** whether they are in strictness assertions or not.

1157.—*Obs.* 5. Certain phrases equivalent to a verb may have a similar object: *fāma est Gallōs adventāre*, "there is a report that the Gauls are coming."

1158.—*Obs.* 6. When a relative clause has the same verb as the proposition with the infinitive on which the relative clause depends, but without the repetition of the verb, the subject of the verb in the relative clause is put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Platōnem ferunt idem sensisse quod Pȳthagoram*, "They say that Plato thought as Pythagoras did." But, if the verb of the relative clause is expressed, its subject must be in the nominative; as, *Platōnem ferunt .... idem sensisse quod Pȳthagorās sensit.*

The same analogy is observed with the conjunction *quam* after a comparative. 899, 1st and 2d.

Obs. 7. Several of the verbs referred to in 1152–4 take the subjunctive or the indicative with various subjunctions. (495.) These cases will be mentioned further on. See 1203–4, 1222–3, 1230–3, 1258

1159.—*Obs.* 8. An Infinitive Sentence (nominal assertion) is often used in ***exclamations,*** being the object or subject of a verb understood: *mēne inceptō dēsistere victam* (sc. *crēdendum est*, "can it be supposed) that I should be overcome and give up the design?" *at tē nōn Rōmae fore* (sc. *quantum doleo*, "how I grieve) that you are not going to be at Rome."

1160.—*Obs.* 9. The poets, and later prose writers, even Livy, sometimes use the Infinitive to express ***purpose:*** *pecus ēgit altōs vīsere montēs*, "he drove his flock to visit the lofty mountains," HOR.; *lēgātī veniunt speculārī*, "ambassadors come to spy out."—LIV.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1161.—The ***Subjunctive Mood*** is used when the writer wishes to represent a ***thought*** or ***conception,*** or a fact conceived as dependent upon some other fact. See 1078.

All the uses of the Subjunctive may be ultimately referred to this fundamental distinction. Its name implies that it is generally employed in sentences which are ***subjoined,*** as dependent clauses, to other sentences which stand independently; *i. e.*, to Primary sentences. And even in those cases where it appears to stand alone (except in some kinds of hypothetical sentences), it is probably to be explained by understanding some antecedent clause to which it may be considered to be attached.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1162.—The Subjunctive Mood has ***four tenses,*** two for incomplete action (***Imperfect*** tenses), and two for complete action (***Perfect*** tenses), these having reference to present and past time respectively. Thus we have:

(1) For ***incomplete*** action,	the Present (***Present Imperfect***): *scribam.*
	the Imperfect (***Past Imperfect***): *scriberem.*
(2) For ***complete*** action,	the Perfect (***Present Perfect***): *scripserim.*
	the Pluperfect (***Past Perfect***): *scripsissem.*

1163.—The particular tense of the subjunctive to be employed in each case is determined by the tense of the principal verb with which it is connected. In this point of view, the ***tenses of the Indicative Mood*** are arranged in ***two classes.***

I. ***Tenses not Past:*** *i. e.*, those which speak of a fact as present or future. These are often called Principal tenses. They are: the Present (***Present Imperfect***), the Perfect Definite (***Present Perfect***), the ***Future,*** and the ***Future Perfect.***

II. ***Tenses Past:*** *i. e.*, those which speak of a fact as past. These are often called Historical tenses. They are: the Imperfect (***Past Imperfect***), the Perfect Indefinite (***Aorist***), and the Pluperfect (***Past Perfect***).

Accordingly, we have the following Rule for

The Sequence of Tenses.

1164.—Rule LXXXIV. ***Tenses not Past*** are followed by ***Present*** Tenses of the Subjunctive. ***Tenses Past*** are followed by ***Past*** Tenses of the Subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

1165.

Tenses not Past.	*Audio*	*quid agās,* *quid ēgeris,*	I hear	what you are doing. what you have done.	*Imperf.* *Perf.*
	Audīvi (Pres.-Perf.)	*quid agās,* *quid ēgeris,*	I have heard	what you are doing. what you have done.	*Imperf.* *Perf.*
	Audiam	*quid agās,* *quid ēgeris,*	I shall hear	what you are doing. what you have done.	*Imperf.* *Perf.*
	Audīvero	*quid agās,* *quid ēgeris,*	I shall have heard	what you do. what you have done.	*Imperf.* *Perf.*

1166.

Tenses Past.	*Audiēbam*	*quid agerēs,* *quid ēgissēs,*	I heard	what you were doing. what you had done.	*Imperf.* *Perf.*
	Audīvi (Aorist)	*quid agerēs,* *quid ēgissēs,*	I heard	what you were doing. what you had done.	*Imperf.* *Perf.*
	Audīveram	*quid agerēs,* *quid ēgissēs,*	I had heard	what you were doing. what you had done.	*Imperf.* *Perf.*

1167.—*Obs.* 1. The ***Historical Present*** (1082) being in ***form*** a Tense not Past, but in ***sense*** a Tense Past, is sometimes followed by a Present, and sometimes by a Past tense of the Subjunctive. A Past tense is, however, the more usual: *Princeps Gallōs hortātur, ut arma capiant,* "The chief urges the Gauls that they take up arms."—Caes. *Servīs suīs imperat Rubrius, ut jānuam clauderent,* "Rubrius ordered (*lit.* orders) his slaves that they should shut the gate."—Cic.

1168.—*Obs.* 2. The ***Present Perfect*** Subjunctive is sometimes used as an ***Aorist*** Subjunctive after a Tense Past of the Indicative, when the subordinate clause is conceived simply as a distinct historical statement: *Tam parātus fuit hostium animus ad dīmicandum ut ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit,* "So ready was the spirit of the enemy for fighting, that time was wanting for putting on the helmets."—Caes.

1169.—*Obs.* 3. Sometimes a ***Tense Past*** in the Primary sentence is followed by a ***Present*** of the Subjunctive, if the result of a past action extends to the present time: *Adeo excellēbat abstinentiā Aristīdēs ut ūnus post hominum memoriam Justus sit appellātus,* "So much did Aristides excel in self-control, he alone within the memory of man has (up to the present time) been called the Just."—Nep.

1170.—*Obs.* 4. When the ***Past Imperfect*** Subjunctive is used in the third form of the Hypothetical Period (1267), it is really present in sense, and *may*, therefore, be followed by a Present tense: ***Memorāre***

possem quibus in locīs maximās cōpiās populus Rōmānus fūderit, "I could now tell (if I chose) in what places the Roman people routed the largest forces."—SALL. But even in these cases the general rule is usually observed.

1171.—*Obs.* 5. Sometimes the ***Perfect*** Indicative, when we must regard and translate it as a Present Perfect, is followed by a Past Subjunctive, as if it were the Aorist: *Hōc animō semper fuī, ut invidiam virtūte partam glōriam putārem*, "I have always been of such a mind as to consider odium gained by manly conduct to be glory."—CIC.

1172.—*Obs.* 6. The Subjunctive Mood has no ***Future*** of its own. When such a tense is needed it is supplied by the Periphrastic Conjugation (328), with *sim* or *essem*, according to the general rule: *Et quisquam dubitābit, quid virtūte perfectūrus sit*, "And will any one doubt, what he is likely to accomplish by virtue?"—CIC. *Rescripsī quam mihi grātum esset factūrus*, "I wrote in answer how much pleasure he would do me."—CIC. If the Future Subjunctive Passive is required, we must use *futūrum sit* (*esset*) *ut*.

1173.—*Obs.* 7. If a Subjunctive Mood is attached to an Infinitive clause, its tense will, of course, be governed by that of the verb on which the Infinitive depends, since the Infinitive has no time of its own. (1126.)

VARIOUS USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1174.—The ***Subjunctive Mood,*** expressing the action of the Verb as a Conception and not as a Fact, is employed in various ways according to the nature of the conception implied by it. Most of these occur only in secondary (dependent) sentences; but there are some cases, as will be seen, in which it is used in Principal Assertions, Questions, and Commands.

1174.—A. The ***Subjunctive Mood,*** then, is used in the statement of ***all conceptions*** which imply—

I. A ***Possibility*** (***Potential Subjunctive***); as, *haec sint falsa sānē*, "these statements may certainly be false."

II. A ***Doubt*** (***Deliberative Subjunctive***); as, *quid facerem*, "what was I to do?"

III. A ***Desire*** (***Optative Subjunctive***); as, *stet haec urbs praeclāra*, "may this famous city stand firm."

IV. A ***Purpose*** (***Final Subjunctive***); as, *edimus ut vīvāmus*, "we eat that we may live."

V. A ***Consequence*** (***Consecutive Subjunctive***); as, *tantus erat timor omnium, ut nēmo urbe excēderet*, "so great was the terror of all, that no man left the city."

1175.—B. The ***Subjunctive Mood*** is used in the statement of ***some conceptions*** which imply—

I. ***Time*** (***Temporal Subjunctive***); as, *Antigonus, quum adversus Seleucum dīmicāret, occīsus est,* "Antigonus, while he was fighting against Seleucus, was slain."

II. ***Cause*** (***Causal Subjunctive***); as, *Quae quum ita sint, hoc dīco,* "Since these things are so, I assert this."

III. ***Condition*** (***Conditional Subjunctive***); as, *Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat industria,* "Old men's abilities remain to them, if only their industry remains."

IV. ***Concession*** (***Concessive Subjunctive***); as, *Ut dēsint vīrēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās,* "Though strength may fail, yet the wish must be commended."

1176.—C. Besides these uses, the Subjunctive Mood is constantly employed in secondary sentences ***attached to*** other sentences which contain a ***Subjunctive*** Mood or an ***Infinitive.***

This is called the ***Attracted Subjunctive.***

Note.—It will be seen that the Indicative Mood is often employed in sentences similar to those which come under B and C.

A. I. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCEPTIONS OF POSSIBILITY.

1177.—Rule LXXXV. ***Potential Subjunctive.***—The Subjunctive Mood is used in Principal Assertions to express that a fact is possible, as;

Forsitan quispiam dixerit, Perhaps some man may say.

1178.—Explanation.—In this way the Subjunctive is used to state with deference or modesty a fact which might be expressed more decidedly by the Indicative. The negative in such cases is *nē* (not *nōn*): *Nē sit sānē summum malum dolor, malum certē est,* "Pain may not indeed be the greatest evil, but an evil it certainly is."—Cic.

1179.—*Obs.* 1. The ***Present Perfect*** Subjunctive is very often employed in this sense, particularly in the first person, or in the second or third, if the subject be actually or virtually indefinite: *Brūtī jūdicium, pāce tuā dixerim, longē antepōno tuō,* "The judgment of Brutus, with your leave I would say, I far prefer to yours."—Cic. *Nē aequāveritis Hannibalī Philippum,* "You would not make out Philip equal to Hannibal."—Liv.

A. II. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCEPTIONS OF DOUBT.

1180.—Rule LXXXVI. ***Deliberative Subjunctive.***—The Subjunctive is used in Principal Questions which imply perplexity; as,

Quid hōc homine faciātis, What are you to do with this man?

1181.—Explanation.—In such questions, which ask what is to be done under certain circumstances, it is generally implied that a negative answer is looked for; "nothing," or "no." Here again the negative is *nē: Nē doleam,* "Must I not grieve?"—Cic.

1182.—Rule LXXXVII. ***Nominal Questions.***—The Subjunctive Mood is used in Questions, the matter of which is made the subject or object of a verb expressing knowledge or doubt.

These may be called ***Nominal Questions*** (see 1064), but they are generally named Indirect Questions; as,

Ipse animus nescit, quālis sit animus, { The mind itself knows not of what nature the mind is.

1183.—Explanation.—In this case the question as asked (the Principal Question, 1063) would be *quālis est* (1101) *animus,* "of what nature is the mind?" The matter or substance of this question is made in the example the object of the verb *nescit,* and is therefore used as a noun. (1064.)

1184.—*Obs.* 1. Of course, questions of either kind, Word-questions or Fact-questions (1040–1), may be used in this way. If a ***word-question*** is thus made a nominal one, the same interrogative pronoun or interrogative adverb is employed which appears in the direct question, as in the above example. So, also: *Multae gentēs nōndum sciunt cūr lūna dēficiat,* "Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed;" in which case the direct (Principal) question would be, *cūr lūna dēficit?*

1185.—*Obs.* 2. If a ***Fact-question*** is made a nominal one, the same interrogative participles are used which are employed in asking the direct (Principal) question: *-ne, num, nōnne* (1103); but *num* involves

then no anticipation of a negative answer (1105): *Existit quaestio, num quando amīcī novī veteribus sint antepōnendī*, "A question arises, whether at any time new friends are to be preferred to old ones."—Cic.

1186.—*Obs.* 3. If ***Double*** (Alternative) ***Fact-questions*** (1107) are used nominally, the particles employed are as follows:

Quaeritur	**utrum**	.... **an**	.... **an.**
"	**–ne**	.... **an**	.... **an.**
"	(omitted)	.... **–ne (an)**	.... **–ne.**
"	**num**	.... **an**	.... **an.**

Oportēbit vidēre, utrum malitiā aliud agātur aliud simulētur an stultitiā an necessitūdine an occāsiōne, "It will be necessary to see whether it is from malice that one thing is done, another pretended, or from folly, or from necessity, or from opportunity." *Dubitābant cōpiāsne ēdūcere an castra dēfendere praestāret*, "They doubted whether it was better to lead out the troops or to defend the camp."

1187.—*Obs* 4. Very often **necne** or **annōn** (or not) is used in the second member of a double question, and the interrogative word may be omitted in the first: *Parthī transierint necne nēmo dubitat*, "No one doubts whether the Parthians have crossed or not."

1188.—*Obs.* 5. The particle **an** is used in some ***single*** nominal questions, especially after *haud scio, nescio, dubito, incertum est.* It is generally then implied that an affirmative answer is expected; and, therefore, such expressions are nearly equivalent to "I almost think:" *Dubito an Venusiam tendam*, "I am half inclined to direct my course to Venusia."

EXCEPTIONS.

1189.—*Exc.* 1. The ***Indicative Mood*** is used after such expressions as **nescio quis, nescio quōmodo,** in which the interrogative pronoun or adverb has come to be so closely connected with *nescio* that the phrases are equivalent to indefinite pronouns or adverbs, and the questions are regarded as principal (direct) instead of nominal (indirect): *Nescio quōmodo, dum lego, assentior, quum posuī librum, assensio omnis ēlābitur*, "Somehow (I know not how), while I read, I assent, when I have laid down the book, all that agreement slips away," Cic.; where if *nescio* were regarded as a governing verb, we should have had *assentiar, ēlābātur*.

1190.—*Obs.* 1. Similarly, the Indicative is employed after such expressions as *mīrum quantum, immāne quantum: Id mīrum quantum prōfuit*, "This was of wonderful advantage, (*lit.* it is wonderful how much this profited.")—Liv.

Exc. 2. The ***Indicative*** in other nominal (indirect) questions is often found in Plautus and Terence, and sometimes in the later ***poets:*** *Plūs scīs quid opus factō est* (for *sit*), "You know better what must be done." —Ter.

1191.—*Obs.* 2. In the few cases in which the ***Indicative*** is apparently used in ***prose*** writers, either the question must be regarded as principal (direct), being independent of the verb; as, *dic, quaeso, num tē illa terrent*, "Tell me, I pray, do (*not* whether) these things frighten you?" Cic.; or the introducing particle is not interrogative but relative; as, *Quaerāmus, ubi maleficium est*, "Let us seek there, where the crime actually is," Cic.; where *ubi* is a relative adverb, with its antecedent *ibi* understood.

1192.—*Obs.* 3. It is, therefore, very important to distinguish between the ***similar forms*** of ***relative*** and ***interrogative*** words. Thus, *quae tū sciās scio*, means, "I know what it is you know;" but, *quae tu scīs scio*, means, "what you know I know also," "I know those things which you know."

For the ***Infinitive*** used in some nominal questions in *ōrātio obliqua*, see 1296, C.

A. III. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCEPTIONS OF DESIRE OR COMMAND.

1193.—Rule LXXXVIII. ***Optative Subjunctive.***—The Subjunctive Mood is used in Principal sentences, to express a fact as desired; as,

Valeant cīvēs meī, sint beātī,	May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy.

1194.—Explanation.—The Subjunctive Mood, thus used optatively, may be supposed to be governed by some such word as *opto*, "I desire," understood, with or without *ut*, "that."

1195.—*Obs.* 1. The optative subjunctive is often accompanied by **utinam**: *utinam tam facile vēra invenīre possim, quam falsa convincere*, "would that I could as easily prove what is true as refute what is false."—Cic.

1196.—*Obs.* 2. The ***Present tenses*** of the optative subjunctive suggest that a wish is attainable; the ***Past tenses***, that it is unattainable: *utinam modo cōnāta efficere possim*, "O that I may only be able to accomplish my aims," Cic.; *utinam cum Caesare societātem nunquam coīssēs aut nunquam dirēmissēs*, "would that you had never entered into a league with Caesar, or else had never broken it off."—Id.

1197.—*Obs.* 3. The ***First Person Plural*** of the ***Present*** tenses is used to express mutual encouragement: *teneāmus eum cursum*, "let us hold on that course," Cic.; *meminerimus etiam adversus infimōs justitiam esse servandam*, "let us remember that even towards the most helpless, justice must be maintained."—Id.

1198.—*Obs.* 4. It is this use of the Subjunctive which explains its employment in place of the ***Imperative*** (1114), and therefore the negative almost always employed is **nē**: *nē fūnestam hanc pugnam morte consulis fēceris*, "do not make this battle ruinous by the death of the consul."—Liv. But **nōn** is sometimes found if great stress is required in the negative, or if the negative belongs to a single word: *ā lēgibus nōn recēdāmus*, "we must *not* abandon the laws."—Cic.

1199.—*Obs.* 5. The optative subjunctive is often used in ***asseverations***, imprecations, etc.: *nē sim salvus, sī aliter scrībo ac sentio*, "may I be ruined if I write otherwise than as I think," Cic.; often with *ita*: *ita vīvam ut maximōs sumptūs facio*, "so may I live (*i. e.*, may I live only on this condition) as I am making the greatest expenditure."—Cic.

1200.—Rule LXXXIX. ***Nominal Commands.***—The Subjunctive Mood is used in commands, the matter of which is made the subject or object of a verb. (See 1064.)

Ad Īdūs Aprīlēs reverterentur (*imperāvit*), "(He ordered that) they should return by the 13th of April."

1201.—Explanation.—In this case the Principal (direct) command would be *ad Id. Apr. revertiminī*. When the matter of this is made the object of *imperāvit*, expressed or understood, *revertiminī* becomes *reverterentur*, and *ut*, "that," may be either expressed or omitted. The past tense is used by Rule LXXXIV. (1164), because the governing verb, *imperāvit*, is in a Tense Past, and not in consequence of the observation in 1196.

1202.—*Obs.* 1. The Subjunctive in Nominal Commands occurs very frequently in *ōrātio oblīqua* (1296, D). In this case the governing verb expressive of the command is often omitted, being implied by the principal verb, which introduces the whole speech. Thus, in the above example, the verb *imperāvit* does not occur in the passage in Caesar, but is implied in *respondit*, "he answered," which introduces all that Caesar said.

1203.—*Obs.* 2. Most verbs expressing command are followed, according to this rule, by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē**; but **ut** is often understood. **Jubeo**, however, generally takes the infinitive, and **impero**, also, the infinitive passive, and the thing commanded then takes the form of a nominal assertion (1135): *Caesar pontem rescindī jubet*, "Caesar orders the bridge to be torn down;" *nōn hunc in vincula dūcī imperābis*, "will you not command this man to be led into prison?"

1204—*Obs.* 3. ***Other verbs*** expressing *desire*, *permission*, *command*, *prohibition*, often take an ***infinitive***, such as **cupio**, **volo**, **nōlo**,

mālo, patior, sino, prohibeo, veto: *cupimus tē tuā virtūte fruī*, "we desire that you may enjoy your virtue," CIC.; *vīnum ad sē importārī sinunt*, "they allow wine to be imported among them," CAES.; *Bibulum exīre domō prohibent*, "they forbid Bibulus to leave his house."—CIC. But all of them may take the subjunctive with *ut* expressed or understood.

A. IV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCEPTIONS OF A PURPOSE.

1205.—RULE XC. ***Final Subjunctive.***—The Subjunctive Mood is used in sentences which express Purpose; as,

Nōnnullī remanēbant ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent,	Some stayed, in order that they might avoid the suspicion of fear.

1206.—EXPLANATION.—***Final Sentences*** are always ***secondary***, *i. e.*, are always attached to some other sentence, without which they would have no meaning, while it could perfectly well stand by itself. Thus in the example, *nōnnullī remanēbant*, "some remained behind," is entirely independent and self-sustaining; *i. e.*, it is *primary*. But *ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent*, "that they might avoid the suspicion of fear," has no meaning except in connection with the previous sentence, of which action it tells the purpose or motive.

1207.—***Final sentences*** are, therefore (1072), of two kinds—

(*a*) ***Adverbial***, introduced by (1) ut, in order that.
(2) **nē**, in order that—not, lest.
(3) **quō**, whereby, in order that.

(*b*) ***Adjectival***, introduced by (4) the relative pronoun **quī**.

Additional examples:

(1) *Rōmulus ut cīvium numerum augēret asȳlum patefēcit*,	Romulus opened a sanctuary, that he might increase the number of the citizens.
(2) *Oppidum oppugnāre instituit nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret*,	He determined to besiege the town, that he might not leave any enemy in his rear.
(3) *Corrūpisse dīcitur Cluentius jūdicium pecūniā, quō inimīcum suum innocentem condemnāret*,	Cluentius is said to have corrupted the judges by bribes, whereby (that) he might secure the condemnation of his guiltless friend.

(4) *Equitēs praemīsit, quī iter explōrārent,* — He sent horsemen before him, who were to (that they might) examine the road.

1208.—*Obs.* 1. The notions of Desire and of Purpose are so closely allied, that it is of little importance whether the subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*, after verbs of **desire, exhortation, persuasion** (such as *opto*, *volo*, "I wish;" *hortor*, "I exhort;" *censeo*, *statuo*, *dēcerno*, "I determine," etc.), be ranged under this rule or the preceding. *Tē hortor ut hōs librōs studiōsē legās*, "I urge you to read (that you read) these books with care," Cic.; *precor nē mē dēserās*, "I pray you not to (that you may not) desert me."—Id.

1209.—*Obs.* 2. The examples in Obs. 1 show that Final Sentences may often be translated by the **English Infinitive.** The Latin Infinitive, however, is very rarely so used. See 1160.

1210.—*Obs.* 3. Final Sentences introduced by **quō**, generally contain a **comparative:** *Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperītīs teneātur*, "A law ought to be short, whereby (in order that) it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered."—Cic.

1211.—*Obs.* 4. Rarely **ut nē** is used instead of *nē*: *Quod ut nē accidat cavendum est*, "We must take heed that this do not happen."—Cic.

1212.—*Obs.* 5. Final sentences are introduced by the **Relative Pronoun** quī, especially after verbs of *sending*, *coming*, *giving*, *choosing*, and such like: *Dēlēgisti quōs Rōmae relinquerēs*, "You picked out whom to leave at Rome," Cic.; *Hominī nātūra addidit ratiōnem, quā regerentur animī cupiditātēs*, "Nature hath given reason to man, that by it (*lit.*, by which) the passions of the soul might be governed."—Cic.

1213.—*Obs.* 6. The **Relative Adverbs,** quō, "whither," unde, "whence," etc., are used in the same way as the Relative Pronoun in introducing final sentences: *Locum destinant quō* (= *in quem*) *pretiōsissima congererent*, "They fix upon a place to which (*lit.* whither) they should bring together their most valuable effects."—Liv.

1214.—*Obs.* 7. It may be useful to enumerate here together the **various modes** in which **purpose** may be expressed in Latin. Thus, to express "the envoy came to sue for peace," we may use—

(1.) *Ut* (*nē*, *quō*), with subjunctive: *lēgātus vēnit, ut pācem rogāret.*
(2.) *Quī*, with subjunctive: *lēgātus vēnit, quī pācem rogāret.*
(3.) *Causā*, with genitive of gerund or gerundive: *lēgātus vēnit pācem rogandī causā*, or *pācis rogandae causā.* (1330.)
(4.) *Ad*, with accus. of gerundive: *lēgātus vēnit ad pācem rogandam.* (1338.)
(5.) The future participle active: *lēgātus vēnit pācem rogātūrus.* (1355.)
(6.) The accusative supine: *lēgātus vēnit pācem rogātum.* (1360.)

1215.—*Obs.* 8. **Verbs of fearing** (*timeo*, *metuo*, *vereor*, etc.) usually have the object of fear expressed by a final sentence, introduced by *ut* or

nē, the word "fear" being equivalent to "I doubtingly hope." **Ut** is used if the matter feared about be desired, **nē** if it be not desired. So that in these cases *ut* must be translated by "that—not," and *nē* by "that." *Omnēs labōrēs tē excipere video; timeo ut sustineās*, "I see you undertake all sorts of labors; I fear that you will not (*i. e.*, I doubtingly hope that you may) endure them."—Cic. *Vereor nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam*, "I fear that I may (*i. e.*, I doubtingly hope that I may not) increase your labor, while I mean to lessen it."—Cic.

1216.—*Obs.* 9. Instead of *ut*, **nē nōn** is often used in these cases: *Timeo nē nōn perficiam quod suscēpī*, "I am afraid that I may not accomplish what I have undertaken." This occurs especially when the primary sentence is negative.

1217.—*Obs.* 10. When ***negative indefinite pronouns*** or adverbs (*no one*, *nowhere*, *never*, etc.), occur in final sentences, the negative attaches itself in Latin to the introducing particle: *nē quis*, not *ut nēmo*, "in order that no one," etc. See 1225.

A. V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCEPTIONS OF A CONSEQUENCE.

1218.—Rule XCI. ***Consecutive Subjunctive.*** —The Subjunctive Mood is used in sentences which express a consequence or result; as,

Nēmo tam dēmens est ut suā voluntāte maereat,	No one is so mad that he will suffer of his own choice.

1219.—Explanation.—These sentences are always secondary; and though they speak of facts, yet since these facts are *conceived* as being the consequences of other facts, the Subjunctive Mood is employed in them, and not the Indicative.

1220.—***Consecutive Sentences*** are of two kinds:

(*a*) ***Adverbial,*** introduced by (1) **ut**, "so that—."
(2) **ut nōn**, "so that—not—."
(3) **quīn, quōminus**, "but that—."
(*b*) ***Adjectival,*** introduced by (4) the relative pronoun **quī**.

Additional Examples.

(1) *Tarquinius sīc Servium dīligēbat, ut is vulgō habērētur fīlius*,	Tarquinius loved Servius so much, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.

(2) *Saepe fit ut iī, quī dēbeant, nōn respondeant ad tempus,*	It often happens that men who are in debt do not meet their engagements at the proper time.
(3) *Vix mē contineo, quīn in illum involem,*	I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.
(4) *Mājus gaudium fuit quam quod ūniversum hominēs caperent,*	The joy was too great for men to take in all at once.

1221.*—Obs.* 1. Very often the primary sentence contains an ***antecedent*** term, such as **ita, tam, sic, tālis**, etc.: *Innocentia est affectio tālis animī, quae noceat nēminī*, "Innocence is that kind of affection of the mind which is hurtful to no one."

1222.*—Obs.* 2. A ***Consecutive Sentence*** often stands as if it were the ***subject*** of the primary sentence. This is the case when the primary sentence consists of an impersonal verb or expression; such as, *accidit, contingit, fit*, "it happens;" *restat, reliquum est*, "it remains;" *sequitur, proximum est*, "it follows;" etc.: *Sī haec nuntiātio vēra nōn est, sequitur ut falsa sit*, "If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false."—Cic. *Ita factum est ut hostēs nōn resisterent*, "So it came to pass that the enemy made no resistance."

1223.*—Obs.* 3. A ***Consecutive Sentence*** often stands as if it were the ***object*** of the verb in the primary sentence: *Temperantia efficit ut appetītiōnēs rectae ratiōnī pāreant*, "Temperance causes that the appetites submit to right reason."—Cic.

1224.*—Obs.* 4. Sometimes a ***Consecutive Sentence*** stands as an ***appositive*** to a noun in the primary sentence: *damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī cremārētur*, "It was necessary that the punishment of being burnt with fire should follow his condemnation (*lit.* him condemned)."—Caes.

1225.*—Obs.* 5. When ***negative indefinite pronouns*** or adverbs (*no one, nowhere*, etc.) occur in consecutive sentences, the negative attaches itself to the indefinite. See 1217. Thus we have:

	In ***Final Sentences.***	In ***Consecutive Sentences.***
That no one,	**nē quis,**	**ut nēmo.**
That none,	**nē ullus,**	**ut nullus.**
That never,	**nē unquam,**	**ut numquam.**
That nowhere,	**nē usquam,**	**ut nusquam.**

1226.*—Obs.* 6. ***Consecutive*** sentences introduced by the ***relative pronoun***, are used especially after the adjectives **dignus, indignus, idōneus**, etc., to denote what one is *worthy of*, or *fit for*: *Līviānae fābulae nōn satis dignae sunt quae iterum legantur*, "The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time."—Cic.

1227.*—Obs.* 7. A ***Consecutive*** sentence with **quī** is used after such verbs as **sunt**, "there are some;" **nōn dēsunt**, "there are not wanting;" **reperiuntur**, "there are found," when the antecedent of *quī* is

indefinite: *Sunt quī discessum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem*, "There are some who think death to be the departure of the soul from the body."—Cic.

1228.—*Exc.* 1. But in these cases the ***Indicative Mood*** is sometimes used when the *fact* is made prominent: *Sunt bestiae quaedam, in quibus inest aliquid simile virtūtis*, "There are some animals in whom there is some principle like virtue.—Cic. Often, too, especially in the poets, *sunt quī*, *est quī*, etc., are treated like a ***simple indefinite*** pronoun (compare 1189), and thus take the indicative: *Sunt quōs juvat*, "To some it is a joy."—Hor.

1229.—*Obs.* 8. In this way the subjunctive with *quod* is used after *est*, "there is a reason;" *nōn habeo*, "I have no reason," etc.: *Nōn est quod querāre*, "There is no reason for your complaining." It must be observed that *nōn habeo quod dīcam*, means, "I see no reason for my speaking;" but *nōn habeo quid dīcam*, means, "I do not know what to say." Compare 1192.

1230.—*Obs.* 9. ***Consecutive*** sentences with **quin** are used only after primary sentences which are actually or virtually negative; *i. e.*, those containing a negative, an interrogative anticipating a negative answer, or such words as *vix*, "scarcely;" *parum*, "too little," etc. **Quin** is used—

> ***1231.***—(*a.*) After negative sentences containing verbs of ***hindering, refusing***, etc.: *Nōn possumus recūsāre, quīn aliī ā nōbīs dissentiant*, "We cannot object that others should differ from us."—Cic. *Haud multum abfuit quīn Ismēniās interficerētur*, "But little was wanting to Ismenias' being killed," *i. e.*, "A little more and he would have been killed."—Liv.
>
> ***1232.***—(*b.*) After negative sentences containing expressions of ***doubt, possibility***, etc.: *Nōn erat dubium quīn Helvētiī plūrimum possent*, "There was no doubt that the Helvetii had most power."—Caes.
>
> ***1233.***—(*c.*) After negative sentences, implying that a ***result always follows***: *Nullus ferē diēs est quīn Satrius meam domum ventitet*, "There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house."—Cic.

1234.—*Exc.* 2. Sometimes the accusative with the ***Infinitive*** is used where **quin**, with the subjunctive might be employed: *Quis dubitat patēre Eurōpam?* "Who doubts that Europe is exposed?"—Curt.

1235.—*Exc.* 3. **Quin** is used with the ***Indicative*** in animated questions ("why not," = *quī nē*), and also in expostulations with the Imperative: *Quīn conscendimus equōs?* "Why not to horse at once?"—Liv. *Quīn tū hoc audī*, "Nay, but do you hear me?"—Ter.

1236.—*Obs.* 10. ***Consecutive*** sentences with **quōminus** (*quō minus*, "whereby the less"), are used, like those with *quīn*, after words and

phrases signifying ***hindrance,*** such as *impedio*, "I hinder;" *per mē stat*, "it is owing to me:" *Nōn recūsābo quōminus omnēs mea scripta legant*, "I will not object to all men's reading my writings."—Cic. *Per Afrānium stetit, quōminus dīmicārētur*, "It was owing to Afranius that there was no engagement."—Caes.

B. I. STATEMENTS OF TIME—TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

1237.—Temporal Secondary Sentences, which state the time of the action spoken of in the primary sentence, are introduced by **quum, quando, ubi,** "when;" **postquam,** "after;" **simulac (simul atque),** "as soon as;" **ex quō,** "since;" **priusquam, antequam,** "before;" **dum, dōnec, quoad,** "while," "until;" **quamdiū,** "as long as;" **quotiēs,** "as often as." These particles usually take the ***Indicative,*** but in some special cases some of them take the Subjunctive.

1238.—Rule XCII. The temporal particles **dum, dōnec, quoad,** "until," generally take the subjunctive if they imply Purpose as well as Time; as,

Differant in alind tempus dum dēfervescat īra,	Let them put it off to another time, till their anger cools down.

Explanation.—In this example it is implied that the accomplishment of the purpose of becoming composed is the limit of the time during which the matter should be postponed.

1239.—Obs. 1. **Dum** and **quoad** also mean, "as long as," and they then take the ***Indicative:*** *Ut aegrōtō, dum anima est, spēs esse dīcitur, sīc ego, quoad Pompēius in Italiā fuit, spērāre nōn dēstitī*, "As there is said to be hope for a sick man as long as there is life, so, as long as Pompey was in Italy, I did not cease to hope."—Cic.

1240.—Obs. 2. In the later writers, **dōnec** ("until," "while") sometimes takes the ***Subjunctive,*** even without the notion of Purpose: *Rhēnus servat violentiam cursūs dōnec ōceanō misceātur*, "The Rhine maintains the strength of its stream till it mingles with the ocean."—Tac.

1241.—Rule XCIII. The temporal particles **antequam, priusquam,** "before," take the sub-

junctive if they imply Purpose or a general truth; as,

Priusquam aggrediāre, adhibenda est praeparātio dīligens,	Before you make an attempt you should employ diligent preparation.

EXPLANATION.—In this example it is implied that careful preparation is necessary *in order that* afterwards you may make an attempt with success.

1242.—*Obs.* 1. The Subjunctive is often used with these particles when the connection between the preceding and the following event is very general: *Tempestās minātur, antequam surgat,* "A tempest threatens before it rises," SEN.;" it may threaten without rising, but the threatening is a natural antecedent of its rising.

1243.—*Obs.* 2. The ***Subjunctive*** of the ***past tenses*** especially, is often employed after **antequam, priusquam,** when it is hard to see any thing more than a mere note of time: *Ducentīs annīs, antequam Rōmam caperent, in Italiam Gallī transcendērunt,* "The Gauls crossed into Italy two hundred years before they took Rome."—LIV.

Obs. 3. The ***elements*** of **antequam, priusquam,** are often separated; *ante,* or *prius* ("sooner") being placed in the primary sentence, and *quam* ("than") introducing the secondary sentence: *Nōn ante fīnītum est praelium, quam tribūnus interfectus est,* "The battle was not finished (sooner than) before the tribune was slain."—LIV.

1244.—RULE XCIV. The temporal particle **quum (cum)** is constantly followed in historical narrative by the past tenses of the subjunctive; as,

Antigonus, quum dīmicāret, occīsus est,	Antigonus, when he was fighting, was slain.
Alexander, quum interēmisset Clītum, vix ā sē manūs abstinuit,	Alexander, when he had slain Clitus, hardly kept his hands off himself.

1245.—EXPLANATION.—In these cases, it can often be seen that the secondary sentence states not only the Time but the ***Cause*** of the event mentioned in the primary. With the Past Imperfect, *quum* may often be best translated "while," and with the Past Perfect, "after."

1246.—*Obs.* 1. **Quum,** with the Past Perfect Subjunctive is constantly used to supply the place of the wanting ***Perfect Participle*** of the ***active*** voice. Thus, in the second example above, *quum interēmisset* may be translated "having slain." (1347.)

1247.—*Obs.* 2. Sometimes **quum** is used with the subjunctive in a sort of ***consecutive*** sense: *Fuit tempus quum rūra colerent hominēs neque urbem habērent*, "There was a time when (*i. e.* such that in it) men tilled the fields and had no city."—Varr. But in a similar sentence, Cicero says, *Fuit quoddam tempus quum in agrīs hominēs vagābantur*, "There was a certain time when (in which) men wandered in the fields."

1248.—*Obs.* 3. **Quum** is used with ***similar*** tenses of the ***Indicative*** to express absolute identity of time: that the doing of one action implies the doing of the other: *Praeclārē facis quum puerum dīligis*, "You act nobly in loving the boy," Cic.; *Quum tacent, clāmant*, "In holding their peace, they in effect cry aloud."—Cic.

1249.—*Note.*—The Temporal particles **postquam, ut, ubi, simulac,** etc., have commonly the ***Aorist*** Indicative (1094), where in English the Past Perfect is employed: *Pompēius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, aciē excessit*, "Pompey, when he had seen his cavalry beaten, went out of the battle."—Caes. But the ***Past Perfect*** may be used if some lapse of time has occurred, especially if this is defined: *Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat, in Africam vēnit*, "Hannibal came to Africa in the third year after he had fled from home."—Nep.

B. II. STATEMENTS OF CAUSE—CAUSAL SENTENCES.

1250.—***Causal Secondary Sentences,*** which state the cause of the action spoken of in the primary sentence, are introduced by quod, quia, "because;" **quoniam, quando, quandoquidem,** "since;" **quum,** "since;" and the relative **quī,** "who" (in the sense of **quum is,** "since he"). Of these, all but **quum** and **quī** are regularly followed by the ***Indicative.***

1251.—Rule XCV. Causal sentences, introduced by **quum** or **quī,** have their verbs in the Subjunctive Mood; as,

Quum ūnā domō jam capī nōn possint in aliās domōs exeunt,	Since they cannot all be contained in one house, they move off into other houses.
Magna culpa Pelopis, quī nōn ērudierit fīlium,	Great was the fault of Pelops, who (= since he) did not instruct his son.

1252.—Obs. 1. Sometimes the writer chooses to represent what is really a ***cause*** rather as an independent ***fact,*** and then uses the ***Indicative:*** *Habeo senectūtī magnam grātiam, quae mihi sermōnis aviditātem auxit, pōtiōnis et cibī sustulit,* "I am very grateful to old age, which (= for it, *not* since it) has increased my passion for conversation, and taken away that for eating and drinking," Cic.; where *auxerit, sustulerit,* might have been employed.

1253.—Obs. 2. The force of **quī** in causal sentences is increased by the particles **quippe, utpote, ut, praesertim**: *Inde consul, ut quī jam ad hostēs preventum cerneret, cum coactō agmine prōcēdēbat,* "Thence the consul since he saw he had now come up with the enemy, advanced with compact line."—Liv. But **quippe quī** sometimes takes the ***Indicative,*** particularly in Livy and Sallust: *Animus fortūnā nōn eget, quippe quae probitātem neque dare neque ēripere potest,* "The soul needs not fortune, since she can neither give nor take away goodness."—Sall.

1254.—Obs. 3. **Quippe** is used alone with the ***Indicative*** in giving an ironical reason: *Quippe vetor fātīs,* "Because, I suppose, I am forbidden by the fates," Virg.; *Movet mē quippe lūmen cūriae,* "I suppose that luminary of the senate-house disturbs me."—Cic.

1255.—Obs. 4. The other causal particles, **quod, quia**, etc., may take the ***Subjunctive*** if the cause is stated on some ***other authority*** than the writer's: *Aristīdēs nōnne ob eam causam expulsus est patriā quod praeter modum justus esset,* "Was not Aristides banished for this reason, that he was just beyond measure (as his fellow-citizens alleged)?"—Cic.

1256.—Obs. 5. If it is implied that a ***supposed reason*** is ***not true*** in fact, the Subjunctive is used with **nōn quod, nōn quia, nōn quō, nōn quīn**, which may be followed by **sed quia (quod)**, with the Indicative of the true reason: *Pugilēs etiam quum feriunt adversārium ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant animōve succumbant, sed quod prōfundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur,* "Boxers, even in smiting their opponent, heave a groan: not because they are in pain, or are sinking in spirit, but because in uttering the sound the whole body is put on the stretch."—Cic.

1257.—Obs. 6. Sometimes quod is followed by the ***subjunctive*** of a verb, meaning *to say* or *think*, though the object of that verb is really the reason, as felt by the subject of the verb: *Rediit paulō post, quod sē oblītum nescio quid dīceret,* "He returned a little later, because he had forgotten something, as he said (*lit.*, because he said he had forgotten)."

1258.—Obs. 7. Often **quod** (with the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to Obs. 4, 1255) is used with those verbs and expressions which denote ***surprise, satisfaction,*** etc. (**verba affectuum**), such as *gaudeo, juvat, mīror*, etc. In these cases the accusative with the infinitive may be employed. (See 1154.) But the latter mode of expression (the form of a nominal assertion, 1135), merely points out the object of the feeling: whereas *quod* implies that the circumstances actually hold or exist. Thus: *ūtile est Gāium adesse*, merely implies that it is an advantage

for Gaius to be present, whether he is present or not. But *ūtile est quod Gaius adest* means, it is an advantage that Gaius is present *as he is*. *Mag-*

1258. Quod sometimes merely announces the subject of remark; *quod scrībis tē ventūrem*, as, "for your writing that you mean to come."

B. III. STATEMENTS OF CONDITION—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

1259.—A ***Conditional Secondary Sentence*** is one which states a condition or circumstance under which something else holds true. The ***Secondary*** clause, which contains the condition, is called the ***Condition*** (or **Protasis**), and the ***Primary*** clause, which states what does or would follow from it, is called the ***Conclusion*** (or **Apodosis**). The two clauses together form a whole, which is called the ***Hypothetical Period.*** Thus, *Sī bellum omittimus, pāce nunquam fruēmur*, "If we give up the war, we shall never enjoy peace," is a hypothetical period, of which *sī bellum omittimus* is the condition, and *nunquam pāce fruēmur* is the conclusion.

The condition is most commonly introduced by **sī**, "if," **nisi** (**nī**), "if not, unless;" sometimes by **dum, dummodo, modo**, "provided that."

1260.—The ***Hypothetical Period*** always asserts the connection of the conclusion with the condition. But as the speaker may or may not, beside this, wish to make some suggestion about the truth or probability or falsehood of the condition he assumes, we find that in Latin there are ***three main kinds*** of the Hypothetical Period, each with some peculiarity of form and meaning.

Hypothetical Period—First Form.

1261.—Rule XCVI. When the ***Indicative*** occurs in both clauses, nothing more is implied than that the conclusion depends on the condition:

Sī sunt ārae, sunt etiam nūmina, } If there are altars, there are also divinities.

1262.—Explanation.—The ***Indicative Mood*** being used in both clauses, it is possible that they ***may be real;*** but *nothing is suggested further* as to the likelihood of their proving so. So: *Errās sī id*

crēdis, "You are mistaken if you believe that."—Ter. *Perficiētur bellum, sī urgēmus obsessōs*, "The war will be finished if we press the besieged."—Liv. In these cases the speaker merely tells the circumstances under which a particular conclusion will follow, but does not hint what his opinion is as to the probability of the conclusion being actually reached.

1263.—*Obs.* 1. Often in this form the conclusion contains an ***Imperative Mood,*** or the ***Subjunctive*** used in an optative or potential sense (1177, 1193): *Sī quicquam inveniēs mē mentītum, occīdito*, "If you find that I have told any lie, kill me," Ter.; *Sī sciens fallo, tum mē pessimō lētō afficiās*, "If I knowingly deceive, then mayst thou visit me with the worst death."—Liv.

1264.—*Obs.* 2. Sometimes sī is ***omitted*** in the condition of this and of the other forms of the hypothetical period: *Negat quis, nego; ait, āio*, "(If) a man says no, I say no; (if) he says yes, I say yes."—Ter.

Hypothetical Period—Second Form.

1265.—Rule XCVII. When the ***Present Tenses*** of the ***Subjunctive*** are used in both clauses, it is implied that the speaker knows that the supposition is a mere conception or imaginary case, which ***may*** probably ***never*** be realized.

Sī negem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.

1266.—Explanation.—In this form the Subjunctive Mood is used, since the condition is presented as a mere ***conception.*** But the tenses being present, it is *possible* that the condition, and therefore the conclusion which depends on it, may yet be realized. *Diēs dēficiat, sī velim ēnumerāre*, "The day would fail, if I should choose to enumerate;" *Sī scieris aspidem occultē latēre uspiam, improbē fēceris nisi monueris alterum nē assideat*, "If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbor not to sit there."—Cic.

Hypothetical Period—Third Form.

1267.—Rule XCVIII. When the ***Past Tenses*** of the ***Subjunctive*** are used in both clauses, it is

implied that the speaker knows, or believes, that the supposition is a mere conception which ***cannot now*** be realized.

Necāssem jam tē verberibus, nisi īrātus essem,	I would have beaten you to death, if I had not been angry.

1268.—Explanation.—The ***past tenses subjunctive*** in the Hypothetical Period (both perfect and imperfect), allude to past time, or at any rate to an obstacle in past time affecting the present state of things. In either case, it is now too late to alter matters, and therefore these tenses generally imply not only the non-existence of a state of things, but also impossibility. The Past Imperfect implies non-existence at the present time, and the Past Perfect, non-existence at a past time. Thus: *Sapientia nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficeret,* "Wisdom would not be sought after (*as it is*), if it produced no result (*but it does produce results*);" *Dēlētus exercitus foret, nī fugientēs silvae texissent,* "The army would have been destroyed (*which it was not*), unless the woods had sheltered the fugitives (*as they did*)."

1269.—*Obs.* 1. The forms in which the Hypothetical Period usually appears are those given in the three preceding rules. But we sometimes find ***mixed forms***, in which the Condition and Conclusion do not answer to each other so strictly as in the examples given. Thus we find—

1270.—(*a*) In the ***Third Form***, the Past ***Imperfect*** in the Condition, and the Past ***Perfect*** in the Conclusion, or *vice versā*, in which cases the tenses retain their strict meaning: *Sī hās inimīcitiās cavēre potuisset, vīveret,* "If he had (then) been able to guard against these enmities (*as he was not*), he would now be alive (*as he is not*)," Cic.; *Sī hoc optimum factū jūdicārem, ūnīus ūsūram hōrae istī gladiātōrī ad vīvendum nōn dedissem,* "If I had judged (*as I did not and do not*) this the best thing to do, I would not have granted (*as I did*) to that gladiator the enjoyment of a single hour for life." —Cic.

1271.—(*b*) The ***Condition*** of the ***Second Form*** joined with the ***Conclusion*** of the ***First Form***: *Quae sī rejiciāmus, illa quoque, unde haec nāta sunt, rejiciēmus,* "if we reject these things, we shall reject those, also, from which these are derived;" *Neque amīcitiam tuērī possumus, nisi aequē amīcōs et nōsmet ipsōs dīligāmus,* "Nor can we maintain friendship, unless we love our friends as ourselves."

1272.—(*c*) The ***Condition*** of the ***Third Form*** with the ***Conclusion*** of the ***First Form***. This case is generally only an apparent exception, the true conclusion being understood. This is the case:—

1273.—(1) When the conclusion contains one of the Indicative tenses of the ***periphrastic conjugations*** (328, 329): *Sī mē triumphāre prohibērent, testēs citātūrus fuī rērum ā mē gestārum,* "If they had attempted to prevent my triumphing, I should have called up (*i. e.*, I was intending to call up, and should have done so) witnesses of my achievements."—Liv. *Sī prīvātus esset, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat dēligendus,* "If he had been in a private station, still he was the man who ought to have been selected for such a war."—Cic.

1274.—(2) When the conclusion contains a verb of ***duty, power,*** etc. (*dēbeo, possum*): *Hunc patris locō, sī ulla in tē pietās esset, colere dēbēbās,* "This man you were bound to respect as a father (and would have done so) if there had been any dutiful feeling in you."—Cic.

1275.—(3) When the conclusion contains the verb "***to be***" with such adjectives as **longum, rectum, aequum, satis**, etc.: *Longum est, sī tibi narrem,* "It is long (or would be so) if I were to tell." —Ter.

1276.—(4) With ***other verbs,*** especially if accompanied by such adverbs as **paene, prope**, almost: *Pons iter paene hostibus dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisset,* "The bridge all but offered a passage to the enemy (and would have done so completely), had it not been for one man." —Liv. This construction is very common in Tacitus: *Quod nī properē pernōtuisset, haud multum ab exitiō lēgātī aberant,* "And if this had not speedily become known (they would have put an end to the officer, for even as it was) they were not far from doing so."

1277.—*Obs.* 2. The ***conclusion*** of the ***Second*** or ***Third*** form is ***omitted*** when the condition has *ac sī, quasi, velut sī, ceu,* "as if," "as it were": *Sed quid ego hīs testibus ūtor quasi rēs dubia aut obscūra sit,* "But why do I resort to these witnesses, as (I should do) if the matter were doubtful or obscure?"

1278.—*Obs.* 3. The ***condition*** of the ***Second*** or ***Third*** form is sometimes ***omitted:*** *Canēs vēnāticōs dīcerēs,* "You would have said they were hounds (if you had not known the contrary)." *Tū velim ad mē veniās,* "I should like you to come to me (if you can)."

1279.—*Obs.* 4. The particle **sī** is sometimes ***omitted:*** *Rogēs mē, nihil fortasse respondeam,* "(If) you should ask me, I should, perhaps, make no answer." *Partem opere in tantō, sineret dolor, Icare habērēs,* "Some place in this great work, Icarus, had grief permitted, thou wouldst have had."—Virg. See 1264.

Obs. 5. For the changes in the Hypothetical Period, when it stands as object or subject of a verb (*i. e.*, is used ***nominally***), see 1304.

1280.—*Obs.* 6. The ***Relative Pronoun*** quī is sometimes found introducing sentences apparently conditional: *Haec quī videat, nonne cōgā-*

tur confitērī deōs esse, "Would not a man who should see these things (*i. e.*, if he should see), be constrained to confess that there are gods?" *Epicūrus sē ūnus, quod sciam, sapientem prōfitērī est ausus*, "Epicurus was the only man, so far as I know (*i. e.*, if I know this point), who presumed to profess himself a wise man."

B. IV. STATEMENTS OF CONCESSION—CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

1281.—Concessive Secondary Sentences are those in which a point is admitted or granted. Accordingly, they are closely connected in sense with the Hypothetical Period; and some of the particles introducing them are merely ***compounds*** of **sī**: **etsī, etiamsī, tametsī,** "although." These are governed by the same rules as to mood and tense as the different forms of the Hypothetical Period. Thus: *Homo, quod crēbrō videt, nōn mīrātur, etiamsī, cūr fīat, nescit*, "A man does not wonder at what he sees constantly, though he knows not why it happens."—Cic. *Rectum est in contentiōnibus, etiamsī nōbīs indigna audiāmus, tamen gravitātem retinēre*, "It is right in disputes, though we may hear things unworthy of us, still to retain our dignity."—Cic. *Etiamsī in nōs nōn is esset, quī est, tamen ornandus vidērētur*, "Although he were not to me what he is, yet he would seem to deserve to be complimented."—Cic.

N. B. The concessive particle is sometimes omitted. Comp. 1264, 1269.

1282.—RULE XCIX. ***Concessive sentences*** take the ***subjunctive*** if they are introduced by **licet, quamvīs, ut, nē, quum,** "although;" as,

Vīta brevis est, licet suprā mille annōs exeat,	Life is short, though it may extend beyond a thousand years.

1283.—EXPLANATION.—Of these so-called Conjunctions, **licet** is really an impersonal verb (454) "it is allowed," and is followed by the ***Final*** Subjunctive without **ut. Quamvīs** (or more rarely **quantumvīs**) means "as much as you please," and the subjunctive following it is really ***Potential:*** *quamvīs ille fēlīx sit*, "though he be fortunate," *i. e.*, "let him be as fortunate as you please." **Ut** and **nē** are to be explained by understanding **fac** or **sine,** "suppose" or "allow:" *Ut quaerās omnia, nōn reperiēs*, "Though (grant that) you examine all things, you will not find."—Cic. **Quum,** as a Concessive particle, is nearly allied to **quum,** ***Causal,*** as indicating a logical connection between the clauses: *Phōciōn fuit perpetuō pauper quum dītissimus esse posset*, "Phocion was always poor, though he had it in his power to be very rich."—NEP.

1284.—Rule C. ***Concessive sentences*** introduced by **quamquam** generally have the ***indicative;*** as,

Quamquam festīnās, nōn est mora longa,	Though you are in haste, the delay is not long.

1285.—*Obs.* 1. **Quamquam** is, in the later writers, particularly Tacitus, constantly used with the ***Subjunctive.*** This occurs also in Cicero, where the concession is made in reference to the judgment of another: *Quamquam sint in quibusdam malis,* "Although they are (as you assume) in some evils."

1286.—*Obs.* 2. **Quamvis**, in the later writers (Tacitus) and the poets, is often found with the Indicative, having thus lost its etymological meaning: *Quamvīs sōlus avem coelō dējēcit ab altō,* "Though he alone brought down the bird from the high heaven."—Virg.

1287.—*Obs.* 3. Sometimes **quamvis** is joined with **licet**, with the Subjunctive: *Quamvīs licet virtūtī dēlūbra consecrēmus,* "Although we may consecrate fanes to virtue."

1288.—*Obs.* 4. **Often quamquam** (more rarely **etsi**) is used in ***Primary*** sentences, meaning "and yet," Greek καίτοι: *quamquam quid loquor,* "And yet why do I speak?"—Cic.

1289.—*Obs.* 5. **Quamquam, quamvis,** and **etsi,** are sometimes used with ***adjectives*** or ***participles:*** *quamquam haud dissimulans,* "Although not disguising."—Suet. **Quamvis** is also used with an intensive force with ***adverbs:*** *Stultitiam accūsāre quamvīs cōpiōsē licet,* "You may revile folly as copiously as you please."

1290.—*Obs.* 6. Occasionally the ***Relative Pronoun*** **qui** is used in a concessive sense with the Subjunctive, being then equivalent to *licet is* (*ego*, etc.): *Saepe vidēmus fractōs pudōre quī ratiōne nullā vincerentur,* "We often see men overcome by shame, though they were moved by no reason." *Tū aquam ā pūmice postulās, quī ipse sitiat,* "You demand water from a pumice stone, though it is itself parched with thirst."

C. ATTRACTED SUBJUNCTIVE.

1291.—Rule CI. ***Attracted Subjunctive.***—The Subjunctive Mood is used in secondary sentences which are attached, as an *essential part of*

the thought, to sentences containing the ***Subjunctive,*** or to the construction of the accusative with the ***Infinitive*** (nominal assertions); as,

Quis fidem habeat eī, quī amīcōs suōs dēcēperit,	Who can put faith in a man who has deceived his own friends?
Nōn crēdo eum, quī sapiens sit, miserum esse posse,	I do not believe that he, who is wise, can be unhappy.

1292.—Explanation.—The reason of this rule is that such secondary sentences contain a reference to the statements or opinions of others than the writer, and therefore they must be regarded by him rather as ***Conceptions*** than as facts. (Compare 1255.) Thus, in the examples above, the secondary sentences may be supposed to contain parenthetically the notion "you admit," "it is agreed," or such like. The name "***Attracted Subjunctive,***" or "Subjunctive by Attraction," is given to this use of the mood in order to imply that the Subjunctive is not employed by reason of the nature of the thought, but because of its being ***under the influence*** of the preceding verb.

1293.—*Obs.* 1. The ***Indicative Mood*** is employed in secondary sentences in this position—

(*a*) If the writer wishes to make the thought his own: *Referunt apud Suēvōs silvam esse infīnītā magnitūdine, quae appellātur Bacenis*, "They report that there is among the Suevī a forest of immense size, and this (I tell you) is called Bacenis."—Caes.

1294.—(*b*) If the secondary sentence merely states a simple fact or general truth periphrastically: *Dent operam consulēs, praetōrēs, quīque consulārēs sunt ad urbem, nē quid rēspublica dētrīmentī capiat*, "(It is decreed that) the consuls, praetors, and the consulars who are near the city, see to it that the republic receive no harm," Caes. (= *consulārēs ad urbem*). *Marius Plōtium dīlexit, cūjus ingeniō putābat ea, quae gesserat, posse celebrārī*, "Marius was fond of Plotius, by whose talent he thought that his exploits could be celebrated," Cic. (= *rēs ā sē gestās*).

REPORTED SPEECH (Ōrātio Oblīqua).

1295.—The words of a speech may be reported in ***two ways***—

(1) Giving the ***words exactly*** as they were uttered; as, Ariovistus said: "I will not give back the hostages to the Aedui, whatever you may say." This is called ***Direct Speech*** (ōrātio recta).

(2) Giving the ***sense only,*** the first and second persons being changed to the third; as, Ariovistus said that he would not give back the hostages to the Aedui, whatever he (Caesar) might say. This is called ***Indirect Speech*** (**ōrātio oblīqua**).

1296.—In **ōrātio oblīqua** the matter of the whole speech is made the object of the verb which introduces it (he said, he answered, he asked, he commanded, etc.), and therefore—

A. All the *assertions* become ***nominal assertions,*** and have their verbs in the Infinitive Mood, with the subjects in the accusative. (1135.)

B. All the *real questions* become ***nominal questions,*** and have their verbs in the Subjunctive Mood. (1182.)

C. All *rhetorical questions*, which are really disguised assertions, have their verbs in the ***Infinitive,*** with the subject in the accusative. These are most commonly questions in the ***First*** or ***Third*** Person.

D. All the *commands* become ***nominal commands,*** and have their verbs in the Subjunctive Mood. (1200.)

E. All the *secondary sentences*, being now attached to either Subjunctive or Infinitive clauses, have their verbs in the Subjunctive ***by Attraction.*** (1291.)

F. If the Indicative Mood occurs in a secondary sentence, it expresses an assertion which the narrator makes his own, and does not attribute to the speaker. (1293.)

G. All sentences, which contained the Subjunctive in the speech as delivered, retain the Subjunctive.

H. All Pronouns of the First or Second Person are changed to the ***Third Person,*** and the Reflective Pronouns **sē, suus,** sometimes **ipse,** generally take the place of **ego, nōs, meus, noster,** sometimes of **tū, vōs, tuus, vester.**

I. Most commonly the verb which introduces the speech is in a Tense past, and then the tenses of the Subjunctive will be ***past*** (1164). But sometimes the introducing verb is in a Tense not past, and then the tenses of the Subjunctive may be ***present*** (1164), as they sometimes are even after a Tense past.

The above rules will be best understood by studying the following passages in which the same speeches are given in both modes of reporting. The capital letters inserted in the *ōrātio oblīqua* refer to the above rules.

1297.—*Ōrātio Recta.*

Dīvico ita loquitur:

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faci*et*, in eam partem ī*bunt* atque ibi *erunt* Helvētiī ubi *tū* eōs constitu*eris* atque esse volu*eris*: sīn bellō persequī persevērā*s*, reminisc*ere* et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus *es*, cum iī quī flūmen trans*ierant* suīs auxilium ferre nōn pot*erant*, nē ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtūtī tribu*eris* aut *nōs* dēspe*xeris*. *Nōs* ita ā patribus mājōribusque *nostrīs* didic*imus* ut magis virtūte quam dolō contend*āmus* aut insidiīs nīt*āmur*. Quārē nē comm*īseris* ut *hic* locus ubi constit*imus* ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen cap*iat* aut memoriam prōd*at*.

Ōrātio Oblīqua.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvetiīs fac*eret* (E, I) in eam partem i*tūrōs* (A) atque ibi *futūrōs* (A) ubi eōs *Caesar* constitu*isset* (E, I) atque esse volu*isset* (E, I): sīn bellō persequī persevērā*ret* (E, I) reminisc*erētur* (D, I) et veteris incommodī populī Romānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus *esset* (E, I) cum iī quī flūmen trans*īssent* (E) suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent (E) nē ob eam rem aut *suae* (H) magnopere virtutī tribu*eret* (D) aut *ipsōs* (H) dēsp*iceret*: *sē* (H) ita ā patribus mājōribusque *suīs* (H) didic*isse* (A) ut magis virtūte quam dolō contend*erent* (G, I) aut insidiīs nīt*erentur* (G, I). Quārē nē commit*teret* (D, I) ut *is* (H) locus ubi consti*tissent* (E, I) ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen cap*eret* (G, I) aut memoriam prōd*eret* (G, I).—CAES. *B. G.* i., 13.

1298.—Respondit Caesar:

Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis da*tur* quod eās rēs, quās *vōs* (lēgātī Helvetiī) commemorā*vistis*, memoriā ten*eo*: atque eō gravius fer*o* quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accid*ērunt*; quī sī alicūjus injūriae sibi conscius fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre: sed eō dēcep*tus est* quod neque commissum ā sē intellig*ēbat* quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putā*bat*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīviscī *velim*,* num etiam recentium injūriārum, quod *mē* invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim tentā*stis*, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexā*stis*, memoriam dēpōnere pos*sum*? Quod *vestrā* victōriā tam insolenter gloriā*minī* quodque tamdiū *vōs*

Hīs Caesar ita respondit:

Eō *sibi* (H) minus dubitātiōnis dar*ī* (A) quod eās rēs quās *lēgātī Helvētiī* (H) commemorā*ssent* (E, I) memoriā ten*ēret* (E, I): atque eō gravius fer*re* (A) quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accid*issent* (E, I): quī sī alicūjus injūriae, sibi conscius fuisset (G), nōn *fuisse* difficile cavēre: sed eō dēcep*tum* quod neque commissum ā sē intellig*eret* (E) quārē timēret (G) neque sine causā timendum putā*ret* (E). Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīviscī *vellet* (G, I) num etiam recentium injūriārum, quod *eō* invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim tentā*ssent*, (E) quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexā*ssent* (E) memoriam dēpōnere pos*se*? (C) Quod *suā* (H) victōriā tam insolenter glōriā*rentur* (E), quodque tam diū *sē* (H) impūne injūriās

* It is believed that *velim* is the true transcription, being the potential subjunctive, used instead of the Indicative, in forming the condition of Hypothetical Period No. I. But Madvig gives *volo*.

impūne injūriās tulisse admīrā*minī* eōdem pertin*et*. Consuē*runt* enim diī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihi* d*abuntur* uti ea quae pollicē*minī* factūrōs intelliga*m*, et sī Aeduīs dē injūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intul*istis*, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaci*ētis*, *equidem* cum *vōbīs* pācem faciam.

tulisse admīrā*rentur* (E), eōdem pertinē*re* (A). Consuē*sse* (A) enim de*ōs* (A) immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant (G) quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concedere. Cum *ea* (H) ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab *iīs* (H) *sibi* (H) d*entur* (E) uti ea quae pollice*antur* (E) factūrōs intelligat (G, H) et sī Aeduīs dē injūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intul*erint* (E), item sī Allobrogibus satisfaci*ant* (E) *sēsē* (A, H) cum *iīs* (H) pācem *esse factūrum*. CAES. *B. G.* i., 14.

1299.—Caesar ita locūtus est:

Ariovist*us mē* consule, cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appet*īvit:* cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum jūdic*et? Mihi* quidem persuā*dētur*, cognitīs *meīs* postulātīs atque aequitāte conditiōnum perspectā, eum neque *meam* neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intu*lerit*, quid tandem ver*ēminī*, aut cūr dē *vestrā* virtūte aut dē *meā* dīligentiā dēspērā*tis?* Factum ējus hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā cum, Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā Cāiō Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur. Ex quō jūdicārī po*test* quantum habe*at* in sē bonī constantia: propterea quod, quās aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timu*erant*, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superā*vērunt*.

Vehementer eōs incūsāvit:

Ariovist*um* (A) *sē* (H) consule, cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appe*tīsse* (A): cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officio discessūrum jūdic*āret* (Obs. 2.) *Sibi* (H) quidem persuādē*rī* (A) cognitīs *suīs* (H) postulātīs atque aequitāte conditiōnum perspectā, eum neque *suam* (H) neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī, furōre atque āmentiā impulsus, bellum intul*isset* (E, I) quid tandem verē*rentur* (B) aut cūr dē *suā* (H) virtūte aut dē *ipsīus* (H) dīligentiā dēspērā*rent?* Factum ējus hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum (Obs. 4) memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā Cāiō Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur (F). Ex quō jūdicārī po*sse* (Obs. 1) [*al.* posset] quantum habē*ret* (G, I) in sē bonī constantia: propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timu*issent*, hōs posteā armātōs atque victōrēs superā*ssent* (E).—CAES. *B. G.* i., 40.

1300.—*Obs.* 1. In the above passage, *posse* is undoubtedly the true reading, because the relative pronoun *quō* is in that place merely a demonstrative with a conjunction, "but from this" (701), and therefore it does not introduce a secondary sentence, but another assertion; and accordingly the sentence comes under A and not under E. The reading *posse* is adopted by LONG and KRANER.

1301.—*Obs.* 2. In line 4 of the above passage it might be supposed that *cūr quisquam jūdicāret*, being a rhetorical question, and equivalent to the implied assertion "no one ought to judge," should be *cūr quemquam jūdicāre*, according to C. But the question as asked in *ōrātio recta* would have the potential subjunctive (1177), and therefore the subjunctive is retained in the *ōrātio obliqua* by G.

Obs. 3. Sometimes, also, in secondary sentences, introduced by *quia*, *quum interim*, etc., the Infinitive Mood is found instead of the Subjunctive, some such verb as *dīceret* or *putāret* (cf. 1257) being understood: *Aegerrimē plēbs ferēbat jacēre tamdiū irritās sanctiōnēs quae dē suis commodis ferrentur, quum interim dē suppliciō suō lātam lēgem confestim exercēri*, "The plebeians were very indignant that regulations which were passed for their advantage should remain so long without effect, while (they saw that) a law made for their punishment was instantly put in force."—Liv.

1302.—*Obs.* 4. In line 15 above, it will be observed that the first personal pronoun (*nostrōrum*, and so, *nōs*, elsewhere) is retained as not referring to the speaker himself, but to the side or party of the writer or narrator.

1303.—*Obs.* 5. When a ***Hypothetical Period*** occurs in the *ōrātio obliqua*, the law of the sequence of tenses (I) will often make the second form appear like the third. The following sentences may be taken as examples of the changes of each of the three forms when recurring in *ōrātio obliqua*.

First Form: Sī hoc dīcis errās.
Censet, sī hoc dīcāt eum errāre.
Censēbat, sī hoc dīceret, eum errāre.

Second Form: Sī hoc dicās, errēs.
Censet, sī hoc dīcat, eum errātūrum esse.
Censēbat, sī hoc dīceret, eum errātūrum esse.

Third Form: Sī hoc dīcerēs (dixissēs), errārēs (errāvissēs).
Censet, *or* } Sī hoc dīceret, eum errātūrum esse.
Censēbat, } Sī hoc dixisset, eum errātūrum fuisse.

THE GERUNDIVE AND GERUND.

1304.—The ***Gerundive*** is a Verbal Adjective of the Passive Voice. It is sometimes called the ***Future Participle Passive;*** but it is rather Imperfect in meaning, and seems to be connected in form with the Imperfect Participle Active.

The ***Gerundive*** has ***three uses:***—

I. It is used as a ***complement*** of the verb sum, and therefore in

the nominative or the accusative case. In this connection it forms what is called (329) the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, and implies ***duty*** or ***necessity:*** *i. e.*, that something ought to be done or must be done.

II. It is used with verbs of ***taking, giving, causing,*** etc., in agreement with their object if Active, and with their subject if Passive, to imply the purpose of the act of giving, taking, etc.

III. It is used as a ***substitute*** for the ***Gerund*** in certain cases.

I. THE GERUNDIVE AS THE COMPLEMENT OF SUM.

1305.—Rule CII. The ***Gerundive*** is used as the ***complement*** of the verb **sum**, to express duty or necessity; and the ***agent,*** or the person on whom the obligation rests, if expressed, is put in the ***dative*** case; as,

(1) *Dīligentia nōbīs adhibenda est,*	We must observe diligence.
(2) *Resistendum est senectūtī,*	We must resist old age.
(3) *Suō cuīque jūdiciō ūtendum est,*	Each man must use his own judgment.

1306.—Explanation.—A. ***Gerundive of Transitive Verbs.***—The first of these examples is an instance of the Gerundive formed from a ***Transitive Verb.*** It shows that the accusative object of the Active verb is made the subject of the verb *est*, and that the Gerundive is used as the complement (666) of *est* in precisely the same way as the Perfect Participle is used in forming the Perfect Tenses Passive. The Dative *nōbīs* must be regarded as the Dative of Interest (845–7) with *est*, and not as in strictness the Agent governed by the Gerundive.

1307.—B. ***Gerundive of Intransitive Verbs.***—The second and third of these examples are instances of the Gerundive formed from ***Intransitive Verbs.*** Since these have no accusative object in the Active, *resisto* governing the Dative, and *ūtor* governing the Ablative, they can, of course, have no subject in the Passive (see 263), and if used at all in the Passive form must be used Impersonally (453). Thus: *resistimus senectūtī* will become in the Passive form *senectūtī resistitur*, or in the Gerundive *resistendum est*. But with regard to the third example, it is

to be observed that *ūtor* is a Deponent Verb, and, *the only form which is uniformly Passive from Deponent Verbs being the Gerundive*, the Impersonal construction is only possible with the Gerundive. Thus, *ūtitur suō jūdiciō* can have no Impersonal Passive construction except the one given in Example 3.

1308.—*Obs.* 1. It is thought by some writers that the neuter form in the above Impersonal construction is not the Gerundive but the ***nominative of the Gerund.*** Thus: *omnibus moriendum est*, "all must die," is explained as if *moriendum* were the subject and not the complement of *est:* "dying is to all." But it is believed that the explanation of all Impersonal Passive constructions is the same; namely, that the ***real subject*** is the *abstract notion of the action* implied by the verb, and that in strictness the ***predicate*** in all cases is some such general notion as *is* (*has been, must be*) *done.* Thus: *ā mīlitibus pugnātur* should be explained "the action of fighting *is done* by the soldiers." It may be considered that this abstract notion is expressed by the Infinitive Mood understood: *τὸ pugnāre ā mīlitibus pugnātur*, in which instead of a *general* predicate such as *fit, factum est*, etc., a ***cognate predicate*** was preferred. If the Infinitive be really the understood subject, the fact that a participle or the Gerundive in the predicate is always in the neuter gender is in accordance with the general rule for a Complement (666), the Infinitive being a neuter noun.

1309 —*Obs.* 2. On the above theory of this construction, when the Intransitive Gerundive is accompanied by its case, as in Examples 2 and 3, that case must be considered to be governed by the ***understood infinitive,*** and not by the Gerundive, which is only a general expression, such as "must be done," which happens to be expressed by a form cognate to the understood infinitive. Thus: in *resistendum est senectūtī*, the real construction is: *τὸ resistere senectūtī est resistendum ; suō cuique jūdiciō est ūtendum*, is *τὸ suō jūdiciō ūtī est cuique ūtendum*, in which sentences *resistendum* and *ūtendum* really stand in a cognate way for some such general predicate as *faciendum*; "the business of withstanding old age is *to be done;*" "the task of using his own judgment is *to be done* by each man."

1310.—*Obs.* 3. The ***Agent*** with the Gerundive Construction is, according to the Rule, nearly always in the ***Dative.*** But it is sometimes expressed by the ***Ablative with*** ā, particularly if the use of the Dative might cause ambiguity. Thus Cicero says, *Aguntur bona multōrum cīvium, quibus est ā vōbīs consulendum*, "The property of many citizens is at stake, whose interests ought to be consulted by you;" whereas, if he had said *quibus vōbīs*, it might be understood that *quibus* expressed the persons on whom the obligation rested.

1311.—*Obs.* 4. Besides the cases referred to in Obs. 3, there are a few other passages in Cicero in which *ā* with the ablative is used for the agent without apparent reason: *Haec ā mē in dīcendō praetereunda nōn sunt*, "These things I must not pass over in speaking."

1312.—*Obs.* 5. Very rarely in the best writers is the ***Impersonal Construction*** used in the case of ***Transitive Verbs,***

which properly have the Personal Constructive: *Canēs paucōs et ācrēs habendum est*, "One should keep few dogs but active ones," VARR.; for *Canēs paucī et ācrēs habendī sunt*. So CIC. *Sen.* ii. 6, *tanquam aliquam viam longam cōnfēceris, quam nōbīs quoque ingrediendum sit*, "As if you have completed a long journey, which we too must enter upon." *Aeternās poenās in morte timendum est*, "They must fear eternal punishments in death."—LUCR. 1, 112.

1313.—*Obs.* 6. Of course, when the Gerundive Construction is made the object or subject of a verb, it takes the form of a ***nominal assertion*** (1135), and the verb *est*, *sunt*, etc., becomes the infinitive, and the Gerundive is in the accusative case to agree with the subject: *Neque Hispāniam negligendam esse ratus est*, "Nor did he judge that Spain ought to be neglected."

1314.—*Obs.* 7. The Gerundive sometimes appears to have the meaning of ***possibility*** or ***fitness*** chiefly in connection with **vix**, or in interrogative or conditional sentences which imply a ***negative***: *Vix erat crēdendum*, = *vix crēdī poterat*, "It could hardly be believed."—CAES. *Sī Circē et Calypsō mulierēs appellandae sunt*, "If Circe and Calypso can be called women."—CIC. The Gerundive is sometimes used without *est* (*sunt*) as an attributive adjective in this sense: *Labōrēs nōn fugiendōs*, "Labors which cannot be avoided;" *Potentia vix ferenda*, "Power hardly to be endured"—CIC.

II. THE GERUNDIVE WITH VERBS OF *Taking, Giving,* ETC.

1315.—RULE CIII. The Gerundive is used with verbs of ***Taking, Giving, Caring for,*** etc., to imply that something is to be done to their object if the verbs are active, and to their subject if the verbs are passive:

Urbem dux mīlitibus dīripiendam dedit (***Active***).	The General gave up the city to the soldiers to plunder.
Urbs ā duce mīlitibus dīripienda data est (***Passive***).	The city was given up by the General to the soldiers to plunder.

1316.—*Obs.* 1. This construction is common with the verb **cūrāre**, "to take care of:" *Caesar pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat*, "Caesar has a bridge constructed over the Saône, *lit.*, takes care of a bridge to be made."

1317.—*Obs.* 2. The ***Infinitive Mood*** is sometimes used in this connection by the poets: *Tristitiam et metūs trādam protervis in mare Crēticum portāre ventis*, "I will give my sadness and my fears to the wanton winds to carry to the Cretan sea."—Hor. In prose this is a rare exception, occurring in Cicero only in the phrase *bibere ministrāre* (without accusative), "to give to drink." (*Tusc.* i. 26.)

1318.—*Obs.* 3. Though it is proper to say *habeo aedem tuendam*, "I have a temple to keep up," yet *habeo statuendum, dicendum*, etc., "I have to decide, say," is a later idiom. But ***habeo*** is used with the ***Infinitive*** of *dico, scribo, polliceor*, etc., in the sense of *I have to, I can: Haec ferē dicere habui dē nātūrā deōrum*, "This is what I had to say concerning the nature of the gods."—Cic.

III. THE GERUNDIVE USED IN PLACE OF THE *Gerund.*

1319.—The ***Gerund*** is a neuter Verbal Noun of the ***active*** voice, used only in the ***oblique cases*** of the ***singular,*** and expresses the action of a verb as an abstract notion, just as the Infinitive Mood does. The Infinitive, however, is used ordinarily only in the nominative and accusative cases, and as the object or subject of a verb (see 1118, 1120), and the Gerund supplies its place for the other cases, and also for the accusative when governed by a preposition.

1320.—Examples of the Use of the ***Gerund*** as the ***Supplement of the Infinitive.***

Nom. *Natāre est ūtile*, "Swimming is useful."
Gen. *Natandī sum perītus*, "I am skilled in swimming."
Dat. *Natandō homo aptus est*, "Man is fit for swimming."
Accus. { *Natāre disco*, "I learn swimming."
Ad natandum homo aptus est, "Man is fit for swimming."
Abl. *Natandō corpus exercētur*, "The body is exercised by swimming."

1321.—The Gerund, being a verbal noun, is modified by ***adverbs*** and not by adjectives, and ***governs the case*** of its verb: *Parsimōnia est ars rē familiārī moderātē ūtendī*, "Frugality is the art of using one's property with moderation."—Sen.

But if the Gerund belong to a ***Transitive Verb,*** and have its object expressed, in most cases the Gerundive was used instead of it by the following Rule:

1322.—Rule CIV. The Gerundive is used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the Accusative; as,

Studium { *Agrum colendī* (a) ***Gerund,*** / *Agrī colendī* (b) ***Gerundive,*** } The pursuit of tilling the soil.

1323.—Explanation.—The English Verbal Substantive in *–ing* exactly represents the Latin Gerund: and therefore the ***Gerund construction*** (a) is that which we should naturally adopt in translating such sentences as the above.

But the ***Gerundive construction*** (b) is much preferred in Latin, and for the ***Dative*** and ***Accusative*** cases of the Gerund is nearly always adopted. It will be observed that—

1324.—(1) The object of the Gerund in (a) (*agrum*) is changed in (b) into the case of the Gerund (*agrī*).

(2) The Gerund in (a) is changed in (b) into the Gerundive, in agreement with *agrī*.

(3) The noun *studium*, which in (a) is limited by the Gerund, with its object, *colendī agrum*, is limited in (b) by the Gerundive with its noun, *agrī colendī*.

Therefore, in the ***Gerund construction*** (a), the Gerund is first governed and then governs its object: in the ***Gerundive construction*** (b), the noun is governed, and then the Gerundive agrees with it.

1325.—*Note.* 1. The ***deponent*** Verbs, ūtor, "use," fruor, "enjoy," fungor, "discharge," potior, "become possessed of," glōrior, "boast," though they commonly govern an ablative, yet, since they were originally reflective, and governed the accusative, are sometimes found in the Gerundive construction: *Tenendus est voluptātis fruendae modus*, "We must hold fast moderation in enjoying pleasure." But as complement of *esse*, the impersonal construction is nearly always preferred.

1326.—*Note.* 2. Though the ***Gerund*** belongs to the Active Voice, it is sometimes found with apparently a ***passive sense:*** *Antōnius Italiā cesserat: spēs restituendī nulla erat*, "Antonius had quitted Italy: he had no hope of being restored," Nep., i. e., *restitūtiōnis*, or *fore ut restituerētur*. *Multa nōn habent insignem et propriam percipiendī notam*, "Many things have not a clear and precise mark by which they can be known."—Cic.

CASES OF THE GERUND.

1327.—I. **Genitive.**—The Genitive of the Gerund (or Gerundive) is governed by such substantives as *ars*, *facultās*, *occāsio*, *ratio*, *studium*, *libīdo*, *amor*, *spēs*, *causā*, *grātiā ;* and by adjectives of similar meaning, such as *cupidus*, *studiōsus*, *memor*, *perītus*, *ignārus*, etc. With the **Genitive** of the Gerund an **accusative object** is often found: *Parsimōnia est scientia vītandī sumptūs supervacuōs*, "Economy is the science of avoiding unnecessary expenses," Sen.; *nulla causa justa esse potest contrā patriam arma capiendī*, Cic. [Gerundive: *Armōrum capiendōrum.*] *Dēmosthenēs Platōnis studiōsus audiendī fuit*, "Demosthenes was desirous of hearing Plato."—Cic. [Gerund: *Platōnem audiendī.*]

1328.—*Obs.* 1. The Gerund construction is to be preferred when the use of the Gerundive would cause an ambiguity as to **gender.** Thus: "desire of learning more things," should be translated *cupīdo plūra cognoscendī*, and not *plūrium cognoscendōrum*, since it could not be told whether *plūrium* were masculine or neuter.

1329.—*Obs.* 2. A **Genitive case,** instead of an accusative, is sometimes found governed by the Genitive of a Gerund: *Exemplōrum ēligendī potestās*, "A power of selecting (of) examples," Cic., for *exempla ēligendī*, or *exemplōrum ēligendōrum.* Zumpt thinks that this is a mere instance of a confusion of the two modes of expression. Possibly both Genitives may depend directly on the noun, "A power over examples of selecting them."

1330.—*Obs.* 3. The Genitive of the Gerund (or Gerundive) is often used to express **purpose** with **causā** or **grātiā**: *Lēgātī Delphōs missī sunt ōrāculī consulendī causā*, "Envoys were sent to Delphi for the purpose of consulting the oracle." But frequently the **Gerund,** or **Gerundive alone** is used in the same sense: *Nāvēs dējiciendī operis missae sunt*, "Ships were sent (for the purpose) of destroying the work."—Caes. So with *esse: Rēgium imperium initiō conservandae lībertātis fuerat*, "At first the power of the kings was (used for the purpose) of preserving freedom."—Sall.

Obs. 4. For the Genitive of the Gerund in agreement with *meī*, *tuī*, etc., see 1017.

1331.—*Obs.* 5. The **Infinitive Mood** is often used, especially by the poets, in place of the Genitive of the Gerund (or Gerundive). Most of the examples which occur in prose may be explained as in 1120. But we find *avidus committere pugnam* (for *pugnae committendae*), "eager to join battle;" *cupidus attingere* (for *attingendī*), "desirous of reaching;" *cantāre perītus* (for *cantandī*), "skilled in singing." Caesar says in one place, *Gallī consilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere*, "The Gauls formed the design of fleeing from the town;" in another, *Gallī legiōnis opprimendae consilium cēpērunt*, "The Gauls formed the design of crushing the legion."

1332.—II. **Dative.**—The Dative of the Gerund (or Gerundive) is used after Adjectives which govern the Dative, especially after *ūtilis*, *inūtilis*, *pār*, *idōneus*, *aptus*, and after verbs and other expressions denoting a purpose or design: *Aqua nitrōsa ūtilis est bibendō*, "Water full of natron is useful for drinking."—Plin. *Hostēs erant pugnandō parēs*, "The enemy were equal to fighting."—Caes. *Consul plācandīs diīs dat operam*, "The Consul gives his attention to the propitiation of the gods."—Liv.

1333.—*Obs.* 1. The later writers use the Dative of the Gerund (or Gerundive) freely to express ***purpose:*** *Tiberius quasi firmandae valētūdinī in Campāniam concessit*, "Tiberius went into Campania, as if to promote his health."—Tac.

1334.—*Obs.* 2. The verb **esse** ***alone*** is sometimes used with the Dative of the Gerund (or Gerundive): *Magius solvendō nōn erat*, "Magius was not solvent (*lit.* for paying)."—Cic. *Ambitiōnēs ēvertendae reīpublicae solent esse*, "Intrigues are wont to tend to (*lit.* be for) overthrowing a state."—Cic.

1335.—*Obs.* 3. The Dative of the Gerundive is regularly used in stating the ***duties*** for which ***officers*** are appointed: *Triumvirī colōniīs dēdūcendīs*, "A board of three for settling colonies;" *Dēmosthenēs cūrātor mūrīs reficiendīs fuit*, "Demosthenes was a superintendent of (for) repairing the walls."—Cic.

1336.—*Obs.* 4. The ***Dative*** of the Gerund with an ***object Accusative*** is very unusual. It occurs in Plautus after *dare operam: Epidicum quaerendō operam dabo*, "I will take pains in (for) looking for Epidicus."

1337.—III. **Accusative.**—The Accusative of the Gerund (or Gerundive) is only used after a few ***prepositions;*** most frequently after **ad**, "to," and **inter**, "during," *or* "amid," rarely after **ante**, **circā**, **ob**: *Ad docendum prōpensī sumus*, "We are naturally inclined to teach."—Cic. *Mōrēs puerōrum sē inter lūdendum dētegunt*, "The character of boys manifests itself during their play."—Cic. *Gallī inter accipiendum aurum caesī sunt*, "The Gauls were cut down while receiving the gold."—Liv. *Existimans Jugurtham ob suōs tūtandōs ventūrum*, "Thinking that Jugurtha would come to protect his people."—Sall.

1338.—*Obs.* 1. The Accusative of the Gerund (or Gerundive) with *ad* is often used to express a ***purpose.*** but not a negative one. (See 1214.) In connection with adjectives it implies "in regard to:" *Rēs facilis ad intelligendum*, "An easy matter to understand." (See 1326, Note 2.)

1339.—*Obs.* 2. An ***Accusative of the object*** is sometimes found with the ***Accusative*** Gerund: *ad plācandum Deōs*, "for appeasing the gods," Cic.; but chiefly where the use of the Gerundive construction would cause a doubt as to the Gender: *Diogenēs dīcēbat, artem sē trādere vēra ac falsa dījūdicandī*, "Diogenes professed to impart the art of distinguishing between the true and the false," where *vērōrum ac falsōrum dījūdicandōrum* might be mistaken for the masculine. See 1328.

1340.*—IV. *Ablative.—The Ablative of the Gerund (or Gerundive) is used as an Ablative of means, or cause, sometimes of the manner; and also after some prepositions, particularly **in**; also **ab, ex, dē**; rarely **cum, prō, super**: *Multī patrimōnia effūdērunt inconsultē largiendō*, "Many have squandered their inheritance by being bountiful without consideration."—Cic. *Insectandīs patribus tribūnātum gessit*, "He spent his tribuneship in assailing the patricians." *Lēx est recta ratio in jubendō et vetandō*, "Law is right reason in bidding and forbidding."

1341.*—*Obs.* 1.** An ***Object Accusative is rarely found dependent upon an Ablative of the Gerund, hardly ever if the Gerund is governed by a preposition: thus we must say *in victōre laudandō*, not *in laudandō victōrem* (Madvig); but we find in Livy, xxx. 18, *in alloquendō victōrem*, "in addressing the conqueror;" and in Cicero, *Tusc.* i. 43, *ā nimis intuendō fortūnam alterius*, "from gazing too much on the good fortune of another." Without a preposition it occurs, but seldom, the Gerundive construction being preferred: *Hominēs ad deōs nullā rē propius accēdunt, quam salūtem hominibus dandō*, "In nothing to do men approach nearer to the gods, than in giving safety to other men."—Cic.

1342.*—*Obs.* 2.** The Ablative of the Gerund (or Gerundive) is very rarely governed by an ***adjective or the ***preposition*** **prō**, "instead of:" *Contentus possidendīs agrīs*, "Content with possessing the lands (for *possessiōne agrōrum*)."—Liv. *Hannibal prō ope ferendā sociīs*, "Hannibal instead of bringing aid to his allies," Liv.; which would usually be expressed by *omissō opis sociīs ferendae consiliō*.

THE USE OF THE PARTICIPLES.

1343.*—*Participles, being Verbal Adjectives, express the action of the Verb as a property belonging to a person or thing, and therefore agree with nouns while they may govern cases. They have no distinct forms to express Time, but represent the action spoken of as being either finished (***Perfect***), unfinished (***Imperfect***), or yet to come to pass (***Future***), at the time denoted by the verb of the sentence in which they occur, in just the same way as the forms of the Infinitive Mood do. See 1127–1129.

***1344.*—**The Latin Verb is defective in its participial forms: there being in the Active Voice no Perfect Participle, and in the Passive no Present (Imperfect) or Future Participle. But Deponent Verbs, having the Passive form with the Active meaning, supply in their Perfect Participle a form exactly corresponding to the English. Thus, the English "having loved" cannot be expressed exactly by a Latin Participial form, since there is no Deponent Verb meaning "to love;" but "having set out" is exactly expressed by *profectus*, from the Deponent Verb *proficiscor*.

1345.—There are, however, a few ***Perfect Participles*** from Verbs not Deponent, which have an ***Active*** meaning. Of these the chief are *jūrātus*, "having sworn;" *coenātus*, "having dined;" *pransus*, "having breakfasted;" *nupta*, "having married (of a bride);" *ōsus*, "having hated."

1346.—On the other hand some ***Deponents*** have their Perfect Participles used both in an ***Active*** and ***Passive*** sense. Of these the chief are: *adeptus* (adipiscor), "having (*or* having been) attained;" *comitātus* (comitor), "having (*or* having been) accompanied;" *mensus* (mētior), "having (*or* having been) measured;" *expertus* (experior) "having (*or* having been) tried;" *meditātus* (meditor), "having (*or* having been) practised;" *testātus* (testor), "having (*or* having been) called to witness;" *moderātus* (moderor), "having (*or* having been) controlled;" *populātus* (populor), "having (*or* having been) devastated;" *partītus* (partior) "having (*or* having been) divided;" *pactus* (paciscor), "having (*or* having been) bargained."

1347.—The want of a ***Perfect Participle Active*** is ***supplied*** in various ways; chiefly by the use of the construction of the Ablative Absolute (964, ff.), or by the employment of *quum* with the Past Perfect Subjunctive. (1246). Thus: "Ariovistus *having heard* of Caesar's arrival sent ambassadors to him," may be translated, *Ariovistus* (1) *cognitō Caesaris adventū* (or (2) *quum Caesaris adventum cognōvisset*) *lēgātōs ad eum mīsit.*

Participles are used either ***Relatively*** or ***Absolutely.***

1348.—A. The ***Relative*** (Conjunctive) ***Participle*** is found in ***any case*** in agreement with one of the nouns which enter into the construction of the sentence, with the subject, the object, the limiting genitive, etc.: *Aristīdēs, patriā pulsus, Lacedaemonem fūgit*, "Aristides, being banished from his country, fled to Lacedaemon;" *Alexandrō coelestēs honōrēs concupiscentī nōn deerat adūlātio*, "To Alexander, coveting divine honors, flattery was not wanting;" *Hannibal Gracchum in insidiās inductum sustulit*, "Hannibal destroyed Gracchus, having been led (by leading him) into an ambuscade."

1349.—B. The ***Absolute Participle*** is found in the ***Ablative case*** (965) in agreement with a noun which does not enter into the construction of the sentence: *Artēs innumerābilēs repertae sunt, docente nātūrā*, "Innumerable arts have been discovered, nature being the teacher;" *Graecī Thermopylās, advenientibus Persīs, occupāvērunt*, "The Greeks occupied Thermopylae, when the Persians were coming."

1350.—Rule CV. The Participle, whether Relative or Absolute, is used to express various

circumstances of the action, as Time, Means, Manner, Cause, Condition, etc., and is often to be rendered in English by a secondary sentence.

1351.—(1.) ***Time.***—*Pȳthagorās, Tarquiniō Superbō regnante, in Italiam vēnit,* "Pythagoras came to Italy, while Tarquinius Superbus was king."—CIC. *Valerium hostēs ācerrimē pugnantem occīdunt,* "The enemy slay Valerius while fighting with the greatest bravery." —LIV.

1352.—(2.) ***Means, Manner.***—*Āēr effluens hūc et illūc ventōs efficit,* "The air, by flowing this way and that, produces the winds." —CIC. *Mīlitēs, pīlīs missīs, phalangem hostium perfrēgērunt,* "The soldiers, by hurling their javelins, broke through the phalanx of the enemy."—CAES.

1353.—(3.) ***Cause.***—*Dionȳsius cultrōs metuens tonsōriōs candentī carbōne sibi adūrēbat capillum,* "Dionysius, because he feared barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal." *Flāminīnum Caelius rēligiōne neglectā cecidisse scrībit,* "Caelius writes that Flamininus fell because he disregarded religion."—CIC.

1354.—(4.) ***Condition.***—*Epistolae offendunt nōn locō redditae,* "Letters are offensive if they are delivered at the wrong time."—CIC. *Maximās virtūtēs jacēre omnēs necesse est, dominante voluptāte,* "All the greatest qualities must lie useless, if pleasure is allowed to rule."—CIC.

1355.—*Obs.* 1. The ***Future Participle Active,*** expressing *intention, destiny,* etc., is, in the older writers, used almost wholly as a complement of *esse,* forming with it the First Periphrastic Conjugation. See 328. By the later writers it is constantly used as a Relative Participle to express Purpose (1214), and sometimes even absolutely: *Magna pars hominum est, quae nāvigātūra dē tempestāte nōn cōgitat,* "There is a large number of men, who, when they are about to go on a voyage, think not of the weather."—SEN. *Alexander Persidis fīnēs aditūrus urbem Archelāō trādidit,* "Alexander, when about to enter the confines of Persia, gave up the city to Archelaus."—CURT. *Antiochus sēcūrus erat, tanquam nōn transitūrīs in Asiam Rōmānīs,* "Antiochus felt no anxiety, as if the Romans were not really going to cross into Asia."—LIV.

1356.—*Obs.* 2. The two Future Participles, however, **futūrus and ventūrus**, are used as simple adjectives, in the sense of our "future:" *Opīnio futūrī bonī,* "Anticipation of future good."—CIC. So, in Horace: *Dellī moritūre,* "O Dellius, doomed to die."

1357.**—Obs.* 3. The ***Perfect Participle Passive in agreement with a noun is often used where we should use an ***abstract noun:*** *Mājor ex cīvibus āmissīs dolor quam laetitia fūsīs hostibus fuit*, "The sorrow at the loss of the citizens was greater than the joy at the defeat of the enemy."—Liv. *Ademptus Hector*, "The removal of Hector (*lit.* Hector being removed)."—Hor.

1358.**—Obs.* 4. The verb **habeo**, with a ***Perfect Participle of a verb denoting insight or resolution, forms a periphrasis similar to our Perfect Tenses in English, but brings out prominently the present condition of things: *Siculī fidem meam spectātam jam et diū cognitam habent*, "The Sicilians have now for a long time seen and known my faithfulness;" *Habēs jam statūtum*, "You have already resolved."—Cic.

1359.**—Obs.* 5. The ***neuter of the ***Perfect Participle*** is sometimes used as an abstract substantive: *Priusquam incipiās, consultō, et ubi consulueris mātūrē factō opus est*, "Before you begin, you need counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action."—Sall.

THE SUPINES.

The ***Supines*** are properly the Accusative and Ablative cases singular of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

1360.**—Rule CVI. The Accusative Supine is used after Verbs of Motion, to express the **purpose of the motion; as,

Themistoclēs Argos habitātum concessit,	Themistocles went to Argos to live.
Dūcēbat cohortēs praedātum,	He led the cohorts to pillage.

1361.**—Obs.* 1. The verb **eo**, "go," is used with the ***Accusative Supine to express the action more strongly: *Dum paucīs scelerātīs parcunt, bonōs omnēs perditum eunt*, "While they spare a few scoundrels, they go about to ruin all honest men."—Sall.

1362.**—Obs.* 2. The ***Accusative Supine is used in connection with the Imperfect Infinitive Passive of **eo**, used impersonally, to form the ***Future Infinitive Passive;*** and then the noun which appears to be the Subject of the Infinitive is really the Object of the Supine; and of course the Supine, not being, like a participle, a complement, does not change its form to agree with the apparent subject: *Spēro meum consilium* (*mea consilia, meam causam*) *probātum īrī*, "I hope that my plan (my plans, my cause) will be approved;" *i. e.*, "that people are going to approve,"

etc. See 330. But this form of the Future Infinitive Passive is only used when the future event is likely to occur soon. Otherwise, *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* is employed. See 1133.

1363.—*Obs.* 3. Sometimes ***other verbs*** besides Verbs of Motion take an ***Accusative Supine:*** *Dedit Cāiō fīliam nuptum*, "He gave Caius his daughter in marriage;" *Dīvīsit cōpiās hiemātum*, "He divided the troops for wintering."—Nep.

1364.—*Obs.* 4. The Accusative Supine may ***govern the case*** of its verb: *In urbem convēnimus lūdōs spectātum*, "We came together to the city to see the games."

1365.—Rule CVII. The Ablative Supine is used as an ***Ablative of Limitation*** (889) after some Adjectives; as,

Virtūs difficilis inventū est,	Virtue is difficult to find.
O rem, audītū crūdēlem, vīsū nefāriam,	Oh, what a fact, cruel to hear, monstrous to see.

1366.—*Obs.* 1. The ***Adjectives*** which are thus followed by the Ablative Supine are such as these: *jūcundus*, *molestus*, *suāvis*, *acerbus*, *dūrus*, *turpis*, *facilis*, rarely *dignus*, *indignus*. Also the expressions *fās* (*nefās*) *est*, *opus est*: *Nefās est dictū miseram fuisse Fabiī senectūtem*, "It is monstrous to say that the old age of Fabius was unhappy."—Cic. *Quoad scītū opus est*, "As far as is necessary for understanding."

1367.—*Obs.* 2. In the oldest writers the Ablative Supine is used after ***Verbs of Motion,*** to express ***cessation from:*** *Nunc obsōnātū redeo*, "I am now coming back from getting provisions (from market)."—Plaut. *Cubitū surgit*, "He rises from rest."—Cat. In this use it is just the opposite of the Accusative Supine: *cubitum eunt*, "they go to rest."

1368.—*Obs.* 3. But ***few verbs*** have the Ablative Supine in use; the chief are, **factū**, **dictū**, **cognitū**, **audītū**. Accordingly, the same meaning is expressed in other ways:

(1) By the ***Infinitive Mood:*** *Nōn facile est invenīre*, "It is not easy to find."—Cic.

(2) By an ***Adverb*** with a finite tense of the verb: *Facilius asellus, quam vacca, alitur*, "An ass is easier to raise than a cow."—Varr.

(3) By the ***Gerund*** with **ad**: *Eō cibō ūtendum est, quī sit facillimus ad concoquendum*, "We must use that food which proves the easiest to digest."—Cic.

(4) By a ***Verbal Substantive:*** *Utrīusque reī facilis est dēfensio*, "It is easy to defend each course."—Cic.

Obs. 4. The Ablative Supine never governs a case.

CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

1369.—RULE CVIII. The ***Coördinate Conjunctions*** *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* and some others, couple similar cases and moods; as,

Honōrā patrem et mātrem,	Honor father and mother.
Nec legit nec scrībit,	He neither reads nor writes.

1370.—EXPLANATION.—Words coupled by a conjunction under this Rule, are in the ***same construction,*** *i. e.*, two nominatives coupled together are the subject of the same verb, or predicates of the same subject; and *nouns* coupled together in the oblique cases are governed by the same word, as in the first example. *Verbs* thus coupled have the same subject or nominative, as in the second example. For a classification of the various coördinate and subordinate conjunctions, see 488–505.

1371.—*Obs.* 1. The ***Copulative Conjunctions*** under this Rule are such as *et, ac, atque, etiam, que;* the disjunctives, *nec, neque, aut, vel, seu, sīve, ve, nēve, neu;* also *quam, praeterquam, an, nempe, necdum, sed, autem, vērum;* and, in general, such connectives as do not imply a dependence of the following on the preceding clause.

1372.—*Obs.* 2. These conjunctions connect not only words, but also clauses whose construction is the same, *i. e.*, whose subjects are in the same case, and their verbs in the same mood; as, *concidunt ventī, fugiuntque nūbēs.*

1373.—*Obs.* 3. Words in the same construction are sometimes in a ***different case:*** still they are connected by the copulative conjunctions; thus, *meā et reīpublicae interest,* "it is of consequence to me and to the state." Here, *meā* and *reīpublicae*, though in different cases, are in the same construction. The subjunctive being often used for the imperative is sometimes coupled with it; as, *disce nec invideās,* "learn, and envy not."

Obs. 4. The ***Indicative*** and ***Subjunctive*** may be connected in this manner if the latter does not depend on the former.

1374.—*Obs.* 5. When two words coupled together have each a conjunction, such as *et, aut, vel, sīve, nec,* etc., without being connected with a preceding word, the first *et* is rendered *both* or *likewise;* the first *aut* or *vel,* by *either;* the first *sīve*, by *whether;* and the first *nec* or *neque,* by *neither.* So, also, *tum . . . . tum,* and *cum . . . . tum,* "not only . . . . but also," or "both . . . . and;" and so of others; as, *nunc . . . . nunc; jam . . . . jam,* etc. In such cases, the conjunction before the first word renders it more emphatic: *tum . . . . tum* often means, "at one time . . . . at another time."

1375.—*Note.*—***Affirmative*** and ***Negative*** sentences are connected by conjunctions in pairs, as follows:

Affirmative.	*Negative.*
et—et, very common.	*neque—neque, nec—nec.*
et—que, not unfrequently.	*neque—nec*, not unfrequently.
que—et, connecting single words.	*nec—neque*, seldom.
que—que, only in poetry and SALL.	

Affirmative and Negative.

et—neque, nec,	very frequent.
neque, nec—et,	very frequent.
nec, neque—que,	occasionally.

1376.—*Obs.* 6. After words expressing ***similarity*** or ***dissimilarity,*** *ac* and *atque* signify "as," and "than;" as, *facis ac sī mē rogēs*, "you do as if you should ask me;"—*mē colit aequē atque patrōnum suum*, "he shows me as much attention as to his patron;"—*sī aliter scrībo ac sentio*, "if I write otherwise than I think."

Obs. 7. The usage of the various kinds of ***Subordinate Conjunctions,*** so far as they affect construction, must be looked for in the sections on the different kinds of secondary sentences. (1182–1290.)

FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A ***Figure of Syntax*** is a manner of speaking different from the regular and ordinary construction, used for the sake of beauty or force.

1377.—The figures of Syntax, or construction, may be reduced to four: *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, *Enallagé*, and *Hyperbaton*. Of these, the *first*, *second*, and *third*, respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the *fourth* respects only the arrangement of words.

1378.—1. ***Ellipsis*** is the omission of one or more words necessary to complete the sense; as,

Aiunt, *ferunt*, etc., sc., *hominēs*. *Aberant biduī*, sc., *iter*, or *itinere*. *Quid multa?* sc., *dīcam*. Under this may be comprehended,

1st. ***Asyndeton,*** or the omission of a conjunction; as, *vēnī*, *vīdī*, *vīcī*. *Deus optimus*, *maximus*, sc., *et*.

2d. ***Zeugma*** is the uniting of two nouns or infinitives to a verb which is applicable only to one of them; as, *pācem an bellum gerens*, "whether (enjoying, *agens*) peace or waging war," SALL., where *gerens* is applicable to *bellum* only.

3d. ***Aposiopesis*** is the leaving a sentence unfinished: *quōs ego— sed mōtōs praestat compōnere fluctūs*, "whom I—but it is better to calm the troubled waves."—VIRG.

1379.—2. ***Pleonasm,*** is using a greater number of words than is necessary, to express the meaning; as,

Sīc ōre locūta est, "thus she spoke with her mouth."—Virg. Under this are included,

1st. ***Polysyndeton,*** or, a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *ūnā Eurus que Notus que ruunt.*—Virg.

2d. ***Hendiadys,*** or the expression of an idea, by two nouns connected by a conjunction, instead of a noun limited by an adjective or genitive; as, *Paterīs lībāmus et aurō,* "We offer a libation from cups and from gold," instead of *paterīs aureīs,* "from golden cups."

3d. ***Periphrasis,*** or a circuitous mode of expression; as, *tenerī foetūs ovium,* "the tender young of the sheep," instead of *agnī,* "lambs."

1380.—3. ***Enallage,*** is a change of words, or a change of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice, of the same word, for another. It includes,

1st. **Antimeria**, or the using of one part of speech for another; as, *nostrum vīvere,* for *nostra vita ; conjugium vidēbit,* for *conjugem,* etc.

2d. **Hypallagé**, or the using one case for another: *mājōra initia rērum,* for *initia mājōrum rērum.*—Liv.

3d. **Antiptōsis**, or the using of one case for another; as, *cuī nunc cognōmen Iūlō,* for *Iūlus* (632).—Virg. *Uxor invictī Jovis esse nescis,* for *tē esse uxōrem*—Hor. See 1145.

4th. **Synesis**, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Concursus populī mīrantium ;—Pars in crucem actī ;—scelus quī,* etc. 678 and 698.

5th. **Synecdoché**, the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; as, *puppis* for *nāvis, tectum* for *domus ; rēx* for *Xerxēs ; Poenus* for *Hannibal,* etc.

6th. **Anacoluthon**, or a departure in the end of a sentence, from the construction with which it commenced. Thus, *Nam nōs omnēs quibus est alicunde aliquis objectus labōs . . . . . lucrō est.* Here the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habēmus,* and ended as if he had said *nōbīs omnibus.* As it is, the nominative *nōs* has no verb, and *est,* which, in such sentences, requires the dative of a person, is without it.

1381.—4. ***Hyperbaton,*** is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses. It includes,

1st. **Anastrophé**, or an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmōs,* for *per transtra,* etc. ;—*Collō dare brāchia circum,* for *circumdare,* etc.

2d. **Hysteron proteron**, or reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus.*—Virg. *Valet atque vīvit.*—Ter.

To these may be added,

1382.—Archaism, which in Syntax means the use of ancient forms of construction; as, *Ŏperam abūtitur*, for *operā*.—Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem?*

1383.—Hellenism, or the use of Greek constructions; as, *Abstinēto īrārum*, for *īrīs*.—Hor. *Tempus dēsistere pugnae*, for *pugnā*.—Virg.

LATIN ARRANGEMENT.

1384.—In all languages, the arrangement of words in a sentence is different; and all, it is probable, consider the order of arrangement in their own language the most natural, being that to which they have themselves been most accustomed. In a language like the English, however, the words of which have but few changes of form or termination, much more depends on their position in a sentence than in those languages which are able, by the changes of form only, to indicate the relation of words to each other, however they may be arranged. Thus, when we say in English, "*Alexander conquered Darius*," if we change the order of the words, we necessarily change the meaning also; as, *Darius conquered Alexander*. But whether we say in Latin, *Alexander vīcit Dārīum*, or *Dārīum vīcit Alexander*, or *Alexander Dārīum vīcit*, or *Dārīum Alexander vīcit*, or place these words in any other possible order of arrangement, the meaning is the same, and cannot be mistaken; because it depends, not on the *position*, but on the *form* of the words. This gave the Latin writer much more scope to arrange his words in that order which would best promote the strength or euphony of the sentence, without endangering its perspicuity. Still, even in Latin, custom has established a certain order of arrangement which is considered the best. And, though no certain rules can be given on this subject, which are applicable to every instance, the following general principles and Rules may be noticed.

1385.—General principles of Latin Arrangement.

1. The word ***governed*** is placed before the word which governs it.

2. The word ***agreeing*** is placed after the word with which it agrees. More particularly,

1386.—Rule 1. The ***subject*** is generally put before the verb; as, *Deus mundum gubernat.*

Exc. 1. When the subject is closely connected with a clause following the verb, it is placed after the verb; as, *erant omnīnō duo itinera, quibus*, etc.

Exc. 2. When the subject is emphatic, it usually follows the verb and concludes the sentence.

1387.—Rule II. The ***adjective*** or ***participle*** most commonly follows the substantive with which it agrees.

With few exceptions, however, the place of the adjective or participle is entirely arbitrary. The following usages may be noticed:

1st. The adjectives, *prīmus, medius, ultimus, extrēmus, summus, infimus, īmus, suprēmus, reliquus, cēterus*, denoting the first part, the middle part, etc., are generally put before the substantive; as, *summus mons; extrēmō librō*, "the top of the mountain," etc.

2d. When the substantive governs another in the genitive, the adjective generally precedes both; as, *Duo Platōnis praecepta.*

3d. When the substantive is governed by a preposition, the adjective is frequently put before the substantive; as, *Hāc in quaestiōne; magnā in parte.*

4th. The adjective is often put before the substantive for the sake of Euphony.

5th. *Is, ille, hic, iste*, are generally placed before the substantive, and, if used substantively, are placed before the participle.

1388.—Rule III. The ***relative*** is commonly placed after, and as near as possible to its antecedent.

Obs. 1. The relative is commonly the first word of its own clause, and when it stands for *et ille, et hic, et is*, or for these pronouns without *et*, it is always first. Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause precede the antecedent and its clause.

1389.—Rule IV. The ***governing word*** is generally placed after the word governed; as, *Carthāginiensium dux—laudis avidus—Rōmānōrum dītissimus—hostem fūdit*, etc. Hence,

Obs. 2. The finite verb is commonly the last in its own clause. To this, however, there are many exceptions.

1390.—Rule V. ***Adverbs*** are generally introduced before the word which they are intended to modify; as, *Leviter aegrōtantēs, lēniter cūrant.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. **Nē– quidem,** "not even," has always the emphatic word between the two particles: *nē jocō quidem*, "not even in jest."

1391.—Rule VI. ***Conjunctions*** generally introduce the clause to which they belong; as, AT *sī darēs;*—SED *profectō in omnī rē fortūna dominātur.*

Exc. 1. The enclitics *que, ve, ne*, are always annexed—the two first, to the latter of the two words which they serve to connect; as, *albus āterve.*—Cic. *Bonī malīque;*—and the last, to the subject which the question chiefly regards; thus, *loquarne?* "must I *speak?*" *egone loquar?* "must *I* speak?"

Exc. 2. The conjunctions *autem, enim, vēro, quoque, quidem*, are always placed after the introductory word of the clause, generally in the second place, and sometimes in the third; *etiam, igitur*, and *tamen*, more frequently in the second and third place than in the first.

1392.—Rule VII. Words ***connected in sense*** should be as close as possible to each other, and the words of one clause should never be mixed with those of another.

1393.—RULE VIII. ***Circumstances,*** viz.: the *cause*,—the *manner*,—the *instrument*,—the *time*,—the *place*, etc., are put before the predicate; as,

Eum ferrō occīdī;—Ego tē ob ēgregiam virtūtem semper amāvī.

1394.—RULE IX. The ***proper name*** should precede the name of rank or profession; as, *Cicero ōrātor.*

1395.—RULE X. The ***vocative*** should either introduce the sentence, or be placed among the first words; as, *Crēdo vōs, jūdicēs.*

1396.—RULE XI. When there is an ***antithesis,*** the words chiefly opposed to each other should be as close together as possible; as, *Appetis pecūniam, virtūtem abjicis.*

Such an inversion of the order of opposed words in successive clauses, is called ***Chiasmus.***

1397.—RULE XII. ***Dependent clauses,*** as well as single words, are placed before the principal finite verb, upon which they chiefly depend.

1398.—RULE XIII. As a general rule, where the case will admit, it is proper to proceed from ***shorter to longer*** words, and from shorter to longer clauses and members of a sentence, as we advance towards the close.

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

SINGLE SENTENCES (616).

1399.—A single sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense in expressing a proposition.

1. A simple sentence (616, 7) or proposition consists of two parts—the ***subject*** and the ***predicate.***

2. The ***subject*** is that of which something is affirmed.

3. The ***predicate*** is that which is affirmed of the subject.

4. The meaning of both the subject and predicate may be restricted or modified by adjunct phrases, or by clauses within the sentence; as, *Quæ in terrā gignuntur,* ad usum *hominis* omnia creantur, "All things which are produced upon the earth, are created for the use of man" (1401, 1405).

5. The ***subject*** is commonly a noun or pronoun, but may be anything, however expressed, about which we can speak or think (1403).

6. The predicate may consist of a noun, a pronoun, an adjective, a preposition with its case, an adverb, a participle, an infinitive mood, or clause of a sentence, as an attribute, connected with the subject by an attributive verb as a copula; or it may be an intransitive verb which includes in itself both attribute and copula, (667), or a transitive verb and its object.

7. The name of a person or thing addressed forms no part of a sentence.

THE SUBJECT.

1400.— The ***subject*** of a single sentence or proposition is either *grammatical* or *logical.*

I. The ***grammatical*** subject is the person or thing spoken of, *unlimited* by other words.

The ***logical*** subject is the person or thing spoken of, together with all the words, phrases or clauses by which it is limited or defined; thus, in the sentence, *vir bonus suī similem quaerit*, the grammatical subject is *vir;* the logical, *vir bonus.* Again:

II. The subject of a single sentence may be either *simple* or *compound.*

1. A ***simple*** subject consists of one subject of thought, either unlimited, as the grammatical, or limited, as the logical subject.

2. A ***compound*** subject consists of two or more simple subjects, to which belongs but one predicate; as, *Rōmulus et Remus frātrēs erant.*

MODIFICATIONS OF THE SUBJECT.

1401.— A ***grammatical*** subject may be modified, limited, or described, in various ways; as,

1. By a noun in apposition; as, *Cicero ōrātor factus est consul.*
2. By a noun in the genitive; as, *Īra Deī lenta est.*
3. By an adjunct; as, *Dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur.*
4. By an adjective word, *i. e.*, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as, *Justitiā gaudent virī bonī.—Suus cuīque erat locus dēfīnītus.—Nescit vox missa revertī.*
5. By a relative and its clause; as, *Vir sapit, quī pauca loquitur.*

Each grammatical subject may have several modifications; and if it has none, the grammatical and logical subject are the same.

MODIFICATION OF MODIFYING WORDS.

1402.—Modifying, or limiting ***words***, may themselves be modified.

1. A ***noun*** modifying another may itself be modified in all the ways in which a noun, as a grammatical subject, is modified.
2. An ***adjective*** qualifying a noun may itself be modified—
   1st. By an adjunct; as, *campī ad proelium bonī: līber ā dēlictīs.*
   2d. By a noun; as, *Mājor pietāte: aeger pedibus.*
   3d. By an infinitive mood or clause of a sentence, a gerund, or a supine; as, *Homo dignus cantārī—dignus quī imperet—dignus ut fīgat pālum in parietem.—Charta ūtilis scrībendō.—Monstrum mīrābile dictū.*
   4th. By an adverb; as, *Homo longē dissimilis;—facile princeps.*

3. An ***adverb*** may be modified—

 1st. By another adverb; as, *multō magis.*

 2d. By a substantive in an oblique case; as, *convenienter natūrae; optimē omnium; proximē castris.*

1403. The subject of a sentence may be an infinitive mood, with or without a subject, or a clause of a sentence; as, *hūmānum est errare. Incerta prō certīs habēre stultissimum est. Nunc opus est, tē animō valere. Reliquum est, ut officiīs certēmus inter nōs.*

THE PREDICATE.

1404.—I. The ***Predicate,*** like the subject, is either grammatical or logical.

1. The ***grammatical*** predicate consists of a verb, a verb and its object, or the attribute and copula, not modified by other words.

2. The ***logical*** predicate is the grammatical, with all the words, phrases, or clauses that modify it; thus, *vir bonus suī similem quaerit;* the grammatical predicate is *quaerit;* the logical, *quaerit similem suī.*

3. When the grammatical predicate has no modifying terms, the logical and grammatical are the same.

II. The predicate, like the subject, is either simple or compound.

1. A ***simple*** predicate affirms but one thing of its subject; as, *vīta brevis est; ignis arborem ūrit.*

2. A ***compound*** predicate consists of two or more simple predicates affirmed of one subject; as *Caesar vēnit, vīdit, vīcit. Probitās laudātur et alget.*

MODIFICATIONS OF THE PREDICATE.

1405.—The ***grammatical*** predicate may be modified or limited in different ways.

I. When the attribute or predicate is a ***noun,*** it is modified—

1. By a noun or pronoun limiting or describing the attribute; as, *honor est praemium virtūtis. Invidia est supplicium suum.*

2. By an adjective or participle limiting the attribute; as, *īra furor brevis est.*

II. A ***verb*** in the grammatical predicate may be modified—

1. By a noun or pronoun as its object; as, *rēs amīcōs invenit. Laus dēbētur virtūtī. Sapiens imperat cupiditātibus. Venter caret auribus.*

2. By adverb; as, *bis dat quī cito dat; bene scrībit.*

3. By an adjunct; as, *vēnit in urbem; ex urbe vēnit.*

4. By an infinitive; as, *cupio discere.*

5. By a dependent clause; as, *poēta dīcit īram esse brevem insāniam.—Constituit ut lūdī fierent.*

1406.—Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and other words modifying the verb in the predicate, may themselves be modified, as similar words are when modifying the subject.

Infinitives and participles modifying the predicate, may be modified in all respects, as the verb of the grammatical predicate is modified.

1407.—A ***complex sentence*** is a single sentence containing a dependent clause, which limits the principal clause, or some part of it, thus, *Errās sī id crēdis;* the principal clause is *errās,* which is limited by *sī id crēdis* (1066).

1408.—Dependent clauses having finite verbs, are connected with their principal clauses in three different ways,

1. By a relative; as, *vir sapit, quī pauca loquitur.*

2. By a conjunction; as, *loquācēs, si sapiat, vitet.*

3. By an adverb; as, *ubi quid datur ōtiī illūdo chartīs; rogābat, cūr unquam fūgisset.*

1409.—A dependent clause, consisting of an infinitive with its subject, is joined to a principal clause without a connecting word, as *Gaudeo tē valēre* (1136).

1410.—A complex sentence may sometimes be converted into an abridged proposition by rejecting the connective and changing the verb of the dependent clause into a participle, as, *Caesar, haec locūtus, profectus est* for *quum Caesar haec locutus esset profectus est.*

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

1411.—A ***compound sentence*** consists of two or more single sentences or propositions connected together; as, *Puer legit et puella scribit.* The propositions which make up a compound sentence are called ***members.***

1412.—The members of a compound sentence are co-ordinate or grammatically and logically independent of each other, or, they are logically dependent on each other when one or more members represent a purpose or end, or some logical sequence of the leading member, but do not perform the office of an adjunct clause.

Members of a compound sentence, parts of a compound subject and compound predicate, and some clauses and phrases are connected by such conjunctions as *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* etc. (1371). Sometimes when the sentence consists of more than two members, the conjunction is omitted in all except the last.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1413. 1. *Vīta brevis est.*

This is a single sentence, simple, of which—

The logical subject, and also the grammatical, is *vīta.*

The logical predicate, and also the grammatical, is *brevis est,* in which *brevis* is the attribute, and *est* the copula (1309–7.)

2. *Lābuntur annī.*

This is a single sentence, simple, of which—

The logical subject, and also the grammatical, is *annī*.

The logical predicate, and also the grammatical, is *lābuntur*, a deponent verb including both the attribute and the copula.

3. *Vērum decus in virtūte positum est.*

This is a single sentence, simple, of which—

The logical subject is *vērum decus.*

The logical predicate is *in virtūte positum est.*

The grammatical subject is *decus*, qualified by the adjective *vērum.*

The grammatical predicate is *positum est*, modified by the adjunct *in virtūte.*

4. *Rōmulus et Remus frātrēs erant.*

This is a single sentence, compound in its subject.

The logical subject is *Rōmulus et Remus*, compound, consisting of two subjects connected by *et* (1412).

The logical predicate is *frātrēs erant.*

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

5. *Probitās laudātur et alget.*

This is a single sentence, compound in its predicate.

The logical subject is *probitās.*

The logical predicate is *laudātur et alget*, the parts of which are connected by *et.*

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

6. *Quae in terrā gignuntur, ad ūsum hominis omnia creantur.*

This is a single sentence complex, consisting of one principal and one dependent clause, connected by *quae.*

The principal clause, *ad ūsum hominis omnia creantur*, is a simple sentence, or proposition, of which—

The logical subject is *omnia*, restricted by the relative clause *quae in terrā gignuntur.*

The logical predicate is *ad ūsum hominis creantur.*

The grammatical subject is *omnia*, used as a substantive, and restricted by the relative clause.

The grammatical predicate is *creantur*, modified by the adjunct *ad ūsum*, and that modified by *hominis.*

The dependent clause is *quae in terra gignuntur*, of which—

The logical subject is *quae*, which, being a relative, connects the dependent with the principal clause (1072).

The logical predicate is *in terrā gignuntur*

The grammatical subject is *quae*, the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *gignuntur*, modified by the adjunct *in terrā.*

7. *Video meliōra proboque; dēteriōra sequor.*

This is a compound sentence, consisting of two members without a connecting conjunction.

The first member has a compound predicate, of which—

The logical subject is *ego*, understood.

The logical predicate is *video meliōra proboque.*

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *video proboque*, compound, consisting of two predicates connected by *que*, modified by the adjective *meliōra*, used as a substantive (1401, 4).

The second member, *dēteriōra sequor*, is a simple proposition, of which—

The logical subject is *ego*, understood.

The logical predicate is *dēteriōra sequor.*

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *sequor*, modified by its object, *dēteriōra*, used as a substantive (405, II. 1).

CONSTRUING.

1414.—In Latin and English, the *general* arrangement of a sentence is the same, *i. e.*, the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the order of the English. This is technically called *construing*, or *giving the order*. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

DIRECTIONS FOR BEGINNERS.

1415.—Direction 1. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or Nominative, and the predicate or Verb: the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to do this,

First. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future, of the indicative, or in the imperative mood, and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

Second. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is commonly a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so (1386, with exceptions).

1416.—Direction 2. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1st. Take the *Vocative*, *Exciting*, *Introductory*, or *connecting words*, if there are any.

2d. The NOMINATIVE.

3d. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *i. e.*, words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4th. The VERB.

5th. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *i. e.*, words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.

6th. Supply everywhere the words *understood*.

7th. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

1417.—DIRECTION 3. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it, or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb (in English, between the auxiliary and the verb). Interrogative words, however, such as *quis*, *quotus*, *quantus*, *uter* (1041), etc., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative;—and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative; and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, etc., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions are to be placed before the last of two words or sentences connected.

Example of Resolution.

1418.—Etenim omnēs artēs quae ad hūmānitātem pertinent habent quoddam commūne vinculum, et quasi cognātiōne quādam inter sē continentur.—CIC.

1. In looking over this sentence, according to Direction First, we find the first leading verb to be *habent*, which must have a plural nominative. This leads us at once to *artēs*, as the nominative. The nominative and verb being thus found on which the other parts depend, then—

2. By Direction 2, the general arrangement will be:

1. Connective word, *etenim*.
2. Nominative, *artēs*.
3. Words limiting and explaining, *omnēs*, *quae ad hūmānitātem pertinent*.
4. The Verb, *habent*.
5. Words governed by it, *quoddam commūne vinculum*.

3. Then by the rules in Direction 3, the words in each of these divisions will be arranged thus: 1. *Etenim ;* 2. and 3. *omnēs artēs* (R. II.), *quae* (R. IV.), *pertinent ad hūmānitātem* (R. LXVI.); 4. *habent;* 5. *quoddam commūne vinculum* (R. II.).

By proceeding in the same manner with the next member, the whole will then stand thus:

Etenim omnēs artēs, quae pertinent ad hūmānitātem, habent quoddam commūne vinculum, et continentur inter sē quasi quādam cognātiōne ;—and may be translated as follows:

"For all the arts which pertain to liberal knowledge (civilization), have a certain common bond, and are connected together as if by a certain affinity between them."

The pupil will now see, that in the first member or single sentence, the grammatical subject is *artēs ;* the logical, *omnēs artēs quae ad hūmānitātem pertinent.* The grammatical predicate is *habent ;* the logical, *habent quoddam commūne vinculum* (1404, 1); and so with the next member.

In like manner proceed with every new single sentence, or with every succeeding member of a compound sentence.

ETYMOLOGICAL AND SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

1419.—Having arranged and translated a sentence, the next thing is to parse it, in doing which, every word should be fully described by its accidents, traced to its primitive, if a derivative,—analyzed into its parts if compound, and its concord or agreement pointed out. The following scheme, with each part of speech, may be useful to the beginner.

1. Noun.—1. Kind; 2. Gender; 3. Declension; 4. Decline; 5. Derived from (if derived); 6. It is found in——case; 7. Number; 8. Is the nominative to——, or the predicate nominative after——(if the nominative); is governed by——(if governed); 9. Rule.

2. Adjective.—1. Declension; 2. Decline it; 3. Compare it (if compared); 4. It is found in——case; 5. Number; 6. Gender; 7. Agrees with——; 8. Rule.

3. Pronoun.—1. Kind (*i. e.*, personal, relative, or adjective); 2. Decline it; then—

If Personal, 3. Person; 4. Found in——case; 5. Number; 6. Reason of the case; 7. Rule; 8. Stands for——

If a Relative pronoun, 3. Found in——case; 4. Number; 5. Reason of the case; 6. Rule; 7. Its antecedent; 8. Rule.

If an Adjective pronoun; then, 3. Kind (*i. e.*, possessive, indefinite, demonstrative, etc.); 4. It is found in——case; 5. Number; 6. Gender; 7. Agrees with; 8. Rule.

4. Verb.—1. Kind, viz.: Transitive or Intransitive; 2. Conjugation (or Irregular, if it is so); 3. Conjugate it; 4. Derived from (if derived); 5. Compounded of (if compounded); 6. It is found in——tense; 7. Mood; 8. Voice; 9. Person; 10. Number; 11. Agrees with——as its subject; 12. Rule; 13. Give a Synopsis.

5. Adverb.—1. Derived from (if derived); 2. Compounded of (if compounded); 3. Compared (if compared); 4. It modifies——; 5. Rule.

6. Preposition.—1. Governs——case; 2. Rule; 3. It points out the relation between——and——.

7. Interjection.—1. Kind; 2. Governs, or is put with the——case; 3. Rule.

8. Conjunction.—1. Kind; 2. Connects——; 3. Rule.

Example of Parsing by the foregoing Scheme.

1420.—The sentence construed (1418) may serve as an example of Etymological and Syntactical parsing, and for this purpose we arrange it in the order of translation, as above.

"Etenim omnēs artēs, quae pertinent ad hūmānitātem, habent quoddam commūne vinculum, et continentur inter sē quasi quādam cognātiōne."

Etenim, ... Conjunction, causal, connecting the following sentence with the preceding, as containing the *cause* or *reason* of what is there stated.

omnēs, ... An adjective, third declension, *omnis*, *-is*, *-e*, etc.; not compared because incapable of increase,—in the nominative, plural, feminine, and agrees with *artēs* (Rule V.), "An adjective agrees," etc.

artēs, ... A noun (or substantive), feminine, third declension, *ars*, *artis*, etc.—in the nominative plural,—the nominative to (or subject of), *habent*.

quae, ... Relative pronoun,—in the nominative plural, feminine, nominative to *pertinent*, agrees with its antecedent *artēs*, Rule VII., and connects its clause with *artēs*, which it restricts.

pertinent, ... Verb intransitive, second conjugation, *pertineo*, *-ēre*, *-ui*, *pertentum;* compounded of *per* and *teneo*,—in the present indicative, third person plural, and agrees with *quae*. Rule II. "A verb agrees," etc.

ad, ... Preposition. governs the accusative, and shows the relation between *pertinent* and *hūmānitātem*.

hūmānitātem, Noun, feminine, third declension, *hūmānitās*,—*ātis*. etc.

Abstract, derived from *hūmānus* (30, 2), in the accusative, singular, governed by *ad.* Rule LXVI. "Twenty-eight prepositions," etc.

habent, ... Verb transitive, second conjugation, *habeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum,* —in the present indicative active, third person plural, and agrees with *artēs.* Rule II. "A verb agrees," etc. Synopsis.

quoddam, . . . Indefinite adjective pronoun, *quīdam, quaedam,* etc., compounded of *quī* and the syllable *dam,*—in the accusative, singular, neuter, and agrees with *vinculum.* Rule V. "An adjective agrees," etc.

vinculum, . . . Noun, neuter, second declension, *vinculum, -ī,* etc.—in the accusative singular, governed by *habent.* Rule VIII. "A transitive verb," etc.

et, ... A conjunction, copulative, connecting *continentur* with *habent,* which are consequently in the same construction (1370), and have the same nominative, *artēs.*

continentur, . A verb transitive, second conjugation; *contineo, continēre, continuī, contentum;* compounded of *con* and *teneo,*—in the present indicative passive, third person plural, and agrees with *artēs.* Rule II. "A verb agrees," etc. Synopsis.

inter, ... A preposition which governs the accusative, and here points out the relation of reciprocity between the individuals represented by *sē.* (468, 1019).

sē, ... Substantive pronoun, third person, in the accusative plural, feminine, governed by *inter.* Rule LXVI. "Twenty-eight prepositions," etc., refers to *artēs,* the subject of *continentur,* and is here taken *reciprocally.* (1020.)

quasi, ... An adverb of *manner* modifying *continentur.* Rule LXXI. "Adverbs modify," etc.

quādam, . . . Indefinite adjective pronoun, *quīdam, quaedam,* etc., compounded of *quī* and the syllable *dam,*—in the ablative singular, and agrees with *cognātiōne.* Rule V. "An adjective agrees," etc.

cognātiōne, . . A noun, feminine, third declension, *cognātio, -ōnis,* etc., from *cognātus,* "related by birth" (from *con* and *nascor*),—in the ablative of *manner,* relating to *continentur inter sē.* Rule XLII. "The cause, manner," etc.

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

1421.—Prosody, in its common acceptation, treats of the quantity of syllables, and the construction of verses; in other words, of ***Quantity*** and ***Metre.***

OF QUANTITY.

1422.—Quantity means the relative length of time taken up in pronouncing a syllable.

1. In respect of quantity, every syllable is either ***long*** or ***short,*** a long syllable being considered as equal in time to two short ones. When a syllable is sometimes long, and sometimes short, it is said to be ***common.***

2. The quantity of syllables is determined by certain established ***rules;*** or, when no rule applies,—by the ***authority*** of the poets.

3. The ***rules*** of quantity are either ***general*** or ***special;*** the former apply alike to all the syllables of a word; the latter, to particular syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

1423.—Rule I. A vowel before another vowel is ***short*** by ***Position;*** as, *deus*, *alius*, *nihil*.

1424.—The letter *h*, in verse, being considered as only a breathing, is wholly disregarded; hence, such words as *nihil*, *mihi*, etc., come under this rule. A diphthong before a vowel does not come under this rule, except as in Rule V., *Exc.* 1.

EXCEPTIONS.

1425.—1. **A** is long in *aulāī*, *terrāī*, and the like (55): in such proper names as *Cāius:* and in the verb *āio* (443), when two vowels follow *a*.

2. **E** is long after *i* in the genitive and dative of the fifth declension; as, *speciēī;* not after *i*, it is generally short as *rei*.

   E is long in *ēheu*, and such proper names as *Pompēius*.

3. **I** is long in *fīo*, if not before *er;* as, *fīo*, *fīebam*. Also in *alīus*, the genitive of *alius*. (See 192.)

I is common in *Diāna*, and genitives in *īus*; but is generally short in *alterius*. Genitives in *īus*, in prose, have *i* long.

4. O is common in *Ohē*.

5. Greek words vary. As a general rule, when the vowel before another represents a long vowel or diphthong in the Greek word, it is long; otherwise it is short: *Aenēas*, *Pēnēus*, *Trōes*, *āēr*, etc.

1426.—Rule II. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, or *j*, is **long** by **Position**; as,

ārma, *fāllo*, *āxis*, *gāza*, *mājor*.

Explanation.—The double consonants under this rule are, the same consonant doubled, as, *ll*, *tt*, *rr*, etc., and the letters *x* and *z*. Strictly speaking, it is the syllable, and not the vowel, which is long under this rule.

OBSERVATIONS.

1427.—1. It is necessary that one of the consonants should belong to the same word as the vowel: *in mare*, *fruitūr vitā*.

2. Except in the arsis of a foot, a short vowel at the end of a word usually remains short before two consonants at the beginning of the next word: *lūcente smaragdis*. A short vowel rarely stands before *sc*, *sm*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*.

3. A vowel before *j*, is short in compounds of *jugum*; as, *bijugus*.

1428.—Rule III. A vowel before a mute and a liquid (*l*, *r*), is **common**; as, *volucris*, or *volūcris*.

Explanation.—Under this rule, the vowel must be **naturally short**, and the mute must come before the liquid, and be in the **same syllable** with it. But if the vowel is naturally long, it remains so; as, *mātris* (from μήτηρ), *salūbris*, etc. If the mute and the liquid are in different syllables, the vowel preceding is long by position; as, *ābluo*, *ōbruo*. In Latin words, the liquids which make this **weak position** (*debilis positio*) are *l* and *r* only. In Greek words, *l*, *r*, *m*, *n*: *cycnus* or *cygnus*.

1429.—Rule IV. A contracted syllable is always **long**; as,

Nīl, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *alīus*, for *aliuius*; *īt*, for *iit*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *nōn volo*; *bīgae*, for *bijugae*; *scīlicet*, for *scīre licet*, etc.

1430.—Rule V. A diphthong is **long**; as, *Caesar*, *Aurum*, *Euboea*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1431.—1. *Prae*, in composition, before a vowel, is commonly short; as, *praeire praeustus*, etc.

2. Also, *ae* is sometimes short in the end of a word, when the next begins with a vowel; as, *Insulăĕ Ioniō*, etc.

Note.—*U*, after *q* and *g*, does not form a diphthong with a vowel following it, but has a force similar to the English *w*: as, *lingua*, *queror*, etc., pronounced *lingwa*, *kweror*. (See 5.)

SPECIAL RULES.

FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

1432.—Rule VI. ***Preterites*** of two syllables lengthen the former; as, *vēnī*, *vīdī*, *vīcī*.

1433.—*Exc.* 1. Those which are short by Rule I.; as, *ruī*, *luī*, etc.

Exc. 2. Seven have the first syllable short; viz.: *bibī*, *dedī*, *fidī* (from *findo*), *scidī*, *stetī*, *stitī*, and *tulī*.

1434.—Rule VII. ***Preterites*** which reduplicate, shorten the first and second; as, *cecidī*, *tetigī*, *pepulī*, etc., from *cado*, *tango*, *pello*.

Exc. Cecīdī, from *caedo*, and *pepēdi*, have the second long.

1435.—Rule VIII. ***Supines*** of two syllables lengthen the former; as, *cāsum*, *mōtum*, *vīsum*, from *cado*, *moveo*, *video*.

1436.—*Exc.* Ten have the first syllable short; viz.: *citum* (from *cieo*), *datum*, *itum*, *litum*,—*quitum*, *ratum*, *rutum*, *satum*,—*situm*, and *statum*, from *sisto*.

1437.—Rule IX. In polysyllables, *a*, *e*, and *u*, are long before *tum*, of the ***Supine;*** as, *amātum*, *dēlētum*, *indūtum*.

1438.—Rule X. In polysyllables, *i* is short before *tum*, of the ***Supine;*** as, *monitum*. *I* is long in *dīvīsum*.

1439.—*Exc.* But ***Supines*** in *ītum*, from preterites in *īvī*, have *i* long; as, *cupīvī*, *cupītum*; *audīvī*, *audītum*, etc.

1440.—*Obs.* *Recenseo* has *recensītum*, from *ui* in the preterite, because originally from *censio*, *censīvī*. *Eo* and its compounds have *i* short; as, *itum*, *reditum*, etc. Except *ambio*, *ambītum*, fourth conjugation. (414.)

1441.—Rule XI. ***Participles*** in *rus* have *u* long in the penult; as, *amātūrus*, etc.

INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

1442.—1. A ***Noun*** in the ***singular*** number is said to ***increase,*** when any of its cases has more syllables than the nominative singular: as, *rex*, *rēgis*; *sermo*, *sermōnis*.

2. With only few exceptions, nouns have but *one increase* in the singular number; *iter*, *supellex*, and compounds of *caput* ending in *ps*, have two; as, *itineris*, *supellectilis*, *praecipitis*, from *praeceps*.

3. The increment, or increasing syllable, to which the following rules apply, is never the last syllable, but the one preceding it, if there is only one increment; or the two preceding it, if there are two.

4. The rules for the increase of nouns, apply to adjectives and participles.

5. Nouns of the *fourth* declension have no increment in the singular; those of the *first* and *fifth* have none but what come under Rule I. (1423) and its exceptions (1425). In the *second* declension, those only increase in the singular which end in *r* in the nominative, according to the following—

1443.—Rule. The increment of the second declension is short; as,

Puerĭ, *virĭ*, *saturĭ*, etc., from *puer*, *vir*, *satur*.

Exc. But *Ibēr* and *Celtibēr* have *Ibērī* and *Celtibērī*.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1444.—Rule XII. Increments of the third declension have *a* and *o* long; *e*, *i*, and *u*, short; as,

Pietātis, *honōris*, *mulĭeris*, *lapĭdis*, *murmŭris*.

Rules with Exceptions.

1445.—1. ***Increments*** in **a**, of the third declension, are ***long***.

Exc. 1st. The increment in *a*, from masculines in *al* and *ar*, is short, also from *păr* and its compounds;—from *anas*, *măs*, *văs* (*vădis*), *baccar*, *hĕpar*, *jubăr*, *lăr*, *nectar*, and *săl*.

Exc. 2d. The increment in *a*, from nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, is short; as, *Arabs*, *Arabis*.

Exc. 3d. The increment in *a*, from Greek nouns in *a*, *-atis*, and *as*, *-adis*, is short; as, *poēma*, *poēmatis*; *lampas*, *lampadis*.

Exc. 4th. Also, the following in *ax*; viz.: *anthrax*, *climax*, *corax*, *dropax*, *fax*, *harpax*, *panax*, *smīlax*, and *styrax*, increase with *a* short.

1446.—2. ***Increments*** in **o**, of the third declension, are ***long***.

Exc. 1st. The increment in *o*, from neuter nouns is short; as, *marmor*, *marmoris*; *corpus*, *corporis*. But *ŏs*, *ōris*, and neuter comparatives increase in *ō* long; *ador* has *adoris*, or *adōris*.

Exc. 2d. The increment in *o*, from nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *scrobs*, *scrobis*; *inops*, *inopis*. But *Cercōps*, *Cyclōps*, and *Hydrōps*, have *ō* long.

Exc. 3d. Generally from gentile and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*, the increment is short; as, *Macedo*, *Macedonis*; but some are long, and some are common.

Exc. 4th. Greek nouns in *or*, shorten the increment; as, *Hector—oris*.

Exc. 5th. Greek nouns in *pus* (πούς); as, *tripūs*, *Polypūs*; also, *arbor*, *memor*, *bōs*, *compos*, *impos*, and *lepus*, have *o* short in the increment; as, *tripūs*, *tripodis*, etc.

1447.—3. ***Increments*** in **e**, of the third declension, are ***short***.

Exc. 1st. The increment in *-ēnis* from *ēn* and *o* is long; as, *Sīrēn*, *Sīrēnis*; *Anio*, *Aniēnis*.

Exc. 2. The increment in *e* is long, from *haerēs*, *locuplēs*, *mansuēs*, *mercēs*, and *quiēs*; and *vēr*—from *lēx*, *rēx*, and *vervēx*—*plēbs*, *sēps*, and *hālēc*.

Exc. 3d. Greek nouns in *er* and *ēs* increase *e* long; as, *crātēr*, *crātēris*; *magnēs*, *magnētis*.

1448.—4. ***Increments*** in **i**, of the third declension, are ***short.***

Exc. 1st. Verbals in *trīx*, and adjectives in *īx*, have *i* long; as, *victrīx*, *victrīcis*; *fēlīx*, *fēlīcis*.

Also, *cervīx*, *cicātrīx*, *cornīx*, *coturnīx*, *lōdīx*, *mātrīx*, *perdīx*, *phoenīx*, *rādīx*, and *vībēx*.

Exc. 2d. Greek nouns in *īs* and *īn*, with the genitive in *īnis*, increase long; as, *Salamīs*, *Salamīnis*.

Exc. 3d. *Dīs*, *glīs*, and *līs*, with *Quirīs*, and *Samnīs*, increase long.

1449.—5. ***Increments*** in **u**, of the third declension, are ***short.***

Exc. 1st. Genitives in *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *ūtis*, from nominatives in *ūs*, have the increase long; as, *palūs*, *palūdis*, etc. But *Ligus*, *intercus*, and *pecus*, increase with *u* short.

Exc. 2d. *Fūr*, *frūx*, *lūx*, and *Pollūx*, have *ū* long.

1450.—6. ***Increments*** in **y** are ***short.***

Exc. Greek nouns, with the genitive in *ȳnis*, have the increase long. Also, *Bombyx*, *Cēyx*, and *gryps*, which increase long.

INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

1451.—A noun in the ***plural*** number is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any case than in the nominative plural.

1452.—An increment in the plural can occur only in the genitive, dative, and ablative; and in these it is the syllable next to the last. When any of these cases has no more syllables than the nominative, it has no plural increment. Thus, *sermōnum*, *pueris*, *capitum*, have no plural increase, because they have no more syllables than *sermōnēs*, *puerī*, *capita*; still, they all have the increment of the singular, because they have more syllables than *sermo*, *puer*, and *caput*. But *sermōnibus*, *puerōrum*, and *capitibus*, have both the singular and plural increment.

1453.—Rule XIII. ***Plural increments*** in **a**, **e**, and **o**, are ***long;*** in **i** and **u**, ***short;*** as,

	Mūsārum,	*rērum*,	*virōrum*,	*partibus*,	*lacubus*,
from	*Mūsae*,	*rēs*,	*virī*,	*partēs*,	*lacūs*.

1454.—Explanation.—All the increments of the singular remain in the plural, and to these the plural increment is added. The rule here given applies to the plural increments only, and not to the increments of the singular in the plural. Thus, in *itineribus*, from *iter*, the second and third syllables are increments of the singular, to be found in *itineris*; the fourth is the plural increment, which comes under this rule.

INCREMENT OF VERBS.

1455.—A ***Verb*** is said to ***increase*** when it has more syllables in any part than in the second person singular, of the present indicative, active; as, *amās*, *amātis*, *amābātis*, etc.—A verb in the active voice may

have three increments, and in the passive four. If there is but one increment, it is the syllable next the last. If there are two, the second increment is the syllable next the last, and the first the syllable preceding that, etc.; thus,

1   1 2   1 2 3
a-mās,—am-ā-mus,—am-ā-bā-mus,—am-āv-er-ā-mus, etc.

The increments of deponent verbs are determined in the same manner as if they had an active form.

1456.—Rule XIV. In the increments of verbs, **a**, **e**, and **o** are ***long;*** **i** and **u** ***short;*** as,

Amārēmus, amātōte; legimus, possumus.

Exceptions in A.

1457.—The first increment of **do** is ***short;*** as, *damus, dabāmus, darēmus*, etc.

Exceptions in E.

1458.—1. **E** is ***short*** before *ram, rim*, and *ro*.

But when contracted, it is long; as, *flēram*, for *flēveram*.

2. In the third conjugation, **e** is ***short*** before *r* in the first increase of the present and imperfect; as,

Legere, legerem, Act. *Legerĕris, legerēre, legere*, Pass.

3. In the first and second conjugations, **e** is ***short*** in—*beris* and—*bere*.

Note.—Ērunt and *ēre* in the perfect come under the general rule; sometimes they are shortened by ***systole,*** 1519, 5.

Exceptions in I.

1459.—In perfect tenses, **i** is ***long*** before *v* and *s;* as

Audīvī, audīveram, audīverim, divīsit, etc.

2. In the first increase of the fourth conjugation, except *–imus* of the perfect, *i* not before a vowel is always ***long;*** as,

Pres. *venīmus;* Perf. *vēnimus*. So, also, *ībam* and *ībo*, from *eo*.

I is ***long*** in *sīmus, sītus, velīmus, velītis*, and their compounds; as, *possīmus, nōlīmus*, etc.

4. In *ris, rimus*, and *ritis* of the future perfect indicative, and perfect subjunctive, **i** is ***common*** (335); as,

Vīderis, dixerimus or *dixerīmus; vīderitis* or *vīderītis*.

Note.—U long before *tum* of the ***supine*** comes under Rules VIII. and IX. It is long also in the penult of the perfect participle by the same rules, because the perfect participle is always derived from the same stem as the supine.

QUANTITY OF PENULT SYLLABLES.

For the quantity of penult syllables no definite rule can be given which is not rendered nearly useless by the number of exceptions occurring under

it. The following observations are usually given rather as a general guide, than certain rules; and they might be easily extended, were it of any practical advantage.

1460.—Patronymics in **ides** or **ades** usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamidēs*, *Atlantiadēs*, etc. Unless they come from nouns in *eus;* as, *Pēlīdēs*, *Tȳdīdēs*, etc.

1461.—Patronymics, and similar words, in **āis**, **ēis**, **ītis**, **ōis**, **ōtis**, **īnē**, and **ōnē**, commonly lengthen the penult; as,

Achāis, *Ptolemāis*, *Chrȳsēis*, *Aenēis*, *Memphītis*, *Lātōis*, *Icariōtis*, *Nerīnē*, *Acrisiōnē*. Except *Thēbais*, and *Phōcais*, short; and *Nēreis*, which is common.—*Nēreïs* or *Nērēis*.

1462.—Adjectives in **acus**, **icus**, **idus**, and **imus**, for the most part shorten the penult; as,

Aegyptiacus, *acadēmicus*, *lepidus*, *lēgitimus*. Also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, etc. Except *opācus*, *amīcus*, *aprīcus*, *pudīcus*, *mendīcus*, *antīcus*, *postīcus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus* (from *fīdo*), *bīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *patrīmus*, *mātrīmus*, *opīmus;* and the two superlatives, *īmus* and *prīmus;* but *perfidus*, from *per* and *fides*, has the penult short.

1463.—Adjectives in **ālis**, **ānus**, **ārus**, **īvus**, **ōrus**, **ōsus**, lengthen the penult; as,

Dōtālis, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *aestīvus*, *decōrus*, *arēnōsus*. Except *barbarus*, *opiparus*.

1464.—Verbal adjectives in **ilis** shorten the penult; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, etc. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as,

Anīlis, *cīvīlis*, *herīlis*, etc. To these add *exīlis*, *subtīlis;* and names of months, *Aprīlis*, *Quinctīlis*, *Sextīlis*. Except *humilis*, *parilis*, and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *ātilis* are short; as, *versātilis*, *volātilis*, *umbrātilis*, *plicātilis*, *fluviātilis*, *saxātilis*, etc.

1465.—Adjectives in **inus**, derived from words denoting inanimate things, as plants, stones, etc., also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as,

Amāracinus, *crocinus*, *cedrinus*, *fāginus*, *oleāginus;* *adamantinus*, *crystallinus*, *crastinus*, *pristinus*, *perendinus*, *annōtinus*, etc.

1466.—Other adjectives in **īnus** are long; as,

Agnīnus, *canīnus*, *leporīnus*, *bīnus*, *trīnus*, *quīnus*, *austrīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *Latīnus*, *marīnus*, *supīnus*, *vespertīnus*, etc.

1467.—Diminutives in **olus**, **ola**, **olum;** and **ulus**, **ula**, **ulum**, always shorten the penult; as,

Urceolus, *fīliola*, *mūsaeolum;* *lectulus*, *ratiuncula*, *corculum*, etc.

1468.—Adverbs in **tim** lengthen the penult; as,

Oppidātim, *virītim*, *tribūtim*. Except *affatim*, *perpetim*, and *statim*.

1469.—Desideratives in *urio* shorten the antepenult, which, in the second and third persons, is the penult; as,

Esurio, ĕsurīs, ĕsurit. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris*, etc.

1470.—The penult of several words is ***doubtful;*** thus, *Batavī.* Lucan. *Batāvi.* Juv. and Mart. *Fortuītus.* Hor. *Fortuĭtus.* Martial. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables, in order to explain this apparent variation. *Patrīmus, matrīmus*, etc., are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

A *final.*

1471.—Rule XV. A, in the end of a word, declined by ***cases,*** is ***short;*** as, *Mūsa, templa*, etc.

Exc. 1. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Mūsā*, etc.

Exc. 2. The vocative of Greek nouns in *as*, is long; as, *O Aeneā, O Pallā.*

1472.—Rule XVI. A, in the end of a word ***not declined*** by cases, is ***long;*** as, *amā, frustrā, ergā, intrā*, etc.

Exc.—*Ita, quia, ĕja, puta* (adv.), are short.

E *final.*

1473.—Rule XVII. E ***final*** is ***short;*** as, *nāte, sedīle, ipse, posse, saepe, ante.*

Special Rules and Exceptions.

1474.—Rule 1. Monosyllables in e are ***long;*** as, *mē, tē, sē.*

Exc.—The enclitics *que, ve, ne*, are short; also, *pte, ce, te.*

1475.—Rule 2. Nouns of the ***first*** and ***fifth*** declensions have final e ***long;*** as, *Calliopē, Anchīsē, diē*, etc.

Also Greek neuter plurals; as, *Cētē, melē, Tempē*, etc.

1476.—Rule 3. ***Verbs*** of the ***second*** conjugation have e ***long*** in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *docē, manē*, etc. But *cave, vale* and *vide* have e sometimes short.

1477.—Rule 4. ***Adverbs,*** from adjectives of the first and second declensions, have final e ***long;*** as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē* (contracted for *validē*). So, also, *fermē, ferē*, and *ohē.*

Exc.—But, *bene, male, inferne*, and *superne* are short.

I *final.*

1478.—RULE XVIII. **I final** is **long**; as, *dominī*, *fīlī*, etc.

Exc. 1. I final is common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *ubi*. Sometimes *cui*, as a dissyllable, has *i* short. *Sīcuti*, *sīcubi*, and *necubi*, are always short.

Exc. 2. *Nisi* and *quasi* are short.

Exc. 3. I final is short in Greek vocatives and datives; as, *Alexi*, *Daphni*; *Palladi*, *Trōasi*.

O *final.*

1479.—RULE XIX. **O final** is **common**; as, *Virgo*, *amo*, *quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in o are **long**; as, *O*, *dō*, *stō*, *prō*.

Exc. 2. The **dative** and **ablative** in o are **long**; as, *librō*, *dominō*. Also Greek nouns in *o* ending with omega (ω); as, *Dīdō*, *Sapphō*.

Exc. 3. Ablatives used as adverbs have *o* long; as, *certō*, *falsō*, *paulō*; *quō*, *eō*, and their compounds; *illō*, *idcircō*, *citrō*, *retrō*, *ultrō*, *ergō* (for the sake of).

Exc. 4. *Ego*, *scio*, the defective verb *cedo*; also *homo*, *cito*, *illico*, *immo*, *duo*, *octo*, *ambo*, *modo*, and its compounds: *quōmodo*, *dummodo*, *postmodo*, are almost always short.

U and Y *final.*

1480.—RULE XX. **U final** is **long**; **y final** is **short**; as, *vultū*, *Mōly*.

B, D, L, M, R, T, *final.*

1481.—RULE XXI. **B, d, l, r,** and **t,** in the end of a word are **short**; as, *ad*, *apud*, *semel*, *consul*, *pater*, *caput*.

EXPLANATION.—This Rule does not apply, if any of these final letters are preceded by a diphthong, or if the syllable is contracted, or made long by position; as, *aut*, *abīt*, for *abiit*, *amānt*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1482.—*Exc.* 1. *Sāl*, *sōl*, and *nīl* are long.

Exc. 2. *Āēr* and *aethēr* have the final syllable long. Also nouns in *er*, which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Crātēr*, *Ibēr*, etc.

Exc. 3. *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *pār*, *cūr*, *fūr*, are long.

1483.—*Obs.* **M final** anciently made the preceding vowel short; as, *Mīlitum octo*. By later poets it is usually cut off, by Ecthlipsis (1519, 2), when the next word begins with a vowel. When not so cut off, it is short.

C, N, *final.*

1484.—RULE XXII. **C** and **n** in the end of a word are **long**; as, *sīc*; *illūc*; *ēn*, *nōn*, etc.

Exc. 1. *Nec* and *dōnec* are short; *hic* and *fac*, common.

Exc. 2. *Forsitan*, *in*, *forsan*, *tamen*, *an*, *viden*, are short.

Exc. 3. *En* having *inis* in the genitive is short; as, *carmen, carminis.* Also Greek nouns in *an, on, in, yn,* originally short, and the dative plural in *sin*, have the final syllable short; as, *Ilion, Eration, Maian, Alexin, chelyn, Troasin,* etc.

As, Es, Os, *final.*

1485.—Rule XXIII. **As, es, os,** in the end of a word are ***long;*** as, *mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

Exc. 1. **As** is ***short*** in *anas*, and Greek nouns which have *adis* or *ados* in the genitive; as, *Arcas, lampas,* etc.

Exc. 2. **Es** is ***short:*** 1st, in nouns and adjectives which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospes, līmes, hebes.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs,* and *pēs*, with its compounds, are long. 2d. *Es*, from *sum*, and *penes* are short. 3d. Greek neuters in *es*, and nominatives and vocatives of the third declension which increase in the genitive otherwise than in *eos*, have *es* short; as *Arcades, Trōes,* etc.

Exc. 3. **Os** is ***short*** in *compos, impos, os* (*ossis*),—in Greek words of the second declension, and in neuters and genitives of the third: as, *Iliōs, Tyros chaos, epos, Pallados,* etc.

Is, Us, Ys, *final.*

1486.—Rule XXIV. **Is, us,** and **ys,** in the end of a word are ***short;*** as, *Turris, legis, legimus, Capys.*

Exc. 1. ***Plural*** cases in **is** and **us** and gen. sing. in **us**, fourth declension, are ***long;*** but the dative and ablative in **bus** are ***short.***

Exc. 2. Nouns in **is** with the genitive in *ītis, īnis,* or *entis* are ***long;*** as, *Samnīs, Salamīs, Simoīs.*

Exc. 3. **Is** is ***long*** in *glis, vīs, grātīs, forīs.* And in the second person singular, present indicative, active, of the fourth conjugation; as, *audīs.* Also in *fīs, īs* (from *eo*), *sīs, vīs, velīs,* and their compounds, *possīs, quamvīs, mālīs, nōlīs,* etc.

Exc. 4. ***Monosyllables*** in **us** are ***long;*** as, *grūs, sūs,* etc.

Also words which have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis,* or *odis,* in the genitive; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, Amathūs, tripūs.* To these add Greek genitives in *ūs;* as, *Dīdūs, Sapphūs,* etc.

Exc. 5. *Tēthys* is sometimes long, likewise nouns in *ys*, which have also *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcȳs* or *Phorcȳn.*

QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.

1487.—Rule XXV. ***Derivatives*** follow the quantity of their primatives; as,

Amīcus,	*from*	amo.	Decoro,	*from*	decus, –oris.
Auctiōnor,		auctio, –ōnis.	Exulo,		exul, –ulis.
Auctōro,		auctor, –ōris.	Pavidus,		paveo.

15*

Audītor,	audītum.	Quirīto,	Quirīs, –ītis.
Auspicor,	auspex, –icis.	Rādīcitus,	rādīx, –īcis.
Caupōnor,	caupo, –ōnis.	Sospito,	sospes, –itis.
Competītor,	competītum.	Nātūra,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornīx, –īcis.	Māternus,	māter.
Custōdio,	custōs, –ōdis.	Legēbam, etc.,	lego.
Decōrus,	decor, –ōris.	Lēgeram, etc.,	lēgi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1488. 1. *Long from Short.*

Dēni,	*from* decem.	Sēmen	sero.	Mōbilis,	*from* moveo.
Fōmes,	foveo.	Sēdes,	sedeo.	Hūmor,	humus.
Hūmānus,	homo.	Sēcius,	secus.	Jūmentum,	juvo.
Rēgula,	rego.			Vōx, vōcis,	voco, etc.

2. *Short from Long.*

Arēna,	*from* āreo.	Sopor,	*from* sōpio.
Vadum,	vādo.	Lucerna,	lūceo.
Fides,	fīdo.	Quasillus,	quālus, etc.

Note.—This Rule applies to all those parts of the verb derived or formed from the primary parts, *i. e.*, the quantity of the primary part remains in all the parts formed from it.

1489.—Rule XXVI. ***Compounds*** follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

adămo, from *ad* and *amo; dēdūco*, from *dē* and *dūco*.

1490.—*Obs.* 1. The change of a vowel or diphthong, in forming the compound, does not alter its quantity; as, *cado, concido; caedo, concīdo; claudo, reclūdo; aequus, inīquus*, etc.

1491.—*Obs.* 2. When a short syllable in the first part of the compound ends with a consonant, it becomes long by position when joined to another word beginning with a consonant; as, *pērmaneo*, from *per* and *maneo;* but if the second word begin with a vowel, the first retains its quantity; as, *perambulo*, from *per* and *ambulo*.

1492.—*Obs.* 3. When the second part of a compound word begins with a vowel, the vowel ending the first part is short by Rule I. When it begins with two consonants, or a double consonant, the vowel preceding is long by Rule II. But if it begins with a simple consonant, followed by a vowel or diphthong, the vowel preceding is sometimes long and sometimes short, by the following

Special Rules for the first part of a Compound, ending with a Vowel.

1493.—*Rule* 1. The ***first part*** of a ***compound,*** if a preposition of one syllable, has the final vowel long; as, *dēcido, prōtendo.*

Exc. 1. *Pro* is short in *procella*, *profanus*, *profāri*, *profecto*, *profestus*, *proficiscor*, *profiteor*, *profugio*, *profugus*, *profundus*, *pronepos*, *proneptis*, and *protervus*. It is common in *procūro*, *profundo*, *propāgo*, *propello*, *propīno*.

Exc. 2. The Greek *pro* (before), is always short; *prophēta*, *prologus*.

Note.—The final vowel of a preposition of more than one syllable, retains its own quantity; as, *contrădico*, *antecēdo*.

1494.—*Rule* 2. The inseparable **prepositions**, **se** and **di**, are long; **re** is short; as, *Sēpōno*, *divello*, *repello*.

Exc. 3. **Di** (for *dis*) is short in *dirimo* and *disertus*. **Re** is long in *rēfert*.

1495.—*Rule* 3. The ***first part*** of a ***compound***, not a preposition, has final **a** long; **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, and **y**, short; as,

Mālo, *nefas*, *biceps*, *philosophus*, *ducenti*, *Polydōrus*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1496.—*Exc.* 1. **A**—In *quasi*, *eadem*, not in the ablative, and in some Greek compounds, *a* is short.

Exc. 2. **E**—The *e* is long in *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquando*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquis*, *nēquitia*; *mēmet*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *vēcors*, *vēsānus*, *venēficus*. Also in words compounded with *se* for *sex*, or *sēmi*; as, *sēdecim*, *sēmestris*, etc. **E** is common in some compounds of *facio*; as, *liquefacio*, *patefacio*, *rārefacio*, etc.

Exc. 3, **I**—When the first part of a compound is declined, *i* is long; as, *quīdam*, *quīlibet*, *rēīpublicae*, etc., or when the first can be separated from the last, and yet both retain their form and meaning; as, *lūdi-magister*, *lucrī-facio*, *sī-quis*, *agrī-cultūrā*, etc.

I is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *bīgae*, *scīlicet*, *bīmus*, etc., for *bijugae*, *scīre licet*, *bis annus*, or *biennius*. It is also long in *īdem* (masculine), *ubīque*, *utrobīque*, *ibīdem*, *nīmīrum*, and the compounds of *diēs*, such as *bīduum*, *prīdiē*; *merīdiēs*, etc. In *ubicunque* and *ubivis* it is common.

Exc. 4. **O**—*Contrō*, *intrō*, *retrō*, and *quandō*, in compounds, have the final *o* long; as, *contrōversia*, *intrōduco*, *retrōcedo*, *quandōque* (except *quandoquidem*).

O is long in compounds of *quo* and *eo*; as, *quōmodo*, *quōcunque*, *quōminus*, *quōcircā*, *quōvis*, *quōque* (from *quisque*), *eōdem*, *eōne*; but in *quoque*, the conjunction, it is short.

Exc. 5. **U**—*Jūpiter*, *jūdex*, and *jūdicium*, have *u* long; also *ūsūcapio* and *ūsūvenio*, being capable of separation, as in *Exc.* 3.

1497.—Rule XXVII. The last syllable of every verse is common.

Explanation.—This means that a short syllable at the end of a line, if the verse requires it, is considered long; and a long syllable, if the verse requires it, is considered short.

1498.—N. B. A syllable which does not come under any of the preceding rules, is said to be long, or short, by "***authority***," viz.: of the poets.

VERSIFICATION.

1499.*—A *verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule. The parts into which a verse is divided are called *Feet*.

FEET.

1500.*—A *foot, in metre, is composed of two or more syllables, strictly regulated by time, and is either ***simple*** or ***compound.*** The simple feet are twelve in number, of which four consists of two, and eight of three syllables. There are sixteen compound feet, each of four syllables. These varieties are as follows:

1501.—Simple feet of two Syllables.

Pyrrhic	⏑ ⏑	as Deus.
Spondee	— —	as fūndūnt.
Iambus	⏑ —	as erānt.
Trochee	— ⏑	as ărma.

1502.—Simple feet of three Syllables.

Tribrach	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	as facere.
Molosus	— — —	as cōntēndūnt.
Dactyl	— ⏑ ⏑	as cōrpora.
Anapaest	⏑ ⏑ —	as dominī.
Bacchīus	⏑ — —	as dolōrēs.
Antibacchīus	— — ⏑	as Rōmānus.
Amphibrach	⏑ — ⏑	as honōre.
Amphimacer	— ⏑ —	as chāritās.

1503.—Compound feet of four Syllables.

Choriambus	— ⏑ ⏑ —	pōntificēs	Trochee and Iambus.
Antispastus	⏑ — — ⏑	amābātis	Iambus and Trochee.
Ionic ā majōre	— — ⏑ ⏑	cālcāribus	Spondee and Pyrrhic.
Ionic ā minōre	⏑ ⏑ — —	properābānt	Pyrrhic and Spondee.
First Paeon	— ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	tēmporibus	Trochee and Pyrrhic.
Second Paeon	⏑ — ⏑ ⏑	potēntia	Iambus and Pyrrhic.
Third Paeon	⏑ ⏑ — ⏑	animātus	Pyrrhic and Trochee.
Fourth Paeon	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ —	celeritās	Pyrrhic and Iambus.
First Epitrite	⏑ — — —	volūptātēs	Iambus and Spondee.
Second Epitrite	— ⏑ — —	cōnditōrēs	Trochee and Spondee.
Third Epitrite	— — ⏑ —	dīscōrdiās	Spondee and Iambus.
Fourth Epitrite	— — — ⏑	āddūxīstis	Spondee and Trochee.
Proceleusmaticus	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	hominibus	Two Pyrrhics.
Dispondee	— — — —	ōrātōrēs	Two Spondees.
Diiambus	⏑ — ⏑ —	amāverānt	Two Iambi.
Ditrochee	— ⏑ — ⏑	Cāntilēna	Two Trochees.

ISOCHRONOUS FEET.

1504.—1. In every foot, a long syllable is equal in time to two short ones. To constitute feet Isochronous, two things are necessary: 1st. That they have the same time. 2d. That they be interchangeable in metre.

2. Feet have the same time which are measured by an equal number of short syllables; thus, the Spondee, Dactyl, Anapaest, and Proceleusmaticus, have the same time, each being equal to four short syllables.

3. Feet are interchangeable in metre, when the **ictus** or stress of the voice falls, or may fall, on the same portion of the foot. The part of the foot that receives the ictus, is called **arsis**, or elevation; the rest of the foot is termed **thesis**, or depression.

4. The natural place of the arsis is the long syllable of the foot. Hence, in the Iambus, it falls on the second syllable, and in the Trochee, on the first. Its place in the Spondee and Tribrach cannot be determined by the feet themselves, each Syllable being of the same length.

5. In all kinds of verse, the fundamental foot determines the place of the *arsis* for the other feet admitted into it; thus, in Dactylic verse, and Trochaic verse, the Spondee will have the arsis on the first syllable;—in Anapaestic and Iambic, on the last. In Trochaic verse the tribrach will have the arsis on the first syllable, ⏑́⏑⏑, in Iambic, on the second, ⏑⏑́⏑.

6. Those feet, then, according to the ancients, were called *isochronous*, which were capable of being divided into parts that were equal in time, so that a short syllable should correspond to a short; and a long to a long, or to two short; thus, in Iambic and Trochaic verse,

Iambus	⏑	—	Trochee	—	⏑
Tribrach	⏑	⏑⏑	Tribrach	⏑⏑	⏑

In Dactylic and Anapaestic; thus,

Dactyl	—	⏑⏑	Anapaest	⏑⏑	—
Spondee	—	—	Spondee	—	—

1505.—But feet which cannot be divided in this manner are not isochronous, though they have the same time; thus, the *Iambus* and *Trochee*, though equal in time, cannot be divided so as to have the corresponding parts of equal length; thus,

Iambus,	⏑	—
Trochee,	—	⏑

1506.—Hence these feet are not interchangeable, or isochronous; and for this reason, a Trochee is never admitted into Iambic verse, nor an Iambus into Trochaic. The same is true of the Spondee (— —) and Amphibrach (⏑ — ⏑), and of the Amphibrach with the Dactyl or Anapaest.

OF METRE.

1507.—1. *Metre*, in its *general sense*, means an arrangement of syllables and feet in verse, according to certain rules; and, in this sense, applies, not only to an entire verse, but to part of a verse, or to any number of verses. A *metre*, in a *specific sense*, means a combination of two feet (sometimes called a syzygy), and sometimes one foot only.

The distinction between rhythm and metre is this:—the former refers to the *time* only, in regard to which, two short syllables are equivalent to one long; the latter refers both to the *time* and the *order* of the syllables. The rhythm of an anapaest and dactyl is the same; the metre different. The term rhythm is also understood in a more comprehensive sense, and is applied to the harmonious construction and enunciation of feet and words in connection; thus, a line has rhythm when it contains *any number* of metres of *equal time*, without regard to their order. Metre requires *a certain* number of metres, and these arranged in a *certain order*. Thus, in this line,

Panditur intereā domus omnipotentis Olympī,

there is both *rhythm* (as it contains six metres of equal value in respect of time) and *metre*, as these metres are arranged according to the canon for Hexameter heroic verse, which requires a dactyl in the fifth, and a spondee in the sixth place. Change the order thus,

Omnipotentis Olympī panditur intereā domus,

and the rhythm remains as perfect as before, but the metre is destroyed; it is no longer an Hexameter heroic line.

2. The principal metres used in Latin poetry are six; namely, 1. Iambic. 2. Trochaic. 3. Anapaestic, 4. Dactylic. 5. Chŏrĭambic. 6. Ionic. These are so called from the foot which prevails in them.

These different kinds of verse, in certain varieties, are also designated by the names of certain poets, who either invented them, or made special use of them in their writings. Thus, we have Asclepiadic, Glycōnĭan, Alcaic, Sapphic, Pherecratian, etc., from Asclepiades, Glycon, Alcaeus, Sappho, Pherecrates, etc.

3. In Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapaestic verse, a metre consists of two feet (sometimes called a *dipodia*, or *syzygy*), in the other kinds, of one foot.

4. A verse consisting of one metre is called *Monometer;* of two metres, *Dimeter;* of three, *Trimeter;* of four, *Tetrameter;* of five, *Pentameter;* of six, *Hexameter;* of seven, *Heptameter;* etc. In Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse, a monometer contains *two* feet; a dimeter, *four;* a trimeter, *six;* etc. In the other kinds of verse, a monometer contains *one* foot; a dimeter, *two;* a trimeter, *three;* etc.

5. A verse or line of any metre may be complete, having precisely the number of feet or syllables that the canon requires; or it may be deficient; or it may be redundant. To express this, a verse is variously characterized as follows:

(1) *Acatalectic*, when complete.

(2) *Catalectic*, if wanting one syllable.

(3) *Brachycatalectic*, if wanting two syllables, or a foot.

(4) *Hypercatalectic*, or *hypermeter*, when it has one or two syllables more than the verse requires.

(5) *Acephalous*, when a syllable is wanting at the beginning of the line.

(6) *Asynartete*, when different measures are conjoined in one line.

Hence, in order fully to describe any verse, three terms are employed: the first expressing the kind of verse; the second, the number of metres; and the third, the character of the line; thus,

Nōn vŭl- | tus ĭn- | stāntĭs | tyrān- | nī |

is described; as, *Iambic*, *dimeter*, *hypercatalectic.*

6. Verses, or parts of verses, are further designated by a term expressive of the number of feet, or parts of feet, which they contain. Thus, a line, or a part of a line, containing—

three half feet is called *triemimer.*
five half feet, " *penthemimer.*
seven half feet " *hepthhemimer.*

These are of use to point out the place of—

THE CAESURAL PAUSE.

1508.—***Caesura,*** in metre, is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically connected.

It is of three kinds: 1. Of the *foot;* 2. of the *rhythm;* 3. of the *verse.*

1st. Caesura of the ***foot*** occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as in the second, third, fourth, and fifth feet of the following line:

Silvēs- | trōm tenu- | ī Mū- | sām medi | tāris a- | vēnā.

2d. Caesura of the ***rhythm*** is the separation of the *arsis* from the *thesis* by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding line.

This has sometimes the effect of making a final short syllable long, by the force of the ictus; as,

Pĕctori- | *būs* inhi- | āns spī- | rāntia | cōnsulit | ēxta.

Note.—This effect is not produced by the Caesura of the foot, nor of the verse, unless they happen to coincide with the caesura of the rhythm.

3. The Caesura of the ***verse*** is such a division of the line into two parts, as affords to the voice a pause or rest, at a proper or fixed place, without injuring the sense by pausing in the middle of a word.

1509.—The proper management of this pause is a great beauty in certain kinds of verse, and shows the skill of the poet. In pentameter verse its place is fixed; in hexameter and other metres, it is left to the poet. When it occurs at the end of the third half foot, it is called ***triemimeris;*** of the fifth, ***penthemimeris;*** of the seventh, ***hepthemimeris.***

1510.—The situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place.*

DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

The canons, or rules of the different kinds of metre used in Latin poetry, are the following:

1. IAMBIC METRE.

1511.—1. A ***pure iambic*** line consists of iambic feet only; as,

Phasē- | lus il- ‖ *le* quēm | vidē ‖ tis hōs- | pitēs. ‖

Here the single-line marks the end of the foot; the double line, the end of the metre; and the Italic syllable, the caesural pause.

2. A ***mixed iambic*** line admits a spondee into the first, third, and fifth places; and again in the first and third a dactyl and in the first an anapaest is sometimes admitted for a spondee, and a tribrach for the iambus.

3. This verse occurs in all varieties of length, from the dimeter catalectic to the tetrameter.

4. The caesura commonly takes place at the fifth half foot.

5. Different varieties of this metre are denominated as follows:

1st. **Senarian**, or Trimeter acatalectic, used in tragedy and comedy.

2d. **Archilochian**, or Trimeter catalectic.

3d. **Archilochian**, or Dimeter hypermeter.

4th. **Anacreontic**, or Dimeter catalectic.

5th. **Galliambus**, or Dimeter catalectic, double; *i. e.*, two verses in one line.

6th. **Hippōnactic**, or Tetrameter catalectic.

7th. **Chōliambus**, or Trimeter acatalectic. This is called, also, *Scazon* and *Hipponactic trimeter*, and has a spondee in the sixth place, and generally an iambus in the fifth.

8th. **Octōnārius**, or Tetrameter acatalectic, called also *quadrātus*.

9th. **Acephalous**, or Dimeter, wanting the first syllable of the first foot. This may be resolved into Trochaic dimeter catalectic.

II. TROCHAIC METRE.

1512.—1. A ***pure trochaic*** line consists of trochees only. These, however, are but seldom used. An acephalous trochaic becomes an iambic line; and an acephalous iambic becomes a trochaic line.

2. A ***mixed trochaic*** line admits a spondee, a dactyl, an anapaest, and sometimes a proceleusmatic in even places, *i. e.*, in the 2d, 4th, 6th, etc. But in the odd places, a trochee, or a tribrach, and in the last place, a trochee only.

3. This verse may be used in all varieties, from the Monometer hypercatalectic (two trochees and one syllable) to the tetrameter, or octonarius catalectic. The varieties most used by the Latin poets are,

1st. **The Trochaic tetrameter** *catalectic*, rarely pure.

2d. The **Sapphic**, consisting of five feet, viz.: a trochee, a spondee, a dactyl, and two trochees. It has the caesural pause after the fifth half foot; thus,

Inte- | gĕr vī- | *tae* | scele- | risque | pūrus.—Hor.

3d. The **Phalaecian**, consisting of five feet, viz.: a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; thus,

Nōn ĕst | vīvere | sĕd va- | lēre | vīta.—Mart.

This verse neither requires nor rejects a caesura.

4th. The **Trochaic dimeter** *catalectic*, or *Acephalous iambic* dimeter. See I. 9th.

5th. Other varieties, but seldom used, are: 1. The *Pancratic*, monometer hypercatalectic. 2. The *Ithyphallic*, dimeter brachycatalectic. 3. The *Euripidean*, dimeter catalectic. 4. The *Alcmanic*, dimeter acatalectic. 5. *Anacreontic*, dimeter acatalectic, with a pyrrhic in the first place. 6. The *Hipponactic*, tetrameter acatalectic.

III. ANAPAESTIC METRE.

1513.—1. A ***pure Anapaestic*** line consists of Anapaests only.

2. The mixed anapaestic line has a spondee or a dactyl, feet of equal length, in any place.

3. The following varieties occur, viz.: 1st. The *Anapaestic Monometer*, consisting of two anapaests. 2d. The *Anapaestic dimeter*, consisting of four Anapaests.

Obs. Anapaestic verses are usually so constructed, that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

4. Other varieties not much in use are the *Simodian;* monometer catalectic. The *Partheniac;* dimeter catalectic. The *Archebulian;* trimeter brachycatalectic.

IV. DACTYLIC METRE.

1514.—1. A ***pure dactylic*** verse consists of dactyls only, which have the arsis on the first syllable of the foot.

Of this verse, one foot constitutes a metre, and the lines range in length from dimeter to hexameter. Of these, the most important are—

1. *Hexameter or Heroic verse.*

Hexameter or ***Heroic verse*** consists of six feet, of which the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four, a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Lūdere | quae vĕl- | lĕm cala- | mō pĕr- | mīsit a- | grĕstī.—Virg.

Respecting this verse, the following things may be noticed:

1st. When a spondee occurs in the fifth place, the line is called *spondaic.* Such lines are of a grave character, and but rarely occur.

2d. When the line consists of dactyls, the movement is brisk and rapid; when of spondees, slow and heavy. Compare in this respect the two following lines: the first expresses the rapid movement over the plain, of a troop of horse eager for the combat;—the other describes the slow and toilsome movements of the Cyclops at the labors of the forge.

> Quādrupe | dānte pu- | trēm soni- | tū quatit | ūngula | cāmpūm.
> Illi īn- | tēr sē- | sē māg- | nā vī | brāchia | tōllūnt.—VIRG.

3d. The beauty and harmony of a Hexameter verse depend on the proper management of the caesura. The most approved caesural pause, in heroic poetry, is that which occurs after the arsis of the third foot—sometimes called the heroic caesural pause; thus,

> At domus | īnteri- | ōr ‖ rē- | gālī | splēndida | lūxū.—VIRG.

In reading this line with due attention to quantity, we naturally pause where the caesural pause is indicated by the double line, and the whole movement is graceful and pleasing. Compare now with this, a line in which no attention is paid to the caesura, or in which, if one is made, you have to pause in the middle of a word, and the difference is manifest.

> Rōmā | mōenia | tēr- ‖ ruit | īmpiger | Hānnibal | ārmīs.

Sometimes the caesura falls after the thesis of the third foot, or the arsis of the fourth. In the last case, a secondary one often occurs in the second foot. The pause at the end of the third foot was the least approved. The following lines are examples of each of these:

1. Infān- | dūm rē- | gīna ‖ ju- | bēs reno- | vāre do- | lōrēm.
2. Prīma te- | nēt, ‖ plaū- | sūque vo- | lāt ‖ fremi- | tūque se- | cūndō.
3. Cuī nōn | dīctus Hy- | lās puer ‖ ēt Lā- | tōnia | Dēlōs.

When a pause occurs between the fourth and fifth feet, it is called the ***Bucolic*** caesura, from its use in pastoral poetry:

> Ingen | tem | coe | lō ‖ soni | tum dedit; ‖ inde se | cūtus.—VIRG.

2. A species of Hexameter is the ***Priapean.*** It is divisible into two portions of three feet each, of which portions the first begins generally with a *trochee*, and ends with an *amphimacer*, and the second begins with a *trochee;* as follows:

> O co- | lōnia | quae cupīs ‖ pōnte | lūdere | lōngō.—CATULL.

These parts, however, may very well be scanned, the first as a *Glyconic*, and the second as a *Pherecratic* verse, of which see under (V) Choriambic verse.

3. ***Pentameter verse*** consists of five feet. It is commonly arranged in two portions or hemistichs, of which the first contains two feet, dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable which ought to end a word; and the second, two dactyls followed by a long syllable; thus,

Māxima | dē nĭhi- | lō ‖ nāscĭtur | histori- | ā.—PROPERT.
Pōmaque | nōn nō- | tīs ‖ lēgit ab | ărbori- | būs.—TIBULL.

When the first distich does not end a word, or if there be an elision by *Synalaepha* or *Echthlipsis*, the verse is considered harsh.

This verse is commonly used alternately with a hexameter line, a combination which is commonly called *Elegiac* verse.

4. ***Dactylic tetrameter,*** of which there are two kinds.

1st. *Dactylic tetrameter a priore*, called also Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter, which consists of the first four feet of a hexameter line, the fourth being always a dactyl; as,

Sōlvitur | ācris hi- | ēms grā- | tā vice.—HOR.

2d. *Dactylic tetrameter a posteriore*, called also *Spondaic tetrameter*, which consists of the last four feet of a hexameter line; as,

Sīc trīs- | tēs af- | fātus a- | mīcōs.—HOR.

5. ***Dactylic trimeter*** (or *Choriambic Trimeter Catalectic*), consists of the last three feet of a hexameter line (see Choriambic verse); as,

Grātō | Pyrrha sub | āntrō.—HOR.

6. *Dactylic trimeter catalectic*, also called ***Archilochian*** *penthemimeris*, consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter line; as,

Arbori- | būsque co- | mae.—HOR.

7. *Dactylic dimeter*, or ***Adonic***—commonly used to conclude a Sapphic Stanza—consists of a dactyl and spondee; thus,

Rīsit A- | pōllō.

V. CHORIAMBIC METRE.

1515.—In ***Choriambic*** verse, the leading foot is a choriambus; but in the varieties of this metre, different other feet are admitted, chiefly at the beginning or end of the line, or both. The principal varieties are the following:

1. The ***Choriambic tetrameter*** consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quaēsierīs | scīre nefās | quēm mihi quēm | tibī.

2. *Choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet equivalent in length, and a Bacchius; as,

Jāne patēr | Jāne tuēns | dīve bicēps | bifōrmīs.

Horace altered without improving this metre, by substituting a spondee for the iambus in the first foot; as,

Tē deōs ō- | rō Sybarīn, | etc.

Note.—Choriambic tetrameter was originally called Phalaecian, from Phalaecus, who made great use of it.

3. ***Asclepiadic tetrameter*** consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; thus,

Maecē | nās atavīs | ēdite rē- | gibŭs.—Hor.

This form is uniformly used by Horace. Other poets sometimes make the first foot a dactyl.

The caesural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

This verse is sometimes scanned as a Dactylic pentameter catalectic; thus,

Maecē- | nās ata- | vīs | ēdite | rēgibus.

4. ***Choriambic trimeter***, or ***Glyconic,*** consists of a spondee (sometimes an iambus or trochee), a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sic tē | dīva potēns | Cyprī.—Hor.

When the first foot is a spondee, it may be scanned as dactylic trimeter; as,

Sīc tē | dīva po- | tēns Cypri.

5. *Choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or ***Pherecratic,*** consists of a spondee, choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Pyrrha sub ān- | trō.

Here, also, the first foot is sometimes a trochee or an iambus. When a spondee, it may be scanned as Dactylic trimeter. See IV. 5.

6. ***Choriambic dimeter*** consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lȳdia dīc | per ōmnēs.—Hor.

VI. IONIC METRE.

1516.—1. The *Ionic ā mājōre*, or *Sotadic metre*, consists of three Ionics ā mājōre, and a spondee; as,

Hās cūm gemi- | nā cōmpede | dēdicāt ca- | tēnās.

Obs.—In this metre, an Ionic foot is often changed for a ditrochee, as in the third foot of the preceding line; and a long syllable is often resolved into two short ones.

2. The *Ionic ā minōre* consists generally of three or four feet, which are all Ionics ā minōre; as,

Puer ālēs | tibi tēlīs | operōsāē- | que Minērvāē.—Hor.

COMPOUND METRES.

1517.—A compound metre, or ***Asynartete,*** is the union of two kinds of metre in the same verse or line. Of these the following are the chief:

1. *Greater Alcaic.* Iambic mon. hyper. + Chor. dim. acat.

Thus, ⏓ — | ⏑ — | — ‖ — ⏑ ⏑ — | ⏑ —

2. *Lesser Alcaic.* Dactylic dem. + Trochaic mon.

Thus, — ⏑ ⏑ | — ⏑ ⏑ ‖ — ⏑ — ⏑

3. *Archilochian Hept.* or Dact. tetr. a priore + Troch. dim. brachyc.

Thus, — ⏔ | — ⏔ | — ⏔ | — ⏑ ⏑ ‖ — ⏑ | — ⏑ | — ⏑

4. *Dactylico-Iambic.* Dactylic trim. cat. + Iambic dim.

Thus, — ⏔ | — ⏑ ⏑ | — ‖ ⏓ ⏑ | — ⏑ | ⏓ — | ⏑ —

5. *Iambico-Dactylic.* Iambic dim. + Dactyl trim. cat.

Thus, ⏓ — | ⏑ — | ⏓ — | ⏑ — ‖ — ⏔ | — ⏑ ⏑ | —

SCANNING.

1518.—***Scanning*** is the measuring of verse, or the resolving of a line into the several feet of which it is composed.

To do this properly, a previous acquaintance with the rules of quantity, and the structure of each kind of verse, is indispensable,—and also with the various ways by which syllables in certain situations are varied by contraction, elision, etc. These are usually called Figures of Prosody, and are as follows:

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

1519.—1. ***Synaloepha*** cuts off a vowel or diphthong from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, or *h* with a vowel following it, thus converting two syllables into one; as,

Terra antīqua by Synaloepha, *terr' antīqua ; Dardanidae infensī, Dardanid' infensī ; ventō hūc, vent' ūc ;* thus,

Quidve moror? sī omnēs ūnō ordine habētis Achīvōs.—Virg.

Scanned thus,

Quĭdve mo- | rŏr? s' ōm- | nēs ū- | n' ŏr din' ha- | bētis A- | chīvōs.

The *Synaloepha* is sometimes neglected, and seldom takes place in the interjections, *O, heu, ah, proh, vae, vah, hei.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulae | Ioniī | in măg- | nō quās | dīra Ce- | laenō.—Virg.

Crēdimus | ăn qui a- | mănt ip- | sī sibi | sŏmnia | fingŭnt.—Id.

2. ***Ecthlipsis*** cuts off *m* with a vowel preceding it, from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, or *h* followed by a vowel; as,

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lūmen ademptum.

Scanned thus,

Mōnstr' hōr- | rēnd', īn- | fōrm', īn- | gēns cuī | lūmen ad- | ēmptŭm.

This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

Corporum | offici- | um est quoni- | am preme- | re omnia de- | orsum.—Lucr.

Obs. A *Synaloepha* and *Ecthlipsis* are sometimes found at the end of a line, where, after the completing of the metre, a syllable remains to be joined to the next line, which of course must begin with a vowel. This is called **Synaphēa**; thus,

Sternitur | infē- | līx ali- | ēnō | vulnere | coelum | que
Adspicit, etc.

Here the *que* and *adspicit* are joined; as, *qu' adspicit.*

Jamque iter | ēmen- | sī, tur- | rēs ac | tecta La- | tīnō- | rum
Ardua, etc., where the *-rum* and *ardua* are joined; as, *r' ardua.*

3. ***Synaeresis,*** sometimes called *Crāsis*, contracts two syllables into one; as, *Phaethōn*, for *Phaëthōn;* this is done by forming two vowels into a diphthong; *aē*, *eī*, *oī*, into *ae*, *ei*, *oi;* or pronouncing the two syllables as one; thus, *ea*, *iu*, as if *ya*, *yu*, etc.; as, *aurea*, *aurya; filius*, *filyus;* and *ua*, *ui*, etc, as if *wa*, *wi;* thus, *genua*, *genwa; tenuis*, *tenwis.*

4. ***Diaeresis*** divides one syllable into two; as, *aulāi* for *aulae; Persëus*, for *Perseus; milüus*, for *milvus; solüit*, for *solvit; volüit*, for *volvit; aqüae*, *süetus*, *süasit*, *Süevos*, *relangüit*, *reliqüas*, for *aquae*, *suetus*, etc.; as,

Aulāī in mediō lībābant pōcula Bacchī.—Virg.

Stāmina nōn ullī dissolüenda Deō. *Pentam.*—Tibullus.

5. ***Systole*** makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulĕrunt;* thus,

Mātrī | longa de- | cem tule- | runt fas- | tīdia | mensēs.—Virg.

6. ***Diastole*** makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse:

Consī- | dant sī | tantus a- | mōr, et | moenia | condat.—Virg.

STANZA.

1520.—A poem may consist of one or more kinds of verse. When a poem consists of one kind of verse, it is called **monocōlon**; of two, **dicōlon**; of three, **tricōlon.**

1521.—The different kinds of verse in a poem are usually combined in regular portions called **stanzas**, or **strophes**, each of which contains the same number of lines, the same kinds of verse, and these arranged in the same order.

When a stanza or strophe consists of two lines, the poem is called **distrophon**; of three lines, **tristrophon**; of four, **tetrastrophon.** Hence poems, according to the number of kinds of verse which they contain, and the number of lines in the stanza, are characterized as follows:

Monocōlon, one kind of verse in the poem.
Dicōlon distrophon, two kinds of verse, and two lines in the stanza.
Dicōlon tristrophon, two kinds of verse, three lines in the stanza.
Dicōlon tetrastrophon, two kinds of verse, four lines in the stanza.
Tricōlon tristrophon, three kinds of verse, three lines in the stanza.
Tricōlon tetrastrophon, three kinds of verse, four lines in the stanza.

COMBINATIONS OF METRES IN HORACE.

1522.—Horace makes use of *nineteen* different species of metre combined in *eighteen* different ways. They are arranged as follows, according to the order of preference given them by the poet. The references here, where not marked, are to 1511–1516.

No. 1. Two lines Greater Alcaic. 1517, 1. One Archilochian dimeter hypermeter, I. 2. 5. 3d; and one Lesser Alcaid. 1517, 2.
No. 2. Three lines Sapphic, II. 2. One Adonic, or Dactylic dim. IV. 7.
No. 3. One line Choriambic trim. or Glyconic, V. 4. One choriambic trim. or Asclepiadic. V. 3.
No. 4. One line Iambic trim. or Senarian, I. 3. 5. 1st. One Iambic dim. I. 2. 3.
No. 5. Three lines, Chor. tetram. or Asclepiadic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. or Glyconic, V. 4.
No. 6. Two lines Chor. tetram. or Asclepiadic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. cat., or Pherecratic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. or Glyconic, V. 4.
No. 7. Choriambic tetrameter, or Asclepiadic alone, V. 3.
No. 8. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Dactylic tetram. a posteriore, IV. 4. 2d.
No. 9. Choriambic pentameter only, V. 1.
No. 10. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambic dim. 1. 2. 3.
No. 11. Iambic trimeter Senarian only, 1. 2. 5. 1st.
No. 12. One line Choriambic dim. V. 6. One Chor. tetram. (altered), V. 2.
No. 13. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambic trim. sen. I, 3. 5. 1st.

No. 14. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Archilochian Dactylic trimeter catalectic, IV. 6.

No. 15. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambico-dactylic, 1517, 5.

No. 16. One line Iambic trim. Senarian, I. 3. 5. 1st. One Dactylic Iambic, 1517, 4.

No. 17. One line Archilochian Heptameter, 1517, 3. One Archilochian Iambic trimeter, Catalectic, I. 2. 5. 2d.

No. 18. One line Iambic dimeter Acephalous, I. 5. 9th; and one Iambic trimeter catalectic, I. 5. 2d.

No. 19. Ionic a minore only, VI. 2. The first line contains three feet, the second, four.

Note.—The Satires and Epistles are in Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1.

METRICAL KEY TO ODES OF HORACE.

1523.—This key gives, in alphabetical order, the first words of each ode, with a reference to the Nos. in the preceding section where the stanza is described, and reference made to the place where each metre is explained.

Aelī vetustō	No. 1	Herculis rītū	No. 2
Aequam memento	1	Horrida tempestās	15
Albī nē doleās	5	Ībis Liburnīs	4
Altera jam teritur	13	Iccī beātīs	1
Augustam amīcī	1	Ille et nefastō	1
Atquī Deōrum	4	Impiōs parrae	2
Audīvēre Lycē	6	Inclūsam Danăēn	5
Bacchum in remōtīs	1	Intactīs opulentior	3
Beātus ille	4	Integer vītae	2
Coelō supīnās	1	Intermissa Venus diū	3
Coelō tonantem	1	Jam jam efficācī	11
Cum tū Lydia	3	Jam pauca arātrō	1
Cūr mē querēlīs	1	Jam satis terrīs	2
Dēlicta mājōrum	1	Jam vēris comitēs	5
Descende coelō	1	Justum et tenācem	1
Diānam tenerae	6	Laudābunt aliī	8
Diffūgēre nivēs	14	Lupīs et agnīs	4
Dīve quem prōlēs	2	Lydia dīc per omnēs	12
Dīvīs orte bonīs	5	Maecēnās atavīs	7
Dōnārem paterās	7	Malā solutā	4
Dōnec grātus eram	3	Martiīs coelebs	2
Eheu fugācēs	1	Māter saeva Cupīdinum	3
Est mihi nōnum	2	Mercurī fācunde	2
Et thūre et fidibus	3	Mercurī nam tē	2
Exēgī monumentum	7	Miserārum est	19
Extrēmum Tanaim	5	Mollis inertia	10
Faune nymphārum	2	Montium custōs	2
Festō quid potius diē	3	Mōtum ex Metellō	1

APPENDIX.

1. ROMAN COMPUTATION OF TIME.

1. *Divisions of the Year.*

1524.—Romulus is said to have divided the year into ***ten months,*** as follows: 1. *Martius*, from Mars, his supposed father; 2. *Aprīlis*, from *Aperio*, "to open;" 3. *Māius*, from *Māia*, the mother of Mercury; 4. *Jūnius*, from the goddess *Juno*. The rest were named from their number, as follows: 5. *Quintīlis*, afterwards *Jūlius*, from *Jūlius Caesar;* 6. *Sextīlis*, afterwards *Augustus*, from *Augustus Caesar;* 7. *September;* 8. *Octōber;* 9. *November;* and 10. *December*. Numa afterwards added ***two*** months; viz.: 11. *Jānuārius*, from the god *Jānus;* 12. *Februārius*, from *februo*, "to purify."

1525.—As the months were regulated by the course of the moon, it was soon found that the months and seasons did not always correspond, and various expedients were adopted to correct this error. Much confusion, however, still remained till about A. U. 707 (B. C. 47), when Julius Caesar, assisted by Sosigenes, an astronomer of Alexandria, reformed the Calendar, adjusted the year according to the course of the sun, and assigned to each of the twelve months the number of days which they still contain.

2. *The Roman Month.*

1526.—The Romans divided their month into three parts, by three fixed days, called **Kalends, Nones,** and **Ides.*** The first day of every month was called the *Kalends;* the fifth was called the *Nones;* and the thirteenth was called the *Ides;* except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* fell on the seventh, and the *Ides* on the fifteenth; and the day was numbered according to its distance, (not *after* but) *before* each of these points; that is, after the Kalends, they numbered the day according to its distance before the Nones; after the Nones, according to its distance before the Ides; and after the Ides, according to its distance before the Kalends—both days being always included. The day before each of these points was never numbered, but called **Prīdie**, *Nōnās*, *Īdūs*, or *Kalendās*, as the case might be; the day before that was called *tertiō*, the day before that, *quartō*, etc.; scil. *ante Nōnās*, *Īdūs*, *Kalendās*.

1527.—Various expressions and constructions were used by the Romans in the notation of the days of the months. Thus, for example, the 29th December, or the 4th of the Kalends of January, was expressed differently as follows:

1st.	Quartō Kalendārum Jānuāriī.	Abbreviated,	IV. Kal. Jan., or
2d.	Quarto Kalendās Jānuāriī.	"	IV. Kal. Jan., or
3d.	Quartō Kalendās Jānuāriās.	"	IV. Kal. Jan., or
4th.	Ante diem quartum Kal. Jan.	"	a. d. IV. K. Jan.

In these expressions, *quartō* agrees with *diē* understood; and *diē* governs *Kalendārum* in the genitive. *Kalendās* is governed by *ante* understood. In the first expression, *Jānuāriī* is considered as a noun governed by *Kalendārum;* in the second, as a noun governed by *Kalendās;* in the third, *Jānuāriās* is regarded as an adjective agreeing with *Kalendās;* in the fourth, *ante diem quartum* is a technical phrase for *die quarto ante*, and frequently has a preposition before it; as, *in ante diem*, etc., or, *ex ante diem*, etc.

The notation of Nones and Ides was expressed in the same way, and with the same variety of expression.

The correspondence of the Roman notation of time with our own, may be seen by inspection of the following

---

* The first day was named Kalends, from the old verb *kalo*, "to call," because when the month was regulated according to the course of the moon, the priest announced the new moon, which was of course the first day of the month. The Nones were so called because that day was always the ninth from the Ides. The term Ides is derived from an obsolete Latin verb, *iduare*, "to divide," it is supposed because that day, being about the middle of the month, divided it into two nearly equal parts.

1528.— TABLE.

Days of our Months.	Mar. Mai. Jul. Oct. 31 days.	Jan. Aug. Dec. 31 days.	Apr. Jun. Sept. Nov. 30 days.	Febr. 28 days. Bissex. 29.
1	Kalendae.	Kalendae.	Kalendae.	Kalendae.
2	VI. nōnās.	IV. nōnās.	IV. nōnās.	IV. nōnās.
3	V. “	III. “	III. “	III. “
4	IV. “	Prīdiē “	Prīdiē “	Prīdiē “
5	III. “	Nōnae.	Nōnae.	Nōnae.
6	Prīdiē “	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.
7	Nōnae.	VII. “	VII. “	VII. “
8	VIII. Īdūs.	VI. “	VI. “	VI. “
9	VII. “	V. “	V. “	V. “
10	VI. “	IV. “	IV. “	IV. “
11	V. “	III. “	III. “	III. “
12	IV. “	Prīdiē “	Prīdiē “	Prīdiē “
13	III. “	Īdus.	Īdus. “	Īdūs.
14	Prīdiē “	XIX. kal.	XVIII. kal.	XVI. kal.
15	Īdūs.	XVIII. “	XVII. “	XV. “
16	XVII. kal.	XVII. “	XVI. “	XIV. “
17	XVI. “	XVI. “	XV. “	XIII. “
18	XV. “	XV. “	XIV. “	XII. “
19	XIV. “	XIV. “	XIII. “	XI. “
20	XIII. “	XIII. “	XII. “	X. “
21	XII. “	XII. “	XI. “	IX. “
22	XI. “	XI. “	X. “	VIII. “
23	X. “	X. “	IX. “	VII. “
24	IX. “	IX. “	VIII. “	VI. “
25	VIII. “	VIII. “	VII. “	V. “
26	VII. “	VII. “	VI. “	IV. “
27	VI. “	VI. “	V. “	III. “
28	V. “	V. “	IV. “	Prīdiē Mar.
29	IV. “	IV. “	III. “	
30	III. “	III. “	Prīdiē “	
31	Prīdiē “	Prīdiē “		

3. *Rules for reducing Time.*

As, however, this table cannot be always at hand, the following simple rules will enable a person to reduce time without a table.

I. TO REDUCE ROMAN TIME TO OUR OWN.

For reducing Kalends.

1529.—*Kalendae* are always the first day of the month; *Prīdiē Kalendārum*, always the last day of the month preceding. For any other notation, observe the following—

1530.—Rule. Subtract the number of the Kalends given from the number of days in the preceding month; add 2, and the result will be the day of the preceding month; thus,

X. Kal. Jan.—Dec. has days 31—10 = 21 + 2 = 23d of Dec'r.
XVI. Kal. Dec.—Nov. has days 30—16 = 14 + 2 = 16th of Nov'r.

For reducing Nones and Ides.

1531.—RULE. Subtract the number given, from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and add 1. The result will be the day of the month named; thus,

IV. Non. Dec.—Nones on the 5—4 = 1 + 1 = 2, or 2d Dec'r.
VI. Id. Dec.—Ides on the 13—6 = 7 + 1 = 8, or 8th Dec'r.
IV. Non. Mar.—Nones on the 7—4 = 3 + 1 = 4, or 4th March.
VI. Id. Mar.—Ides on the 15—6 = 9 + 1 = 10, or 10th March.

II. FOR REDUCING OUR TIME TO ROMAN.

1532.—If the day is that on which the Kalends, Nones, or Ides fall, call it by these names. If the day before, call it *Prīdiē Kal.* (of the following month), *Prīd. Nōn. Prīdiē Id.* (of the same month). Other days to be denominated according to their distance before the point next following, viz.: those after the Kalends and before the Nones, to be called *Nones;* those after the Nones and before the Ides, to be called *Ides*, viz.: of the month named; and those after the Ides and before the Kalends, to be called *Kalends*, viz.: of the month following; as follows:

For reducing to Kalends.

1533.—RULE. Subtract the day of the month given, from the number of days in the month, and add 2. The result will be the number of the Kalends of the month following; thus,

Dec. 23d.—Dec. has days 31—23 = 8 + 2 = 10, or X. Kal. Jan.
Nov. 16th.—Nov. has days 30—16 = 14 + 2 = 16, or XVI. Kal. Dec.

For reducing to Nones and Ides.

1534.—RULE. Subtract the day of the month given from the day of the Nones (if between the Kalends and Nones), or from the day of the Ides (if between the Nones and Ides), and add 1. The result will be the number of the Nones or Ides respectively; as,

Dec. 2d.—Day of the	Nones 5— 2 = 3 + 1 = 4,	or IV. Non. Dec.
Dec. 8th. "	Ides 13— 8 = 5 + 1 = 6,	or VI. Id. Dec.
March 4th. "	Nones 7— 4 = 3 + 1 = 4,	or IV. Non. Mar.
March 10th. "	Ides 15—10 = 5 + 1 = 6,	or VI, Id. Mar.

Division of the Roman Day.

1535.—The Roman **civil day** extended, as with us, from midnight to midnight, and its parts were variously named; as, *media nox*, *gallicinium*, *canticinium*, *dilūculum*, *māne*, *antemerīdiānum*, *merīdiēs*, *pōmerīdiānum*, etc.

1536.—The **natural day** extended from sunrise (*sōlis ortus*) till sunset (*sōlis occāsus*), and was divided into twelve equal parts, called hours

(*hōrae*); which were, of course, longer or shorter according to the length of the day. At the equinox, their hour and ours would be of the same length; but, as they began to number at sunrise, the *number* would be different, *i. e.*, their first hour would correspond to our 7 o'clock, their second to our 8 o'clock, etc.

1537.—The ***night*** was divided by the Romans into four watches (*vigiliae*), each equal to three hours; the *first* and *second* extending from sunset to midnight, and the *third* and *fourth* from midnight to sunrise.

II. OF ROMAN NAMES.

1538.—The Romans at first seem to have had but one name; as, *Rōmulus*, *Remus*, *Numitor:* sometimes two; as, *Numa Pompilius*, *Ancus Martius*, etc.; but when they began to be divided into tribes, or clans (*gentēs*), they commonly had ***three names***—the *praenōmen*, the *nōmen*, and the *cognōmen;* arranged as follows:

1. The **Praenōmen** stood first, and distinguished the *individual.* It was commonly written with one or two letters; as, *A.* for *Aulus; C.* for *Cāius; Cn.* for *Cnēius*, etc.

2. The **Nōmen**, which distinguished the *gens.* This name commonly ended in *ius;* as, *Cornēlius*, *Fabius*, *Tullius*, etc.

3. The **Cognōmen**, or surname, was put last, and marked the family; as, *Cicero*, *Caesar*, etc.

Thus, in *Publius Cornēlius Scīpio*, *Publius* is the *praenōmen*, and denotes the individual; *Cornēlius* is the *nōmen*, and denotes the *gens;* and *Scīpio* is the *cognōmen*, and denotes the *family.*

4. Sometimes a ***fourth*** name, called, in later times, **Agnōmen**, was added, as a memorial of some illustrious action or remarkable event. Thus, *Scīpio* was named *Africānus*, from the conquest of Carthage in Africa.

1539.—The three names, however, were not always used—commonly two, and sometimes only one. In speaking to any one, the *praenōmen* was commonly used, which was peculiar to Roman citizens.

1540.—When there was only one ***daughter*** in a family, she was called by the name of the *gens*, with a feminine termination; as, *Tullia*, the daughter of *M. Tullius Cicero; Jūlia*, the daughter of *C. Jūlius Caesar.* If there were two, the elder was called *Mājor*, and the younger *Minor;* as, *Tullia Mājor*, etc. If more than two, they were distinguished by numerals; as, *Prīma*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, etc.

1541.—Slaves had no *praenōmen*, but were anciently called by the *praenōmen* of their masters; as, *Marcipor*, as if *Marcī puer; Lūcipor* (*Lūciī puer*), etc. Afterwards they came to be named either from their country or from other circumstances; as, *Syrus*, *Dāvus*, *Geta*, *Tīro*, *Laurea;* and still more frequently from their employment; as, *Medicī*, *Chīrurgī*, *Paedagōgī*, *Grammaticī*, *Scrībae*, *Fabrī*, etc.

1542.—The most common ***abbreviations*** of Latin names, are the following, viz.:

A., *Aulus.*	M. T. C., *Marcus Tullius Cicero.*	Q., or Qu., *Quintus.*
C., *Caius.*	M.', *Mānius.*	Ser., *Servius.*
Cn., *Cnaius.*	Mam., *Mamercus.*	S., or Sex., *Sextus.*
D., *Decimus.*	N., *Numerius.*	Sp., *Spūrius.*
L., *Lūcius.*	P., *Publius.*	T., *Titus.*
M., *Marcus.*		Ti., or Tib., *Tiberius.*

Other Abbreviations.

A. d., *Ante diem.*	Eq. Rom., *Eques Rōmānus.*	Prōc. *Prōconsul.*
A. U., *Annō Urbis.*	Id., *Īdus.*	Rēsp. *Rēspublica.*
A. U. C., *Annō urbis conditae.*	Imp., *Imperātor.*	S. *Salūtem, Sacrum, Senātus.*
Cal., or kal., *Kalendae.*	Nōn., *Nōnae.*	S. D. P., *Salūtem dīcit plūrimam.*
Cos., *Consul.* (Singular.)	P. C., *Patrēs conscriptī.*	S. P. Q. R., *Senātus populusque Rōmānus.*
Coss., *Consulēs.* (Plural.)	P. R., *Populus Rōmānus.*	S. C., *Senātūs consultum.*
D. *Dīvus.*	Pont. Max., *Pontifex maximus.*	
	Pr. *Praetor.*	

III. DIVISIONS OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE.

1543.—The Roman people were originally divided as follows:

1. **Patrēs.** Fathers, or Senators, called also *patrōnī*, from their relation to the *clientēs*, to whom they were the legal protectors.

2. **Plēbēs, or Plēbs,** or common people.

There were added—

3. **Equitēs,** or Knights, persons of merit and distinction, selected from the two orders, whose duty at first was to serve in war as cavalry, but they were afterwards advanced to other important offices. It was necessary for them to be over 18 years of age, and, latterly, to possess a fortune of four hundred thousand sesterces.

4. **Lībertī,** or **Lībertīnī.** Freedmen—persons who had once been slaves, but obtained their freedom, and ranked as citizens. They were called *lībertī* in relation to the person by whom they were set free, and *lībertīnī* in relation to all others.

5. **Servī.** Slaves.

1544.—When Romulus arranged the affairs of the new city, he appointed a council of 100 **Patrēs** from the Romans, and afterwards added to them 100 more from the Sabines. Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king of Rome, added 100 more, called **Patrēs minōrum gentium,** in relation to whom the former senators were called *Patrēs mājōrum gentium*, making 300 in all. A great part of these were slain by Tarquin the proud; and after his expulsion, Brutus, the first consul, chose a number to supply their place, who were called **Patrēs conscriptī,** because they were enrolled with the other senators. This title was afterwards applied to all the senators in council assembled, and is supposed to be abbreviated for *Patrēs et conscriptī.*

1545.—The *Patrēs*, as a class, were called *Patricii*, or Patricians. Besides these distinctions among the Romans, there were also distinctions of rank or party, as follows:

Nōbilēs, whose ancestors or themselves held any curule office, *i. e.*, had been *Consul*, *Praetor*, *Censor*, or *Curule Aedile*.

Ignōbilēs, who neither themselves, nor their ancestors, had held any curule office.

Optimātēs, those who favored the senate.

Populārēs, those who favored the people.

IV. DIVISIONS OF THE ROMAN CIVIL OFFICERS.

1546.—At first Rome was governed by kings for the space of 244 years. The ordinary magistrates after that, till the end of the republic, were:

1. **Consuls**, or chief magistrates, of whom there were two.
2. **Praetors**, or judges, also originally two in number, next in dignity to the consuls.
3. **Censors**, who took charge of the census, and had a general supervision of the morals of the people.
4. **Tribunes** of the people, the special guardians of the commonalty against the encroachments of the patricians, and who, by the word "VETO," *I forbid*, could prevent the passage of any law.
5. **Aediles**, who took care of the city and had the inspection and regulation of its public buildings, temples, theatres, baths, etc.
6. **Quaestors**, or Treasurers, who collected the public revenues.

1547.—Under the emperors there were added—

1. **Praefectus Urbi**, or *Urbis*, Governor of the city.
2. **Praefectus Praetōrii**, Commander of the body guards.
3. **Praefectus Annōnae**, whose duty it was to procure and distribute grain in time of scarcity.
4. **Praefectus militāris aerārii**, who had charge of the military fund.
5. **Praefectus Classis**, Admiral of the fleet.
6. **Praefectus Vigilum**, or captain of the watch.

V. THE ROMAN ARMY.

1548.—The Romans were a nation of warriors. All within a certain age (17 to 45), were obliged to go forth to war at the call of their country. When an army was wanted for any purpose, a levy was made among the people, of the number required. These were then arranged, officered, and equipped for service.

1549.—The ***Legion.*** The leading division of the Roman army was the legion, which, when full, consisted of 6000 men, but varied from that to 4000.

1550.—Each legion was divided into ten ***cohorts;*** each cohort, into three ***maniples;*** and each maniple, into two ***centuries.***

1551.—The complement of cavalry (*equitātus*) for each legion was three hundred, called āla, or *justus equitātus*. These were divided into ten ***turmae,*** or troops; and each *turma* into three ***decuriae,*** or bodies of ten men.

Division of the Soldiers.

1552.—The Roman soldiers were divided into three classes, viz.:

1. **Hastātī, or spearmen**; young men who occupied the first line.
2. **Principēs**, or middle-aged men, who occupied the middle line.
3. **Triārii**, veterans of approved valor, who occupied the third line.

Besides these, there were—

4. **Vēlitēs,** or light-armed soldiers; distinguished for agility and swiftness.
5. **Funditōrēs,** or slingers.
6. **Sagittārii,** or bowmen.

The Officers of the Legion were:

1553.—1. Six **Military tribunes,** who commanded under the consul in turn, usually a month.

2. The **Centuriōnēs,** who commanded the centuries.

The Officers of the Cavalry were:

1. The **Praefectus Ālae**, or commander of the wing.
2. The **Decuriōnēs,** or captains of ten.

1554.—The whole army was under the command of the **Consul, or Proconsul,** who acted as commander-in-chief. Under him were his **Lēgātī,** or lieutenants, who acted in his absence, or under his direction; or, as his deputies, were sent by him on embassies, or on business of special importance.

VI. ROMAN MONEY—WEIGHTS—AND MEASURES.

Roman Money.

1555.—The principal coins among the Romans were—***Brass:*** the *As*, and its divisions; ***Silver:*** *Sestertius*, *Quīnārius*, and *Dēnārius*, called *bīgātī* and *quadrīgātī*, from the impression of a chariot drawn by *two* or *four* horses on one side; ***Gold:*** the *Aureus* or *Solidus*.

1556.—Before the coining of silver, the Romans reckoned by the **As,** a brass coin, called also **libra.** This coin was originally the weight

of the Roman *libra* or *pondus*, but was afterwards reduced at different times, till at last it came to one twenty-fourth of a pound, and was called *libella.* It was divided into twelve equal parts called *Unciae*, every number of which had a distinct name, as follows:

$\frac{1}{12}$ *Uncia.*	$\frac{6}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ *Sēmis, sembella.*	$\frac{9}{12}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ *Dōdrans.*
$\frac{2}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{6}$ *Sextans.*	$\frac{7}{12}$ *Septunx.*	$\frac{10}{12}$ or $\frac{5}{6}$ *Dextans.*
$\frac{3}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ *Quadrans.*	$\frac{8}{12}$ or $\frac{2}{3}$ *Bēs,* or *bēssis.*	$\frac{11}{12}$ *Deunx.*
$\frac{4}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{3}$ *Triens.*		
$\frac{5}{12}$ *Quincunx.*		

1557.—After the use of silver money, accounts were kept in Sesterces (**Sestertiī**). This coin, emphatically called **Nummus** (money), was originally equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*, as the name *sestertius* means. Its symbol was L. L. S., *i. e.*, *Libra Libra Sēmis*, or the numeral letters; thus, IIS, or with a line across HS. Other coins were multiples of this; thus, the *dēnārius* was equal to 4 *sesterces*, or 10 *asses;* and the *aureus*, a gold coin, was equal to 25 *dēnāriī*, or 100 *sestertiī*. When the *ās* was reduced in weight after A. U. C. 536, the *sestertius* was worth 4 *asses*, and the *dēnārius*, 16.

1558.—A thousand *sestertiī* was called **sestertium** (not a coin but the name of a sum), and was indicated by the mark $\overline{\text{IIS}}$. This word was never used in the singular; and any sum less than 2000 *sesterces* was called so many *sestertiī;* 2000 was called *duo* or *bīna sestertia;* 10,000, *dēna sestertia;* 20,000, *vīcēna sestertia*, etc., up to a million of *sesterces*, which was written *deciēs centēna millia sestertiōrum*, or *nummōrum*, ten times a hundred thousand *sesterces.* This was commonly abbreviated into *deciēs sestertiûm*, or *deciēs nummûm*, in which expressions *centēna millia*, or *centiēs millia*, is always understood.

1559.—The following table will show the value of the Roman *ās*, in federal money, both before and after the Punic war, and of the larger coins at all times.

1. *Table of Roman Money.*

				Before A. U. 536. D. cts. m.	*After A. U. 536.* D. cts. m.
	Teruncius, or		3 Unciae, ...	3.8	2.4
2	Teruncii	=	1 Sembella, ...	7.7	4.8
5	Sembella	=	1 Ās, ...	1 5.4	9.6
Before 536–$2\frac{1}{2}$ After 536–4	Asses,	=	1 Sestertius, ...	3 8.6	3 8.6
2	Sestertiī	=	1 Quīnārius, or Victōriātus, ...	7 7.3	7 7.3
2	Quīnāriī	=	1 Dēnāriī, ...	15 4.7	15 4.7
25	Dēnāriī	=	1 Aureus, or Solidus, ...	3 86 8.4	3 86 8.4
10	Aurei	=	1 Sestertium......	38 68 4.6	38 68 4.6

2. *Roman Weights.*

			Troy Weight. Lbs.	oz.	dwt.	grs.	Avoirdupois W't. Lbs.	oz.	drs.
The Siliqua						2.92			0.106
3	Siliquae	= 1 Obolus				8.76			0.320
2	Obolī	= 1 Scrūpulum,				17.53			0.641
4	Scrūpula	= 1 Sextula,			2	22.13			2.564
1½	Sextula	= 1 Sīciliquus,			4	9.19			3.847
1⅓	Sīciliquus	= 1 Duella,			5	20.26			5.129
3	Duellae	= 1 Uncia,			17	12.79			15.389
12	Unciae	= 1 Libra,		10	10	9.53		11	8.668

The Drachma was 3 Scrūpula.

3. *Roman Liquid Measure.*

			Galls.	qts.	pts.
1	Ligula, or Cochleāre, is equal to				0.019
4	Ligula,	= 1 Cyathus,			0.079
1½	Cyathī,	= 1 Acētābulum,			0.118
2	Acētābula,	= 1 Quartārius,			0.237
2	Quartāriī,	= 1 Hēmīna,			0.475
2	Hēmīnae,	= 1 Sextārius,			0.950
6	Sextāriī,	= 1 Congius,		2	1.704
4	Congiī,	= 1 Urna,	2	3	0.819
2	Urnae,	= 1 Amphora,	5	2	1.639
20	Amphorae,	= 1 Cūleus,	114	0	0.795

The *Sextārius* was divided into twelve *Unciae*, one of which was the *Cyathus*, equal to a small wine glass.

4. *Roman Dry Measure.*

		Pks.	galls.	qts.	pts.
1 Sextārius (same as in liquid measure),					0.950
8 Sextāriī,	= 1 Sēmi-modius,			3	1.606
2 Sēmi-modiī,	= 1 Modius,	1		3	1.213

Roman Measures of Length.

1560.—The Roman *foot* (*pēs*), like the *ās*, was divided into 12 *unciae*, different numbers of which were sometimes called by the same names as those of the *ās*; viz.: *Sextans*, *quadrans*, etc. The measures less than the *uncia* were the *digitus* = ¾; the *sēmiuncia* = ½; the *siciliquis* = ¼; and the *sextula* = ⅙ of the *uncia*; *i. e.*, the *pēs*, or foot, contained 12 *unciae*, or 16 *digitī*, or 24 *sēmiunciae*, or 48 *sīciliquī*, or 72 *sextulae*.

5. *Table of Measures above a Pēs.*

			Yds.	ft.
1	Pēs	= 12 Unciae, or 16 Digits,		.97
1¼	Pēs	= 1 Palmipēs,		1.21
1½	Pēs	= 1 Cubitus		1.45

			Yds.	ft.
2½	Pedēs	= 1 Pēs Sestertius,......................		2.42
5	Pedēs	= 1 Passus,.........................	1	1.85
125	Passūs	= 1 Stadium,.........................	202	0.72
8	Stadia	= 1 Milliāre, or mile,....................	1617	2.75

6. *Table of Land Measure.*

			A.	roods.	poles.	sq. ft.
100	Pedēs quadrātī	= 1 Scrūpulum,				94.23
4	Scrūpula	= 1 Sextula,			1	104.69
1½	Sextulae	= 1 Actus Simplex,			1	180.08
5	Actūs, or 6 Sextulae	= 1 Uncia,			8	83.65
6	Unciae	= 1 Actus quadrātus,		1	9	229.67
2	Actūs quadrātī	= 1 Jūgerum (As),		2	19	187.09
2	Jūgera	= 1 Haerēdium,	1	0	39	101.83
100	Haerēdia	= 1 Centuria,	124	2	17	109.79
4	Centuriae	= 1 Saltus,	498	1	29	166.91

The Roman **Jūgerum**, or *As*, of land, was also divided into 12 Unciae, any number of which was denominated as before, 1556.

VII. DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

1561.—Of the Roman literature, previous to A. U. 514, scarcely a vestige remains. The Roman writers, subsequent to that period. have been arranged into four classes, with reference to the purity of the language at the time in which they lived. These are called the *Golden* age, the *Silver* age, the *Brazen* age, and the *Iron* age.

1562.—The ***Golden age*** extends from the time of the second Punic war, B. C. 218, to the death of Augustus, A. D. 14, a period of about 230 years. In that period, Facciolatus reckons up in all 62 writers, of many of whose works, however, only fragments remain. The most distinguished writers of that period are *Terence*, *Catullus*, *Caesar*, *Nepos*, *Cicero*, *Virgil*, *Horace*, *Ovid*, *Livy*, and *Sallust*.

1563.—The ***Silver age*** extends from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers who flourished in this age are about twenty-three in number, of whom the most distinguished are *Celsus*, *Velleius*, *Columella*, the *Senecas*, the *Plinys*, *Juvenal*, *Quintilian*, *Tacitus*, *Suetonius*, and *Curtius*.

1564.—The writers of the ***Brazen age,*** extending from the death of Trajan till Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410, were thirty-five; the most distinguished of whom were *Justin*, *Terentianus*, *Victor*, *Lactantius*, and *Claudian.*

1565.—From this period commenced the ***Iron age,*** during which the Latin language was much adulterated by the admixture of foreign words, and its purity, elegance, and strength, greatly declined.

LIST OF VERBS

WHOSE CONJUGATION IS GIVEN IN WHOLE OR IN PART IN THIS GRAMMAR.

**** The numbers refer to paragraphs, and not to pages.*

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

The numbers refer to paragraphs and not to pages. Most of the abbreviations used will explain themselves sufficiently: *w.* = with; *ff.* = and the following; *constr.* = construction of; *comps.* = compounds; *suff.* = suffix; *compar.* = comparison of.

Bullions's Latin Reader (new and enlarged edition).. $1 50
With easy Reading Exercises, Grammar, References, Latin Idioms, and Improved Vocabulary, etc.

Bullions's Exercises in Latin Composition**.....** 1 50
Adapted to Bullions's Latin Grammar.

Bullions's Key to do. Separate, for Teachers only.... 0 60

Bullions's Cæsar's Commentaries**................** 1 50
With References to both Grammars, Notes, and Lexicon.

Bullions's Sallust. With Notes and References to Bullions's Grammar... 1 50

Bullions's Cicero's Orations**.......................** 1 50
With Notes and References to Bullions's, Bullions & Morris's, and Andrews & Stoddard's Latin Grammars.

Bullions's Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary. With Synonyms. 1258 pages......... 5 00

Bullions's First Lessons in Greek**..................** 1 00
Introduction to the Grammar.

Bullions's Principles of Greek Grammar**.......** 1 75

Bullions and Kendrick's New Greek Grammar 2 00

Greek Exercises. To accompany B. & K.'s Greek Gram. 1 00

Bullions's Greek Reader**...........................** 2 25
With Introduction on Greek Idioms, Impr. Lex., etc.

Cooper's Virgil. With valuable English Notes........ 2 50

Long's Classical Atlas**..............................** 4 50
Containing Fifty-two Colored Maps and Plans, and forming the most complete Atlas of the Ancient World ever published. 1 vol., 4to.

Baird's Classical Manual. 1 vol. 16mo........... 0 90

Kaltschmidt's English-Latin and Lat.-English Dictionary. For Schools. 990 pages, 16mo......... 2 50

Sheldon & Company's Text-Books.

A Complete Manual of English Literature. By THOMAS B. SHAW, Author of "Shaw's Outlines of English